

Exlibris

2
0
0
5



vive como de viaje, pues nada diffiere alli
o aqui, si se vive en todas partes como en
la gran ciudad que es el mundo

History of China (to 1912)

By

Ah Xiang

<http://www.uglychinese.org>

PRE-HISTORY

Chinese Nation is the existing longest continuous nation in human history. In the eyes of the world, China is equivalent to the terra-cotta army of 3rd century BC, the Great Wall, the Silk Road, the last emperor and the Forbidden City. However, China is not a homogeneous society ethnically, its history is not completely Chinese in nature, and the continuity would be intertwined with barbarian ruling for several durations in past two millennia. In this section, we will discuss China's prehistory. While the Chinese are proud of calling their history "up and down five thousand years", the start of recorded history acknowledged by the academic would start with the Shang Dynasty (1765 BC - 1122 BC) as a result of the discovery of oracle bones. Because of the oracle bones, China's recorded history from Shang Dynasty is authenticated. A Chinese research project which started in 1995 had been reported to have pushed the exact date to the year 2070 BC as the point of start for Xia Dynasty. Stanford University scholar, David Nivision, had derived the date of 2026 BC, instead, as a result of his own independent studies. (The new research project should be considered a politics-influenced work.) Repeating citations of ancient stories and legends in Chinese classics certainly implied a much longer evolution history than Shang Dynasty, and Cangjie characters from Huangdi Era of 26th century BC could not be discounted, either. The first dynasty of Xia (2207 BC - 1766 BC), claiming a domain of nine ancient prefectures and leaving its lineage in both the ancient Yue people on southeastern Chinese coasts and the Uygurs in today's Western China, is certainly a real entity.

On the dynasty panel, I had included dates for Xia-Shang-Zhou dynasties from the new research project, with superscript of 2. Prof David Nivision reportedly had spent enormous time in tracing the Chinese Xia Dynasty to 2026 BC by re-calculating each emperor's years of reign, minus and plus the unrecorded years such as imperial mourning. Also in dispute would be the



counting method in regards to the years of reign for ancient lords, and short counting / long counting may produce vastly different dates. This is because the dates for ancient lords are usually for the first full year of the reign and could be skipped should the lords fail to survive for one full year.

China's earliest substantiated year would be the fourteen year long "interregnum" (republican administrative period) of Western Zhou Dynasty, beginning from year 841 BC. There is a reason for the ambiguity of early Chinese dates. China's cultural heritage suffered a severe setback as a result of Qin Emperor Shihuangdi's book burning in the 3rd century BC. 150 years after book burning, scholars were still having difficulties re-compiling the lost classics. It was recorded that some surviving books hidden by the 8th grandson of Confucius (Kong Zixiang) inside of the walls in Confucius' house were discovered during Han Emperor Wudi's reign in 1st century BC, and it enabled scholars to make comparisons between the authentic rotten books and those books which were re-compiled via oral recitation from memories of old scholars. Because of the damages, important history books were forever destroyed.

China's civilization is dated later than the Sumer Civilization of 3500 BC, Ancient Egypt of 3100 BC, Minoan of 2000 BC, and Indian of 2500 BC. The excavations, however, had produced refined potteries going back as much as 5000 BC. Six bone flutes dating from 7000-5700 B.C at site of Jiahu in central Henan Province certainly pointed to the existence of an advanced human civilization. In the same area, tortoise shells with the pictograms were found buried with human remains in 24 graves unearthed at Jiahu. The notable



thing about the Chinese Civilization is that it is not disrupted ever since, even under barbarian ruling in between. Both Mongols and Manchus, who had ruled an integral China, had adopted the Chinese language for its governance, for example. There are people who had tried to link China to the ancient Egyptian pictographic language to prove the common origin of human beings. Scholar Luo Xianglin pointed out that Frenchman Terrien Lacouperie was the first to propose the fallacious claim of Babylon as the "Western Origin Of The Early Chinese Civilization" in 1894. Interaction between civilization inevitable, one

interesting thing would be the 12 Chinese Earthly Stems which coincided with the Zodiac. Lacking solid evidence, I will uphold the independence of Chinese civilization in discussions here.

Beginning from Shang Dynasty, underground records like oracle bones, i.e., tortoise shells and flat cattle bones with inscribed characters of ancient Chinese, had provided solid corroborations of events noted in written records above-ground. Archaeological excavations of artifacts dating from about 1384 BC, from the last capital city of Shang Dynasty at Anyang, i.e., 'Yin Xu' [Shang Wastes], attested to the historical records found in later chronicles. The oracle bone characters are quite mature, pointing to a very long lasting evolution stage for thousands of years prior to Shang. Ancient Chinese records are quite reliable, and some archaeologists traced the ancient records of comets and found they did coincide with the cycles of comets that frequent earth today still. Excavations from Xia Dynasty, i.e., 'Xia Xu' or Xia Wastes, had been under studies to authenticate the stories and legends of its times or those legends about the Three Huang ("lords or emperors") and Five Di ("lords or emperors") preceding Xia. In 1987, Beijing Univ publishing house printed the anthology of articles in a book entitled *Hua Xia Civilization*, with quite some academic-quality writings, including writing by Zhang Guangzhi. There are reports of archaeological findings of Chinese pictographic characters older than Shang's tortoise shell characters. In the 1960s and 1970s, archaeologists have uncovered urban sites, bronze implements, and tombs that point to the existence of Xia civilization. Until definite results could be derived, we won't be able to explore further at this time. At minimum, the Xia period would mark an evolutionary stage between the late neolithic cultures and the Chinese urban civilization of the Shang dynasty.

Excavations Of Bird-Totem Cultures

The origin of the Mongoloid people may or may not be related to the *sinanthropus shoukoutien* (300-500 thousand years old), the *homo erectus pekinensis* found in today's Zhoukoudian, near Beijing. As archaeologists and anthropologists pointed out, modern men did not come from *homo erectus*, nor *homo sapiens* (80-200 thousand years ago), but *homo sapiens sapiens* (20-70 thousand years ago), instead. Recent DNA tests had provided clues that the Chinese males' genes do share one similar feature with the Africans, proving

that mankind did come out of Africa. Mankind became active on the globe only after the dissipation in 9000 BC of the last Ice Age, last one of the 17-19 glaciations extending from 3 million years ago. This timeframe would be labeled Upper Palaeolithic. 15000-30 thousand years ago, the Mongoloid people had started to cross the Bering Straits. (DNA analysis led to a conclusion that about 10 hunters, with 3-4 males, followed raindeers across the Bering land-bridge to American continent by taking advantage of the window of opportunity between the last two glaciers.) The Mongoloid would come into tribal shapes, and they then went through the Neolithic Age and the Bronze & Iron Age. Historians, before the emergence of the DNA technology, had claimed that the human genome had taken shape about 10,000 years ago. Mainly in Asian and American continents, the Mongoloids established their lasting home base. The limited varieties in the human races could also point to the intense competition and hostility between those early human beings during the long years of evolution.

An examination of the Chinese continent will yield two main rivers, the Yellow River (i.e., Huang-he River) and the Yangtze River (i.e., Chang-jiang River). Recent excavations had produced numerous sites showing that the early Chinese had multiple domains, including the Sanxingdui Excavations in Sichuan Province, the Jiangxi Province excavations, and the rice cultures of Hemudu and Liangzhu in Zhejiang / Jiangsu provinces. (Sanxingdui Excavations had produced bronze statues exhibiting people with protruding eyes. Yunnan Province excavations proved that it was the source of tin ore used for Shang Dynasty's bronze utensils. A good website of archaeological findings would be ankhoagency.com/prehistory%20of%20mankind.htm.)

Jade Age

Recent archaeological discoveries proposed the "Jade Age" as a transitional stage between Stone Age and Bronze Age. See http://english.peopledaily.com.cn/200402/25/eng20040225_135852.shtml for the discussion on "Hongshan Culture".

Scholar Luo Xianglin cited ancient book "*Yue [Yue principality] Jue [splendid] Shu [book]*" in stating that in ancient times, Xuan-yuan-shi, Shen-nong-shi & He-xu-shi utilized stone as weapon; Lord Huangdi utilized Jade as weapon; and in Xia times, Lord Yu utilized copper as weapon, hence piercing the Longmen [dragon gate] Gorge of the Yellow River. The hint from ancient classics was clear that a "Jade Age" was a matter of fact. ("*Yue Jue Shu*" distinction between

Xuan-yuan-shi and Lord Huangdi also verified that the two were not the same.)

Archaeological Phases

In the Yellow River area, the early Chinese civilizations flourished. In this area, agricultural settlers would co-exist with nomadic tribes till today, a peculiar phenomenon not seen in other earlier civilizations. With the settlement came the domestication of animals, farming of millet, pottery and art, ceremonies, and cultures. There is sound speculation about the fundamental cause that city-states had developed among sedentary Chinese, i.e., the co-existence of sedentary people with the nomadic people of the steppe who constantly preyed upon the lower plains.

Archaeology will yield several distinct phases:

- 5000 BC?: Hemudu Culture established a presence along the lower Yangtze River delta. There is evidence of rice cultivation, fishing, and wood frame houses etc. Hemudu Culture was validated to have excavated articles bearing the bird-sun totem, a heritage observed in later Yangshao Culture and Longsang Culture;
- 4000 - 3000 BC: Yangshao Culture in the Yellow River area. There is evidence of round structures built from mud-brick with a thatched roof and a central peak and agriculture to clear the land to plant crops of millet, wheat, barley, and some rice. Excavations from Quanhu-chun Village, Liuzi-zhen Town, Hua-xian County, Shenxi Prov had produced colored pottery depicting a bird totem with the sun in the wing.

Tian Changyue stated that around 4000 BC, Yangshao Culture began to exhibit the sign of clan communes which would progress to 'patria potestas' clan from 'matria potestas' clan by 3500 BC approx.

Tian Changyue also stated that Dawenkou Culture, near the Wen-shui River of Shandong Prov, had entered the phase of clan commune and then split into non-promiscuity marriage relationship and 'patria potestas' clan earlier than Yangshao Culture.

Corresponding stages of cultures in other parts of China would include: Songze Culture and Qingliangang Culture in Lower Yangtze River, Qujialing Culture in middle Yantze River, and Majiayao Culture in Upper Yellow River.

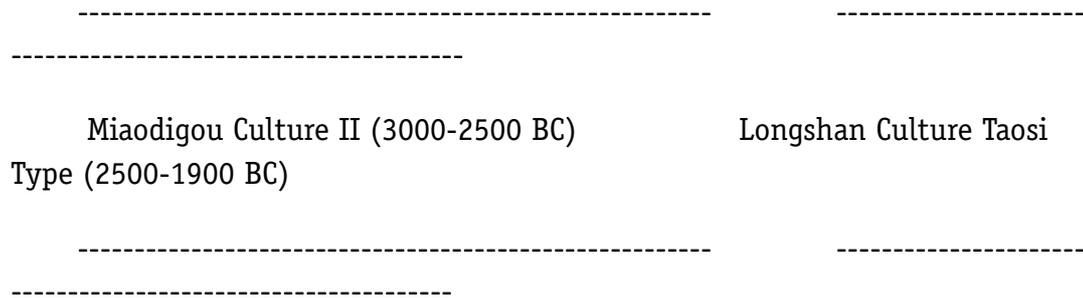
- 2500-1900 BC: Longshan Culture across the North China Plain and the hills of the Shandong Peninsula. The early Chinese cultivated millet and rice, raised pigs, sheep, goats, cattle and water buffalo, possessed permanent villages surrounded by mud walls, and utilized wells for irrigating fields. (The Chinese character for home was a cap on top of pig.)

Longshan Culture possessed i) potteries and china, ii) bronze articles, iii) lacquered wood utensils (which was also in popular usage in ancient American continents), iv) hardened mud and plaster, and v) jade, bone and musical articles. Longshan Culture excavations had produced potteries with similar bird totems as Yangshao Culture. Dragon totem was also found in the same area. Scholar Gao Wei pointed out that the colored Pottery from Taosi Excavations of Longshan Culture in Xiangfen of Shanxi Prov had shown a winding dragon.

Tian Changyue stated that Longshan Culture was validated to have built on top of both Da-wen-kou Culture of Shandong Prov and Yangshao Culture (around 3000 BC approx) and that Longshan Culture could be sub-classified into: east Henan Prov, west Henan Prov, south Shanxi Prov, and south of Wei-shui River in Shenxi Prov. Excavations exhibited a co-existence of a) non-promiscuity small family with husband and wife and b) 'patria potestas' clan. Tian Changyue, the editor of *Hua Xia Civilization* anthology, equated 'patria potestas' to servitus and pointed to the funeral slaves, pork bones and different burial articles from Taosi excavations in Xiangfen of Shanxi Prov as evidence of caste strata.

Yangshao Culture (4000-3000 BC)

Banpo Type --> Dongzhuangcun Type --> Miaodigou Type --...-->
Xiwangcun Type



Early Stage --> Middle Stage --> Late Stage Early Stage
--> Middle Stage --> Late Stage

1800 BC) Dongxiafeng Type (2200-1700 BC) Taosi (2400-



Dongxiafeng Type Of Erlitou Culture (2200-1700 BC) Yanshi
Type of Erlitou Culture (1900-1500 BC)

Liu Qiyu stated, on basis of the craftsmanship on potteries, that the Xia people's developments could be embodied by three stages of evolutions, i.e., Taosi of southwestern Shanxi Prov, Dongxiafeng of southeastern Shanxi Prov, and Erlitou Culture in Yanshi of Henan Prov. Liu Qiyu also noted that copper utensils were both discovered in Dongxiafeng and Yanshi Erlitou, and he concurred with Zou Heng/Sun Hua in validating an extrapolation that the Longshan culture of Henan Prov, together with Dongxiafeng culture in Shanxi Prov, would be the two inputs into Erlitou Culture in Yanshi of Henan Prov. The phases I & II of Erlitou being definitely Longshan culture time period, I could not ascertain whether it was under Xia people or Dong-yi people by simply reading opposing viewpoints from various experts; however, I am more inclined to adopting Liu Qiyu's opinion that Erlitou Culture that received inputs from Shanxi-Henan provinces, dated the 3rd phase of Erlitou (Yanshi, Henan Prov), must have been under Xia people. Liu Qiyu speculated that phases I & II of Erlitou was still a succession of Dongxiafeng in Shanxi Prov, but it might have been influenced by Henan Prov's Longshan Culture as shown in similar patterns on potteries. Liu Qiyu further pointed out that by the 4th phase, the Yanshi excavations pointed to the dilapidation of Xia Dynasty palaces in the area. (Liu Qiyu always upheld the theory that Qi, Lord Yu's son, had his capital established at Xunyi, i.e., today's Yanshi of Henan Prov and the seat of Erlitou Culture. Liu Qiyu, to rebut the viewpoint that phases III & IV of Erlitou might belong to early Shang people, stated that it was the opposite way around, that is, the Xia people of III & IV of Erlitou influenced the Erligang 'shengwen' [i.e., jormon] potteries in Zhengzhou of Henan Prov.)

Comment In Regards To Dragon Totem

Should we have refuted the disputes in regards to the equivalency of Xia People's Culture and Longshan Culture, then we need to point out excavations of dragon-totem colored pottery in almost every tomb discovered in southern Shanxi Prov, and those excavations were dated to be Taosi Type Culture (2400-1800 BC). Reading through ancient legends, however, we could derive a valid speculation that earliest ancient Chinese, represented by both Tai-hao and Shao-hao tribes, had appeared to be upholding birds as their totem. This could be seen in excavations from Hermudu, Yangshao and Longshan cultures. Beginning from Taosi Type excavations, dragon totems began to emerge, and this time frame coincided with the conversion of two brotherly tribes of Jiang-surname Yandi tribe and Ji-surname Huangdi tribe from the west and north.

Dragon-totem colored potteries, per Gu Xiegang (Gu Jiegang, i.e, Liu Qiyu's teacher), pointed to Xia people as the original inhabitants of southern Shanxi Prov while both Lord Yao and Lord Shun were appropriated to the land of 'Xia' after Xia people's eastward expansion into the bird-totem Eastern Yi barbarian land. (Gu Xiegang cited ancient classics *Zu Zhuan* in stating that nowhere in *Zu Zhuan* could find references i) that Lord Shun was surnamed 'Yu' or Lord Yao surnamed 'Tang' and ii) that *Zu Zhuan* did not have any reference about Yu-shi clan of Xia people being the descendant of Lord Shun or Tao-tang-shi clan of Xia people being the descendant of Lord Yao.)

Legends Of Ancient Tribes

Chinese civilization, in mythology, begins with '*Pang Gu Kai Tian*', namely, Pan'gu creating the universe, and there are a succession of legendary sages, overlords and ancient emperors. Pan'gu, however, was a relatively new legend. Recently, some historian had speculated that Pangu was the same person as Panhu, i.e., ancestor of southern barbarians. Before Pan'gu, China used to possess Chong-li (Zhong-li) story of separating sky from earth. (Zeng Guangdong, at regenerating-universe.org/Chinesebelief, concluded that "China's civilization is totally home grown ... The fact that the early Chinese did not believe in Gods and also did not leave us beliefs or legends of any kind of divine creation will remain always a mystery. Anyhow, it was only in the Three Kingdom epoch about the 3rd Century AD that a writer named Shu Zheng [Xu Zheng] did tell the only story of creation that has existed in Chinese history ever since.")

Senior Scholar Wei Juxian stated that Pan-gu-shi story of Qin-Han time periods had derived from the story of Chong-li in Western Zhou Dynasty, 1000 years earlier than Pan'gu. Wei Juxian cited *Chu Yu* section of ancient classics *Guo Yu* in stating that Chu King Zhaowang asked Guansefu a question: "What did ancient classics *Zhou Shu* mean by the sentence that Chong-li caused the heaven and earth disconnect from each other?" Chu King Zhaowang's question was in regards to Luu Xing statement about heaven and earth disconnection by Chong-li during a conversation with Zhou King Muwang (r. 1001-946 BC).

Minority peoples in southern China appeared to be the input of many myths of universe creation and human creation. Gourd, i.e., a plant similar to the shape

of a woman's body, was often cited as the source of human creation by minority people like Wa-zu. Wa-zu claimed that they were born from gourd earlier than other ethnic groups. In Yunnan Prov, 3000-year-old stone carvings and cliff drawings had been discovered, with totem-like pictures including snakes and lizards (i.e., dragon totem), birds (i.e., phoenix totem) and gourd. Cangyuan area of Yunnan Prov was called Hulu-guo or Gourd Country in ancient times.

In remote antiquity, there appeared such clans as Nü-wa-shi, Gong-gong-shi, Zhu-rong-shi and Fu-xi-shi etc. "*Huai Nan Zi*" talked about Nü-wa (a female) mending the collapsed skies as a result of the fightings between Gonggong (god of fire) and Zhurong (god of water). Nü-wa was said to have created people out of mud figurines. (A Western Han Dynasty story claimed that Nü-wa was the younger sister of Fuxi.) Gao Xingjian, Year 2000 Nobel Prize winner, wrote a dramatized version of "*Shan Hai Jing*" ('Classics of Mountains and Seas') in which he documented the ancient account stating that Fu-xi and Nu-wa, both in the shape of serpine body but human face, had born the mankind. Fuxi, aka Tai-hao-shi, was said to be the ancestor of phoenix tribe, i.e., Dong-yi [Eastern Yi] people; however, Fuxi was also recorded to have first originated in the west of China. Fuxi, according to ancient classics, possessed the 'Feng4' (phoenix) surname. "*Zuo Zhuan*" repeatedly stated that Tai-hao-shi, whose ruins ware at later Chen-guo fief, had such family names as 'Ren4' and 'Su4' around the domain of Henan-Shandong provinces. Fu Xi was said to have invented the nets for catching animals and fishes, instituted the protocol of marriage, created the theory of Yin-Yang (i.e., female-male), authored the works of I-Ching (i.e., the Book of Changes), and invented Ba-Gua (i.e., Trigrams). Zeng Guangdong claimed that "Fu Xi was the initiation of the Chinese written language".

After the death of Fuxi, Nü-wa-shi would replace Tai-hao-shi as the leader of phoenix or bird-totem tribes. Over dozen clans (i.e., *-**-shi) had carried on the tradition of bird-totem. Shao-hao-shi would be a junior clan which have derived from Tai-hao-shi the senior clan. Both Tai-hao-shi and Sha-hao-shi continued for thousand years, till the time of Xia Dynasty. Some scholar interpreted the ancient wordings to point out that Qi[3], first overlord of dragon-totem Xia Dynasty and son of Lord Yu, would later defeat both Tai-hao-shi and Shao-hao-shi tribes in Henan-Shandong provinces and solidify Xia people's rule over Eastern Yi people.

Then came along Shennong or Yandi the Fiery Lord. Huangfu Mi (Jinn Dynasty)

commented that Shen-nong-shi replaced another tribe called Pao-xi-shi (Pao Xi Shi), i.e., hunting tribe. (Pao-xi-shi was also known as Fuxu-shi or Fu-xi-shi, aka Taihao clan.) Before that, Pao-xi-shi had replaced You-chao-shi (You Chao Shi), the people who made homes on the tree, while You-chao-shi had replaced Sui-ren-shi (Sui Ren Shi), i.e., the people who lived by making fire from the stones or wood. (Ancient legends stated that Sui-ren had contrived the idea of making fire by observing the woodpecker behavior.)

Note that Shen-nong-shi's totem is ox, not bird. Shennong or Yandi was born by a You-qiao-shi woman after visiting Hua-yang (south of Mt Huashan ?) where she was impregnated by a dragon-faced spirit. This impregnation could mean a conversion of dragon-totem and ox-totem tribes. Yandi, having a human body and an ox face, was noted for his agricultural accomplishments and revered as the overlord with the virtue of fire. After Shen-nong-shi failed to reign in the vassals, Huangdi (Yellow Overlord) came to assert his power. The Yellow Lord and Fiery Lord are the most famous among those legendary figures. The legends would develop into the polytheism, ancestor worship and a worship of gods including Shang-Tian (the Heaven on High or Lord Highness). Huangdi would be where we are to trace the lineage of later overlords as well as the kings & emperors of Xia-Shang-Zhou-Qin dynasties.

Sui-ren-shi

|

|

You-chao-shi

|

|

Pao-xi-shi (Fu-xi-shi)

|

...

(a dozen of bird-totem clans)

...

|

Shen-nong-shi (Yandi)

|

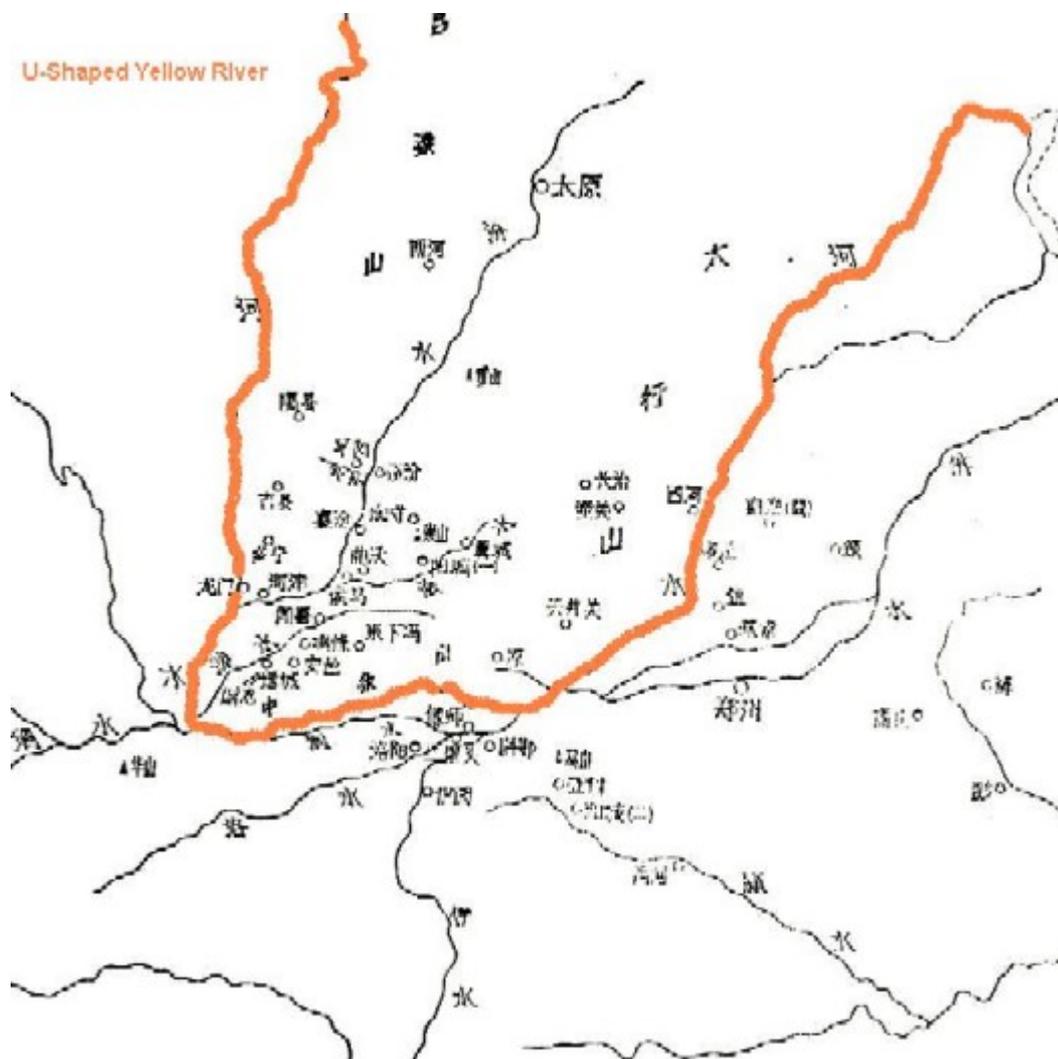
|

You-xiong-shi (Huangdi, aka Xuanyuan-shi or Xuan-yuan-shi)

Often neglected would be a clan entitled Hexu-shi, a tribe that some people had equated to so-called Hua-xu-shi where the character 'Hua' for denoting Xia Chinese was to develop.

Speculation As To Proto Groups

Two proto groups of peoples, Hua People (also denoted Huaxia or Xia where the character 'hua' was said to have derived from the Huashan Mountain near Xi'an city, a name that was more likely to have been appropriated from across the Yellow River) vs Yi People (also denoted Dongyi or Eastern Yi in later times), would come into play in this prehistoric time period. Scholar Liu Qiyu pointed out that 'hua' and 'xia', pronounced the same way as [hwer] in today's Yantze Delta dialects, would mean for the original land of the Xia people under Lord Huangdi and later Lord Yu, a place validated to be southern Shanxi Prov, with three ancient bends of the Yellow River forming a U-shape loop. (In ancient times, Western Bend would be today's Eastern Bend.) Liu Qiyu located ancient Hua-shui River in southern Shanxi Prov and claimed that Huashan Mountain of Shenxi Prov was a name that was later appropriated.



The classification of early Chinese into two groups would be an oversimplification. Since issues still exist as to the sub-components that had comprised the two major groups of people, it would be a good generalization for the time being. The issues would be: i) how to explain the relationship of Chiyou vs Huangdi vs Yandi tribal groups; ii) how to explain the fact that dragon-totem Huangdi tribal group shared the same bird-totem as all those a) former cultures and b) latter Dong-yi people; iii) how to explain the fact that Chiyou's Jiu-li (Nine Li²) tribal group could have shared the ox-totem as Yandi tribal group; iv) how to dispute the claim that Huangdi tribal group might have origin in Altaic-speaking people (? wild claim) on the steppe; v) how to refute Scholar Wang Guowei's claim that dragon-totem Xia people dispersed to the

north and the west as two respective branches of Huns and Yuezhi after Shang Dynasty overthrew the Xia rule in Henan Prov; and vi) how to explain southern barbarians' adoption of dogs as a possible totem.

There had been speculations by someone called Qin Yanzhou in regards to Yandi, Huangdi and Chiyou. Qin Yanzhou claimed that the ox-totem Yandi tribal group had evolved from proto-Xi-Rong people in northwestern China and that the bird-totem (? simultaneously dragon-totem) Huangdi tribal group had evolved from proto-Bei-Di people in northern China. Qin Yanzhou also claimed that after the mix-up of Yandi/Huangdi tribal groups, they adopted 'dragon' as the totem (??? very speculative). Qin Yanzhou's wild speculations also claimed a direct relationship of those proto peoples to the excavated homo erectus in different areas of China, a physiological fallacy in light of the common knowledge that human beings came from *homo sapien sapien* instead. Qin Yanzhou had another flaw as far as reconciling the timing and history of San-Miao relocation to Gansu Prov during Lord Shun's reign is concerned.

Common-sense historians agreed that Proto-Xi-Rong people who remained in northwestern China would be later Qiang[1] and Di[1] (i.e., ancestors of Tibetan people) while proto-Bei-Di people who remained in northern China would be later steppe people like the Huns and Turks. Proto-Bei-Di people had been linked to later Altai-speaking people like Huns and Turks, while proto-Xi-Rong people would be Qiangic ancestors of Tibetans.

Scholar Luo Xianglin's Assertions

Scholar Luo Xianglin, in "*History of Chinese Nationalities*" (Chinese Culture Publishing Enterprise Co, Taipei, Taiwan, May 1953 edition), stated that ancient China possessed five tribal groups: Xia, Qiang, Di[1], Yi, and Man[2]. Per Luo Xianglin, Xia people first originated in Mt Minshan and upperstream River Min-jiang areas of Sichuan-Gansu provincial borderline. Xia people then split into two groups, with one going north to reach Wei-shui River and upperstream Han-shui River of Shenxi Prov and then east to Shanxi Prov by crossing the Yellow River.

The second group, per Luo Xianglin, went south to populate southern Chinese provinces as the 'Yue' people. Luo Xianglin's linking Yue people to Xia people was based on the common lexicon 'yue' which meant for excavated ancient "stone axe".

Luo Xianglin stated that five tribal groups of Xia, Qiang, Di[1], Yi, and Man[2] shared the same origin.

Discussions In Anthology *Hua Xia Civilization*

Scholar Gao Wei pointed out that the colored Pottery from Taosi Excavations of Longshan Culture in Xiangfen of Shanxi Prov, dated 2400-2500 BC approx, had shown a winding dragon. Should we use the dragon totem as a guide, then this place of excavation (i.e., southern Shanxi Prov) would be the original site of the early Xia people. (Chinese classics had mentioned two dragon-related clans, i.e., the Huan-long-shi clan during Lord Shun's reign and the Yu-long-shi clan during Xia Dynasty. Here, 'huan' meant for raising or husbandry, 'yu4' meant for driving or controlling, while 'long' meant for dragon.) As explained earlier, Longshan Culture excavations, like the preceding Yangshao Culture, had produced potteries with mostly bird totems, including a bird totem with the sun in the wing.

Longshan Culture, having interactions with bird-totem Dong-yi people to the southeast, could pose an academic challenge as to the nature of ethnicity. Consensus would be to treat the Longshan Culture as equivalent to Xia Dynasty and to equate Longshan people to the dragon-totem tribe under former Huangdi the Yellow Lord and latter Lord Yu. Should we deem the dragon-totem component as an outsider, then we could still claim the nativity of bird-totem component as the first-stage and accept the emergence of dragon-totem as the second-stage of the culture in this area. The safest bet would be to treat both bird-totem Yi people and dragon-totem Xia people as merely two parallel developing tribal group that shared the same origin. Xia people, per Liu Qiyu, later moved from Shanxi to Henan Prov to establish the dynasty of Xia, and Liu Qiyu validated the demise of Xia in Henan Prov by citing the ancient statement that 'Xia Dynasty ended when the Yi-shui and Luo-shui rivers ran dry'. Xia people certainly brought with them the important dragon totem, a mark that was later observed among the Huns of Mongolia and the Tungus of Manchuria for the thousands of years to come. This important totem also denote their continuous blood or tribal relationship.

Ancient records claimed that early legendary lords of Yao [Yao-di], Shun [Shun-di] and Yu [Yu-di] had prospered in different locations of central China at different stages: first Lord Yao (Tao-tang-shi) in southern Shanxi Prov, then

Lord Shun (You-yu-shi) in Henan-Shandong provinces, and lastly Lord Yu (Xia-hou-shi) in western Henan Prov. Hence, Tian Changyue compromised different views by stating that Xia people might have two tribes, with 1) father Gun developing in southern Shanxi Prov where they were previously subordinate to Lord Yao and 2) the son Lord Yu developing in western Henan Prov by means of an alliance with Lord Zhuanxu's tribe. Lord Yu, per Tian Changyue, adopted 'xuan yu' (i.e., black fish) as the totem while his father Gun continued with the dragon totem and Lord Yu's tribe would later absorb his father's native Xia people in southern Shanxi Prov. (The character 'Gun' was a combination of two words: black and fish. Senior scholar Wei Chu-Hsien pointed out that ancient Gun legends in "*Shan Hai Jing*" implied a possible migration of Gun people to American continents since Gun's body turned into 'huang xiong' [American Brown Bear] in the water.)

Burial Difference In Dragon-totem & Bird-totem Peoples

What could be confidently validated would be the burial difference in dragon-totem and bird-totem peoples. Studies of tomb burials from Yangshao and Longshan excavations, per Liu Qiyu, had disclosed two drastically different cultures, with the eastern China containing male-female joint burials while the western China merely single male burials. Liu Qiyu pointed out that the Xia people to the west had adopted the ancient 'concubine inheritance system', i.e., the successors of nobles or lords would take over the concubines and wives of their fathers and brothers instead of forcing those women to be buried alive with their late husbands. Hence, one more linkage, i.e., 'concubine inheritance system', exists to point to the Huns and Turks as the descendants of the Xia people.

Reconciliations For Peoples of Different Totems

Qin Yanzhou speculated that proto-Dong-Yi shared similar ancestry as proto-Bei-Di, while proto-Nan-Man shared similar ancestry as proto-Xi-Rong. Qin Yanzhou claimed that proto-Dong-Yi had come to eastern China from the steppe earlier than Huangdi's proto-Bei-Di people's relocation to northern China from the steppe (??? highly speculative !!! Read *Shi Zi's* statement in regards to deep eyesocket barbarians to the north of Huangdi for clarification). Qin Yanzhou's claim in regards to proto-Nan-Man's relationship to proto-Xi-Rong is close to related studies in regards to relationship between Nü-wa (Nü-wa-shi) around mid-Yangtze area and Fu-xi (Fu-xi-shi) in northern China, but both approaches had violated the historical claim that Nü-wa and Fu-xi had adopted the bird-

totem the same way as Eastern Yi people.

As a result of conversions and diversions of the said five tribal groups, any allusion to a pure totem distinction would be futile. Should any tribal group possess a totem from another another tribal group, it would doubtless be the result of conversion. <http://www.xslx.com/htm/shgc/zgls/2004-02-17-16092.htm>, in discussion of the ancient overlords Huangdi, Yandi & Chiyou and their wars, had attempted to sort out the tribal groups to no effect. (The merit of this discussion, in my viewpoint, would be the tracing of the origin of a common erroneous claim in regards to "nomadic" or "mobile" nature of Huangdi the Yellow Overlord, hence refuting derivative claim that Huangdi people had link to Altaic steppe people. Author Wang Xiansheng, in pointing out that Shang Dynasty's ancestor, i.e., King Wang-hai, was killed in the You-yi-guo territory while herding sheep and buffalo, with no mention of "horse raising" or "horseback warrior" whatsoever, concluded that Huangdi, who was hundred years earlier than Shang King Wang-hai, would not have anything to do with "horse raising" or "horseback warrior" of the steppe people.)

By citing the sentence of "relocating various groups of people and zoning the territories of the nation" inside "Section On Xia Lord Yu" in Sima Qian's *Historian's Records*, Scholar Luo Xianglin attributed the i) flooding at the end of Stone Age and ii) Xia people's "quelling floods" activities to the initial migrations and dispositions of five ancient tribal groups. That is how the ancient designations like "zhong [central] xia", "hua [flowery] xia", "zhu [various] xia" and "qu[different?] xia" came about. In Luo Xianglin's viewpoint, four other tribal groups of Qiang, Di[1], Yi, and Man[2] went through a process of conversion and diversion with Xia people. In the west, Qiangic people spread across Tibet-Qinghai-Sichuan-Gansu-Shenxi provinces to become Xi-Rong & Xi-Qiang; in the east, Yi [meaning the people with bows semantically] spread across Jiangsu-Anhui-Shandong-Henan-Hebei-Manchuria to become Dong-Yi; in the south, Man[2] spread across Hubei-Hunan-Jiangxi-Guizhou-Guangxi-Fujian-Zhejiang to become Nan-Man; and in the north, Di[1] spread across Xinjiang-Ningxia-Mongolia-Shanxi-Hebei provinces to become Bei-Di. Here, Xi-Rong or Western Rong meant for later Rong people (Sino-Tibetan speaking Qiangic people) in northwestern China, Bei-Di or Northern Di meant for later northern Di[2] people, Dong-Yi or Eastern Yi people meant for later Yi people in the east, and Nan-Man or Southern Man² meant for the southern barbarians.

Note that Scholar Wang Zhonghan cited "*Guan-zi*" in stating that it would be around the middle of Warring States time period that Qi Principality editors adopted the terms of four barbarians as might have existed at the time of Guan-zi [Guan Zhong] of Spring & Autumn time period. Any four directional designations earlier than the Warring States time period of Eastern Zhou Dynasty would be merely for sake of differentiating among proto barbarians.

Legends Of Yellow Lord vs Fiery Lord

Chinese classics, per Sima Qian's "*Shi Ji*", claimed that early Chinese overlords were of same heritage. Yandi (Fiery Lord) was said to have been born in Lixiang, east of the Yellow River, and he was known as Li-shan-shi by the name of Lixiang. (Alternatively speaking, Yandi was said to have been born or had grown up on the bank of ancient Jiang-shui River, while Jiang-shui, should it be treated the same as Qiang-shui River, would be commonly known as Bai-he [white river, i.e., ancient Bailongjiang or White Dragon River] in Qinghai Prov to the west. The legend of "Yandi's mother being impregnated by a dragon-faced spirit in Hua-yang [south of Mt Huashan ?], however, pointed to a different locality for conception.) Huangdi (Yellow Overlord) were said to be born in eastern China, somewhere close to Shandong Peninsula. (However, Huangdi's tribe might very well had originated from the west and migrated to the east because the Yangshao Culture of the Yellow River was dated older than the Longshan Culture in Shandong Peninsula. It would be in Zhuolu area of today's Hebei Prov that Huangdi tribe had engaged in wars against Chiyou tribe, albeit omitting any possible encounter with Tai-hao-shi and Shao-hao-shi people who were said to be orthodox people of the east.) Yandi and Huangdi had origin in the land of the Yi people to the east, in or near today's Shandong Province. For simplicity's sake, I would have no choice but to lock down the birthplaces of Yandi and Huangdi as the points of origin.

Yandi and Huangdi, said to be sons of Shaodian tribe, should be considered brotherly tribes or tribes with close bloodline ties. Yandi, the ancestor of Qiangic and Tibetan people, had their offshoots reaching as far south as today's Yunnan Prov of Southwestern China, i.e., the seat of Nan-zhao and Da-li statelets. Today's Yi-zhu and Bai-zhu minorities in the Southwest could be traced to ancient Di[1]-Qiang[2] people who migrated southward along the Hengduan Mountain Range. Ancient Di[1]-Qiang[2] people had much greater

influence in ancient China than people could imagine: They were commented to have also shared genetical similarity with ancient Jomon people in Japan, i.e., ancestors of Ainu.

Yandi, Huangdi, and Lord Zhuangxi were recorded to have treated Qufu of Shandong as the capital. (Qufu was considered to be the statelet of Da-ting-shi clan.) Lord Zhuangxi later relocated to Shangqiu of Henan Prov.

Ban Gu commented that Yandi (Fiery Lord) was entitled Shen-nong-shi (Shen Nong Shi) for his teachings of agriculture to the people: Shen-Nong was said to have invented the plough and mastered the Chinese herbal medicines. Yandi was said to be born near the ancient Jiang-shui River and hence named Jiang. (The surname of 'jiang', similar to Huangdi's surname of 'ji', carries the female denotation in the character parts, which originally meant for the matrilineal or matriarchal tribal affiliations.) Yandi was also known as Lieshan-shi, which was a name with patrilineal or patriarchal tribal affiliation. The birthplace was in later Li-guo fief. Yandi relocated to later Chen-guo fief and Lu-guo fief (Qufu, Shandong, on Shandong Peninsula), consecutively. Yandi possessed the head in the shape of an ox and could be considered semi-god & semi-human. Yandi was embodiment of the virtue of 'fire' in Chinese metaphysics. "*Guo Yu*" stated that both Yandi and Huangdi were sons of Shaodian Tribe. The reconciliation here will be to treat Shen-nong as a titular title, not a specific person, and to treat Shaodian as a tribal group. This is because the matrilineal affiliated name of Yandi ('jiang') and the matrilineal affiliated name of Huangdi ('ji') could also hint two separate women as their both mothers. Shang people, starting from ancestor Xie, had adopted patrilineal lineages, as validated by Shang's oracle bones. (Huns and Turks had retained the custom of matrilineal affiliated surnames much longer: The Founder of Hunnic Han Dynasty, Liu Yuan, was a good example of having retained the family name of 'Liu' from the Han Dynasty princesses, and the Ashina Turk had obtained the surname from their mother as well.)

According to Sima Qian, Lord Huangdi (i.e., Yellow Lord, l. 2697 - 2599 BC?) was the son of Shaodian tribe. Ancient sovereigns carried the character 'di4' as equivalent to overlords. (Note that the prevalent designation of 'Yellow Emperor' is semantically erroneous since the title 'emperor' did not get coined till Qin's First Emperor Shihuangdi.) Huangdi or Yellow Lord was born at Shouqiu, to the northeast of today's Qufu, Shandong Province (i.e., ancient Yanzhou

Prefecture). Huangdi's last name is Gongsun, and it was renamed to Ji(1) while growing up on the bank of ancient Ji-shui River. He was also known as Xuanyuan by the name of Xuanyuan Mountain. (Xuanyuan-shi, also interpreted as the radius grooves or shafts of the carts, would be a patrilineal tribal affiliation to mean that Huangdi had invented compass and chariots etc. Guo Moruo, however, claimed that 'xuanyuan' could denote some kind of three-leg turtle that would mutate into later lizard and dragon totems.) Lord Yandi (Fiery Lord) was in charge of China prior to the emergence of Huangdi (Yellow Lord). Since Yandi's descendants (i.e., Yu-mang or Ru-Wan) could not control the tribes and the central plains, Lord Huangdi organized his army and took the place of Shennong-shi after fighting three wars against the Yandi Tribe. Lord Huangdi defeated Lord Yandi's tribe in a place called Banquan, and hence replaced Shen-nong-shi as the overlord of then China. Huangdi was the embodiment of the virtue of 'earth' in Chinese metaphysics, and the character 'huang' meant for the yellow color of the earth, not the color of hair. ("Racial approach" experts - Don't get wrong ! Arnold J. Toynbee, in 1910s, already refuted the racial approach to the origin of civilizations.) Since Huangdi was the embodiment of earth, later Toba (Tuoba or Topa) people, who claimed descent from one of the Huangdi's sons, adopted the 'tu' (i.e., 'tuo' for mud or earth) and 'ba' (a northern dialect meaning descendant') as their clan name.

Huangdi's country was entitled You-xiong-shi, i.e., bear country (a place near today's Xinzheng of Henan Province), a name also interpreted as Huangdi's husbandry endeavors. (*Zuo Zhuan* stated that Huangdi was also named Di-hong-shi. You-xiong-shi, Di-hong-shi or Xuanyuan-shi were alternative paternal tribal titular names, while the name of 'Ji' meant the matrilineal tribal affiliations.) Lord Huangdi had 25 sons, among whom 14 had established their own family names. Two elder sons, Changyi and Xuanxiao, were both conferred the land in the west, i.e., today's Sichuan Province. One of the sons born with Huangdi's Wife Leizu is called Changyi. Changyi was conferred the land in Sichuan Province, by the ancient Ruo-shui River, and Changyi's son, named Gaoyang, is Lord Zhuanxu (l. BC 2514 - 2437 ?).

Huangdi's Ethnicity

Prof Wei Chu-Hsien cited ancient classics "*Shi-zi*" (approx 338 BC works) in authenticating the ethnicity about ancient barbarians in four directions: Guan-xiong-guo in the south, Chang-gu-guo (Chang-gong? long arm) in the west, Shen-mu-guo (deep eye socket) in the north, and Yuhu and Yujing as east-sea

and north-sea seagods. Here, I will, once and for all, settle the issues in regards to Huangdi or the Yellow Overlord, i.e., i) semantic error in translating the overlord for 'di4' into emperor; ii) appropriation in attaching Caucasian tag to Huangdi. I will use *Shi-zi's* record of deep eye socket people to the north of Huangdi as a corroboration that Huangdi people were not of deep-socket eyes at all. Furthermore, I had expounded the ethnic nature of various Rong people in the hun.htm section and cleared the dispute in regards to the ethnicity of 'Rong' people as merely Sino-Tibetan Qiangic peoples.

Among ill-intended claims as to non-Mongoloid origin of Chinese civilization, apparently deviations of the "racial approach" in regards to the origin of civilization, there were claims about Linzi DNA analysis. I have already observed some wild claims, including 1) Qi Principality on Shandong Peninsula must be non-Chinese since DNA studies of Shandong remains had implication of maybe 'Caucasoid', 2) Confucius must be a Caucasian as a result of his birthplace in Shandong, and 3) Huangdi the Yellow Overlord must be a Caucasian because of the yellow designation.

<http://mbe.oupjournals.org/cgi/content/abstract/20/2/214> carried an article about the new research paper by Society for Molecular Biology and Evolution, claiming that "The reanalysis of two previously published ancient mtDNA population data sets from Linzi (same province) then indicates that the ancient populations had features in common with the modern populations from south China rather than any specific affinity to the European mtDNA pool". (Prof Wei Chu-Hsien, in *China & America*, had research into 'bat cave' drawings on Taiwan Island and concluded that ancient Taiwan aboriginals had migrated there from coastal China.)

Comment In Regards To 'Xing' (Surname) & Shi (clan name)

Ancient Chinese overlords possessed 'Xing4' (Surname), a word meaning 'born by a woman'. Huangdi's Ji1 surname and Yandi's Jiang3 surname are good examples. Chinese surnames used to carry female character part to denote the maternal tribal affiliations. The descendants or vassals enjoyed the so-called 'family name' of Shi4 (clan name), i.e., patrilineal tribal titular names. It would be during the Han Dynasty that Chinese mixed up surnames and clan names for designating the 'last name' in modern sense. One good example about this intricacy would be the name of Jiang Taigong the counsellor for Zhou King Wenwang. Jiang Taigong was called Lü Shang of Lü-shi clan or Jiang Ziya with Jiang surname.

Huangdi's Wars With Chiyou & Yandi, Respectively

When Huangdi was in regency, he had 83 Chiyou brothers in his court. Since the Chiyou brothers were very cruel to people, Xuanyuan or Huangdi (the Yellow Lord) fought 73 successive battles against Chi-u (Ciyou), the leader of Jiuli tribe. Jiuli, i.e., nine 'li' people, were considered a group of Yi people.

Some advocates for southern aboriginals claimed that Chiyou (Chi-u) belonged to southern Chinese who descended from the Liangzhu Culture and that southerners had expanded into Hebei areas of northern China, instead. Qin Yanzhou speculated: that Jiuli was an alliance of ox-totem southern proto-Nan-Man people and bird-totem eastern proto-Dong-Yi people; that after Jiuli's defeat, proto-Nan-Man people evolved into San-Miao people; that proto-Dong-Yi inter-married with Lord Zhuaxu's tribe into later ancestors of Chu-Qin-Zhao statelets; and that proto-Dong-Yi inter-married with Lord Diku's tribe into later Shang people. Qin Yanzhou further divided the San-Miao into Dong-yue (Eastern Yue or She-tribe) in the Southeast, Yao-tribe in the South and Wuling-man barbarians (Miao tribe) in the Southwest. Qin Yanxhou classified Nan-yue (Southern Yue people) and today's Zhuang-tribe of Guangxi/Yunnan provinces as a mixture between Mongolians and Malays. Note Qin Yanzhou's speculation is not supported by either written classics or archaeology. In [Vietnamese & Southerners](#), I had expounded the compositions of Hundred Pu People and Hundred Yue People.

Chiyou As The Cultivator Of Original Chinese Civilization

<http://www.hmongcenter.org/inonkinchipa.html> had a good account of Chiyou's contributions to the original Chinese civilization. It cited Historian Fan Wenlan's research in saying that "Huang-Di's tribes were living an unsteady nomadic (??? historically erroneous deduction) life in Zhuolu area when Chi You realized the unification of agricultural tribes and founded the Nine-Li State" along the Yangtze River and Huai-shui River. It stated that "Chi You was the first to create weapons, penal laws and a religion, which not just played an important pole in the development of Chinese culture and technology, but ushered in a new epoch for the Chinese nation to enter a civilized era." It validated the influence of Chiyou as an overlord of then China by citing the fact (as recorded by Sima Qian's *Shi Ji*) that "Huang Di and the following monarchs respected Chi You as Fight God after his death. ... Huang Di used Chi You's image to threaten those who wouldn't obey him. Thus Huang Di and his people

took Chi You for a god to protecting themselves and had respect for him." (Per Fan Wenlan, Chiyou possessed 9 tribes, with nine sub-tribes each, totalling 81 tribes, and that is how the 81 Chiyou brothers came to be known in Sima Qian's *Shi Ji*.) Apparently, Chiyou, being an overlord of then China, was an adversary of Huangdi, not a vassal serving Huangdi. History could have been just revised by the victor.

Huangdi's Rise To Power

The Yellow Lord was said to have cut off Chiyou's head in a battle in which the Yellow Lord used six kinds of animals (possibly six tribes using animal as totems) and most importantly, compass. The battleground was called Zhuolu, near today's Zhuozhou of Hebei Province. Zhuolu Mountain would be where Huangdi's new capital was before he moved to the west. (In today's Zhuozhou, three statues of Huangdi, Yandi and Chiyou could be seen.)

Huangdi further drove off the ancient 'Xunyu' barbarians in the north, reached Gansu Province in the west, and climbed Mount Xiongshan on the Yantze River bank in the south. The domain of his grandson, Lord Zhuangxiu, reached Jiaozhi, today's Guangdong-Guangxi bordering Vietnam.

Both Yellow Lord and the Fiery Lord are in fact titular names of the two tribal leaders since nobody could live for hundreds of years and fought 73 successive battles. When Confucius' student, Zai, asked whether Huangdi was a human or a god, Confucius replied, "Huangdi was considered 300 years old because Huangdi lived for one hundred years (111 years to be exact), Huangdi's death was revered by people for one hundred years, and Huangdi's teachings were utilized by people for one hundred years." (Zeng Guangdong, at regenerating-universe.org/Chain_of_DNA.htm, speculated that "the so called years might have been the cycles of moon ... It was during the rein of Di Yau [Lord Yao] that the calendar was adjusted to 365 days for one year and the times of seasons were fixed for agricultural purposes.")

Restrictive Definition of Hua (Huaxia) vs Yi

Confusions abound here in that many legendary figures carry multiple names or multiple identifies are made onto one single person. While Sima Qian had analyzed ancient classics to make sense of legends, there existed books like

"*San Hai Jing*" which further mystified ancient Chinese. Myths and legends varied. For example, Yumang (Yuwang), descendent of Shin-nong (Hua-mingled or 'sinicized'), was said to be the twin brother of Xuanyuan the Yellow Lord. Korean nationalist point of view claimed that So-jeon (Shao Dian) was said to be same as Shen-nong the Divine Farmer, a sinicized Yi. The Korean viewpoint certainly had its bias in that it tried to polarize the Hua vs Yi for sake of asserting the predominance of the Yi over the Hua people.

http://www.clas.berkeley.edu/~korea/Nat'nalist_Chronology.html further claimed that in 3528 BC, "the Dongyi people annexed territory held by Hua chieftain Zhuiren". During the Dongyi reign of 2707 BC-2598 BC, Yumang (Yuwang), descendent of Shin-nong (apparently Hua-mingled or 'sinicized'), "tried to reach the coast by military means", but the Dongyi army "crushed them and occupied their capital, Gongsang (Kongsang, in present Shandong)".

Origin of Xia

Today's Chinese would believe that the Hua People will be those agricultural settlers in the Yellow River area, with a claim that Yandi (Fiery Lord) or Shen-nong the Divine Farmer (approx. 3168 BC) was their ancestor. Though 'Hua', 'Huaxia' or 'Xia' had been generalized as the embodiment of orthodox Chinese who had descended from Yandi-Huangdi lineages, the actual term did not come about till Lord Yu's time, that is, several hundred years after Huangdi's times.

The name 'Xia' came from the title of Count Xia that Lord Yu received from Lord Yao as a conferral, i.e., the fief in Yangdi (a place in dispute as to Henan or Shanxi Prov). (Scholar Fu Sinian studied the bronze inscriptions, i.e., *jin wen*, from Zhou times and concluded that the ancient five rankings of duke, marquis, count, viscount, and baron did not conform with bronze inscriptions or classics such as *Shang Shu* or *Shi Jing*. Fu Sinian stated that duke [gong], count [bo], viscount [zi], and baron [nan] were originally used within a royal family as rankings; governmentally, 'bo' or count was the leader of a conferred fief while 'hou' or marquis was for denoting the vassal guarding border posts.)

Liu Qiyu pointed out that after the demise of Xia, whoever stayed in Shanxi/Shenxi provinces continued to call themselves 'Xia' people. First Zhou King Wenwang eulogized the eastward flow of Feng-shui River as Lord Yu's accomplishment, and numerous Zhou Dynasty records stated that they were descendants of Xia Dynasty founder Lord Yu. Wei Principality, who inherited southernmost Jinn land of southern Shanxi Prov, described themselves as riding

in Xia-chariots and claiming to be Xia King. A Qin Principality official also denoted himself as Xia-zi or son of Xia people because his mother was a Qin-ren or Qin people. In ancient classics, during south-north dynasties, occasional usage of the word 'Xia-ren' (i.e., the Xia people), had been adopted for differentiating the Chinese of Sichuan Prov from the barbarians there.

Ancient classics, like "*Zhan Guo Ce*", "*Shuo Wen*", "*Han Shu*", paraphrased 'Xia' as meaning the central statelet. "*Zhuang-zi*", in the section on *Tian Di Bian* (i.e., heaven and earth), would mention a dialogue between Zhunmang and Yuanfeng in regards to Zhuangmang's sailing into East Sea and polarized zhongguo (central statelet) and 'si hai' (four seas). Xu Hao, in comments on "*Shuo Wen*", stated that Yi-di barbarians began to invade China at the times of Xia people and that then Chinese were hence named Xia-ren or Xia people. Liu Qiyu listed similar parallel antagonism of 'ji-zhou' and 'si hai' in "*Chu Ci*" (Chu Principality Poems) and "*Huai Nan Zi*" to validate the exact location of the land of 'Xia' as equivalent to ancient 'ji-zhou' prefecture, i.e., southern Shanxi Prov. Similarly, Liu Qiyu cited similar parallel antagonism of 'zhongguo' (central statelet) versus 'si yi' (four groups of barbarians) in "*Zuo Zhuan*" for same sense interpretation.

The pilgrimage or oblation temples for Huangdi and Yandi were often set up in different parts of the country, which had obscured the real origin of both Yandi and Huangdi. In Hubei Province, a forest area bearing the name of Fiery Lord, i.e., Shen-nong-jia, exists today. The ox-totem Yandi tribal group embodied the transformation of husbandry to agriculture. Archaeologists in Hunan-Hubei areas firmly believe that Yandi's oblation temple there had proven that Yandi had origin around the middle Yangtze River area. In Shaanxi Province, Huangdi pilgrimage has been in existence since ancient times.

<http://www.hmongcenter.org/inonkinchipa.html> stated: i) that Mt Qiong-shan, i.e., Arch Mountain, named to Mt. Qiao-shan by Sima Qian in *Shi Ji*, was where Huangdi's real tomb located; ii) that in A.D. 936, Emperor Shi Jintang [Shi Jingtang] of Posterior Jinn Dynasty "gave sixteen counties [prefectures] in the north to Qidan Kingdom, and the Bridge Mountain in Zhuolu was included... Qidan ... Liao ... Emperor Shang Zong had Huang Di temple built for worship in A.D. 995; and iii) that ... the emperor of the North Song Dynasty ... angry, ... he ordered to build another Huang Di temple in Shenxi thousands of *li* away from the Bridge Mountain. (Note that only at the converge of the three tribal groups, i.e., Zhuolu or Zhuozhou of Hebei Prov, "Huang Di City, Yan Di City and Chi You City" could all be found in the same place.)

After analyzing the following, alternative conclusions could be reached for the prehistoric Chinese. That is, ancient Chinese had been mixture of peoples from the northwest, north, south and east. The two major groups would be the dragon-totem Xia people and bird-totem Yi people. The two totems, i.e., dragon and phoenix, had become China's national treasures and symbols after two groups of people mixed up with each other during the course of history. It is not a simple matter of descending from Yandi and Huangdi alone.

Who Were The Yi People

Yi, a word meaning the people with bows semantically, had spread across Jiangsu-Anhui-Shandong-Henan-Hebei-Manchuria to become Dong-Yi per Luo Xianglin. Yi-people were noted for their bird-totem which had its imprints in excavations from Liangzhu Culture 7000 years ago, and Yangshao/Longshan Cultures 4000-5000 years ago. Yi people's totem should be considered the mainstream of Chinese civilization should we examine the domain of the Yi people to find out that it was much larger than the southern Shanxi Prov where the Xia people originally dwelled.

Lord Shun (l. 2257 - 2208 BC ?) was said to be a Dong-yi, but he also could be traced to the same family as Huangdi. The big family lineage is apparent. Lord Shun was considered more of 'Yi' because he was born near Mount Yaoqiu, near Yuyao of Zhejiang Province in Yangtze Delta. Zhou Chu's *Feng Tu Ji* (Records of Winds and Soils), further commented that Lord Shun was a Dongyi. Later Shang Dynasty people took pride in Lord Shun being their ancestors. According to Sima Qian's *Shi Ji*, the ancestor of the Shang people was named Xie, a son of Lord Diku (l. BC 2436 - 2367 ?). Legend said that Xie was born after his mother, Jiandi (Yousong-shi woman, a statelet located in Yuncheng of Shanxi Prov), swallowed an egg of a black bird (swallow). Fourteen generation descendant would be Tang (Shang-Tang), the founder of Shang Dynasty.

The 'Dong-yi' designation, in my opinion, came into the stage much later than the 'Five Di' time period. Scholar Wang Zhonghan cited "*Guan-zi*" in stating that it would be around the middle of Warring States time period that Qi Principality editors adopted the terms of four barbarians as might have existed at the time of Guan-zi [Guan Zhong] of Spring & Autumn time period of Eastern Zhou Dynasty.

The Yi people, i.e., descendants of Tai-hao-shi & Shao-hao-shi, did not identify themselves during the fighting between Huangdi and Chiyou. It is possible that Chiyou's 9 tribal groups or 81 tribes had included the 'Yi' people. Generations later, Lord Shun (reign 2257-2208 BC ?) suggested to Lord Yao to have Gun (Lord Yu's father) executed on Mount Yu-shan (feather mountain, in today's Linyi County, Shandong Prov) for creating detente onto the 'Yi' barbarians. However, Lord Shun himself was said to be a 'Dong-yi' (i.e., Eastern Yi). Yi people, i.e., originally meant for the people to the east, for sure played the role of at least 50% influence in prehistoric China. After Lord Shun would be Lord Yu. As pointed out by scholar Zhang Fan in his article, "*Reserach Into Shang Totems and Confucius Ancestry*", Lord Yu, per "*Mo-zi*", had spread teachings to nine Yi people in the east. (See Xia-Shang Dynasties for details on the numerous Eastern Yi groups, including: Quan-yi [doggy Yi], Yu-yi, Fang-yi, Huang-yi [yellow Yi], Chi-yi [red Yi], Bai-yi [white Yi], Xuan-yi [black Yi], Feng-yi [phoenix Yi], Zi-yi, and Yang-yi [sun Yi] etc.) Scholar Wang Zhonghan pointed out that the character 'Yi', having appeared as Shi-fang statelet in Shang Dynasty's oracle bones, would still exist in Shangdong-Jiangsu provinces and around Huai-shui River by late Spring & Autumn time period of Eastern Zhou Dynasty. Wang Zhonghan, after analyzing the wars between Zhou people and numerous Yi people, had concluded that "Eastern Yi" [in Shandong Peninsula] had declined as a result of expeditions by Duke Zhou-gong and King Cheng-wang in early Western Zhou time period; that "Huai-yi" [around Huai-shui River] emerged from middle to late time periods of Western Zhou Dynasty; that "Nan-yi" [in southern or southeastern direction] rose up in influence at time of Zhou King Liwang; and that by the time of Qin-Han Dynasty, 'Dong-yi' would be designation for people in northeastern China, including Korea and Japan.

Restricted Definition Of Hua-xia People

As scholar Liu Qiyu pointed out, 'hua' and 'xia', pronounced the same way as [hwer] in Yantze Delta dialects, would mean for the group of people dwelling to the north of the ancient South Yellow River Bend and to the east of the ancient West Yellow River Bend. (Ancient West Yellow River Bend is the same as today's East Yellow River Bend. Ancient Yellow River Bend did not equate to today's inverse U-shaped course with the North Bend lying inside Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, but the U-shaped Bend with South Bend in southern Shanxi Prov and then a south-to-north turn in Hebei Province for exit into the sea.) Liu Qiyu's dissertation proposed the opposite movement of the Xia people,

i.e., that the Xia people, the direct descendants of Huangdi with dragon totem, originally dwelled in southern Shanxi Province and then expanded eastward and southward, across the South Bend, to today's Henan Province. Xia people, under Qi (Lord Yu's son), defeated the You-hu-shi Dong-yi people, built cities and capital in Henan Prov, endured power struggles with Dong-yi people under Hou-yi and Han-zhuo, and stayed in Henan Prov for hundreds of years till Shang-tang's group of Dong-yi people expelled them. After Shang Dynasty overthrew Xia, remnant Xia people fled northward and westward, and majority of them returned to their ancestral home in southern Shanxi Prov. Some of those Xia people who fled northward and westward would become the Yuezhi in the west and the Huns in the north per scholar Wang Guowei. (Note that Wang Guowei's speculation as to Yuezhi would throw the discussion into an ethnicity dispute unless we discount the excavated Indo-European mummies of Xinjiang as belonging to the Yuezhi. In the paragraph on [Rong's Possible Link To Qiangic People](#), I detailed the compositions of the Rong to derive a good conclusion that some of the Rongs at the time of Zhou Dynasty could be of Qiangic and Rong people in the west shared the same blood-line with Xia Chinese but differed in 'Culture' such as cuisine, clothing, money and language.)

The Hua people, similarly, would also imply a more restrictive meaning for the people that would be called Xirong or the Western Rong nomads. Lord Yu (r. BC 2204-2195 ?) or Da Yu, a descendant of Huangdi, was said to be a so-called 'Xi-yi Ren' (western alien) because he had origin or birth in the land of the Xirong (Western Rong) and/or Xi Qiang peoples. Scholar Liu Qiyu further tackled the issue of 'xi' or west. His validations pointed to the land of 'he qu' (i.e., the inflexion point of the Yellow River Bends) as the 'land of the west', i.e, later land between Qin and Jinn principalities. He also validated the ancient Chinese prefecture of 'ji-zhou' as equivalent to the ancient term 'zhong-guo' for China, and listed multiple ancient classics to lock down the land of original China as being the domain of southern Shanxi Prov. (Liu Qiyu pointed out that original places for Taiyuan and Jinyang etc would be in southern Shanxi Province and that they did not get appropriated to northern Shanxi Prov until after Jinn Lord Daogong quelled various 'Di2' statelets in the north. Liu Qiyu further stated that after the split of Jinn into Haan-Zhao-Wei principalities, southernmost Wei statelet got the privilege to be called Jinn due to the fact that Jinn historically inherited the ancient Xia land that was termed 'ji-zhou' the Ji4 prefecture or 'zhong-guo' the central statelet.)

On the West Yellow River Bend, there was the ancient Xiazhou Prefecture which still bears the ancient name of 'Xia'. Today, it is called 'Ning-xia Autonomous Region, with the character 'xia' embedded inside. Similar to the Hua-shan Mountain appropriation, the name Xia would have been appropriated by later peoples due to the historical linkage of Xia people. Later, the Huns at once set up a kingdom called 'Xia' (AD 407-431), and the Tanguts proclaimed their Da Xia, i.e. Xixia or Western Xia Dynasty (AD 1032-1227) in the same place. (Xia was also the Chinese name for Bactria. Wang Guowei speculated that Yuezhi people, after their defeat in the hands of Huns, fled to Bactria to found a similar 'xia' kingdom and that even the later 'Tu-huo-luo' kingdom of Afghanistan could be a mutation of the ancient pronunciation for 'da xia'. I expounded on Wang Guowei's blunder in the hun.htm section. Note that Bactria existed at the time of Alexandre Invasion which was before the Yuezhi migrated to the west.) From this perspective, we could say that the 'Hua' or 'Xia' designation would be more of barbarian nature in the west than the later Shang Chinese who belonged to the 'Yi' people.

The playgrounds for the Yi and Hua peoples are quite extensive. In contrast with the map which usually depicted the Yellow River and Shandong Peninsula as the domain for ancient Chinese, there are convincing stories that ancient Chinese had expanded towards both south and west. Huangdi married woman from the west (i.e., Xi Ling Nü); Huangdi climbed Mount Xiongshan on the Yangtze bank; Huangdi married his sons with women from Sichuan Province. Huangdi's grandson, Lord Zhuangxiu, had his influence reaching Jiaozhi, today's Guangdong-Guangxi provinces bordering Vietnam. Yu the Great controlled the floods as far as the Yangtze Delta, and in today's Zhejiang Province there still existed a monument in honor of him. Lord Yü was recorded to have opened the Longmen Gorge for the Yellow River to flow down, and he was also responsible for repairing nine rivers in the lower plains where the Yellow River converged into the sea. There was an ancient claim that during Song Dynasty, Kuaiji people, when rebuilding the Yu Pilgrimage, dug up some one hundred pieces of jade articles ('Gui') that were considered instruments of power conferrals for vassals. Kuaijishan Mountain would be where Yu convened the vassals. Lord Yu was buried on Kuaijishan Mountain, in today's Shaoxing, Zhejiang Province, after he toured the area and passed away. Also evident would be the peaks of Lady Xiang-jun on the Yangtze River in today's Hunan Province, said to an embodiment of the wife of Lord Shun, a Yi tribal leader. Lord Shun died in the land of Cangwu, a place in today's Guangxi, near Gungdong border, and was

buried on Mount Qiuyishan, Ningyuan County of Hunan Province. The ancestors of later Qin Empire had migrated to Shaanxi-Gansu from the traditional Dong Yi ground of Shandong Province. Today's Chinese, without distinction, would usually call themselves the descendants of Yan-Huang, namely, Fiery Lord and Yellow Lord, while not acknowledging that the Yi people might have comprised a much larger percentage of the original Chinese.

Comment In Regards To 'Dong-yi' & 'Xi-yi'

History annals claim that Lord Shun was a Dong-yi and that Lord Yu was a Xi-yi. This could be interpreted as an ancient conventional way of 'birthplace naming'. For thousands of years, Chinese used to claim ancestry place as their point of origin. This applies to Hakka people who, having dwelled in southern China for over one thousand year, still claimed northern Chinese prefectures as their point of origin. As a result of ancient Chinese ancestor worshipping, Chinese clans present a unique way of identification of surnames and Gene-tree Y-chromosome. Should we interpret 'Dong-yi' & 'Xi-yi' in this perspective, then there would be no dispute as to Lord Shun and Lord Yu sharing the same lineage and heritage as Huangdi the Yellow Lord. Zeng Guangdong, at regenerating-universe.org/Chain_of_DNA.htm, traced his Zeng heritage to Lord Huangdi by stating that "The name of our clan, Zeng, may be traced to the time when Emperor Shao Kang of Xia Dynasty created his second son Prince Qu Lie [as] the ruler of the State of Zeng ... about 1850 BC ... In the 6th year of Duke Siang [lord or Marquis Siang: common mistake in attributing clan title of gong to duke instead of grandpa] of the State of Lu, ... 567 BC... the Zeng State was plundered and destroyed by the State of Ju. The Prince of Zeng named Wu fled to the State of Lu and remained there in the service of Lu. He dropped the [ear] part (which denotes the domain) from our surname Zeng. This was the beginning of our surname becoming Zeng without the domain in the script, and it remains ever since. Four generations from Wu came Xi alias Dian ... and the 5th was the "Sage of Source", namely Zengcius or Zeng San. Both father and son were students of Confucius, thus our family shines ever since ... "

Big Korea Nation School of Thought

The Yi People of early times would occupy a much wider space extending to the Korean Peninsula in the east and Lake Baykal in the west, and the Amur in the north and the Yangtze in the south, according to a "grand" viewpoint from the Big Korea Nation school of thought, http://www.clas.berkeley.edu/~korea/Nat'nalist_Chronology.html. The "grand"

Korean viewpoint (against a so-called stereotyped image of "meekness, subjugation, and servility" associated with Koreans) would single out the Koreans and other Altaic-speaking people, like Jurchens (Manchus) and Mongols etc, as the representative of Yi People.

This is only one contesting school of thought and we will examine the identities of Koreans in a different section. The language family "Altaic" is a much later concept, devised by some Russian colonialists in the 20th century; in history, we have today's French, descendants of the Barbarian Franks, speaking the Latin family while Rome was already gone with Lingua Latina, an example that language does not determine origin and ethnicity. Koreans themselves would be retreating towards Manchuria and the Korean Peninsula in later Zhou Dynasty to become the orthodox representatives of the Dongyi people. Their affinity with continental Yi people would probably be shown in the fact that the ancient Koreans knew the water route and the back door to the Shandong peninsula, across the Bohai Bay, similar to the Japanese pirates who knew the secrets of navigating along the Chinese coasts. The Korean language, belonging to the so-called Altaic language family against the Sino-Tibetan language family of the Chinese, however, could be a later phenomenon. Ancient Korea was invaded by Puyo and Koguryo peoples, i.e., nomadic tribes from Manchuria. Ji-zi's Choson and Wei Man's Korea could very well be different from later Koguryo as far as language / speech is concerned. Archaic Korean language had already disappeared in Korea, but it was said to have retained some elements in Japanese language. Charcoal remains of 2000-year-old rice in western Japan pointed to China's Yantze Delta as the origin. DNA studies conducted on human remains excavated in Shandong Peninsula (<http://www.journals.uchicago.edu/AJHG/journal/issues/v64n1/980634/980634.html>) suggested southern and northern points of origin for Jomon and Yayoi Japanese. On basis of various historical records and modern technology analysis, I would speculate i) that early Korean culture was very much connected with eastern China as a result of nascent human migration from south to north and ii) that Tungusic invasions from Manchuria gradually overtook the early Continental traits. Koguryo, a Tungusic people, claimed descent from ancient Lord Zhuanyu (Gao-yang-shi, l. 2514 - 2437 ?) and adopted the surname of 'Gao' (i.e., 'Ko') as their clan name. In both cases, Tungusic or continental, Koreans shared inseparable relations with the Chinese.

In Shang, we discussed the ancient Chinese record stating that Shang Prince Ji-

zi was dispatched to southern Manchuria as a ruler of old Choson.

http://socrates.berkeley.edu/~korea/Old_1.html, states that "in 1122 BC (note different calendar was used here), there was an alleged arrival of Kija from Shang China." Chinese chronicles recorded that the Archduke of Zhou Dynasty sent prince Ji-zi of ex-Shang Dynasty to the Korean Peninsula as a ruler, in a sense that Zhou tried to have ancient Korea contained in the larger Chinese sphere. Prince Ji-zi's kingdom was said to have continued for 41 generations, till Korean King Ji Zhun was usurped by an invader from the Yan Principality during the turmoil years of the Qin Empire demise. Ji-zi was the uncle of last Shang ruler, Shang King Zhouwang. <http://www.koreanhistoryproject.org/> proposed a different story, namely, the Ji-zi exodus happened during the first campaign of Zhou King Wuwang, sometime before Zhou overthrew the Shang rule. It said that the group of people who migrated to Korea would be about 5000 in total. Ancient records show that Ji-zi was imprisoned by last Shang King Zhouwang and would not be set free till Zhou King Wuwang took over the Shang capital. Ji-zi exodus must have occurred after Shang's demise.

(The Korean school of thought used a different calendar than what Chinese had adopted. Their timeframe for Zhou Dynasty would be 1122 BC - 256 BC.)

The Korean school of thought discusses the prehistory of "Dongyi" people, i.e., the ancestors of the Koreans between 7193 BC-2333 BC. My impression is that it is a recitation of the same legends as Chinese. It touches upon such familiar names as

- Fuxi the Ox Tamer - approx. 3528 BC
- Shen-nong the Divine Farmer - approx. 3168 BC
- Xuanyuan the Yellow Overlord - in between 2707 BC-2598 BC

who are among the Three Huang ("lords") and Five Di ("lords") prior to Xia Dynasty. <http://www.chinapage.com/> had compiled the dates slightly differently, with the years of reign for Huangdi or the Yellow Lord as BC 2697 - 2599; l. 2707 BC-2598 BC, however, did coincide with historical saying of 113 years though.

"Grand Korean View" said that the Dongyi people established "Bak-dal Nara" (Korean words), the first Dongyi state, with territories covering:

- North: Lake Baykal vicinity. Stanovoy Mountains
- South: Yangtze River (includes present Jiangsu, Shanghai, and Anhui)
- East: Russian Maritime provinces
- West: Dunhuang, near the Gobi Desert

In this perspective, the Yi people would be a super majority in contrast with the Hua people in and around the Yellow River. This could only be construed as classifying the Huangdi Tribal Group as still a 'Yi' element after their western expansion. As emphasized earlier, Lord Shun, treated as an ancestor by Shang Dynasty people, was a Dongyi leader; Shang people were considered Dong-yi; and Qin ancestors were said to have migrated to the west from eastern China. The concept of 'Dong-yi' should be interpreted more as a place of origin than a political or social entity.

San Huang Wu Di

Some discussions of 'San Huang Wu Di' (namely, three emperors and five lords) are worthwhile here. Both Di and Huang imply the same denotation as someone who is an overlord, not necessarily emperor. Historians believe the ancient 'San Huang Wu Di' did not call themselves so, and it would be the later people who attached the titles to them posthumously. Xia-Shang lords, however, did continue to call themselves 'Di' posthumously, but Zhou kings had adopted the title of 'wang' or king for themselves to show their humbleness in front of the ancient 'San Huang Wu Di'. In Chinese, there is no comparable words for emperor or empire. In Chinese, the terminology for the empire came from an imported word, 'Teikoku', which the Japanese derived by lining up the two Chinese characters for lord and state. As to 'huangdi' or emperor, it was a term coined by first emperor of Qin Dynasty by combining the words of 'Huang' and 'Di'.

'San Huang', also termed the Three Sovereigns, would be Fuxi, Yandi (Fiery Lord) and Huangdi (Yellow Lord, l. BC 2697 - 2599 ?). A Western Han Dynasty story claimed that Nü-wa, Fuxi and Shennong were the three ancient lords. Another saying would be 'Heaven Huang', 'Land Huang', and 'Human Huang' or 'Taishan Mountain Huang'. The Three Huangs denotation was embodying the

ancient Chinese religious ideas and it could be compared to the trinity in Christianity. Concretely speaking, the relationship between heaven, land and humans would be the eternal topics of ancient Chinese. The impact could be seen in early dynasties like Shang which upheld polytheism and semi-human gods just like the ancient Greeks. Below, I had followed conventional history in attributing the idea of 'Mandate of Heaven' to Zhou Dynasty (instead of Shang Dynasty) because of distinction here between the polytheism reverence of the Shang people and the Heaven reverence of the Zhou people.

The order of the ancient eight overlords was varied. According to Kong An'guo (Han Dynasty) and Huangfu Mi (Jinn Dynasty), 'Three Huang' or 'San Huang' would be:

Fu Xi, Shen-nong, Huangdi

while 'Wu Di' or Five Di would be

Shaohao, Gaoyang (Lord Zhuanxu), Gaoxin (Diku), Tangyao (Lord Yao) and Yushun (Lord Shun).

Sima Qian, Qiao Zhou (Wei Dynasty of Three Kingdoms), Ying Shao, Song Jun etc placed 'Wu Di' in the following order:

Huangdi (Yellow Lord), Gaoyang (Lord Zhuanxu), Gaoxin (Diku), Tangyao (Lord Yao) and Yushun (Lord Shun)

Though different order, the essence is basically the same. They all belonged to the same old family and the same lineage.

HUANGDI

| -Changyi---Gaoyang---Qiongyi-Jingkang-Juwang-Qiaoniu-Gusou-SHUN

| (ZHUANXU)|

| |

| |-----Gun-----YU

|

|-Xuanxiao--Qiaoji---Gaoxin----YAO

(SHAOHAO)

(DIKU)

Huangdi (l. BC 2697 - 2599 ?) married a woman from Xiling (western mountain) Statelet who bore two sons, Xuanxiao and Changyi. His grandson, Lord Zhuanxu (l. BC 2514 - 2437 ?) succeeded him. Zhuanxu died at age 98. There was a dispute as to whether Xuanxiao (i.e., Shaohao) was ever enthroned. Ancient historians commented that Shaohao possessed the virtue of 'gold' or 'metal', one of five metaphysical materials of China. (Five forms include wood, mud, water, metal and fire.) Alternative account would treat Shaohao (Jintian-shi, l. BC 2598 - 2515 ?) as a ruler with a reign of 84 years, between Lord Huangdi (Xuanyuan-shi) and Lord Zhuanxu (Gaoyang-shi). Shao-hao-shi (junior 'Hao' clan), said to be offsprings of earlier Tai-hao-shi (senior 'Hao' clan), had included various bird-totem sub-clans such as Feng-niao-shi (phoenix), Xuan-niao-shi (black bird clan, i.e., Shang people), Qing-niao-shi (green bird), Zhu-jiu-shi, and Shuang-jiu-shi etc. Lord Zhuanxu's nephew, Diku or Di Ku (Gaoxin-shi, l. BC 2436 - 2367 ?), was next. Diku had his capital in Bo, later Shang capital and today's Yanshi, Henan Province. Diku, at age 15, began to assist Lord Zhuanxu. Diku got enthroned at age 30 and died at age 105. Diku married a woman from Chen-feng-shi and born Fangxun, i.e., later Lord Yao (l. BC 2357 - 2258 ?).

After the death of Diku, his elder son, Zhi (Gaoxin-shi), got enthroned, but Lord Yao took over the post after 9 year's weak rule by Zhi (reign 2366-2358 BC ?). Zhi earlier conferred the title of Marquis Tanghou on Yao. Hence Yao(3) was called Tangyao (reign 2357-2258 BC ?) or Taotang. Alternatively speaking, Yao, per *Shi Ji*, was originally conferred the land of Tang (Tangxian county of Hebei Prov) in the east; moreover, Yao, per *Han Shu*, was buried in Jiyin-jun commandary (i.e., Dingdao of Shandong Prov) in the east. *Han Shu* mentioned a place called Tao-qiu in Dingtao of Shandong. Scholar Liu Qiyu, citing his teacher Gu Xiegang, stated that both Lord Yao and Lord Shun were appropriated to the land of 'Xia' after Xia people's eastward expansion into the bird-totem Eastern Yi barbarian land. (Gu Xiegang cited ancient classics *Zu Zhuan* in stating that nowhere in *Zu Zhuan* could find reference that Lord Shun was surnamed 'Yao' or

Lord surnamed 'Tang' and that Zu Zhuan did not have any reference about Yu-shi clan of Xia people being the descendant of Lord Shun or Tao-tang-shi of Xia people being the descendant of Lord Yao.)

Lord Shun (reign 2257-2208 BC ?), aka Yushun, was called Chonghua or Yao Chonghua for his double apples in his eyes. Alternative history records stated that Lord Shun was more of 'Yi' nature, which would be to say that Lord Shun, of Yao(2) surname, was born near Mount Yaoqiu, near Yuyao of Zhejiang Province in Yangtze Delta. (Ancient records of Kuaiji Commandary stated that Lord Shun was from Shangyu county and that Yaoqiu was 30 Chinese li away from Shangyu; Zhou Chu's *Feng Tu Ji* [Records of Winds and Soils] stated that Lord Shun was a Dongyi.) Alternatively speaking, *Meng-zi* stated that Shun was born in Zhufeng of Shandong Prov, relocated to Fuxia (i.e., Puyang of northeastern Henan Prov) and died in Miaotiao (near Kaifeng of Henan Prov) and *Mo-zi* stated that Shun had tilled fields in Lishan (Heze county of Shandong Prov) and fished in Leize (same area as Heze or Weishanhu Lake area).

For five generations before Shun, the family were civilians. Lord Shun was the 6th generation grandson of Lord Zhu anxu. At the age of 20, he was recommended to Lord Yao for his filiality to parents and love for his evil brother. Lord Yao married two daughters, Nüying (who bore Shangjun) and Erhuang (E'huang), to Shun. Shun succeeded Yao as the overlord three years after mourning Yao's death. Legalist Han-fei-zi and ancient classics *Zhu Shu Ji Nian* (excavated from later Wei Principality tomb) claimed that Lord Shun banished Lord Yao to the south and imprisoned Danzhu (Lord Yao's son). Shun would later quell Danzhu rebellion. Shun would select many saints for managing the country, and this would include Yü, Xie (Shang Dynasty ancestor), Houji (Zhou Dynasty ancestor), Bo-Yi (Qin Dynasty ancestor) etc.

Yu (r. BC 2204-2195 ?) would master the flooding which his father failed to control, and Yu rezoned the country into 9 prefectures and made nine bronze 'ding' or cauldrons as embodiment of the nine prefectures called 'jiu zhou'. Yu had his footsteps reaching Dunhuang in the west and Jiaozhi in the south. Lord Shun further divided the northeastern prefectures to make a total of 12 prefectures. Lord Shun died in the vicinity of Cangwu in southern China, and he was buried in later Lingling Commandary (Mount Qiuyishan, Ningyuan County of Hunan Province, the same place where tens of thousands of landlords and their family members were murdered during the first phase of the Cultural

Revolution of 1960s). Lord Yü was recommended to Lord Shun for succession, and he was conferred the title of Duke Xia, with land at today's Yangdi. Ban Gu of Latter Han Dynasty disputed the generation gap between Lord Zhu anxu and Lord Yu, claiming that Gun was the fifth generation grandson of Lord Zhu anxu and that Lord Yu would be six generations away from Lord Zhu anxu.

Lord Yu was the grandson of Lord Zhu anxu. (There is a dispute here as to Lord Yu. Sima Qian thought that Lord Yü was born in today's Yüxian County, Henan Province, but other people had claimed that Lord Yü came from the Western Rong tribe as Lord Yü was also named 'Rong-yu'. Huangfu Mi said that Mencius also believed that Lord Yü was born in Shiniu, a land where the Western Qiangs lived. Liu Qiyu validated the location of 'xi' or west as nothing other than the areas to the west of today's Tongguan Pass of eastern Shenxi Prov.) Scholar Liu Qiyu, citing his teacher Gu Xiegang, stated that in both Xia people and Chu people's legends, the common gods happened to be Gun and Yu, not Yao and Shun. Liu Qiyu stated that both Lord Yao and Lord Shun were appropriated to the land of 'Xia' after Xia people's eastward expansion into the bird-totem Eastern Yi barbarian land.

Lord Yu, in mastering the floods, had travelled across the country. In today's Zhejiang Province, near the east coast, people could still find his monument at which site Qin Emperor Shi Huangdi had once revered 2200 years ago. Though the Xia people led by Lord Yü had originated in northwestern and central China, the Xia descendants had apparently been linked to the rice culture in the Yantze Delta, namely, today's Taihu Lake, Jiangsu Province. Recent excavations had provided further support to this claim. Chen Shou's *San Guo Zhi*, written almost 1800 years ago, had even linked the similarity of tattoos on fishermen in Zhejiang to the rice culture people living on the western coast of Japan around the 2-3rd centuries. The Wa people of Japan were recorded to have tattoos all over their body, in a similar fashion to the Zhejiang people in Yantze Delta where the descendants of King Shaokang of Xia Dynasty (21-16th c. BC) had lived.

Chinese vs Barbarians - Mongoloans vs Non-Mongolians

Largely due to the double destructions to the ancient Chinese literature at the time of First Qin Emperor Shihuangdi's book burning and consecutive arson in

the hands of General Xiang Yü, the prehistoric contexts of the Chinese are very much blurred. The references to non-Chinese nomadic groups of people are limited and scarce.

Two ancient categorical designation of barbarians would be 'Rong(2)' and 'Di(2)'. Rong was used mostly with the word 'Xi' for west, while 'Di' with the word 'Bei' for north. According to Sima Qian, among the northern nomads would be 'Shanrong' (Mountain Rong) or Xunyu or Xianyun at times of Lord Yao and Lord Shun, Chunwei tribe at times of Xia Dynasty, Guifang (ghost domain) at times of Shang Dynasty, again Xianyun at times of Zhou Dynasty, and Xiongnu (Huns) at times of Han Dynasty. Also on record would be several nomadic states in the very heart of China, Henan and Shaanxi-Shanxi provinces, with such names as Di and Rong. Inter-marriages between the Rong/Di & Chinese were common. The Rongdi Rongs (ancestors of later Huns) had their daughter married to Zhou King Xiangwang. Prince Chong'Er of Jin Principality, during his long years of exile, had travelled across the whole China domain of the time. He lived for many years in the state of Di where his mother-in-law was from and later married with a woman of Chi Di (Red Di) State, a woman captured by the lord of Di State. According to *Xin Tang Shi*, the junior son of Changyi (son of Huangdi the Yellow Lord), by the name of An, had relocated to the Western Rong area and designated his state as 'Anxi', a name that later would be used for Persia or Parthia. The later Xianbei nomads also cited that their ancestor was another son of Changyi.

Non-Mongolian Physiques

To clarify Chinese ethnic continuity, I had cited Prof Wei Chu-Hsien's interpretation of ancient classics "*Shi-zi*" in authenticating the record of deep eye socket people to the north of Huangdi as a corroboration that Huangdi people were not of deep-socket eyes at all. In the paragraph on the origin of Huns, I had also expounded the ethnic nature of various Rong people as mainly Sino-Tibetan speaking Qiangic people. Today's Chinese are direct descendants of ancient Chinese. To dispell any speculation, I will list the following sentence as a proof that ancient Chinese took pride in hair's density and blackness as beauty and health: In classics *Zuo Zhuan*, during the 28th year reign of Lu Lord Zhaogong, a statement was made to infer that in the old times, a You-reng-shi woman bore a beautiful daughter, with 'zhen[3] hei[1]' (i.e., dense and black) hair.

Non-Mongolian physiques did exist among Chinese as a result of Chinese interaction with Hunnish, Turkic and Mongol peoples during the course of history. In combination with the Loulan mummies, we could not dismiss the possible exchanges between the ancient Chinese and the Euroasian nomads. As history had recorded, various steppe people, at certain points, had been recorded to

be people carrying different features as to hair, nose, eye and skin. Hunnish, Turkic and Mongol peoples, however, should be considered



more Mongoloid peoples than else, and they had acted as a kind of buffer in between Mongoloid and Caucasoid peoples since prehistory. To get a glimpse of ancient Mongoloid, we just need to take a look at terracotta soldiers dug out of Qin Emperor Shihuangdi's tomb. My unchanged belief is that Sino-Tibetan-speaking Qiangic SanMiao people first reached the He-xi Corridor of Gansu Prov 4000 years ago and onward to Khotan area of southern Chinese Turkistan. Tokharai, possibly related to the Indo-Scythians, reached the areas of Lake Koko Nor and later Tunhuang Grotto thereafter. The other conclusion that could be construed from the following records about Khirgiz would be that Huns, who first raided Turkistan and Jiankun to the west and northwest, respectively, had took on non-Mongolian feature. Partial ingredients of the Turks had merely carried on this physique.

In the 3rd century BC, the Hun Chanyu ordered that his rightside virtuous king attack the Yuezhi as a punishment for the king's disturbing peace at the Chinese border. In 175-174 BC, Hunnic Chanyu's letter to Chinese emperor mentioned that they defeated Yueh-chih (Yuezhi) people by conquering Loulan, Wusun and Hujie etc, altogether 26 statelets in Chinese Turkistan. Majority of

the Yuezhi fled to the region of Amu Daria river, and some fled across the mountains to live among Qiangic people in the south. Later, successors of the Huns, led by Helian Bobo of Tie-fu Huns, established a Xia Dynasty lasting through AD 407-431. Helian Bobo's acknowledgement and tracing of ancestry in a common origin as Chinese clearly spelled out the fact that it was the Mongoloid who had first raided to the west rather than the other way around.

The story of General Li Ling would be another corroboration of racial interaction. In 100 BC, Han Emperor Wudi sent a mission of Su Wu and over 100 people to the Huns, but the mission was detained by the Huns. Emperor Wudi dispatched an army to punish the Huns. One contingent of 5000 archers (arrow soldiers) from southern China, led by General Li Ling (grandson of Li Guang), was encircled by the Huns numbering 30000. General Li Ling surrendered to the Huns after engaging half a dozen rounds of retreating fights and exhausting all the arrows. Li Ling was assigned by the Huns to ancient Jiankun statelet in northwest Siberia. Later, during Tang Emperor Suzong's reign of AD 758-760, the Huihu (Uygur) conquered the Jiankun Statelet of the Kirghiz. The Kirghiz allied themselves with Tibetans, Arabs and Karlaks. Kirghiz expelled Huihu (Uygur) from Mongolia and killed the Huihu khan around AD 840s. Tang records stated that Kirghiz claimed that they shared the same last name as Tang emperor 'Li'. Why? Because Han General Li Ling was assigned to the ancient Jiankun statelet by the Huns in the west after he surrendered to the Huns 800 years before. Tang records stated that Kirghiz disliked BLACK hair and took it as BAD OMEN. Tang records said those Kirghiz who carried black hair must be the descendants of Li Ling. (It could be construed that the Kirghiz and the non-Mongoloid did not like BLACK hair, not today, nor in 8-9th century AD, nor in 1st-2nd century BC. An interesting website would be "The Face of Hate is a Mongoloid Face" at http://web.wt.net/~mseely/faces_of_hate.html where they expressed dislike for those not so pure Whites. Though, sexually-motivated racial mingling did exist.

<http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/genes/population/proof.shtml> carried an article proving that Spanish Conquistadors slaughtered indigenous Amerindian men and enslaved the women as exhibited by Iberian Y chromosomes and Amerindian mtDNA in today's Colombia.)

Conventional history claimed that the Chinese were monotonous ethnically. A careful perusal of China's 24 Histories (25 or 26 Histories using a different account), however, showed that the ancient Chinese might not be that

monotonous at all. The Qin Chinese had absorbed Western Rong nomads, and they lived next to the Yuezhi (Yüeh-chih). In the Hun section, I had cited descriptions of Non-Mongolian Physiques among the various groups of nomadic peoples who had co-existed and commingled with Chinese. The Huns, who controlled the northern steppe, extending from the Altai Mountains/Lake Balkash to Manchuria, had defeated the Yüeh-chih (Yuezhi) and drove them towards Central Asia. After the decline of Huns, Xianbei moved back to northern China. Five nomadic groups ravaged China in 4th century. When an Eastern Jinn minister (Wang Dun) rebelled against Emperor Mingdi in AD 322-325, he called the emperor by a derogatory name of "Huangxu-nu of Xianbei", meaning "yellow-haired slave of the Xianbei nomads". Shi Min, an adopted son of Jiehu's Posterior Zhao (AD 319-352), had at one time killed about 200,000 Jiehu. History said that Shi Min's armies killed those people who looked like Jiehu because of high nose bridge. Jiehu was an alternative race of the Huns, but they must have looked the same to other Huns and Chinese except for the high nose bridge.

Barbarians vs Chinese Exiles

There long appeared four designations of barbarian groups, namely, Man-of-the-South, Di-of-the-North, Yi-of-the-East and Rong-of-the-West. Man, Di(2), Yi & Rong, in fact, all mean one word, barbarians. The Man-of-the-South will be the natives called Sanmiao (i.e., the Three Miao Tribes), Man(2) and Lao barbarians, and the Zangke, Qiongnu, Yelang and Tian-Yue peoples in southern and southwestern China. Rong-of-the-West are the nomadic peoples in China's northwest and west, including Xirong, Quanrong, Rongdi and Jiangrong. In southern Manchuria, there existed the so-called Shanrong or Mountain Rong (aka: Beirong or Northern Rong and one more name called 'Wu Zhong' to mean Wuzhongshan Mountain in southern Manchuria, with its capital at Yuyang County, Beijing). Di-of-the-North would be specifically denoting the Huns and Turks. Their forerunners would include Rongdi which split into Chidi and Baidi, and Jiangrong around Taiyuan, Shanxi. Baidi (White Di) dwelled in ancient Yanzhou (today's Yan'an), Suizhou (today's Suide) and Yinzhou (today's Ningxia on west Yellow River Bend). *Zuo Shi Chunjiu* stated Jinn defeated Baidi and remnants were known as Bai-bu-hu later. Chidi (Red Di) dwelled in a place called Lu(4), near today's Shangdang. *Zuo Shi Chunjiu* stated that Jinn Principality destroyed the Lu(4) tribe of the Chidi, and the remnants were known as Chi-she-hu nomads later.

Yi-of-the-East will include peoples in Manchuria, Korea and Japan. In early times, the Yi was associated with the word 'niao' for bird, and there were eight to nine different 'niao-yi' people in the east. Shang Dynasty people were recorded to have treated 'Xuan Niao' (i.e., Black bird, possibly sparrow) as the totem. Manchurian legends as to the birth of their founder had something to do with swallowing the red fruit dropped by a bird. In later times, the Yi designation would be associated with a word 'dao' for island, pointing to the barbarian peoples in East China Seas. (Both the character 'niao' and 'dao' looked quite close and might have corrupted consecutively during the course of history.) Yi is more an inclusive word to mean aliens, and the Qiangs and Di(1) people could be called Xi Yi, i.e., Yi in the west, while some southern barbarians would be called Xi-Nan Yi, namely, southwestern Yi. Quanrong or Doggy Rong of the west were also named Quan-yi-shi (Doggy alien tribe) or Hunyi / Kunyi (Kunlun Mountain aliens?, but was commented to be the same as character 'hun4' for the meaning of mixing-up). *Shan Hai Jing* stated that Huangdi bore Miao-long, Miaolong bore Nong-ming, Nongming bore Bai-quan (White dog) which was the ancestors of Quanrong. *Shan Hai Jing* also stated that Quan-yi had human face but beast-like body. An ancient scholar called Jia Kui stated that Quan-yi was one of the varieties of Rong people. In the West Yellow River Bend area could also be found Yuezhi people. The relationship of the Yuezhi to Rong people is not clear. *Gua Di Zhi* stated that Yuezhi country included ancient Liangzhou, Ganzhou, Suzhou, Yanzhou and Shazhou, i.e., today's Gansu and Shenxi Provinces.

It is difficult to differentiate between the true barbarians and those ancient Chinese who were exiled to the borders. Lord Shun suggested to Lord Yao to have four evil tribes exiled to the borders. This would include Hundun, Gonggong (Qiongqi), Gun and SanMiao. (*Shan Hai Jing* had good description of the myths about Gonggong breaking the pillar of the skies and causing floods, Gun stealing 'Yi Rang' or Growing Soil from heaven to stop the waters, and Yu being born from the dead body of Gun etc.) The reason for exiling the four tribes would be their mistakes: Hundun's fault was his recommendation of Gonggong for flood-control job; Gun's fault was his failure to control the flooding. (Gun was the father of Yu the Great.) Gonggong was exiled to the northern post of Beijing to counter the northern Di(2) nomads; Hundun was exiled to southern mountains to counter the southern barbarians; SanMiao people was exiled to San-Wei-Shan Mountain in Gansu's Dunhuang to counter the Xirong or Western Rong people; and Gun was killed on Mountain Yushan

(Feather mountain) to detente the Eastern Yi people.

Kong An'guo of Han Dynasty claimed that Hundun were infilial descendants of Huangdi the Yellow Lord. Gun was infilial son of Lord Zhuangxi. The 'Sanmiao' people were said to be infilial descendants of Yandi the Fiery Lord. (Wu Qi claimed that San Miao country was located between Lake Dongtinghu and Lake Pengli.) Hence, those four tribes should be considered members of the big family. The book '*Xu Hou Han Shu*', i.e., 'Continuum To Hou Han Shu', stated that the Qiangs were alternative race of the Jiang surname tribes of San Miao. Hence, it should be safe to claim that 'Sanmiao' people were the descendants of the big family of Yandi and Huangdi. In the Hun section, tentative exploration into the nature of Rong & Di Peoples, Qiang, Sanmiao & Yuezhi was given. Borrowing *Shan Hai Jing*, Quan-yi or Quan-rong, one of the varieties of Rong people, could have derived from Huangdi (Yellow Lord) since Huangdi bore Miao-long, Miaolong bore Nong-ming, Nongming bore Bai-quan (White dog) which was the ancestors of Quanrong.

In accordance with Luu Simian dissertation, San-Miao, with 'miao' meaning descendants, could point to three ancient clans and tribes of Dihong-shi, Jinyun-shi, Shaohao-shi as their ancestors. Miao-zu, numbering 5 million per 1982 census, are said to be descendants of ancient Lord Chiyou who headed the Nine Li[2] tribes, i.e., ancestors of SanMiao people. Miao-zu's epic talked about "westward migration", which pointed to the fact that they had probably dwelled more to the center and east of China in ancient times.

Speculations As To San-Miao vs Yuezhi Timeframe

Lord Yao or Tangyao (reign 2357-2258 BC ?) took over the overlord post after 9 year's weak rule by Zhi (reign 2366-2358 BC ?). Zhi was the son of Lord Diku, and Lord Zhi earlier conferred the title of Marquis Tanghou on Yao. According to Sima Qian, the 'SanMiao' people, who resided in the land where the later Chu Statelet was, were mostly relocated to western China to guard against the western nomads. Lord Shun relocated them to western China as a punishment for their aiding the son of Lord Yao (Dan Zhu) in rebellion. To the west of today's Dunhuang of Gansu Prov was a mountain named 'San Wei Shan' where the Three Miao peoples were exiled. This could lead to a sound speculation that Sino-Tibetan speaking San Miao people had dwelled in Gansu much earlier than the later Indo-European Yuezhi people. The approximate date would be about 2258 BC for the relocation. Nova, in its TV series,

<http://www.pbs.org/wgbh/nova/chinamum/taklamakan.html> shows the excavations of mysterious 3000-year-old mummies in China's western desert, inside today's Xinjiang Province. This shows that Indo-European Yuezhi people came much later than the San Miao people, about 1000 years later. (<http://homepages.utoledo.edu/nlight/uyghhst.htm> had a good exposition of the "remarkably racialized ideas" and approaches built on basis of the mummies.)

Xia Chinese vs Huns, and Qiangic Tibetans vs Tokharai Yuezhi:

http://www.taklamakan.org/allied_comm/commonv-1-8.html carried an article by Takla entitled "The Origins of Relations Between Tibet and Other Countries in Central Asia", stating that "according to the researches of Sir Aurel Stein [i.e., the arch thief of China's Dunhuang Grotto treasures] on the origins of the people of Khotan, most were the descendants of the Aryans. They also had in them Turkic and Tibetan blood, though the Tibetan blood was more pronounced. He discovered ancient documents at a place called Nye-yar in Khotan and he has stated that the script of these documents contained no Pali, Arabic (Muslim) or Turkic terminology. All were Tibetan terms and phrases." Tibetans, clearly the descendants of Sino-Tibetan-speaking Qiangic SanMiao people, had their influences reaching the southern Chinese Turkistan in addition to the He-xi Corridor. P.T. Takla stated further that "according to Wu Hriu(2), the facial features of the people of Khotan were dissimilar to those of the rest of the Horpa nomads of Drugu (Uighurs belonging to the Turkic people) and similar, to an extent, to the Chinese. Khotan in the north-west was called Li-yul by the ancient Tibetans. Since Khotan was territorially contiguous with Tibet, there are reasons to believe that the inhabitants of Khotan had originated from Tibet."

Concluding this episode, my unchanged belief is still that Sino-Tibetan-speaking Qiangic SanMiao people first reached the He-xi Corridor of Gansu Prov 4000 years ago and onward to Khotan area of southern Chinese Turkistan. It is never an accident that early Chinese legends were full of events about the west, including Mt Kunlun, Queen Mother of the West, Khotan jade, and Mt Kunwu Diamond Ore etc. Tokharai, possibly related to the Indo-Scythians, reached Tunhuang Grotto and Lake Koko Nor thereafter. In the 3rd century BC, the Hun Chanyu ordered that his king attack the Yuezhi as a punishment for disturbing peace at the Chinese border. Majority of the Yuezhi fled to the region of Amu Daria river, and some fled across the mountains to live among Qiangic people in

the south. Successors of the Huns, led by Helian Bobo of Tie-fu Huns, established a Xia Dynasty lasting through AD 407-431. Helian Bobo's acknowledgement and tracing of ancestry in a common origin as Chinese clearly spelled out the fact that it was the Mongoloid who had first raided to the west rather than the other way around.

Tibetans - The Fiery Lord Tribe

In my opinion, the peoples who share the same origin and history as today's Chinese will be 1) Tibetans, and 2) Koreans. The Tibetans, according to a Chinese linguist, would be the descendants of the Xi Qiang people active as mercenaries of emperors in Latter Han Dynasty (25 A.D. - 220 A.D) and Three States (220 AD - 280 AD). Beginning from late 1st century, the Qiangs began to rebel against Chinese frequently. As a result of the urgency to cope with the Qiangic threats, the Han Court had very much given up early efforts in controlling Chinese Turkistan. The Qiangs would have wars with Han China for dozens of years. At one time, the Qiangs split into two groups, Xi Qiang (Western Qiang) and Dong Qiang (Eastern Qiang). By the end of the Han Dynasty, Qiangs were controlled by warlord governors in the northwestern part of China. Dong Zuo, who hand-picked last Han Emperor Xiandi, might have some heritage of the nomads in this Qiangic area. During the Three Kingdom time period, the Qiangs had participated in the wars as mercenaries. After the fall of Western Jin China, the Qiangs as well as the Di nomads would play their part in the later landslide campaigns in northern China, 'Five Nomadic Groups Ravaging China' of 4-5th centuries. Posterior Qin Dynasty (AD 384-417), established in today's Shenxi Province, was of Qiangic nature.

The Qiangs, in turn, would be the descendants of the Yandi (Fiery Lord or Fiery Emperor) tribal group carrying the tribal name "Jiang". *Xin Tang Shu* (New History Of Tang Dynasty) said the Tibetans belonged to the Xi Qiang, namely, the western Qiangic peoples. There were 150 different groups of Qiangic peoples, widely dispersed among Sichuan, Ganshu, Qin Hai and Shenxi Provinces. Ancient classics stated that the word 'qiang' means the shepards in the west. The book 'Continuum To Hou Han Shu' stated that the Qiangs were alternative race of the Jiang surname tribes of San Miao. Yu the Great was said to have been born in the land of the Xi Qiang.

One opinion also said that the ancient Tibetans possibly derived from the Sanmiao (Three Miao) tribes who, being in constant battles with the Hua and Yi tribes, had once occupied today's upper and middle Yangtze River areas. At the times of Lords Yao-Shun-Yu, the 'Sanmiao' (Three Miao) people had taken Lake Dongting as their very homeland. According to Sima Qian, the 'Sanmiao' people, who resided in the land where the later Chu State was, were mostly relocated to western China to guard against the western nomads. Lord Shun relocated them to western China as a punishment for their aiding the son of Lord Yao (Dan Zhu) in rebellion. To the west of today's Dunhuang was a mountain named 'San Wei Shan' where the Three Miao peoples were exiled. As further explained in the Tibetans section, the name Tibet could be from the Xianbei element. *New History Of Tang Dynasty* cited a mutation of pronunciation for the name of founder of Southern Liang (Xianbei Statelet, AD 397-414), Tufa Lilugu. What it said is that the Southern Liang's last name, Tufa, had mutated into Tubo in Chinese pronunciation or English Tibet.

The Yangtze area would remain marshlands and lakes till the time of the Chu State during the Warring States period (403-221 BC). The State of Chu, 1500 years after Xia Dynasty was first established, would still belong to an alien ethnical group, and they were the first group of people to reject the overlordship of the Zhou Dynasty and called themselves Chu kings. San-Miao people were not considered 'Chinese' at the times of Yao-Shun-Yu, and they belonged to the barbarian groups in ancient Chinese classics.

San-Miao, Qiangs, Xianbei, Tuoba, & Tanguts

San-Miao people, the Qiang people and the Di nomads etc long dwelled in the Gansu-Qinghai and northwestern Sichuan areas. (The Di nomads had been suspected to be responsible for the so-called 'Sanxingdui Excavations' in today's Sichuan Province. In the section on Sixteen Nations, we had traced the Di statelets.) I will speculate as one linguist did about the possibility of the Qiangic people being pressured into a movement towards Tibet (called 'Zhang' in Mandarin, a mutation of Qiang). Existing Chinese history did not make a distinction between Qiangs and San-Miao at all, and the only reference to San-Miao would be the San Wei Shan Mountain, a mountain to the west of Dunhuang, Gansu Province. In one account, there was a saying that the Qiangs were descended from San-Miao people. What I found difficult was the timeframe inconsistency: The Qiangs, if having origin from Yandi the Fiery Lord, should precede the San-Miao people because Lord Shun's relocation of San-Miao came

later.

In late Han times, the Qiangs had been mercenaries of Han emperors in numerous wars, and one family of generals had joined the Shu Han against the Wei kingdom during Three Kingdoms Period (AD 220-280). The Qiangs as well as the Di nomad would play their part in the later land-slide campaigns in northern China, 'Five Nomadic Groups Ravaging China' during the 4th century. They joined hands with a branch of Xianbei and created a lasting kingdom called 'Tuyuehun', and 'Tuyuehun' competed against the Tibetans proper well into the 7th century. 'Tuyuehun' had lasted for about 350 years in history, from the end of Yongjia years (AD 310s) of Jin Dynasty to the 3rd year of Longsuo (AD 663) of Tang Dynasty. The Qiang people are the same people who set up the Posterior Qin Dynasty (AD 384-417) during the South-North Dynasties, prior to the founding of the Tibetan Kingdom during China's Tang Dynasty (AD 618-907).

'Tuyuehun', with Xianbei nomadic elements, would mix up with the Qiangic peoples (which possessed at one time eight tribes, with one tribe carrying the Toba last name) and evolve into the later Xixia Kingdom (AD 1038-1227) of the Tanguts (i.e., Dangxiang).

Ethnogenesis of Early Stages

With the defeat of i) Dongyi People under Chi-you and ii) Qiangic people under Fiery Lord tribes, we could speculate that the Yellow Lord Tribe finally dominated both Shandong Province and the Yellow River area. Part of those people who were defeated could have migrated towards the Manchurian and Korean areas and today's Gansu-Qinhai Provinces (called "Frontal Tibet" in history in contrast with Tibet Proper, the "Hind Tibet"). The ancestors of today's Koreans would remain in the area of today's southern Manchuria and the areas around the Beijing city till the Warring States period of Zhou Dynasty, and would resurface time and again during Han Dynasty and Sui-Tang Dynasties. http://socrates.berkeley.edu/~korea/Old_1.html states that , in 311 BC, invasion of Qin-kai of Yen Principality (Warring States Period, 403-221 BC) caused ancient Korea a loss of 2000-li territory; 108 BC invasion by Emperor Wudi of Han Dynasty established four commandaries in today's Liaoning Province and northern Korea. In Sui Dynasty, Chinese were defeated by the Koreans and Sui Emperor Yangdi hence lost his empire due to internal revolts,

and in Tang Dynasty, Chinese intervened in Korean civil wars and helped one Korean kingdom (Silla) defend against the Japanese who were invited by a rival.

1 li = 435 meters. See <http://www.os.xaxon.ne.jp/~sinkodai/efuruta/esss.html> where the author stated that 'San-kuo-shih or Three Country Record does not use the distance unit of "li" to be 435 meters as used during the Chin or Han dynasty Period. but rather it uses the unit adopted by the Wei and Western Chin dynasties, which is that one "li" is approximately 77 meters.'

Chinese ethnogenesis will now be comprised of Yi People in the east and the Xia people in the west. Since excavations of dragon-totem were still primarily centered in southern Shanxi Prov, we would not be able to tell whether Huangdi's people, after defeating Dong-yi in Hebei Prov, had actually taken control of the traditional land of the Yi people. Though, Sima Qian's *Shi Ji* claimed that Huangdi might have climbed a mountain on the Yantze River. The struggles between dragon-totem Xia people and bird-totem Yi people never settled for next 1400 years, till Zhou Dynasty's Duke Zhougong campaigned against Ren-fang-guo on Shandong Peninsula and quelled the remaining Shang people after 1122 BC. During the famous tribal power successions of lords Yao, Shun and Yu, prior to the founding of the first dynasty of Xia by Yü's son, we had Lord Shun of comparatively Yi nature succeeding Lord Yao. Among the Yi People of the east would be Lord Shun and later Shang Dynasty ancestors. After Lord Shun would be Lord Yu who represented the Xia or Huaxia people of the west. Lord Yu's son set up the Xia Dynasty in Henan Prov, and Xia people must have close relations with the natives to the west of Henan Prov, i.e., Qiangs and Xirong (Western Rong People). Today's term Huaxia would be the combination of names from Shenxi Prov's Huashan Mountain (a name appropriated from southern Shanxi Prov across the Yellow River Bend) and Duke Xia title of Lord Yu (a title possibly made up to backtrack the actual victory of Lord Yu's Xia people over the Dong-yi people).

The establishment of the first dynasty of Xia would be the first important recognizable Chinese ethnogenesis, i.e., the formation of an ethnic group. (According to Obayashi Taryo, 'The Crucial Time in the Formation of the Japanese People,' *Minzokugaku Kenkyu*, Vol 48, No 4, 1984, pp. 401-405, linked by John Rach at <http://www2.gol.com/users/johnrach/>, ethnic formation "is a process which extends over a long time, often over centuries". In John Rach's words, "at a certain point in time, migration decreased, and both

populations went through a period of settled evolution".) For the Chinese, at some point in time one group emerged to identify themselves as the Huaxia people and the first stage in this process, 'ethnogenesis', is now complete.

The second important recognizable Chinese ethnogenesis would occur at the time of Xia-Shang dynastic substitution, around 1766 BC. The struggles between Xia people and Yi people always persisted during the Xia Dynasty. While the Xia Dynasty, under Lord Yu 's son, was founded in the central plains of China, the Dongyi tribes would still occupy the eastern parts of today's China, notably Shandong Province. Houyi, the tribal leader of the Yi tribes, would force the second Xia king into exile, and it would be the fifth Xia king, Shaokang, who re-asserted power over Xia kingdom. The Yi people would later build the Shang Dynasty from 1765 BC to 11122 BC in place of the Xia Dynasty. The son of last Xia Dynasty Lord Jie would later flee to the northern plains to be the ancestors of the Huns.

Diversion vs Conversion

I will list some illustrative numbers for explaining the concept of diversion vs conversion. Ancient tribes existed in units of hundreds of people. A group of 100 tents could evolve into a separate race in a matter of 200 years. For example, when ancient Vietnam rebelled in 48 AD, Han Dynasty General Ma Yuan would mount a full campaign in Champa, today's central to southern Vietnam. *New History Of Tang Dynasty* recorded that there were ten households in the name of Ma dwelling in Champa area, and those people refused to return to China with General Ma. 500 years later, by Sui Dynasty, the ten families had multiplied into 300 households.

The early human beings numbered by less than one thousandth of today's population. When some tribe wandered out of their traditional pasture, they might not meet another soul for one hundred miles. After reflecting on various theories, my conclusion is that the ancient people tend to diverge rather than converge. Early human population was nothing in comparison with the number of animals and beasts around them. Early human beings had to fight against animals and beasts for survival than against fellow human beings. Relatively speaking, in past 10,000 years, the first part should be quite peaceful, and only in second part of 5000 years did we notice the signs of civilizations and the multiplicity of human beings. Before the invention of weapons, no matter stone axe, copper dagger or iron sword, early people had no choice but to wrestle

against each other with bare hands. In this sense, Marxist perspective on "slave society" had its merits because the killings between human beings had only been observed among the buries "mass' graves during this time period. In contrary to common sense, early human migrations took the shape of diversion, NOT conversion. Early human migrations would tend to move away, towards the four directions, not converging to the same hot spot. At most, they co-dwelled in the same area after diverging from their mode of life, as happened in the scenario of the co-existence of both nomadic and sedentary ways of life in the Ordos and the Yellow River Bend.

Ancient people, to diversify their gene pool, would have to go hundreds of miles in search of their brides. The legends of Huangdi and his sons should be good proof of this point. Huangdi married a woman from Xiling (western mountain) Statelet who bore two sons, Xuanxiao and Changyi. Among Lord Huangdi's 25 sons, two elder sons, Changyi and Xuanxiao, were both conferred the land in the west, today's Sichuan Province, and the two sons married so-called 'Shu-shan nü', i.e., women from Sichuan Province.

Fallacies Of Tribal Leadership Succession: Yao-Sun-Yü

Earlier, we cited Scholar Liu Qiyu and his teacher Gu Xiegang in stating that both Lord Yao and Lord Shun could have been appropriated to the land of 'Xia' after Xia people's eastward expansion into the bird-totem Eastern Yi barbarian land. Gu Xiegang cited ancient classics *Zu Zhuan* in stating that nowhere in *Zu Zhuan* could find reference that Lord Shun was surnamed 'Yao' or Lord surnamed 'Tang' and that *Zu Zhuan* did not have any reference about Yu-shi clan of Xia people being the descendant of Lord Shun or Tao-tang-shi of Xia people being the descendant of Lord Yao.

Aside from the dispute in regards to appropriation, there were two opposing viewpoints in regards to the succession of Yao-Shun-Yu. Hanfei-zi, a legalist from the Warring States Period (403-221 BC) of Eastern Zhou Dynasty, had rebutted the validity of the 'abdication system', i.e., the bloodless and democratic successions of tribal powers among tribal leaders of Yao-Sun-Yü who led the mingled Dongyi-Huaxia Tribes prior to the monopolization of power by Xia-hou-shi clan of Xia Dynasty. Here, Yao & Yu belonged to the Hua tribes; Sun, however, was a Dongyi tribal leader.

Yao-Sun-Yü legends had been praised by the Chinese communists as the paradise in primitive Chinese society as well as an ideal society eulogized by Confucius (511-479 BC). It basically says that Lord Yao, thinking his son was not qualified for the job as a tribal leader, searched the land for a good candidate. Shun was recommended to Yao for his filiality to his parents. Later, Lord Shun, at high age, tried to locate a successor. Yu (whose father, Gun, failed to control floods and was hence executed by Lord Shun) succeeded his father's job and successfully controlled the floods (i.e., repairing nine rivers in lower Yellow River line), and Yu was recommended to Shun for his bypassing home three times in between thirteen years of flood control work. Later, Confucius and Mencius expanded on the classical book of *Shang Shu* and made the three lords 'saints'. Confucius, an idealist living in the Spring-Autumn period of Eastern Zhou Dynasty, had always upheld the ideals of early saints and the deeds of Archduke of Zhou Dynasty. Later in Han Dynasty, Confucius became the state's teachings and hence the Trio-Saints became a legend never to be disputed again.

Hanfei-zi wrote in his book that the Yao-Shun-Yü deeds were fabricated stories. According to records from *Shang Shu*, Shun, a Dongyi tribal leader, killed the whole family of Yao's son, Danzhu, on the pretext that he did so to give people an admonition so that people would not learn from Danzhu's indulgence in pleasure, exemplified by Danzhu's asking people push him in a boat in shallow waters etc. (On record would be a rebellion by Dan Zhu. Lord Shun was said to have relocated San-Miao people to Gansu Prov in western China as a punishment for their aiding Dan Zhu in this rebellion.) Yao, earlier, had married his two daughters to Shun, but in return Shun imprisoned Yao and killed Danzhu and his whole family. Lord Shun himself did not get a better fate, either. Shun originally planned to have his son, Shangjun, to succeed him. But Yü staged a coup and later banished Shun to southern China which would be still marshlands and mountains in Warring States period of Zhou Dynasty two thousand years after Shun's times. Somewhere in upper Yangtze River, there was a peak named after Lady Xiang who happened to be one of Lord Yao's two daughters accompanying Shun on to the south exile. Lord Shun died in the land of Cangwu, a place in today's Guangxi, near Guangdong border. Hanfei-zi further claimed that the usurpation was the norm, not the exception, and the mandate of heaven was construed to legalize the usurpations of later rulers. An often disputed ancient book, *Zhu Shu Ji Nan*, i.e., Bamboo Annals, written in

approx 299 BC, 75 volumes in total, excavated from Wei Principality King Xiangwang's tomb in AD 330 (alternatively said to be discovered in year AD 281, i.e., Jinn Wudi's reign), had corroborated Han-fei-zi's claim. (Scholar Li Xueqin, in his dissertaion on "*Zhu Shu Ji Nan* and Xia Dynasty", claimed that Bamboo Annals was biased in descriptions of usurpations & tyrants and might have fabricated historical events to serve the purpose of billegerant Warring States time period, with anti-history stories like Yi Yin's adultery with last Xia Lord Jie's queen Mei-xi or like Yi Yin's exiling Shang King Taijia for 7 years and subsequent Taijia's execution of Yi Yin as revenge. Li Xueqin stated that Shang oracle bones had high compliments for Yi Yin and Bamboo Annals was deliberately mutating history to serve the purpose of usurpation. Hence, Bamboo Annals' accounts of Xia King Qi's killing Yi or the usurpations of Shun vs Yao & Yu vs Shun should be questioned for its authenticity)

With the founding of Xia by Yu's son, Qi(3), China would now experience the continuous ancient civilization of Xia, Shang and Zhou Dynasties. When King Wuwang of Zhou toppled the Shang Dynasty, he cited the 'Mandate of Heaven' in his campaigns against Shang, and Zhou King Wuwang would call himself king in respect for the lords or emperors ahead of him. We will now continue the discussions on Xia, Shang and Zhou.

XIA-SHANG DYNASTIES

Xia Dynasty	22-17th c. BC ¹
	2070-1600 BC ²
	2207-1766 BC ³
Shang Dynasty	17 c.-1122 BC ¹
	1600-1046 BC ²
	1765-1122 BC ³
Western Zhou	1134 - 771 BC ¹
	1046 - 771 BC ²
	1121 - 771 BC ³
Eastern Zhou	770-256 BC
	770-249 BC ³
Spring & Autumn	722-481 BC
	770-476 BC ³
Warring States	403-221 BC
	476-221 BC ³

Qin Statelet	900s?-221 BC
Qin Dynasty	221-206 BC
	248-207 BC ³
Western Han	206 BC-23 AD
Xin (New)	9-23 AD
Western Han	23-25 AD
Eastern Han	25-220
Three Kingdoms	Wei 220-265
Three Kingdoms	Shu 221-263
Three Kingdoms	Wu 222-280
Western Jinn	265-316
Eastern Jinn	317-420
16 Nations	304-420
Cheng Han	Di 301-347
Hun Han (Zhao)	Hun 304-329 ss
Anterior Liang	Chinese 317-376
Posterior Zhao	Jiehu 319-352 ss
Anterior Qin	Di 351-394 ss

Anterior Yan	Xianbei 337-370
Posterior Yan	Xianbei 384-409
Posterior Qin	Qiang 384-417 ss
Western Qin ss	Xianbei 385-431
Posterior Liang	Di 386-403
Southern Liang	Xianbei 397-414
Northern Liang	Hun 397-439
Southern Yan	Xianbei 398-410
Western Liang	Chinese 400-421
Hunnic Xia	Hun 407-431 ss
Northern Yan	Chinese 409-436
North Dynasties	386-581
Northern Wei	386-534
Eastern Wei	534-550
Western Wei	535-557
Northern Qi	550-577
Northern Zhou	557-581
South Dynasties	420-589

Liu Song	420-479
Southern Qi	479-502
Liang	502-557
Chen	557-589
Sui Dynasty	581-618
Tang Dynasty	618-690
Wu Zhou	690-705
Tang Dynasty	705-907
Five Dynasties	907-960
Posterior Liang	907-923
Posterior Tang	923-936
Posterior Jinn	936-946
Posterior Han	947-950
Posterior Zhou	951-960
10 Kingdoms	902-979
Wu	902-937 Nanking
Shu	907-925 Sichuan
Nan-Ping	907-963 Hubei

Wu-Yue	907-978 Zhejiang
Min	907-946 Fukien
Southern Han	907-971 Canton
Chu	927-956 Hunan
Later Shu	934-965 Sichuan
Southern Tang	937-975 Nanking
Northern Han	951-979 Shanxi
Khitan Liao	907-1125
Northern Song	960-1127
Southern Song	1127-1279
Western Xia	1032-1227
Jurchen Jin (Gold)	1115-1234
Mongol Yuan	1279-1368
Ming Dynasty	1368-1644
Manchu Qing	1644-1912
R.O.C.	1912-1949
R.O.C. Taiwan	1949-present
P.R.C.	1949-present

While we adopted some commonly-accepted starting and ending years for Xia, Shang and Zhou dynasties, authoritative Chinese historian viewpoint is that the earliest substantiated year happened to be the fourteen year long "interregnum" (i.e., "republican administrative period") during Western Zhou Dynasty, beginning from year 841 BC, the year when King Liwang of Zhou was ousted by the revolts of the Guoren (i.e., the civilians in the capital vs 'Yeren' the country people in the outskirts) and royal members of Zhou collectively administered the state affairs till King Xuanwang of Zhou was selected. (Scholar Xu Zhuoyun analyzed Zhou's fief system to have derived a conclusion that cities at Zhou times could be differentiated into 'guo' for capital, 'yi' for 'fief', and 'tian' for countryside. Capital would be 'yi' with ancestral oblation. 'Guo', area within city-wall, contrasted with 'ye' for countryside.) As to reliable historical records, the oracle bones from Shang served the best example of underground records matching written records above-ground, while excavations from Xia are still under research and point to the fact that some writing system did exist in earlier Xia Dynasty. A Chinese research project which started in 1995 had been reported to have pushed the exact date to the year 2070 BC as the point of origin for Xia Dynasty. Stanford University scholar, David Nivision, had derived the date of 2026 BC, instead, as a result of his own independent studies.

Prior to trio-saints of Yao, Shun and Yu, looking further up, there are eight legendary overlords in Chinese history: They are 'San Huang' ['Three Huang'], namely, Fuxi, Yandi (Fiery Lord) and Huangdi (Yellow Lord), and 'Wu Di' or Five Di, namely, Shaohao (l. BC 2598 - 2515 ?), Zhuanxu (l. BC 2514 - 2437 ?), Gaoxin (l. BC 2436 - 2367 ?), Tangyao (Lord Yao, l. BC 2357 - 2258 ?) and Yushun (Lord Shun, reign 2257-2208 BC ?). Lord Huangdi (i.e., the Yellow Overlord, l. 2697 - 2599 BC?) was said to have possessed a chronicle official [Cangjie] who had first created Chinese characters. Like many Xia stories, the Cangjie characters remained a legend. According to Sima Qian, Chinese lords shared the same lineage: Lord Huangdi (Yellow Overlord) was the son of the tribe of Shaodian (disputed to be the name of a state rather than an person); Lord Huangdi had 25 sons, among whom 14 had established their own family names; one of his son is called Changyi, and Changyi's son, named Gaoyang, is Lord Zhuanxu; and Lord Yu (r. BC 2204-2195 ?) was said to be the grandson of Lord Zhuanxu as well as the father of the founder of Xia Dynasty. (Ban Gu of Latter Han Dynasty disputed the generation gap between Lord Zhuanxu and

Lord Yu, stating that Gun was the fifth generation grandson of Lord Zhuangxi and that Lord Yu would be six generations away from Lord Zhuangxi.)

The demarcation line between the dynasties of Xia-Shang-Zhou and the pre-history lies in the monopolization of power by the son of Lord Yu and his family. Prior to Xia Dynasty, various tribes, mainly under the two tribal groups of Hua and Yi, recommended their best men for leadership as the stories of Yao-Shun-Yu reflect. Starting from Xia, the sons or brothers of Xia king would assume exclusive power, instead. Early dynasties, especially Shang Dynasty, did not strictly pass the power to their sons, but brothers. This is similar to the fashion as used by later nomads like the Huns and the Turks. Also to be noted is that all lords prior to Zhou Dynasty were entitled "Di" posthumously, meaning modern sense emperors or overlords. The lords from Zhou Dynasty humbly called themselves **kings** in respect for the earlier 'San Huang' and 'Wu Di'. Later, historians would make reference to Xia, Shang and Zhou as '*San Dai*', namely, the Three Dynasties.

There is no doubt that a Xia dynasty existed before Shang Dynasty (1765 BC - 1122 BC) since Shang records described extensively events in prior dynasty. One history researcher commented that "to authenticate ancient records, one has to rely on ancient scholars for more accurate records than later scholars." Confucius compiled some records on basis of what he read about the classics that existed before his times, and Confucius commented that he still somehow had access to the ancient classics though he might not have truly understood the essence of those classics. Should Confucius believe in the so-called 'Three Dynasties' of Xia-Shang-Zhou, then the existence of a Xia Dynasty could not be negated. Corroborations abound to point to various ancient saints: Lord Yu had travelled across the nine ancient prefectures; Lord Yu's Tributes, "*Yu Gong*", with descriptions of ancient nine prefectures, was cited for manufacturing nine bronze (copper?) utensils called 'ding' [cauldron]; and the nine utensils passed on from dynasty to dynasty. Zhougong, i.e., Duke of Zhou, under the order of Zhou King Chengwang, fulfilled the wish of King Wuwang in building the city of Luoyi (Luoyang) and moved the nine utensils there. When both Xizhou-jun (Duke Wugong) and Zhou King Nanwang passed away, the Zhou people fled to the east, and Qin retrieved the nine cauldrons from the Zhou court and shipped them to Xian'yang. Later ruler, like Zhang Shi of Anterior Liang Dynasty, would claim that the Mingsha (echoing sand) Mountain and San-wei (three precarious) Mountain in Dunhuang of Gansu Province would be where Lord Yu had travelled

the western-most. (Senior scholar, like Prof Wei Chu-Hsien, had doubts about bronze existence at the times of Lord Yu, but recent excavations did produce copper items in southern Shanxi Prov at the times of Lord Yu. Ancient classics, on the matter of Chu King Zhuangwang's inquiry into nine cauldrons, had deliberately avoided the nature of Lord Yu's cauldrons. Prof Wei Chu-Hsien speculated that it could be of pottery nature.) Another corroborating fact would be Lord Yu's tomb on Mount Kuaijishan in Shaoxing, Zhejiang. One of the grandsons of Lord Yu was permanently assigned to the Kuaiji land to guard the tomb, and the later Yue Principality was said to have descended from this lineage.

Later, Xia Dynasty remnants would survive as the Qi-guo statelet, located in today's Qi-xian county of Henan Prov. Qi-guo lineage continued onward through Shang and Zhou dynasties. Ancient proverb about a Qi-guo person worrying about the fall of skies would be related to this country. Another Xia remnant would be by the name of Chonghouhu statelet [i.e., Marquis Hu of Chong-guo Statelet] which was conquered by first Zhou King Wuwang by taking advantage of Chonghouhu people's following last Shang Lord Zhouwang's Shandong Peninsula campaign against Ren-fang-guo statelet to the east. [Scholar Wei Juxian claimed that Chonghouhu must have derived from Chong-bo, i.e., the tribe of Lord Yu's father.] Still more Xia remnants would probably survive as Yu-guo, Ji-guo and Tang-guo statelets in Shenxi/Shanxi provinces till Zhou Dynasty time period. (Zeng Guangdong, at regenerating-universe.org/Chain_of_DNA.htm, expounded his family's 5000 years old unbroken chain of DNA. Zeng stated that "the name of our clan, Zeng, may be traced to the time when Emperor [overlord] Shao Kang of Xia Dynasty created his second son Prince Qu Lie [as] the ruler of the State of Zeng ... about 1850 BC ... In the 6th year of Duke Siang [lord or Marquis Siang: common mistake in attributing clan title of gong to duke instead of grandpa] of the State of Lu, ... 567 BC... the Zeng State was plundered and destroyed by the State of Ju. The Prince of Zeng named Wu fled to the State of Lu and remained there in the service of Lu. He dropped the [ear] part (which denotes the domain) from our surname Zeng. This was the beginning of our surname becoming Zeng without the domain in the script, and it remains ever since. Four generations from Wu came Xi alias Dian ... and the 5th was the "Sage of Source", namely Zengcius or Zeng San [Zeng-zi]. Both father and son were students of Confucius, thus our family shines ever since ... " Zeng validated his clan history via excavation in 1978 of a tomb belonging to the Marquis Zeng-Yi-hou "who was buried in 433

BC at the old site of the State of Zeng in Hu Bei [Hebei] Province.")

Shang Dynasty itself was made into the principality of Song by the succeeding Zhou Dynasty (1121 - 256 BC). (Some scholar, like Wei Chu-hsien and Wang Guowei, pointed to the existence of Song before Shang times and claimed that Song or Shang, pronounced in similar tone, could have meant for the same people.) Confucius at one time returned to his ancestral Song Statelet and spent considerable time studying the Shang "Li", ritual or formality or system, which continued on in Song long after Shang's demise. The lineage of history is cited repeatedly in China's 24 Histories.

Xia Dynasty

The Xia Dynasty (about 2207-1766 BC) has been called the first dynasty. It was established by Qi(3), the son of Lord Yu. Lord Yu was the person famous for being the man who mastered the floods. Qi3 was born by a Tu-shan-shi woman, but Yu the Great dared not enter his home to see his new-born son while he was under Lord Shun's order to quell the flooding. The name 'Xia', alternatively speaking, came from the title of Count Xia that Lord Yu received from Lord Yao as conferral of land in Yangdi.

Yangdi or Yangcheng could be in Shanxi Prov or in Henan prov. In today's Dengfeng Municipality of Henan Prov, to the centerfold south of both Luoyang and Zhengzhou and further to the south of Dengfeng, there would be a Yu-zhou city, with Lord Yu's name inscribed. Scholar Liu Qiyu pointed out that it was not Lord Yu but Lord Yu's son Qi who would make Xia capital in Henan Prov after crossing the Yellow River to defeat the You-hu-shi Dong-yi people at Gan (i.e., today's Zhenzhou of Henan prov). Compromising theory would be to point out that 'yang' also meant for 'tang' in ancient times, and hence Yangcheng or Yangdi would be still located north of the Yellow River, somewhere in southern Shanxi Prov. Tian Changyue, the editor of "*Hua Xia Civilization*" anthology, compromised the issue of Lord Yu's point of origin by stating that Xia people might have two tribes, with i) father Gun developing in southern Shanxi Prov where they were previously subordinate to Lord Yao and ii) the son Lord Yu developing in western Henan Prov by means of an alliance with Lord Zhuanxu's tribe. Lord Yu, per Tian Changyue, adopted 'xuan yu' (i.e., black fish) as the totem and developed in today's Dengfeng-Yuxian areas of western Henan Prov

while his father Gun continued with the dragon totem. Tian Changyue further stated that Lord Yu's tribe would later absorb his father's native Xia people in southern Shanxi Prov. (The character 'Gun' was a combination of two words: black and fish. Senior scholar Wei Chu-Hsien pointed out that ancient Gun legends in "*Shan Hai Jing*" implied a possible migration of Gun people to American continents since Gun's body turned into 'huang xiong' [American Brown Bear] in the water. More about Wei Chu-Hsien's research into ancient Chinese linkage to America is temporarily uploaded to [ming.htm](#) page)

Per "*Shi Ji*", Lord Yu, after mourning Lord Shun for three years, said goodbye to Lord Shun's son (Shangjun) and left Yangcheng for Pingyang. Vassals deserted Shangjun for Lord Yu. Lord Yu hence proclaimed the statelet of 'Xia-hou' and adopted the last name of 'Si'. Alternative surname and clan name records stated that it was Lord Yao who had confirmed the surnames onto his ministers including Yu [Xia ancestor], Xie [Shang ancestor], and Houji [Zhou ancestor] etc.

Ten years later, Lord Yu died in Kuaiji (Shaoxing, Zhejiang Prov), near the mouth of the Yantze Delta. Yi(4), a successor designated by Lord Yu, was given the job as an overlord. After three years of mourning, Yi(4) gave the post to Qi(3), the son of Lord Yu. Yi4 left for south of Songshan (often interchangeable to the Chong character) Mountain of Henan Prov. [Note that ancient classics, i.e., Bamboo Annals, claimed that Qi(3) killed Yi(4).] When the Dong-yi tribes disobeyed Qi(3), Qi sent armies to defeat You-hu-shi clan at Gan (Zhenzhou of Henan Prov, but do note that ancient Gan-shui was closer to Luoyang of Henan Prov) and hence solidified Xia Dynasty rule.

Scholar Luo Xianglin claimed that Xia people had asserted control over the rest of people via two inventions: **copper** and **citadel**. Luo Xianglin cited ancient book "*Yue [Yue principality] Jue [splendid] Shu [book]*" in stating that in ancient times, Xuanyuan-shi, Shenong-shi & Hexu-shi utilized stone as weapon; Lord Huangdi utilized Jade as weapon; and in Xia times, Lord Yu utilized copper as weapon, hence piercing the Longmen [dragon gate] Gorge of the Yellow River. ("*Yue Jue Shu*" distinction between Xuan-yuan-shi and Lord Huangdi also verified a possibility that Xuan-yuan-shi and Lord Huangdi were not the same person.) Luo Xianglin cited ancient books "*Luu Shi Chun Qiu*", "*Tai Ping Yu Lan*", "*Huai Nan Zi*" & "*Wu Yue Chun Qiu*" in stating that Gun, i.e., Lord Yu's father, first built a castle with a wall as high as nine 'ren' [1 'ren' being equivalent to 7

Liu Qiyu's 1982 dissertation, on basis of "*Gan Shi*" (i.e., Oath of War at Gan) in "*Shang Shu*" (i.e., Remotely Ancient Histories), proposed the opposite movement of the Xia people, i.e., that the Xia people, the direct descendants of Huangdi the Yellow Overlord with dragon totem, originally dwelled in southern Shanxi Province and then expanded eastward and southward, across the South Bend, into today's Henan Province. Xia people, under Qi (Lord Yu's son), defeated the You-hu-shi Dong-yi people at the Battle of Gan, built cities and capital in today's Henan Prov, endured power struggles with Dong-yi people [led by Hou-yi and Han-zhuo], and stayed in Henan Prov for hundreds of years till Shang-tang's group of Dong-yi people expelled them. Liu Qiyu stated, on basis of the craftsmanship on potteries, that the Xia people's developments could be embodied by three stages of evolutions, i.e., Taosi (2400-1800 BC) of southwestern Shanxi Prov, Dongxiafeng (2200-1700 BC) of southeastern Shanxi Prov, and Erlitou Culture (1900-1500 BC) in Yanshi of Henan Prov. Liu Qiyu also noted that **copper** utensils were both discovered in Dongxiafeng and Yanshi Erlitou, stating that Erlitou Culture, dated the 3rd phase of Erlitou (Yanshi, Henan Prov), must have been under Xia people who in turn had received inputs from early cultures in Shanxi-Henan provinces. Liu Qiyu further pointed out that by the 4th phase, the Yanshi excavations pointed to the dilapidation of Xia palaces in this area as a result of attacks by Shang-tang Dong-yi people. Liu Qiyu always upheld the theory that Qi, Lord Yu's son, had his capital established at Xunyi, i.e., today's Yanshi of Henan Prov and the seat of Erlitou Culture. Liu Qiyu, to rebut the viewpoint that phases III & IV of Erlitou might belong to early Shang people, stated that it was the opposite way around, that is, the Xia people of III & IV phases of Erlitou influenced the Erligang 'shengwen' (i.e., jormon) potteries in Zhengzhou of Henan Prov.

Chronology of Archaeological Discoveries (see [prehistory.htm](#)):

Yangshao Culture (4000-3000 BC)

Banpo Type Type --> Dongzhuangcun Type --> Miaodigou Type -----> Xiwangcun Type

Miaodigou Culture II (3000-2500 BC)
BC)

Longshan Culture Taosi Type (2500-1900

Early Stage --> Middle Stage --> Late Stage

Early Stage --> Middle Stage --> Late Stage

Taosi (2400-1800 BC)

Dongxiafeng Type (2200-1700 BC)

Erlitou Culture

Dongxiafeng Type Of Erlitou Culture (2200-1700 BC)

Yanshi Type of Erlitou Culture (1900-1500 BC)

There is no dispute as to Xia people's final demise in Henan Prov. Liu Qiyu validated the demise of Xia Dynasty in Henan Prov by citing the ancient statement that "Xia Dynasty ended when the Yi-shui and Luo-shui rivers ran dry". After Shang Dynasty overthrew Xia, remnant Xia people fled northward and westward, and majority of them returned to their ancestral home in southern Shanxi Prov. (Wang Guowei speculated that some of those Xia people who fled northward and westward would become the Yuezhi (?) in the west and the Huns in the north. Note that Wang Guowei's speculation as to Yuezhi would

throw the discussion into an ethnicity dispute. It is understandable that Wang Guowei might have blundered in early 20th century since Loulan mummies were not known at that time. I had expounded the You-yu-shi vs Yuezhi fallacy at [hun.htm](#) section and pointed out that You-yu-shi clan had continued on in Shenxi area till Qi Lord Huan'gong westward campaign against Bai-di barbarians in 651 BC.)

Scholar Luo Xianglin's Assertions

Scholar Luo Xianglin, in "*History of Chinese Nationalities*" (Chinese Culture Publishing Enterprise Co, Taipei, Taiwan, May 1953 edition), stated that ancient China possessed **five** tribal groups: Xia, Qiang, Di[1], Yi, and Man[2]. Per Luo Xianglin, Xia people first originated in Mt Minshan and upperstream River Min-jiang areas of Sichuan-Gansu provincial borderline. Xia people then split into two groups, with one going north to reach Wei-shui River and upperstream Han-shui River of Shenxi Prov and then east to Shanxi Prov by crossing the Yellow River.

The second group, per Luo Xianglin, went south to populate southern Chinese provinces as the 'Yue' people. Luo Xianglin's linking Yue people to Xia people was based on the common lexicon 'yue' which meant for excavated ancient "stone axe".

Xia Land = Zhong Guo (Central Statelet)

The 'Xia' people, in another sense, would also imply a more restrictive meaning for the people who dwelled in the land of Xi-rong (the Western Rong nomads) or Xi Yi (Western Aliens) or Xi Qiang (Western Qiang). Lord Yu was born in a place called 'Shiniu' (ancient Chang-mang statelet, between Sichuan, Henan and Shenxi provinces). Scholar Liu Qiyu tackled the issue of 'xi' or west. His validations pointed to the land of 'he qu' (i.e., the inflexion point of the Yellow River Bends) as the 'land of the west', i.e, later land between Qin and Jinn principalities. He also validated the ancient Chinese prefecture of 'ji-zhou' as equivalent to the ancient term 'zhong-guo' for China, and listed multiple ancient classics to lock down the land of original China as being the domain of southern Shanxi Prov. (Liu Qiyu pointed out that original places for Taiyuan and Jinyang etc would be in southern Shanxi Province, and that those cities did

not get appropriated to northern Shanxi Prov until after Jinn Lord Daogong quelled various 'Di²' barbarian statelets in the north. Liu Qiyu further stated that after the split of Jinn into Haan-Zhao-Wei principalities, southernmost Wei statelet still got the privilege to be called Jinn due to the fact that Jinn historically inherited the ancient Xia land that was termed 'ji-zhou' the Ji⁴ prefecture or 'zhong-guo' the central statelet.)

Ancient classics, like "*Zhan Guo Ce*", "*Shuo Wen*", "*Han Shu*", paraphrased 'Xia' as meaning the central statelet. "*Zhuang-zi*", in the section on "*Tian Di Bian*" (i.e., article on heaven and earth), mentioned a dialogue between Zhunmang and Yuanfeng in regards to Zhuangmang's sailing into the East Sea and polarized 'zhongguo' (central statelet) and 'si hai' (four seas). Xu Hao, in comments on "*Shuo Wen*", stated that Yi & Di barbarians began to invade China at the times of Xia people and that then Chinese were hence named Xia-ren or Xia people. Liu Qiyu listed similar parallel antagonism of 'ji-zhou' and 'si hai' in "*Chu Ci*" (Chu Principality Poems) and "*Huai Nan Zi*" to validate the exact location of the land of 'Xia' as equivalent to ancient 'ji-zhou' prefecture, i.e., southern Shanxi Prov. Similarly, Liu Qiyu cited similar parallel antagonism of 'zhongguo' (central statelet) versus 'si yi' (four groups of barbarians) in "*Zuo Zhuan*" for same sense interpretation. (Note that Scholar Wang Zhonghan cited "*Guan-zi*" in stating that it would be around the middle of Warring States time period that Qi Principality editors adopted the terms of four barbarians as might have existed at the time of Guan-zi [Guan Zhong] of Spring & Autumn time period of Eastern Zhou Dynasty.)

Liu Qiyu pointed out that after the demise of Xia, whoever stayed in Shanxi/Shenxi provinces continued to call themselves 'Xia' people. First Zhou King Wenwang eulogized the eastward flowing of Feng-shui River to Lord Yu's accomplishment, and numerous Zhou Dynasty records stated that they were descendants of Xia Dynasty founder Lord Yu. Wei Principality, who inherited southernmost Jinn land of southern Shanxi Prov, described themselves as "riding in Xia-chariots" and claiming to be "Xia King". A Qin Principality official also denoted himself as Xia-zi (i.e., son of Xia people) because his mother was a Qin-ren (i.e., Qin people), i.e., self-designated Xia people.

Xia Dynasty's Totem - Dragon

Scholar Gao Wei pointed out that the colored Pottery from Taosi Excavations of Longshan Culture, dated 2400-2500 BC approx, had shown a winding dragon. Almost all luxurious Taosi excavations in southern Shanxi Prov had produced a pottery with dragon totem.

This would point to this place of excavation (i.e. southern Shanxi Prov) as the original site of the early Xia people. (Dragon totem, in combination with phoenix, would become China's national symbols.) Chinese classics had mentioned two dragon-related clans, i.e., the Huan-long-shi clan during Lord Shun's reign and the Yu-long-shi clan during Xia Dynasty. Here, 'huan' meant for raising or husbandry, 'yu' meant for driving or controlling, while 'long' meant for dragon. Xia Culture, having interactions with bird-totem Dong-yi people to the southeast, had posed an academic challenge as to the nature of ancient Chinese ethnicity. Consensus would be to treat the Longshan Culture in Shanxi and western Henan as equivalent to Xia Dynasty or at least 'xian xia' (i.e., Anterior Xia Dynasty). Xia people, who later moved from Shanxi to Henan Prov and founded the dynasty of Xia, certainly brought with them the important dragon totem, a mark that would also be observed among the Huns of Mongolia and the Tungus of Manchuria for the thousands of years to come.

Xia people hence was taken as the original Mongoloid ethnic Chinese whose name was carried on for the next 4500 years as 'hua', 'xia' or 'huaxia'. To clarify the nature of Xia people further, I will cite Prof Wei Chu-Hsien's interpretation of ancient classics "*Shi-zi*" (approx 338 BC works) in authenticating the ethnicity of Chinese in Xia land against the barbarians in four directions. Both "*Shi-zi*" and "*Shan Hai Jing*" stated that there were Guan-xiong-guo in the south, Chang-gu-guo (Chang-gong? long arm) in the west, Shen-mu-guo (deep eye socket) in the north, and statelets under Yuhu and Yujing as east-sea and north-sea seagods in the east and northeast. Here, as a side note, I will, once and for all, settle the issues in regards to Huangdi or the Yellow Overlord, i.e., i) semantic error in translating the overlord for 'di' into emperor; ii) Nordic racist appropriation in attaching Caucasian tag to Huangdi. "*Shi-zi*" and "*Shan Hai Jing*" records of deep eye socket people to the north of Huangdi was a corroboration that Huangdi people were not of deep-socket eyes. (Shi-zi was the teacher of Qin Reformer Shang Yang, and he went into hiding in Sichuan Prov ?

and completed the classics *Shi-zi* after Shang Yang was executed by Qin King Huiwenwang.) Furthermore, I had expounded the ethnic nature of various Rong people in the hun.htm section, cleared the dispute in regards to the ethnicity of 'Rong' people, and proven that Rong people, being mainly Sino-Tibetan speaking Qiangic people, shared the same blood-line with Xia Chinese but differed in 'Culture' such as cuisine, clothing, money and language.

'Dong-yi' (Eastern Alien) & 'Xi-yi' (Western Alien)

History annals claim that Lord Shun was a Dong-yi and that Lord Yu was a Xi-yi. This could be interpreted as an ancient conventional way of 'birthplace naming'. (Sima Qian thought that Lord Yu was born in today's Yuxian County, Henan Province, but other ancient historians had claimed that Lord Yü came from the land of the Western Rong or Western Qiang tribe as Lord Yü was also named 'Rong-yu'.)

For thousands of years, Chinese used to claim ancestry place as their point of origin. This applies to Hakka people who, having dwelled in southern China for over one thousand year, still claimed northern Chinese prefectures as their point of origin. As a result of ancient Chinese ancestor worshipping, Chinese clans present a unique way of identification of surnames and Gene-tree Y-chromosome. Should we interpret 'Dong-yi' & 'Xi-yi' in this perspective, then there would be no dispute as to Lord Shun and Lord Yu sharing the same lineage and heritage as Huangdi the Yellow Lord.

Appropriation of Xia Name

On the West Yellow River Bend, there was the ancient Xiazhou Prefecture which still bears the ancient name of 'Xia'. Today, it is called 'Ning-xia Muslim Autonomous Region', with the 'xia' embedded inside. A city by the name of Lingwu still existed close to Ningxia's provincial capital, Yingchuan. There were numerous Xia statelets in Chinese history. The Huns at one time set up a kingdom called 'Xia', and the Tanguts proclaimed their 'Xixia' or Western Xia Dynasty as well. From this perspective, we could say that the 'Hua' or 'Xia' designation would be more of barbarian nature in the west than the later Shang Chinese who belonged to the 'Yi' people in the east.

In the proximity of the West Yellow River Bend could be found 'Yuezhi', 'Rong',

'Di', 'Qiang', and 'Rong-di' barbarians. Di-of-the-North would be specifically denoting the Huns and Turks. Their forerunners would include Rong-di which split into Chidi and Baidi, and Jiangrong around Taiyuan, Shanxi. Baidi (White Di) dwelled in ancient Yanzhou (today's Yan'an), Suizhou (today's Suide) and Yinzhou (today's Ningxia on west Yellow River Bend). Chi-di (Red Di) dwelled in a place called Lu(4), near today's Shangdang. Qiangs and Di(1) people were called Xi Yi, i.e., Yi in the west. Quanrong or Doggy Rong of the west were also named Quan-yi-shi (Doggy alien tribe) or Hunyi or Kunyi (Kunlun Mountain aliens?, but was commented to be the same as character 'hun4' for the meaning of mixing-up). Jia Kui, an ancient scholar, stated that Quan-yi was one of the varieties of Rong peoples. Ancient geography book "*Gua Di Zhi*" stated that Yuezhi country included ancient Liangzhou, Ganzhou, Suzhou, Yanzhou and Shazhou, i.e., today's Gansu-Ningxia-Shenxi Provinces.

Xia Chinese vs Huns, and Qiangic Tibetans vs Tokharai Yuezhi

http://www.taklamakan.org/allied_comm/commonv-1-8.html carried an article by Takla entitled "The Origins of Relations Between Tibet and Other Countries in Central Asia", stating that "according to the researches of Sir Aurel Stein [i.e., the arch thief of China's Dunhuang Grotto treasures] on the origins of the people of Khotan, most were the descendants of the Aryans. They also had in them Turkic and Tibetan blood, though the Tibetan blood was more pronounced. He discovered ancient documents at a place called Nye-yar in Khotan and he has stated that the script of these documents contained no Pali, Arabic (Muslim) or Turkic terminology. All were Tibetan terms and phrases." Tibetans, clearly the descendants of Sino-Tibetan-speaking Qiangic SanMiao people, had their influences reaching the southern Chinese Turkistan in addition to the He-xi Corridor. P.T. Takla stated further that "according to Wu Hriu(2), the facial features of the people of Khotan were dissimilar to those of the rest of the Horpa nomads of Drugu (Uighurs belonging to the Turkic people) and similar, to an extent, to the Chinese. Khotan in the north-west was called Li-yul by the ancient Tibetans. Since Khotan was territorially contiguous with Tibet, there are reasons to believe that the inhabitants of Khotan had originated from Tibet."

Concluding this episode, my unchanged belief is still that Sino-Tibetan-speaking Qiangic SanMiao people first reached the He-xi Corridor of Gansu Prov 4000

years ago and onward to Khotan area of southern Chinese Turkistan. Tokharai, possibly related to the Indo-Scythians, reached the areas of Lake Koko Nor and later Tunhuang Grotto thereafter. In the 3rd century BC, the Hun Chanyu ordered that his king attack the Yuezhi as a punishment for disturbing peace at the Chinese border. Majority of the Yuezhi fled to the region of Amu Daria river, and some fled across the mountains to live among Qiangic people in the south. Successors of the Huns, led by Helian Bobo of Tie-fu Huns, established a Xia Dynasty lasting through AD 407-431. Helian Bobo's acknowledgement and tracing of ancestry in a common origin as Chinese clearly spelled out the fact that it was the Mongoloid who had first raided to the west rather than the other way around.

Lord Yu's Domain

Scholar Hu Yueqian expounded on the marriage of Yu with a Tu-shan-shi woman. (I personally know someone carrying the Tu surname who had come from Hubei Prov.) Hu Yueqian speculated that Lord Yu must have lived close enough to Tu-shan Mountain, somewhere to the northeast of today's Shouchun or Huaiyuan County, Anhui Prov and on the east bank of Huai-shui River. *Zuo Zhuan* stated that tens of thousands of 'guo' or statelets (tribes) had come to Mt. Tu-shan to pay respect to Yu after flood was successfully controled. This pointed to the fact that Lord Yu did have his dwelling south of the Yellow River, something that would conflict with Liu Qiyu's assertion that it would be Lord Yu's son who would later expand into Henan Prov. Scholar Chen Shaoli mentioned that it might not be a coincident that Henan's Yuxian County had possessed an ancient village called 'wang-cheng-gang', i.e., the hill of a king's castle. (Hu Yueqian validated Xia people's influence in Anhui Prov by means of an alliance with Tu-shan-shi tribe by citing the fact that last Xia King Jie, with his queen Meixi [a You-shi-shi woman], had fled to You-chao-hu Lake in Anhui Prov for seeking asylum while the remnant Xia nobles, forbidden from returning to You-chao or Caohu Lake, were relocated to Ruzhou or Jiaxian County of today's Henan Prov.)

However, Lord Yu was not restricted to the Yellow River Bend, and he was recorded to have travelled across the country. Sima Qian's *Shi Ji*, in the section on Xia Dynasty, systematically described the ancient nine Chinese prefectures in details, covering the grade or quality of soil, the minerals, animals, plants and agricultural products, the rivers and mountains, and the surrenders or tributes from the local prefecture to the central court (i.e., Chinese dynasties). The

famous book, *Shan Hai Jing*, i.e., Records of Mountains and Seas, was the work of Lord Yu after he spent 13 years surveying the nation.

In Today's Shaoxing, Zhejiang Province, namely, the ancient Kuaiji Commandary, there is a monument in remembrance of Lord Yu. Kuaijishan Mountain would be where Yu convened the vassals. Lord Yu was buried on Kuaijishan Mountain when he died. There was an ancient claim that during Song Dynasty, Kuaiji people, when rebuilding the Yu Pilgrimage, dug up some one hundred pieces of jade articles ('gui') that were considered instruments of power conferrals for vassals.

Also to be noted would be the fact that early Chinese history recorded that people from the ancient Wa Japan claimed that they were the descendants of 'Tai Bo' and called themselves by the ancient title of '*Da Fu*'. Tai Bo wanted to yield the succession to his brother because the ancient mandate said that the son of Tai Bo's brother (Ji Li) would be the future lord of Zhou people. Ji Li's son would be Ji Chang, i.e., Zhou King Wenwang posthumously. The ancient books also recorded that Wa Japan must be situated to the east of Kuaiji Commandary. Chen Shou's *San Guo Zhi* recorded that the rice culture people living on the western coast of Japan around the 2-3rd centuries were recorded to have tattoos over their body, in a similar fashion to the Zhejiang people in Yantze Delta where the descendants of King Shaokang of Xia Dynasty (21-16th c. BC) had lived. (My speculation is that ancient Wa Japanese with Tai Bo lineage had been wiped out or assimilated into the later immigrants from Korea.

An Zhimin, at carleton.ca/~bgordon/Rice/papers/zhimin84.htm , wrote about "EFFECT OF PREHISTORIC CULTURES OF THE LOWER YANGTZE RIVER ON ANCIENT JAPAN", with speculation about pre-Han-Dynasty contacts.)

Sima Qian, in comments about the length of Min-Yue & Dong-Yue Statelets (see [Vietnamese & Southerners](#) section for details), said the 'Yue' People must have inherited Lord Yu's spirits. One claim would put all Yue people, i.e., Bai Yue or Hundred Yue Peoples, in the same lineage as Lord Yu's descendants. Min-Yue & Dong-Yue were related to so-called 'Gu-yue' or Ancient Yue Statelet located in Hangzhou, Zhejiang Prov. After Han Emperor Wudi defeated Min-Yue of Fuzhou and Dong-Ou or Eastern Ou (Dong-Yue) of Wenzhou, there existed a remnant statelet called Xi-Ou or Western Ou.

Xia Chronology

Sima Qian's *Shi Ji* and the Bamboo Annals both cited the traditional saying that Xia Dynasty, with and without kingship, had lasted 471 years. Ban Gu's *Han Shu* stated that Xia-hou-shi, with 17 kings, had lasted 432 years. Scholar Huang Shilin cited the recent excavation of a Western Han Dynasty tomb in Mt Yinqueshan area, Linyi, Shandong and the discovery of ancient classics *Liu Tao* in rebutting the traditional view. *Liu Tao* historically claimed that Xia Dynasty possessed 31 kings from Yu to Jie. Scholar Huang Shilin hence concurred with Bamboo Annals' statement that Xia Dynasty possessed more years than Shang Dynasty though it recorded only 17 kings. By setting the Shang-tang overthrow of Xia King Jie in the 18th cent BC, Huang Shilin speculated that the start of Xia would be somewhere like 24th cent BC by adding up 629 years of the Shang Dynasty. (The way to compromise different count of years, in my opinion, would probably be lying in the inclusion of anterior years or not. Scholar Kwang-chih Chang proposed in 1980s an emphasis on horizontal diagnosis of Xia-Shang-Zhou peoples instead of vertical, which was to acknowledge the existence of a certain 'Anterior Xia', 'Anterior Shang' and 'Anterior Zhou'. Scholar Hu Yueqian proposed that Xia studies must be built upon Shang studies because of the close relations between the two groups of people.)

Yu's son, Qi(3), founded Xia Dynasty. After Qi's death, his son, Taikang, succeeded him. Taikang made Zhenxun as his capital. However, Taikang was fond of hunting and did not take care of business. When Taikang went to south of Luo River for hunting, the tribal leader of the Yi people, Houyi (You-qiong-shi clan, a legendary figure famous for his long arms and shooting down the suns), staged a coup d'etat and lined up his forces on the northern bank of Luo River to force Taikang into exile. Five Taikang brothers and their mother made a song on the north bank of Luo, calling for the return of Taikang. Houyi made Taikang's brother (Zhongkang) a king. But Houyi, after Zhongkang's death, would stage another coup to overthrow Zhongkang's son, Xiang. Later, a general under Houyi, Hanzhuo, would usurp power by killing Houyi and usurped You-qiong-shi throne. Hanzhuo took over Houyi's woman and born two sons who were renowned for their strength. To prevent the Xia or

Xia Dynasty 21 - 16th cent BC
Qi
Taikang
Zhongkang
Xiang
Shaokang
Di Zhu
Di Kui (Fen)

Huaxia people from claiming power again, Hanzhuo would send one of his sons to kill Xiang. Xiang's woman, of You-nai-shi (You-reng-shi?) clan, fled to her home and born Shaokang. Shaokang would survive by escaping to the tribe where the descendants of Lord Shun (another Yi tribe) lived. A Xia remnant minister, Mi, fled to You-ge-shi clan, and he organized forces and finally defeated Hanzhuo. Mi erected Shankang as the lord. Shaokang's son, Zhu, would first invent the **shields** to counter the sharp arrows from the Yi people who were renowned for hunting and shooting. Zhu's son would be Hui (Fen), Hui's son would be Mang, Mang's son would be Xie, Xie's son would be Buxiang, Buxiang's brother would be Jiong, and Jiong's son would be Jin. After Jin would be Buxiang's brother, Kongjia. Kongjia would be fond of '*gui shen*' (ghosts and gods) and indulged himself lasciviously. Xia-hou-shi virtues declined, and vassals challenged the statelet. Kongjia's son would be Gao, Gao's son would be Fa, and Fa's son would be Lügui (Jie).

Di Mang
Di Xie
Di Buxiang
Di Jiong
Di Jin
Di Kongjia
Di Gao
Di Fa
Di Lügui (Jie)

The above historical events pointed to the eastern Henan Prov and western Shandong Prov, traditional land of the Dong-yi people, as the theater of struggles between the Xia people and Dong-yi people. Last Xia King Jie himself was driven to Chao-hu Lake of Anhui Prov, to the southeast of Henan Prov.

After four hundreds of years, Xia Dynasty ended in 1766 BC in the hands of Jie who was said to have mistreated his people. The person who overthrew Jie would be called Shang-Tang, a tribal leader of the Yi people, whose ancestor (Xie) had worked under Lord Yu in controlling the floods. Likewise, the ancestor of later Qin Empire served in the same rank as Xie in fighting the floods and hence was conferred the family name of 'Ying', with a water sign as part of the character. Research shows that ancestors of both Shang and Qin dynasties belonged to the same Yi tribal group. Jie once called upon Shang-Tang and imprisoned him in Xiatai prison, located in Yangdi, Henan Prov. Jie then released Shang-Tang. Shang-Tang rallied vassals and defeated Jie. Jie, with his queen Meixi (a You-shi-shi woman), fled across the River to You-chao-hu Lake

in Anhui Prov.

The dynasty name of 'Xia' did not go away. There would ensue a short Hunnic dynasty called Xia, lasting through AD 407-431. The Huns claimed that they were the descendants of the Xiahou (namely, Xia descendants) people, and Uygurs claimed descendancy from Chunwei, the son of last Xia lord. Sima Qian mentioned that Jie was banished to Henan Province and died there years later. Jie's son took over his father's dowager queen and fled northward to become the ancestor of later Huns on the steppe. (Liu Qiyu pointed out that the Xia people, similar to Huns and Turks, had adopted the ancient 'concubine inheritance system', i.e., the successors of nobles or lords would take over their fathers' concubines and wives instead of forcing those women to be buried with their late husbands.) Still another dynasty would be the later Xixia Kingdom (i.e., Western Xia, AD 1032-1227) led by the Dangxiang (i.e., Tanguts). History recorded that there evolved eight Qiangic tribes by the time of Five Dynasties (AD 907-960), with one tribal group carrying the old Toba name. The Toba Qiangic people claimed that the founder of Xia Dynasty (21-16th c. BC) came from the Western Rong area, namely, the dwelling place of the Qiangs from the time of Lords Yao-Shun-Yu. Dangxiang's Xia could also derive from the title of Duke of Xiazhou Prefecture as conferred by Tang Dynasty's emperor.

Shang Dynasty

According to Sima Qian's *Shi Ji*, the ancestor of the Shang people was named Xie, a son of Lord Diku. Legend said that Xie was born after his mother, Jiandi (Yousong-shi woman, a statelet located in Yuncheng of Shanxi Prov), swallowed an egg of a black bird (swallow). Lord Yao conferred Xie the post of 'si tu' and the last name of 'Zi'. Lord Shun conferred Xie the land of Shang (later Shangluo County) for aiding Yu in flood control. Fourteen generation descendant would be Tang (Shang-Tang), also named 'Tian Yi' or 'Heavenly Yi'. (During Xia and Shang dynasties, the lords were called Wang or King, but named Di or modern sense overlord or emperor posthumously. Since 'Heaven' was considered a Di, Shang-Tang was called 'Heavenly Yi'.) The character 'Tang(1)' means purging evils, literally speaking.

Shang Dynasty 16 - 11th cent BC
Ch'ng-t'ang (Tang)
Wai Bing
Zhong Ren
T'ai-chia (Tai Jia)
Wu-ling (Ao Ding)

Shang-Tang was conferred the post of *fang bo* (i.e., leading vassal Count) by Xia king. (Scholar Fu Sinian studied the bronze inscriptions, i.e., *jin wen*, from Zhou times and concluded that the ancient five rankings of duke, marquis, count, viscount, and baron did **not** conform with bronze inscriptions or classics such as *Shang Shu* or *Shi Jing*. Fu Sinian stated that duke-gong, count-bo, viscount-zi, and baron-nan were originally used within a royal family as rankings; governmentally, 'bo' or count was the leader of a conferred fief while 'hou' or marquis was for denoting the vassal guarding border posts.) At Xia-Shang times, vassals were designated by the character 'fang' (i.e., domain), including Gui-fang (steppe nomads) in the north (? most likely Shanxi Prov), Qiang-fang (Qiangic shephards) in the west, Ji-fang (Xia remnants) in southern Shanxi Prov, and Ren-fang (human domain) on Shandong Peninsula in the east. Ancient title for 'Count' might not be of same level as that in Europe and should be **higher** than marquis in Shang-Zhou times.

Shang-Tang first campaigned against Ge-bo (Count of Ge). Shang-Tang obtained a minister called Yi Yin (Ah Heng or Yi Zhi) after paying five visits to him. When last Xia Dynasty King (Jie) was corrupt and lascivious, a vassal called Kunwu-shi rebelled. Shang-tang first assembled vassals and quelled Kunwu-shi rebellion, and then campaigned against Xia King Jie in the name of 'shang di' (i.e., Lord Highness). Shang-tang defeated Jie at the ruins of You-song (Yuncheng, Shanxi Prov); Jie fled to Mingtiao (ancient Puzhou prefecture) where he was defeated again by Shang-Tang; Shang-Tang continued on to defeat Jie at Sanchun (Dingtao or Jiyin of ancient Caozhou); and Jie fled to You-cao or Caohu Lake of Anhui Prov in the southeast. Ancient classics claimed that Shang-Tang had conducted altogether 11 major campaigns before he took over the overlordship of China. Scholar Luo Xianglin claimed that Shang people had asserted control over the Xia people via

T'ai-k [^] ng (Tai Geng)
Hsiao-chia (Xiao Jia)
Yung-chi (Yong Ji)
T'ai-wu (Tai Wu)
Chung-ting (Zhong Ding)
Wai-j [^] n (Wai Ren)
Tsien-chia (He Dan Jia)
Tsu-yi (Zu Yi)
Tsu-hsin (Zu Xin)
Ch'iang-chia (Ao Jia)
Tsu-ting (Zu Ding)
Nan-k [^] ng (Nan Geng)
Hu-chia (Yang Jia)
P'an-k [^] ng (Pan Geng)
Hsiao-hsin (Xiao

advanced weaponry: **bows**.

Shang Dynasty passed the power to brothers mostly. The interesting thing about the overlords (Di4) of Shang Dynasty would be their using the names of 10 Celestial Stems for their given names, including jia, yi, bing, ding, wu, ji, geng, xin, ren, gui.

When Shang-Tang died, his son, Taiding, already died. Taiding's brother, Waibing, was selected. Three years later, Waibing's brother, Zhongren, was enthroned. 4 years later, Yi Yin selected Taiding's son, Taijia, as the 'Di' (overlord). During the third year of Taijia's rule, Yi Yin exiled the lord outside of the capital and took over reign as 'Shang Regent-Protector' for three years. After Taijia repented over his deeds, Yi Yin welcomed the Shang king back to the capital. Yi Yin wrote three sections of 'Taijia Mottos' to praise Taijia's virtues. Yi Yin named Taijia's imperial title as 'Tai Zong' (i.e., grand ancestor). Yi Yin died during the reign of Aoding (Taijia's son), and Shang Dynasty buried Yi Yin at 'Bo' the capital, using the lord rituals.

Xin)
Hsiao-yi (Xiao Yi)
Wu-ting (Wu Ding)
Tsu-k ^{ng} (Zu Geng)
Tsu-chia (Zu Jia)
Lin-hsin (Lin Xin)
K'ang-tin (Geng Ding)
Wu-yi (Wu Yi)
W ⁿ -wu-ting (Tai Ding)
Ti-yi (Yi Li)
Di Xin (Xin)

Alternative records, including *Zhu Shu Ji Nian* [Bamboo Annals], claimed that Taijia killed Yi Yin; however, excavations from Shang Ruins had exhibited a high respect for Yi Yin in the burial. Scholar Li Xueqin, in his dissertation on "*Zhu Shu Ji Nan* and Xia Dynasty", claimed that Bamboo Annals was biased in descriptions of usurpations & tyrants and might have fabricated historical events to serve the purpose of illegitimate Warring States time period, with anti-history stories like Yi Yin's adultery with last Xia Lord Jie's queen Mei-xi or like Yi Yin's exiling Shang King Taijia for 7 years and subsequent Taijia's execution of Yi Yin as revenge. Li Xueqin stated that Shang oracle bones had high

compliments for Yi Yin and Bamboo Annals was deliberately mutating history to serve the purpose of usurpation. Hence, Bamboo Annals' accounts of Xia King Qi's killing Yi or the usurpations of Shun vs Yao & Yu vs Shun should be questioned for its authenticity.

After Aoding will be brother Taigeng. Taigeng's son will be Xiaojia. Xiaojia's brother is Yongji. Vassals refused to pay respect to Yongji. Yongji's brother is Taiwu. Taiwu used Yi Yin's son, Yi She, as prime minister. Shang prestige improved, and vassals came to pay respect again. Taiwu was given imperial title as '*Zhong Zong*' (i.e., middle ancestor).

Taiwu's son would be Zhongding. Zhongding relocated the capital to Ao (Aocang, Henan Prov). Brother Hedanjia was his prime minister. Zuyi (son of brother Hedanjia) moved to Geng (Gengxiang, Pishi-xian County, Henan Prov). After Lord Zhongding died, brother Wairen was enthroned. After Wairen would be brother Hedanjia. At the time of Lord Hedanjia, Shang Dynasty declined in prestige again. After Hedanjia would be son Zuyi. At the time of Lord Zuyi, Shang Dynasty rose in prestige. After Zuyi would be his son Zuxin. After Zuxin would be brother Aojia. After Aojia would be the son of brother Zuxin, i.e., Zuding. After Zuding would be son of brother Aojia, i.e., Nangeng. After Nangeng would be son of brother Zuding, i.e., Yangjia. At the time of Lord Yangjia, Shang Dynasty declined in prestige once again. Historians commented that Shang declined ever since Lord Zhongding due to the frequent deposing and usurpation of lords among brothers and nephews.

After Yangjia would be brother Pan'geng. Pan'geng crossed the Yellow River to the south and relocated the capital back to Bo (Yanshi, Henan), Shang-Tang's old city. Shang people had relocated their capital five times by then. The Shang Dynasty (1765 BC - 1134 BC) ruled parts of northern and central China. Shang people had altogether relocated their capital eight times, possibly related to the Yellow River flooding. (Cai Dongfan stated that the Yellow River was first worked on by Lord Yu and eight hundred years after, the Shang people began to experience the flooding again.) The dynasty moved its capitals in history, to modern Loyang, modern Zhengzhou, and finally to Anyang (called Yin at the time) under Pan'geng the 20th king. During the times of Shang-Tang, its capital city was located at Bo, today's Shangqiu, Henan Province. (Bo was the place where Diku, the father of Xie, had dwelled as the capital.)

After Pangeng would be brother Xiaoxin. At the time of Lord Xiaoxin, Shang Dynasty declined in prestige. After Xiaoxin would be brother Xiaoyi.

After Xiaoyi would be son Wuding (1324-1265 BC ?). Wuding was eager to look for saints to manage the country; Wuding did not talk much for three years; and Wuding located a saint by the name of Fu Sui in the wilderness and made him a prime minister. Shang prestige rose again. Wuding was entitled 'Gao Zong' (i.e., highest ancestor). Wuding's wife would be the famous female warrior of China, Fu Hao, who had led a campaign against ancient Gui-fang (ghost domain) barbarians in the north (either on the northern steppe or still in Shanxi Prov. Fuhao, to campaign in the north, must have passed through Ji-fang, i.e., southern Shanxi Prov where Xia remnants dwelled.) Fu Hao was authenticated by the tomb excavation which was a result of a determination and a perception of a female archaeologist that something deep under Shang Ruins must be lying. That turns out to be Fu Hao's tomb. Good websites about her would be:

<http://www.span.com.au/100women/12.html>

<http://www.ayyx.com/e-fhm.htm>

Interesting about her tomb would be bronze utensils made in Sichuan Province in the west. It shows the kind of close relations Shang people had with peoples in the perimeter. Also noted by Scholar Zhan Quanyou (*The Culture of Nan-zhao & Da-li Statelets*, 2002 edition, Sichuan People's Press, Chengdu, Sichuan) would be the fact that ancient Yunnan Prov people could be the sole supplier of tin for the bronze of Shang Dynasty and succeeding dynasties. We simply could not discount the ancient people's knowledge and contacts with each other. (In the section on China & America, we provided scholarly research into the possibility that Shang people might have migrated towards American continents after their defeat in the hands of Zhou Dynasty.)

After Wuding would be son Zugeng. After Zugeng would be brother Zujia. Zujia was lascivious and Shang declined again. After Zujia would be son Linxin. After Linxin would be brother Gengding. After Gengding would be son Wuyi. Wuyi relocated the capital to the north of the Yellow River; Lord Wuyi was despotic; and Wuyi, while hunting between Yellow River and Wei-shui River, was stricken and killed by lightning for his disdain of the Heaven. After Wuyi would be son Taiding. After Taiding would be son Yili. At the times of Yili, Shang declined.

Yili's elder son was called Wei-zi (Qi2) who was not conferred the crown prince status because Wei-zi's mother was not of noble background. (Ancient classics, *Suo Ying*, claimed that the title of Wei[1] for Wei-zi was the conferred land of Wei[1] for the elder prince.) Junior son of Yili would be Xin, i.e., Lord Zhou4 (Zhouwang).

Cheng-Tang Revolution

Shang-Tang claimed that Lord Highness (Heaven) instructed him to campaign against Xia Lord Jie because of Jie's corruption, lasciviousness and cruelty. Later, Confucius would term it 'Cheng-Tang Revolution' or 'Shang-Tang Revolution', a word that would be used by Dr. Sun Yat-sen in his efforts at overthrowing Manchu rule. With the advice of Yi Yin, Shang-Tang successfully defeated Xia Dynasty and banished the last king of Xia, Jie, to today's Anhui Province. Jie's son would later flee to the northern plains to become ancestors of the Huns. Yi Yin would later live to the age of 100 years and he became mainly responsible for advising four Shang kings.

Pangeng the 20th king moved the capital to Anyang (called Yin at the time). After another eleven kings would come King Zhouwang of Shang Dynasty who finally lost his kingdom to the Zhou people, a tribe from the west, who dwelled in today's Shaanxi or Shenxi Province. The Shang people, unlike earlier Xia people, would be of the origin as the Eastern Yi people. The later Zhou people were said to have migrated to the west of China from the east as well. Qin's ancestor could be traced to Bo Yi under Lord Shun, and Bo Yi assisted Lord Yu in mastering the floods. Shang, Zhou and Qin peoples are all said to be from the east against the Xia people in the west. The last Shang ruler, King Zhouwang, would be a despotic ruler. He killed one marquis (Jiu Hou) and Jiu Hou's daughter because the queen (Jiu Hou's daughter) was not lewd. Another marquis (Er Hou) was killed when he tried to protect Jiu Hou. Count Xibo (i.e., Ji Chang) sighed about the killings, and hence was imprisoned by Shang King Zhouwang. Shang King Zhouwang would kill Xibo's elder son, Boyikao, and made a dish out of Boyikao's flesh for Xibo to eat. Shang King Zhouwang laughed when Xibo ate it without knowing that it was his son's flesh. Xibo was set free only after Xibo's minister bribed Shang King Zhouwang by presenting a beauty.

Mandate Of Heaven

Prince Bigan, son of last Shang Lord Zhouwang, would be deposed for trying to admonish Zhouwang into correcting his deeds. When Count Xibo invaded two Shang vassals called the Qiguo Statelet and Mixu Statelet, Zu Yi, a Shang minister, expressed the worry that the 'Mandate Of Heaven' might change. Zhouwang rebutted Zu Yi, saying that the 'Mandate Of Heaven' was with him the minute he was born. After Xibo (Zhou King Wenwang) passed away, Zhou King Wuwang would rally eight hundred Shang vassals on the bank of the Yellow River, Mengjin. The vassals said to Wuwang, "Shang Lord Zhouwang could be campaigned against by now." Wuwang said, "You guys did not know the 'Mandate Of Heaven' yet."

Shang Lord Zhouwang's brother, Wei-zi, would flee the capital. Zhouwang's son, Prince Bigan, seeing the departure of Wei-zi, would try to persuade Zhouwang again, but was ordered killed by Zhouwang to see whether Bigan's heart had 9 compartments as the saints were said to possess. Zhouwang's uncle, Prince Ji-zi, would pretend to have gone mentally ill, but he was still imprisoned by King Zhouwang. When Shang's chief music ministers, Tai Shi and Shao Shi, fled to Zhou with Shang's ritual instruments, Wuwang said it was time to campaign against Shang Lord Zhouwang. After losing the Battle of Muye, Shang Lord Zhouwang would commit suicide by setting his palace (Lutai, i.e., deer platform) on fire and jumping into fire at the time Wuwang of Zhou invaded Shang capital, Chaoge. Some historians disputed the records about the wars between Shang and Zhou since the dead and defeated would have no chance to let their side of the story be heard. Zhouwang's stories of tyranny and lasciviousness, together with his queen (Da Ji), would be the target of criticism in a popular mythic novel, *Feng Shen Bang* (List of Conferred Gods). His wife, together with the wife of last Xia Lord Jie in the past and the wife of King Youwang of Western Zhou Dynasty in the future, would be condemned as the "female disaster water" that is ironically the immortal topic of all decadent dynasties in China's history.

Wei Chu-Hsien rephrased the Shang-Zhou story as follows: Last Shang Lord King Zhouwang campaigned against 'Ren-fang-guo' statelet on Shandong Peninsula. After defeating Ren-fang-guo, Zhouwang led a few soldiers back to the capital of Chaoge for lunar new year celebration. Upon hearing of Zhouwang's return

with a light force, Zhou Lord Wuwang marched towards Shang capital within six days and nights and encountered Zhouwang at the outskirts of Muye where Zhou army defeated Shang's drunken soldiers. Shang King Zhouwang committed suicide. Zhou Lord Wuwang made Shang Prince Lufu inherit the Shang heritage and then went back to the west. After Wuwang died, Zhou Duke Zhougong assumed the post of a regent for Zhou King Chengwang. In old Shang capital area, Shang Prince Lufu died. Shang Prince Lufu's son, Prince Wugeng, conspired with the brothers of Zhou Wuwang in rebelling against Zhou Regent Zhougong. Zhougong defeated the rebellion and furthermore campaigned against Shang remnants who were left by Shang Lord Zhouwang on Shandong Peninsula's Ren-fang-guo statelet. Shang remnants hence fled towards two directions, one branch to Taiwan Island and the other branch to North America via the Bering Straits. Those Shang people who arrived in North America stationed two chieftans on the east and west sides of the Bering Straits and conferred onto the two chieftans the titles of east-sea and north-sea kings. The east-sea and north-sea kings would become the gods in revised book "*Shan Hai Jing*".

Scholar Luo Xianglin claimed that Zhou people had asserted control over the Shang people via advanced weaponry of **chariots**.

Shang & Zhou Relations

Often neglected would be the oracle or divination inscriptions on bronze utensils left by Zhou people at Mt Qishan. During the earlier reign of Shang Lord Aoding, Zhou people were often campaigned against by Shang Dynasty. But later on, Zhou began to submit to Shang and assist Shang in numerous campaigns against barbarians in Shanxi Prov. Xu Zhuoyun cited Chen Mengjia's research in pointing out that Zhou Taiwang, during Shang Lord Wuyi's reign, relocated to Mt Qishan under the pressure of Doggy Rong; that Zhou lord Jili, during the 34th year reign of Shang King Wuyi, paid pilgrimage to Shang court; that Jili defeated Xiluo-Gui-rong barbarians and captured 20 Di[2] kings the next year on behalf of Shang court but Shang King Wuyi was killed by a lightning around the Wei-shui River; that Jili campaigned against Yanjing-rong but got defeated during the 2nd year reign of Shang King Taiding; that Jili, two years thereafter, defeated Yuwu-rong and received conferral as 'mu shi' (shepherd chancellor) from Shang King; that Jili first campaigned against Shihu-rong during the 7th year reign of Shang King Taiding and against Yitu-rong during the 11th year reign; that Jili was killed by Shang King Wending

(Taiding) thereafter; and that Zhou people began to attack Shang Dynasty during the 2nd year reign of Shang King Di-yi (Yili). Xu Zhuoyun speculated that Shang King most likely died in the hands of Zhou people rather than a lightning in a similar coverup as later Zhou King Zhaowang's death on the Huai-shui River as a complication of conflict with southern barbarians. However, Shang-Zhou relationship had improved since Jili's successor, i.e., Zhou King Wenwang, had again married with Shang princess. Both the mother and the wife of Zhou King Wenwang, per scholar Fu Sinian, were princesses of Shang royal house. Zhou people were conferred the title of 'Xi Bo' (Count of the West) by Shang Dynasty King Zhouwang as a buffer state against the Western nomads.

Zhou King Wuwang's alliance against Shang pointed to the fact that Zhou people, by the timeframe of 1122 BC?, had basically surrounded the Shang people from north, west and south. Having belief and confidence in ancient Chinese interpretation of classics, I will list the following quote to corroborate the fact that Shang was already surrounded by Zhou people before its demise: Generalissimo Cao Cao of Latter Han Dynasty, when advised to usurp Han after murdering two Han empresses consecutively, stated that Zhou King Wenwang had refrained from taking over Shang even though Zhou had already acquired majority land and fiefs of Shang Dynasty.

Duke Song Wei-zi

King Wuwang of Zhou would initially allow Shang King Zhouwang's son, Wugeng, to stay on in the capital to continue Shang's family heredity. (Wei Juxian stated that Wugeng was the son of Shang Prince Lufu.) After the death of Zhou King Wuwang, Archduke Zhou assumed regency for the young nephew king. In the old Shang capital, Wugeng conspired with Zhou King Wuwang's brothers in a coup and hence got executed by Archduke Zhou. Archduke Zhou hence selected the elder brother of Zhouwang, Wei-zi, to inheritate the Shang family line in the land of Song as a duke ('Shang Gong', namely, highest ranking duke). After the death of Duke Song Wei-zi, Wei-zi's brother, Weizhong, inheritated the dukedom. Weizhong would be the ancestor of Confucius (i.e., the fourteenth grandfather of Confucius).

King Bo Of The Rong People

One more legacy of the Shang people would be a group of people in Gansu-Shenxi areas. Qin Lord Wengong would defeat the Rong and gave the land east of Qishan back to Zhou court. Another group of Rong people defeated by Qin

Lord Ningong would be ruled by 'King Bo'. This would be a Xirong lord by the title of 'Bo' in a place called 'Dang(4) She' where the character 'dang' was said to be a mutation of the Shang Dynasty founder, 'Shang-Tang'. Ancient classics said that this group of people claimed heritage from Shang-Tang and used the ancient Shang capital name 'Bo' for the title of their king. Ancient scholar Xu Guang claimed that 'Dang' should be pronounced as 'Tang' for Shang founder, while 'She' was meant for Du-xian county.

Qin Lord Ningong (r. BC 715-704) would defeat King Bo and drove King Bo towards the Rong people during the 3rd year reign, i.e., in 713 BC. Ningong conquered King Bo's Dang-shi clan during the 12th year reign, i.e., 704 BC. Ningong died this year and was buried on Mount Xishan, i.e., Qinlingshan of Chencang.

The compositions of the Rong is complicated. We had touched upon the categories of Western Rong, Doggy Rong, and Rongdi Rong in the Hun section. In light of King Bo, we could say that some descendants or affiliates of Shang would be related to the King Bo's Rong people. (Huangfu Mi of Jinn Dynasty had doubts about King Bo's ancestry in Shang-Tang. Huangfu Mi of Jinn Dynasty treated King Bo as a branch of 'Xi-yi' or Western Yi aliens.)

Shang Civilization

Shang China had been known to later Chinese due to the discovery of the 'oracle bones'. It is widely believed that the Shang Chinese had used the similar materials, bamboos, for writings and recordings. Unfortunately, those perishable materials did not last long. (Recent excavations show that some kind of paper, made of straws and tree coating, was already in use during the Warring States time period, pointing to the possibility that ancient Chinese did not necessarily use bamboos, only, for their writings.)



The tombs excavated would provide an excellent picture of the life and society of Shang China. Human funeral objects point to a very differentiated society, the bronze utensils a high degree of metallurgy, and the bows an art of war quite sophisticated. The Shang Chinese bows would come to be known as the 'Turkish bows' in the west. In the [prehistory.htm](#) section, we mentioned that 'Yi' designation means the Eastern Yi barbarian people who carried the bows.

Shang Chinese had already begun an expansion towards the perimeters of China. They designated four rulers in different directions, with the ancestor of the later Zhou Chinese being conferred the title of 'Xi Bo', i.e., Count of the West. The interpretations of various oracle bones, used as diviners, pointed to reverence for ancestors, prediction of harvest and hunting, and more importantly, the prediction as to success of wars to be launched. The Shang army would be probably the only army allowed on the domain to protect it from barbarians. Charles Hucker, in "*China's Imperial Past*", mentioned that Shang might have altogether 25 fiefs or statelets under its direct control. The number of fiefs or statelets certainly did not count the vassals as far as Sichuan Prov etc. Zhou King Wuwang, during his campaigns against Zhou, had at one time rallied Shang's 800 vassals. The Shang ruler, as commander-in-chief, led this army in campaigns against northern barbarians as well as against those aliens in the Yangtze River area.

Shang Chinese apparently had much sophisticated knowledge about remote lands. Scholar Wei Juxian [Wei Chu-Hsien] analyzed the character 'long' for dragon and derived a conclusion that it was originally in the form of 'king snake' which the ancient Indian circus people brought over to Shang China. Wei Chu-Hsien also analyzed the character for phoenix to derive a conclusion that ancient Indonesians had brought 'jile-niao' peacock kind of red bird to China. Wei Chu-Hsien stated that Shang Chinese, on basis of oracle words "*feng*

(phoenix people) lu (surrender) bai (hundred) ", had at one time received hundreds of turtles from ancient Indonesians and Malasians as tributaries and later used the turtle shell for inscribing oracle characters. Some experts did pick up Wei Juxian's hint and researched into the origin of the turtle shell to derive a conclusion that it might have come from Southeast Asia.

Shang has a very advanced agriculture, with millet, wheat, and barley being the primary crops grown. In addition to the crops, silkworms, pigs, dogs, sheep, and oxen were raised. Shang dynasty was also advanced in metallurgy: bronze, weapons, and tools. Artistic pottery was also excavated from Shang tombs. The Shang dyansty, like previous Xia Dynasty, was an aristocratic society, with a king ruling over the nobility who were responsible for providing military personnel in times of war as well as tributes for supporting the royal family. Underneath the aristocratic class would be the priest class in charge of religion (ancestor worship and worship of gods). Further below would be the free civilians (denoted the Guoren, the city people, in later Zhou dynasty) and the slaves who frequently found themselves buried alive with the dead kings and aristocrats.

In Chinese legends, there were 'Three Huang' and 'Five Di' as overlords. While 'Three Huang' or 'San Huang' are more legendary and mythical figures, the 'Five Di' or 'Wu Di' would be more real time figures. Shang China's ancestor worship and worship of gods cannot be disconnected from those legendary figures. 'San Huang' would be Fuxi, Yandi (Fiery Lord) and Huangdi (Yellow Overlord). Another saying would be 'Heaven Huang', 'Land Huang', and 'Human Huang' or 'Taishan Mountain Huang'. The Three Huangs denotation was embodying the ancient Chinese religious ideas and it could be compared to the trinity in Christianity. Concretely speaking, the relationship between heaven, land and human beings would be the eternal topics of ancient Chinese. The impact could be seen in early dynasties, like Shang, which upheld polytheism and semi-human gods like the ancient Greeks. Conventional history would make a distinction between the polytheism reverance of the Shang people and the Heaven reverance of the Zhou people. This distinction could also be seen in Confucius' saying that Shang people revered and embraced 'gui shen', i.e., 'gui' for ghosts or spirits and 'shen' for gods and lords, while Zhou people revered them but kept a distance from 'gui shen'. Confucius' saying had played a significant role in shaping the mundane nature of Chinese society.

Shang Dynasty's Totem - Bird

One important thing about the Shang people is their totem, a bird called 'Xuan', interpreted as either swallow or phoenix. (Guo Moruo claimed that 'xuan-niao' was phoenix.) Note that the literal meaning of 'xuan' is black, leading to orion.it.luc.edu/~cwinter/blshang2.htm by Clyde Winters who vehemently advocated the school of thought that Shang Chinese were of Negroid origin. The totem bird's color had nothing to do with race or color of skin/hair.

Shang Dynasty people, like the people under ancient Fuxi the Ox Tamer, belonged to the Yi tribal group. Fuxi, aka Tai-hao-shi, was said to be the ancestor of phoenix tribe. "*Zuo Zhuan*" repeatedly stated that Tai-hao-shi, whose ruins were at later Chen-guo fief, had such family names as 'Ren' and 'Su' around the domain of Henan-Shandong provinces. Shandong Province, however, could also be the birth-place of Huangdi (Yellow Lord). Shao-hao-shi (junior 'Hao' clan), said to be offsprings of earlier Tai-hao-shi (senior 'Hao' clan), had included various bird-totem sub-clans such as Feng-niao-shi (phoenix), Xuan-niao-shi (black bird), Qing-niao-shi (green bird), Zhu-jiu-shi, and Shuang-jiu-shi etc. Scholar Wang Zhonghan pointed out that i) Tai-hao-shi and Shao-hao-shi, dwelling around Mt Taishan and the coast, might have absorbed elements from Huangdi tribe of the Yellow River line; and ii) that the character 'Yi' had appeared as Shi-fang statelet in Shang Dynasty's oracle bones; and iii) that by late Spring & Autumn time period, numerous Eastern Yi groups still existed in Shandong-Jiangsu provinces and around Huai-shui River.

Among above-mentioned bird totem people, Xuan-niao-shi meant for the Shang people. According to "*Guo Yü*" and "*Mencius*", the Shang people took pride in Lord Shun being their ancestor. In the land of the east, close to 8-9 groups of 'Yi' people were recorded in ancient times, invariably endorsing 'bird' as their totems. The totem names would be in various colors, like white bird, yellow bird and etc. As pointed out by scholar Zhang Fan in his article, "*Research Into Shang Totems and Confucius Ancestry*", Lord Yu, per "*Mo-zi*", had spread teachings to nine Yi people in the east. Section on Dong-yi of "*Hou Han Shu*" by Ban Gu stated that Yi people included subgroups like Quan-yi [doggy Yi], Yu-yi, Fang-yi, Huang-yi [yellow Yi], Chi-yi [red Yi], Bai-yi [white Yi], Xuan-yi [black Yi], Feng-yi [phoenix Yi], Zi-yi, and Yang-yi [sun Yi] etc, hence incorporating Yi on an inclusive scale. ("*Bamboo Annals*" included additional Huai-yi [Huai-shui River Yi] and Lan-yi [blue Yi]; and "*Yu Gong*" of "*Shang Shu*" mentioned Lai-yi [Laizhou prefecture Yi].) Zhang Fan cited another scholar's research in stating

that the colors of yellow, white and red etc were designations of the clothing of the Yi people, only.

Shang's totem would be a topic during Zhou's succession of Shang as the sentence "Phoenix Singing In Mount Qishan (Zhou's homeland)" goes, meaning the power totem would change hands. (Today's dragon dancing, as seen in Chinatowns during the spring festivals, is a much later phenomenon. It would be Han Fei the legalist who described to Qin's First Emperor Shihuangdi the kind of prickly skin a dragon had. Han's first emperor Liu Bang would be said to be an incarnation of a red dragon who cut a white snake into two halves while he was on the road of taking refuge after he set free convicts of the Qin Empire. Complicating the matter of the dragon reverence would be the fact that early Huns called their city of pilgrimage 'long cheng', i.e., dragon city, and they had an annual gathering for revering dragons. Should we say the Huns were true descendants of dragon?)

Chinese Ethnicity

Often misinterpreted would be two words in "*Shi Ji*": 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min'. 'Qian Shou' means dark head. 'Qian' would be used as an alias for Guizhou Province in the south, and it means dark or black. 'Li Min' or 'Limin' means the people whose face had turned darkish and became brown. Both terms were used for designating the lower level people. I noticed one or two claims (including Clyde Winters) on the internet saying that the Chinese people being ruled were of Negroid origin and that the 'Li Min' term validated this fact. (Clyde Winters cited a late Chinese scholar called Kwang-chi Chang, i.e. Guangzhi Zhang, in supporting his claim. I read through Zhang's article on early dynasties and noticed only one definite statement in regards to 'dwarfs' or pygmy people who had at one time shown their presence on the Chinese continent.) Clyde Winters claim is fallacious the same way as those who claimed that the rulers of China, Zhou or Qin, were of Caucasoid origin and they ruled the Mongoloid people. I deem both sayings as fallacious.

My interpretations would be based on the following quotes and citations. "*Shi Ji*" recorded that Qin's second emperor (Huhai) had once rebutted Li Shi's loyalty by citing Lord Yu's hardwork on behalf of Lord Shun. Huhai said that Lord Yu had spent years travelling around the country for sake of flood control and that Lord Yu's face had turned 'li hei', that is, the kind of **brownish darkness**. Also on record would be Li Shi's self account by calling himself a

'qian shou' or 'qianshou', i.e., a civilian. "*Haan Fei Zi*" said that the working people possessed hardened palms and 'li' face as a result of hard work and that they should be ascribed big contributions to the society. Later records in 4-5th century continued to use the word 'li' or 'zheng li' (steaming or sweating li people) for designating the masses. (The character 'zheng', per Chinese dictionary, means a huge number, but I would rather interpret it on basis of its original meaning, i.e., steam. This character was also used for the relationship between a man or emperor and his father's concubine.)

To dispel 'hair' extrapolation, I will give two good examples to show that Qin/Zhou Chinese were not color-blind people. The blackness, coined in 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min', was related to the skin, not the hair. When Qin Mugong repented over his mistake in invading Zheng Principality which had led to the ambush disaster at the Battle of Xiao'er, he used the characters 'huang fa fan fan' (white hair turning yellowish) to describe the high age of his two counsellors, Jian Shu and Baili Xi. Both old men, 80-90 years old, had objected to Mugong's war against Zheng in the first place. The second example would be the reference to Daoist founder, Lao-zi, as *Huang Lao*. Lao-zi was recorded to have grown yellow beard and he was called Huang Lao or the Yellow Elderly. This shows that ancient Chinese did know the difference between 'huang' (yellow) and black. The universal feature of 'black' hair was not something that would have deserved a special coding in the terms of 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min'. 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min' meant nothing other than brownish dark skin as a result of sunlight exposure, not hair !!!

Then, what was ancient Chinese hair color after all? A dumb question. Today's Chinese are direct descendants of ancient Chinese. To dispell any speculation, I will list the following sentence as a proof that ancient Chinese took pride in hair's density and blackness as beauty and health: In classics "*Zuo Zhuan*", during the 28th year reign of Lu Lord Zhaogong, a statement was made to infer that in the old times, a You-reng-shi woman bore a beautiful daughter, with 'zhen[3] hei[1]' (i.e., dense and black) hair.

ZHOU DYNASTY

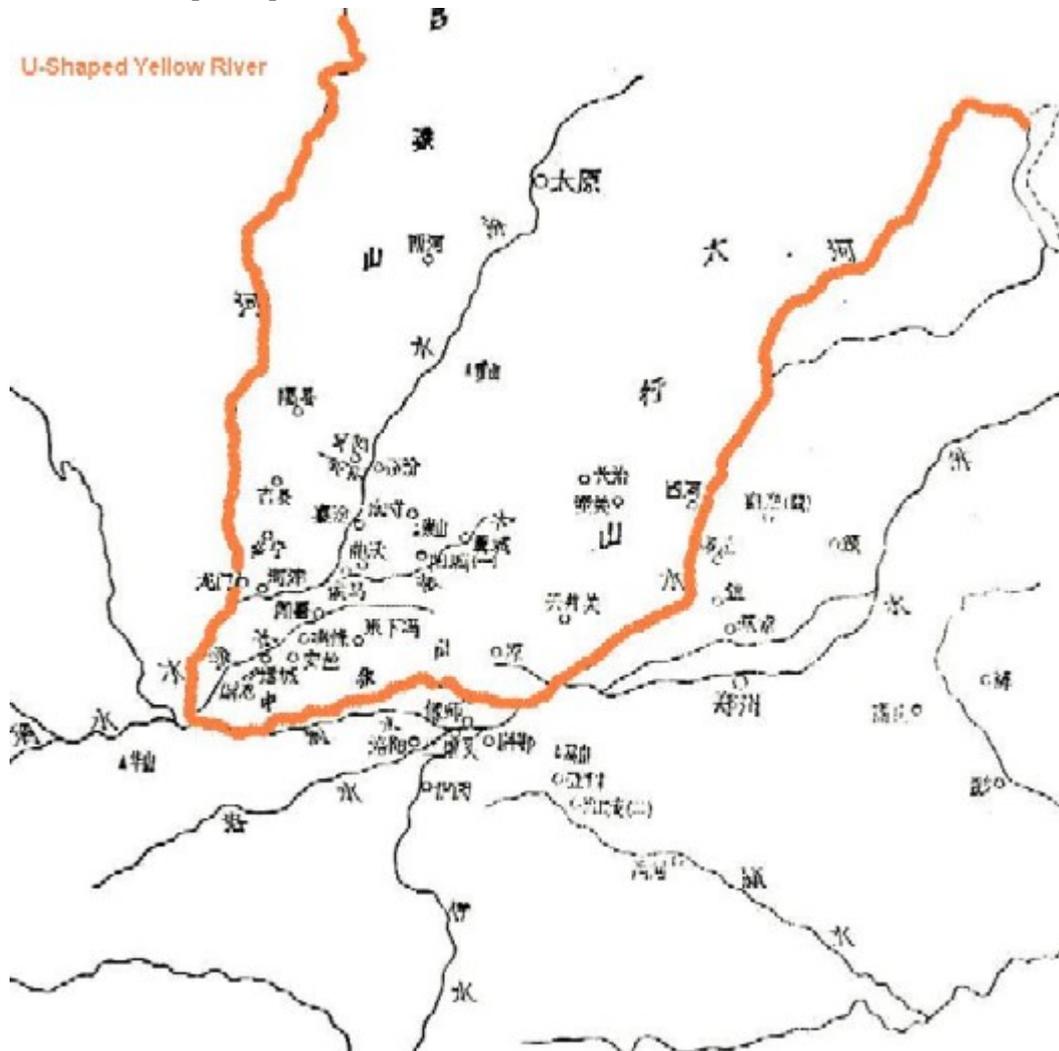
The people of Zhou Dynasty lived in an area that was considered to be the dwelling place of the Xirong & Rongdi, somewhere in western Shaanxi Prov, near Gansu border. In another sense, the original Chinese 3000 years ago could not be much different from the Xirong & Rongdi at all. While ancient Chinese were considered sedentary with fixing places like cities and castles, the Xirong & Rongdi barbarians remained nomadic, constantly on the move. In both Shenxi (Shaanxi) and Shanxi Province, records had shown that the Xirong & Rongdi barbarians and the ancient Chinese co-habitated in an interspersing way. Charles Hucker, in "China's Imperial Past", made a speculation about the distinction between the sedentary and nomadic ways of life in China's northern areas, around the Yellow River line, at the time of early history: That is, the two ways of life had existed among both the Xia-ren or Chinese and the nomadic peoples; both groups of peoples had partial agriculture and partial husbandry in the area; it was due to the Xia Chinese building up walled states that led to the polarization of the two ways of life.

The Zhou people, counted as a vassal of the Shang Chinese, were living among the barbaric west. According to *Shi Ji*, Zhou's ancestor could be traced to Houji, the Chinese god or father of agriculture. Houji, like Shang ancestor Xie, was the son of ancient overlord Diku. Houji's mother was named Jiang Yuan, a You-tai-shi (Fufeng and Wugong, Shenxi Prov) woman, carrying Fiery Lord tribal name. (Later statelets of Qi, Shen, Xu and Lü all belonged to the Jiang family. Zhou people, said to be descendants of Xia people, had intermarriage with Jiang-surname Qiangic Fiery Lord tribe, which would be a prevalent way of Ji-Jiang marriage among early Chinese.) Legend said that Houji was born after his mother stepped onto the footprints of a giant and that Houji, being deserted to the mountains and lakes by his mother, was taken care of by beasts and birds. Both Lord Yao and Lord Shun used Houji as the master of agriculture. Lord Yao conferred Houji the last name of 'Ji', meaning origin. Confucius had commented on the story of You-ji-shi clan. After Xia King Taikang lost his throne, Houji's son (Buzhu) left for Rong & Di land with the abandonment of the agriculture post by Xia Dynasty . Another two generations will be Gongliu who renewed

agriculture in Rong & Di land. This renewal would be a basis for a claim that Zhou people had consecutively changed their mode of life. Gongliu's son (Qingjie) set up a statelet in a place called 'Bin', in today's western Shenxi Province, a place belonging to Xirong. ('Bin' was disputed by some scholars to be still in Shanxi Prov rather than Shenxi Prov.) Another eight generations or three hundred years would be Zhou's founder, Gugong (aka Tanfu). Gugong, being attacked by Rong & Di and Xunyu barbarians, would relocate to Qishan. The people of 'Bin' followed him to Qishan. Gugong abolished Rong & Di customs, built city in a plain called Zhou-yuan under the foot of Qishan, and devised five posts of *si tu*, *si ma*, *si kong*, *si shi*, & *si kou* per Shang Dynasty system. (Some scholars disputed the five posts since bronze inscriptions did not add up to the five counts.) Gugong declared their statelet 'Zhou'. Gugong is also known as 'Zhou King Taiwang' (grand king) posthumously. Gugong's elder son, 'Tai Bo', went to Zhejiang's Yantze Delta (Meili Village, Wuxi County, Changzhou, Jiangsu) for sake of launching own statelet. (Xu Zhuoyun speculated that Tai Bo was deliberately dispatched to the Yangtze Delta as a tactics to circumvent and attack the Shang Dynasty from both directions.) Tai Bo wanted to yield the succession to his brother because the ancient mandate said that the son of Tai Bo's brother (Ji Li) would be the future lord of Zhou people. Ji Li's mother was called Tai-jiang, a Jiang surname woman of You-tai-shi clan. (Xu Zhuoyun cited scholar Liu Qiyi's research of 'jin wen' or bronze inscriptions in stating that 12 kings of Western Zhou Dynasty had inter-married with Jiang-surname women consecutively.) Ji Li's son, born by Zhi-ren-shi or Zhi-zhong-shi woman, would be Ji Chang, i.e., Zhou King Wenwang or Count Xibo, who was said to have possessed four nipples, and Zhou King Wenwang was recorded to be bird-nosed, tiger-shouldered, and dragon-faced.

A mediocre sinologist error would be to claim that Zhou people originated from the west or the Central Asia. The 'west' story could have derived from two inputs: Zhou people's locality to the west of Xia and Shang people, and Zhou King Wuwang's claim as people from the west. As we detailed below, when Zhou Lord Wuwang campaigned against last Shang King Zhouwang, he eulogized his alliance's bravery by calling his armies the "people from the west". (Zhou King Wuwang's alliance also pointed to the fact that Zhou people, by the timeframe of 1122 BC?, had basically surrounded the Shang people from north, west and south.) Scholar Liu Qiyu, in anthology *Hua Xia Civilization*, tackled the issue of 'xi' or west. His validations pointed to the land of 'he qu' (i.e., the inflexion point of the Yellow River Bends) as the 'land of the west', i.e, later land between

Qin and Jinn principalities.



Liu Qiyu cited *Guo Yu's* statement in regards to You-yu-shi as proof that Yu clan had deep connection with Xia people. The statement from *Guo Yu* could be paraphrased like this: "In ancient times, Count Chong-bo Gun also reigned in the land of You-yu-shi clan." Count Chong-bo Gun was the father of Lord Yu and dwelled in southern or southwestern Shanxi Prov, i.e., the east bank of today's East Yellow River Bend. You-yu-shi clan's locality, considered the second 'Xia Ruins' in archaeology, would be in today's eastern Henan Prov, i.e., Hancheng (west bank of the today's East Yellow River Bend) and Pucheng (west bank of Luo-shui River). This shows that Xia people had in fact dwelled on both banks of the Yellow River plus the inflexion point in northeastern Henan Prov. Today's East Yellow River Bend was known as 'Xi-he' or western river because the Yellow River did not flow horizontally into the sea via Shandong Prov but made a

eastern bend northward for exit into the sea via Hebei Prov. Liu Qiyu researched into ancient classics *Mu Shi* (i.e., Oath of War at Muye) and concluded that Zhou King Wuwang's reference to 'xi tu' would be the land to the west of later Tongguan Pass of eastern Shanxi Prov.

Zhou People's Origin

Zhou ancestor Buzhu, i.e., Houji's son, left for Rong & Di land after Xia Dynasty abandoned agriculture post. Some confusion existed as to the place Buzhu had left for, either somewhere still in southwestern Shanxi Prov or somewhere across the Yellow River in Shanxi Prov. Xu Zhuoyun, in *Xi Zhou Shi* (i.e., History of Western Zhou Dynasty, 1973 edition, Lianjing Publishing House, Taipei, Taiwan), stated that Zhou ancestors, per scholar Qian Mu 1931 dissertation, migrated westward to Shanxi Prov from Shanxi Prov. Xu Zhuoyun cited Ban Gu's *Hou Han Shu* in stating that Fen-yin area of southern Shanxi Prov, possessing a temple in the name of Zhou ancestor Houji, should be Zhou people's original habitation area. Xu Zhuoyun listed 16 sentences in Shang Dynasty's divination and oracle records to prove that Shang people, at the reign of Shang Dynasty King Aoding, had instructed subordinate tribes in campaigning against Zhou people and speculated that Zhou ancestors must have lived around southern Shanxi province, a place to the northeast of the inflexion point of the Yellow River. Liu Qiyu pointed out that after the demise of Xia, whoever stayed in Shanxi/Shenxi provinces continued to call themselves 'Xia' people. First Zhou King Wenwang eulogized the eastward flow of Feng-shui River to Lord Yu's accomplishment and numerous Zhou Dynasty records stated that they were descendants of Xia Dynasty founder Lord Yu.

Shang & Zhou Relations

Often neglected would be the oracle or divination inscriptions on bronze utensils left by Zhou people at Mt Qishan. During the earlier reign of Shang King Aoding, Zhou people were often campaigned against by Shang Dynasty. But later on, Zhou began to submit to Shang and assist Shang in numerous campaigns against barbarians in Shanxi Prov. Xu Zhuoyun cited Chen Mengjia's research in pointing out that Zhou Taiwang, during Shang King Wuyi's reign, relocated to Mt Qishan under the pressure of Doggy Rong; that Zhou Lord Ji Li [Ji-li or Jili], during the 34th year reign of Shang King Wuyi, paid pilgrimage to Shang court; that Jili defeated Xiluo-Gui-rong barbarians and captured 20 Di[2] kings the next year on behalf of Shang court but Shang King Wuyi was killed by a lightning around the Wei-shui River; that Jili campaigned against Yanjing-

rong barbarians but got defeated during the 2nd year reign of Shang King Taiding; that Jili, two years thereafter, defeated Yuwu-rong barbarians and received conferral as 'mu shi' (shepherd chancellor) from Shang King; that Jili first campaigned against Shihu-rong barbarians during the 7th year reign of Shang King Taiding and against Yitu-rong barbarians during the 11th year reign; that Jili was killed by Shang King Wending (Taiding) thereafter; and that Zhou people began to attack Shang Dynasty during the 2nd year reign of Shang King Di-yi (Yili). Xu Zhuoyun speculated that Shang King most likely died in the hands of Zhou people rather than a lightning in a similar coverup as later Zhou King Zhaowang's death on the Huai-shui River as a complication of conflict with southern barbarians. However, Shang-Zhou relationship had improved since Jili's successor, i.e., Zhou King Wenwang, had again married with Shang princess. Both the mother and the wife of Zhou King Wenwang, per scholar Fu Sinian, were princesses of Shang royal house. Zhou people were conferred the title of 'Xi Bo' (Count of the West) by Shang Dynasty King Zhouwang as a buffer state against the Western nomads.

Zhou's Feudal System

Charles Hucker had another point, namely, Zhou Dynasty's system is exactly the same feudal system as the Medieval Europe, except for one distinction: Zhou's feudal statelets shared a blood relationship with the Zhou king, either through hereditary rights or inter-marriages. This assertion has its historical merits because China's academics, under the influence of the so-called 'historical materialism', treats the first Chinese Empire of Qin as the start of the feudal society while anything preceding it as 'slave society'. Zhou's feudal system, in fact, never fully died away, except for a short time period of the Qin Empire during which time the 'Jun-Xian System' (namely the Commandary-County System) was erected after Emperor Shihuangdi first united China under an autocratic centralized rule. The end of Qin marked a restoration of various Zhou statelets or dukedoms, and early Han Dynasty continued with the conferral of Kings and Dukes. Emperors of later dynasties frequently played with the game of upgrade and downgrade of the feudal titles between king and duke.

Zhou Kings As Moral, Political, Military & Familial Leaders:

Zhou King Wuwang's campaign against the Shang Dynasty in the 11th century BC had been glorified by later historians and rulers. Charles Hucker treated the

success in capturing Chaoge (the Shang capital) as nothing other than a looting. <http://www.chinaknowledge.de/Literature/Diverse/encyclopedias.htm> also disputed Shang China's influence as extending nowhere beyond its capital which we called by the name of 'Shang Wastes' or 'Shang Ruins'. My opinion is that we should treat ancient Chinese overlords as moral, political, military and familial leaders; hence, both Shang and Zhou government had adopted a kind of 'laissez fair' attitude in governing the domain and vassals. Zhou King Wuwang, after his success in defeating Shang, went back to his home in western China. Further, he allowed two of his brothers (Guan-shu and Cai-shu) to stay on in Shang capital together with the Shang prince (Lufu). After King Wuwang's death, his brother, Duke Zhou, would assume the post of a regent, and this led to the rebellion of Shang people (under Shang Prince Wugeng) and the two Zhou brothers. It would be Duke Zhou who would be responsible for quelling the rebellion, and further Duke Zhou took measures to exert Zhou influence throughout China proper, extending influences and rules via re-zoning of vassalage and conferring of duke and marquis titles. For the first time, Duke Zhou (Zhougong) laid out the blueprint of a relatively uniform society that will continue on for one millennium. Xun-zi commented that Zhougong had re-zoned the land into 71 vassals, with 53 carrying the Zhou surname of 'Ji(1)'.

Early Zhou kings are the true commander-in-chief. They were in constant wars with barbarians on behalf of the fiefs called 'guo', namely, statelet or principality. Charles Hucker noted that Zhou had 14 standing royal armies, with 6 stationed in Haojing, near today's Xi'an, and 8 armies stationed in the east. Zhou King Zhaowang (r. 1052-1001 BC) was famous for repeated campaigns in the Yangtze areas and died in his last action. Zhou King Muwang (r. 1001-946 BC) was a legendary figure famous for fightings in the west and maybe today's Central Asia where he met and rendezvous on Kunlun Mountain with so-called Xi Wang Mu, namely, Queen Mother of the West, rumored by the western historians, including Charles Hucker, to be Queen of Sheba. (The actual place for Kunlun Mountains would be somewhere close to today's Jiuquan County, Gansu Province. Mt Kunlun, extending for almost 2000 miles, from Kara-Kunlun bordering Tibet in the west to Qilian Mountain in the east, was a source of many Chinese myths and legends.) Later kings' campaigns were less effective. King Liwang (r. 878 - 827 BC) led 14 armies against barbarians in the south but failed to achieve any victory. King Xuanwang (r 827-782 BC) fought the Jiangrong nomads in vain. King Youwang was killed by Quanrong and capital Haojing was sacked.

Zigzags With Rong & Di Barbarians

In the hun.htm section, I had expounded the ethnic nature of various Rong-di people, cleared the dispute in regards to the ethnicity of 'Rong' people, and proven that Rong people, being mainly Sino-Tibetan speaking Qiangic people, shared the same blood-line as Xia Chinese but differed in 'Culture' such as cuisine, clothing, money and language. At times of Zhou Dynasty, pockets of nomadic tribes and statelets still existed in the hearts of the Yellow River area and on Shandong Peninsula, as in the case of Di Statelet, Chi Di Statelet & Sou Man's Chang-di Statelet etc.

Count of West, Xibo, namely, Zhou Ancestor Ji Chang, once attacked the Doggy Rongs (said to be same as Xianyun barbarian on the steppe). Dozen years later, Zhou King Wuwang exiled the Rongs north of the Jing & Luo Rivers. The Rongs were also called Huangfu at the time, a name to mean their 'erratic submission'. 200 years later, Zhou King Muwang attacked the Doggy Rongs and history recorded that he captured four white wolves & four white deers (white deer and white wolf being the titles of ministers of Rongdi barbarians) during his campaign. The Huangfu (Doggy Rong) people then no longer sent in yearly gifts and tributes. Zhou King Yiwang, the grandson of King Muwang (r. 1,001 - 946 BC), would be attacked by the Rongs. The great grandson, King Xuanwang (reign 827 - 782), finally fought back against the Rongs. *Shi Jing* eulogized King Xuanwang's reaching Taiyuan (original Taiyuan in southern Shanxi Prov, not the appropriated one in the north), Shanxi Province. Thereafter, King Youwang (reign 781-771) was killed by the Doggy Rongs at the foothill of Lishan Mountain and capital Haojing was sacked. Rongs who stayed on at Lishan were called Li-rong. The Rongs moved to live between the Jing & Wei Rivers. Lord Qin Xianggong was conferred the old land of Zhou by Zhou King Pingwang (reign 770-720). Zhou King Pingwang encouraged the Qin Lord to drive out the Quan-rongs.

65 years later, in the east, the Shan-rong or Mountain Rongs went across the Yan Principality of Hebei Province to attack Qi Principality in today's Shandong Province. 44 years later, the Mountain Rongs attacked Yan Principality. Around 664 BC, Yan-Qi joint armies destroyed the Mountain Rong Statelet as well as the Guzhu Statelet. The story of 'old horses knew the way home' would be about the

joint army being lost after they penetrated deep into the Shanrong land. Hence, Yan Statelet extended by 500 li to the northwest, in addition to the eastward 50 li which was given to Count Yan for his escorting Marquis Qi all the way into Qi Statelet. During the 16th year of Zhou King Huiwang (reign 676-652), namely, 661 BC, the Chang Di barbarians who were located near today's Jinan City of Shandong Province, under Sou Man, attacked the Wey and Xing principalities. The Chang Di barbarians, hearing of Qi army's counter-attacks against Shanrong, embarked on a pillage in central China by attacking Wey (spelled in same way as <http://www.chinaknowledge.de/Literature/Diverse/encyclopedias.htm> for sake of differentiation from former Wei eliminated by Jinn and later Wei that was split from Jinn) and Xing statelets. The Chang Di barbarians killed Wey Lord Yigong who was notorious for indulging in raising numerous birds called 'he' (cranes), and they cut him into pieces. A Wey minister would later find Yigong's liver to be intact, and hence he committed suicide by cutting apart his chest and saving Yigong's liver inside of his body.

20 years later, the Rongdi barbarians attacked Zhou King Xiangwang (reign 651-619) at the encouragement of Zhou Queen who was the daughter of Rongdi ruler. Per section *Qi Yu* of *Guo Yu*, Qi Lord Huan'gong (r. 685-643 BC), who proclaimed himself a 'hegemony lord' in 679 BC and destroyed the statelets of Shan-rong and Guzhu in Manchuria in 664 BC, had campaigned against Bai-di barbarians in the west in 651 BC (i.e., 9th year of Lu Lord Xigong). Qi Huan'gong was recorded to have occupied 'da xia' (i.e., Grand Xia land) in Shanxi Prov and might have crossed the river to subjugate 'xi yu' (i.e., western Yu-shi clan's land) in Shenxi Prov. (Senior scholar Wei Juxian speculated that Qi Huan'gong had at one time reached the Bering Straits where the ex-Shang remnants had dwelled since Shang-Zhou transition time period and that it was due to Qi Huan'gong's contacts with Shang remnants that American Indians or Shang people paid a visit to China with tributes of humming birds that were recorded in Song Principality's chronicles.) Jin (Jinn) Principality also helped Zhou King by attacking the Rongs and then escorted the king back to his throne 4 years after the king went into exile. Rong-di moved to live in a place called Luhun, and they would later be forced to relocate elsewhere by Qin-Jinn principalities. After the defeat in the hands of Jinn, the Rongs moved to the land between the Xi-he (today's east segment of the Yellow River loop or bend) and the Luo River, and two groups were known at the time, Chidi (Red Di) and Baidi (White Di). (Note that Ancient West Yellow River Bend is the same as today's East Yellow River Bend. Ancient Yellow River Bend did not equate to

today's inverse U-shaped course with the North Bend lying inside Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, but the U-shaped Bend with South Bend in southern Shanxi Prov and then a south-to-north turn in Hebei Province for exit into the sea.) Baidi (White Di) dwelled in ancient Yanzhou (today's Yan'an), Suizhou (today's Suide) and Yinzhou. *Zuo Shi Chunjiu* stated Jinn defeated Baidi and remnants were known as Bai-bu-hu nomads later. Chidi (Red Di) dwelled in a place called Lu(4), near today's Shangdang. *Zuo Shi Chunjiu* stated that Jinn Principality destroyed the Lu(4) tribe of the Chidi, and the remnants were known as Chi-she-hu nomads later. Details about barbarians were also covered at [prehistory](#) section. [Here, I had deliberately spelled Jin(4) into Jinn for sake of distinction from Jurchen Jin(1). Jin(4) is spelled Tsin in Wade-Giles.]

In 623 BC, i.e., during the 37th year reign, Qin Mugong, using You Yu as a guide, campaigned against the Xirong nomads and conquered the Xirong Statelet under their lord Chi Ban. Qin Lord Mugong conquered 12 Western Rong tribes. Around this time, there were Mianzu-Quanrong-Di-Wanrong to the west of Qin Principality, Yiqu-Dali-Wushi-Xuyan etc to the north of Qin Principality, Linhu-Loufan to the north of Jin (Jinn) Principality, and Donghu-Shanrong to the north of Yan Principality. (Mianzu could be pronounced Raozhu. Quanrong was known as Kunrong or Hunrong or Hunyi. The character 'hun4' for Hunyi or Hun-yi is the same as Hunnic King Hunye or Kunye and could mean the word of mixing-up. Wan-rong dwelled in today's Tianshui, Gansu Prov. Yiqu was one of the Xirong or Western Rong statelets at ancient Qingzhou and Ningzhou. Dali-rong dwelled in today's Fengxu County. Wushi was originally Zhou land, but it was taken over by Rong. Qin King Huiwang took it back from Rong. Linhu was later destroyed by General Li Mu. Loufan belonged to Yanmenguan Pass.)

One hundred years later, Lord Jinn Daogong made peace with Rongdi (who attacked Zhou King Xiangwang earlier), and the Rongdi sent in gifts and tributes to Jin (Jinn). Jin (Jinn) later split into three states of Haan(2), Zhao & Wei. The two successive Jinn states which bordered the northern nomads, Wei & Zhao, plus Qin and Yan, would be busy fighting the nomads for hundreds of years, and they built separate walls to drive the nomads out. Another one hundred years, Zhao Xiang-zi of Zhao Principality took over Bing and Dai areas near Yanmenguan Pass. Zhao, together with Haan and Wei families, destroyed another opponent called Zhi-bo and split Jin (Jinn) into three states of Haan, Zhao & Wei. Yiqu-Rong built castles to counter Qin. Qin King Huiwang took over 25 cities from Yiqu-rong, and at the time of Qin King Zhaowang, Qin Queen

Xuantaihou killed Yiqu-rong King. (King Zhaoxiangwang's mother, Queen Dowager Xuantaihou, adulterated with the Rong king from Yiqu Statelet and had two sons born with Yiqu Rong King.) Qin took over Shangjun from Wei. Qin took over Longxi of Gansu, Beidi and Shangjun of Shenxi, and built the Great Wall. Zhao King Wulingwang adopted reforms by wearing Hu nomads' cavalry clothing and he defeated Linhu and Loufan and built Great Wall from Dai to Yinshan Mountain. Zhao set up Yunzhong, Yanmen and Dai prefectures. A Yan Principality General by the name of Qin-kai, after returning from Donghu [Eastern Hu] barbarians as a hostage, would attack Donghu and drive them away for 1000 li distance. Yan built Great Wall and set up Shanggu, Yuyang, You-beiping, Liaoxi and Liaodong prefectures. Qin State founded the first united empire of Qin in 221 BC. After Qin's unification of China, Emperor Shihuangdi ordered General Meng Tian on a campaign that would drive the so-called Hu nomads or the Huns out of the areas south of the Yellow River. The Huns under Modok's father, Tou-man, fled northward and would not return till General Meng Tian died ten years later. Speculations about the nature of Rong & Di Peoples, Qiang, Sanmiao & Yuezhi was given in the Qin section and Hun section.

Mandate of Heaven

The concept of 'Heaven' as an ancient 'Di(4)' or overlord had been with Chinese since the era of Eight Ancient Lords. 'San Huang', termed the Three Sovereigns (Fuxi, Yandi the Fiery Lord, and Huangdi the Yellow Emperor), would have an alternative saying which included 'Heaven Huang', 'Land Huang', and 'Human Huang' or 'Taishan Mountain Huang'. 'Heaven' concept was widely adopted by Euroasian nomadic peoples and incorporated in their shamanism. 'Heaven' was equivalent to 'Tengri'. There is no definite way to tell where the original concept of 'heaven' had originated. Shang Dynasty's founder, Shang-Tang, claimed that Lord Highness (Heaven) instructed him to campaign against Xia Dynasty' Lord Jie because of Jie's corruption, lasciviousness and cruelty. Shang-Tang was also named 'Tian Yi' or 'Heavenly Yi'. Since 'Heaven' was considered a Di(4), Shang-Tang was called 'Heavenly Yi'. Last Shang ruler, Jie, had refused to take admonition by claiming that the 'mandate' was with him the minute he was born.

Later, Confucius would term it 'Cheng Tang Revolution' or 'Shang Tang Revolution', a word that would be used by Dr. Sun Yat-sen in his efforts at

overthrowing Manchu rule. Professor Lock Hoe had commented that China's dynastic changes and revolutions (as seen in the saying 'Every 50 Years, A Cycle In Cathay') had served as an illuminating guide for the Jesuits who visited China in the 16-17th centuries, and it was due to the Jesuits who propagated the egalitarian and revolutionary ideas that led to the conclusion that French or British royal houses could be overthrown by a 'revolution'.

The citation of the 'Mandate of Heaven' could be seen in Zhou King Wuwang's campaign against the Shang Dynasty in the 11th century BC. Zhou was a small tribal state in today's Shaanxi Province, southwest of the Mount Qishan, in a place called 'Zhouyuan'. The last Shang ruler, Zhouwang, would be a despotic ruler. He killed one marquis (Jiuhou or Jiu Hou) and the marquis' daughter because the marquis' daughter was not lewd to him. Another marquis (Er Hou or Er'hou) was killed when he tried to protect Jiuhou. Count Xibo, i.e., Ji Chang, sighed about the killings. At the vilification of Shang minister Chonghouhu, Ji Chang was imprisoned by Shang King Zhouwang. When imprisoned in a place called Youli (in Henan Prov), Ji Chang renovated the ancient Fu-xi '8 Gua' into '64 Gua', a divinity method called 'milfoil divination' (*Yi Jing*, Book of Changes). Zhouwang would kill Count Xibo's elder son, Boyikao, and made a dish out of Boyikao's flesh for Xibo to eat. Zhouwang laughed when Xibo ate it without knowing that it was his son's flesh. Count Xibo was set free only after Xibo's minister bribed Zhouwang through a Shang minister (Fei Zhong) by presenting a beauty from You-xin-shi clan, a stallion from Li-rong Statelet and other treasures. (Xibo was titled a marquis, at the same level as Jiu Hou and Er Hou. Ancient title for 'Count' might not be of same level as that in Europe and could be **higher** than marquis in Zhou times.) Ji Chang would manage his statelet so well that old people went there for retirement, and two princes of Guzhu Statelet (Mo-tai-shi clan) in southern Manchuria, Bo-yi and Shu-qi, came to live in Zhou land. Two lords of ancient Yu and Rui statelets had disputes over a patch of land and they decided to have Ji Chang arbitrate it; but once they entered the Zhou land, they felt guilty about it after observing the civility of Zhou people; and they called off their trip and returned to home statelets, and vacated the land disputed. Some Shang ministers defected to Zhou. Over 40 statelets defected to Zhou and proposed that Ji Chang be the king.

Prince Bigan, son of Shang King Zhouwang, would be deposed for admonishing Zhouwang on the deeds. Xibo would attack Quanrong or Doggy Rong (said to be descendants of Panhu, i.e. southern barbarians in Wuling, Changsha

Commandary, and possibly hinting the relocation to western China of early San-Miao people. Later Chidi was said to be of same family as Quanrong). Then, Xibo invaded a Shang vassal called Mixu-guo Fief (Lingtai of Gansu Prov) and took over Mixu drums as bounty for Tang-shu. The next year, when Count Xibo invaded another Shang vassal called the Ji-guo (also pronounced as Li² or Qi²) Statelet, somewhere near Shangdang of eastern Shanxi Prov, Zu Yi, a Shang minister, expressed the worry that the 'Mandate Of Heaven' might be changed. Shang King Zhouwang rebutted Zu Yi, saying that the 'Mandate Of Heaven' was with him the minute he was born. In the next two years consecutively, Xibo then invaded Yu-guo fief (Qinyang of Henan Prov, next to Shang capital), and then conquered Chong-guo fief (i.e., Chonghouhu's fief at Songxian County of Henan Prov) after two sieges within 30 days. Xibo then built city at Feng-yi and relocated capital there from Zhou-yuan of Qishan Mountain.

Jiang Taigong (i.e., Lü Shang of Lü-shi clan or Jiang Ziya with Jiang surname, aka Taigongwang) abandoned his post of 'da fu' with Shang King for the west. Lü Shang was against the extravagant task of building 'Lu Tai' (deer platform) palace for Shang King Zhouwang. Lü Shang then left with his wife Ma-shi and went to Wei-shui River for fishing till Zhou King Wenwang came along and met him. Wenwang commented that his father, Zhou ancestor Taigong, was in anticipation of Lü Shang for a long time. Xibo died at age 97, with a claim of king title for 9 years. (Ancient scholars disputed Xibo or Zhou King Wenwang's king title since Zhou king could not have existed at the same time as Shang king.)

Wuwang, named Ji (last name) Fa (first name), expanded his influences on basis of 50 years of management by his father Ji Chang who was conferred the title of Xibo (Count West) by last Shang King. After Xibo passed away, Zhou King Wuwang would rally eight hundred Shang vassals on the bank of the Yellow River, Mengjin. (Scholars disputed the number of 800 vassals as unrealistic.) When he first called upon various tribes to rebel against Shang, he stated that he was carrying out the order from the Heaven to penalize Shang king who had disrupted his kingdom by killing his elder son (Bigan) and imprisoning the uncle (Ji-zi) under the influence of the witch-like Shang queen (Daji). While crossing the Yellow River, a white fish jumped aboard. Fish was interpreted as a sign of war for carrying scales or shields on its body, while the color of whiteness was the embodiment of Shang. Interpreting the white fish as an omen, he called off the first campaign on the Yellow River bank after rallying

800 Shang vassals. The vassals said to Wenwang, "Zhouwang could be campaigned against by now." Wuwang said, "You guys did not know the 'Mandate Of Heaven' yet."

Zhouwang's brother, Wei-zi, would flee the capital. Zhouwang's son, Prince Bigan, seeing the departure of Wei-zi, would try to persuade Zhouwang again, but he was ordered killed by Zhouwang to see how many compartments Bigan's heart had. Zhouwang's uncle, Prince Ji-zi, would pretend to have gone mentally ill for sake of avoiding Zhouwang's persecution, but he was still imprisoned by Zhouwang. When Shang's chief ritual and music ministers, Tai-Shi (grand musician) and Shao-Shi (junior musician), fled to Zhou with Shang's ritual instruments, Zhou King Wuwang now orderd a campaign against Shang, two years after Mengjin Assembly. With the help of counsellor, Jiang Taigong, Wuwang launched an attack at Shang Dynasty which controlled central China at the time, namely, today's Shanxi and Henan Provinces. **Wuwang assembled 300 chariots, 3000 brave soldiers, and an army of 45000** and crossed the Yellow River at Mengjin on Wuwu day of Dec of 11th year reign. *Shi Ji* recorded that Wuwang called his troops by the name of 'people from the west', and that his allies included eight barbarian statelets, the Qiangs from Gansu, the Shu-Sou-Mao-Wei statelets in Sichuan Province, Lu and Peng from the northwest, and Yong and Pu south of the Han-shui River. In the outskirts of Shang capital Chaoe, a place called Muye, he met his alliance who had joined him with 4000 more chariots, and they confronted the Shang army of 700 thousand and defeated them. (Some scholar disputed the Shang army's number of 700,000 as unrealistic since Shang China's population at the time would not be too far away from 1 million, and Xu Zhuoyun cited Mencius statement of 'weapons floating above blood stream' in disputing the popular claim that Shang army defected to Zhou during the battle. Scholar Xu Zhuoyun and Wei Juxian both cited ancient classics in attributing last Shang King's exhaustion in eastward campaign against Dong-yi or Huai-yi barbarians to his losing control in the west.)

Scholar Luo Xianglin claimed that Zhou people had asserted control over the Shang people via advanced weaponry of **chariots**. Luo Xianglin further pointed out that Zhou had special ministry in charge of standardization, materials, quality of chariot manufacturing.

Ji Fa hence proclaimed the founding of Zhou Dynasty under the 'Mandate of

Heaven'. The 'Mandate of Heaven' became a norm for the substitution of Chinese dynasties. To enforce the concept, some legends would be made to support the claim of the will of the Heaven. For Han Dynasty founder Liu Bang, there was the legend that his mother had dreamt about some dragon flying into the house when she gave birth to his son. Even nomadic rulers, like the Hunnic king Liu Yuan of Hunnic Zhao Dynasty (AD 304-329) would proclaim himself emperor in AD 308 and declared his dynasty as 'Han' on basis of one sound logic that Hunnic kings had historically acknowledged that they were the nephews of Han Chinese emperors. By designating his dynasty as 'Han', he intended to play the card of asserting the so-called 'Mandate of Heaven'.

Timeline of Zhou Dynasty

Prior to Zhou Dynasty, the rulers of Xia and Shang Dynasties called themselves 'Di(4)' posthumously, namely, the word that would denote the equivalent of legendary overlords for Heaven, Earth and Mount Taishan in Chinese history or 'emperor' in the western sense. Zhou King Wuwang, after overthrowing Shang Dynasty, decided to adopt the title of 'wang' or king to show his humbleness in front of the legendary overlords. They were called 'wang' posthumously as well.

First part of Zhou, Western Zhou, with its capital near today's Xi'an, Shaanxi Province, ended in 771 BC when King Youwang was killed by Quanrong (i.e., the Doggy Rong nomads) who were invited by Marquis Shenhou of Shen Principality to avenge the king for deposing his daughter-queen and crown prince. The son of Youwang, King Pingwang, moved his capital to Luoyang, Henan Province in 770 BC, with the help of the ancestors of later Qin Empire. Qin Lord Xianggong was conferred the title of Count by Zhou King Pingwang for assisting Zhou King Pingwang in the crackdown on the Rong nomads and relocation of Zhou capital. Zhou King Pingwang also conferred Qin the old Zhou land of Qishan and Feng should Qin recover it from the Rongs. Historians named the later part of Zhou as Eastern Zhou and it ended in 256 BC when the great grandfather of First Qin Emperor Shihuangdi invaded the Zhou capital and removed all Zhou Kingdom's bronze utensils (i.e., ding or cauldron).

Eastern Zhou, however, was further sub-divided into the two time periods of 1) Spring and Autumn and 2) Warring States. This division was based on the emergence of six prominent families in determining the politics of Jin

Principality in 475 BC.

Rankings Of Zhou Lords & Principalities

In Chinese, there exists a fixed phrase called 'wang hou jiang xiang' which means the four titles of king, marquis, general and prime minister. Though the rulers of dozens of Zhou principalities called themselves 'Gong', a word that denotes the title of 'Duke', this word is more like a general title to mean a ruler or a lord or simply a complimentary title. A similar word to be found in English would be probably 'Sir' or 'Grandpa'. Scholar Fu Sinian studied the bronze inscriptions, i.e., *jin wen*, from Zhou times and concluded that the ancient five rankings of duke, marquis, count, viscount, and baron did not conform with bronze inscriptions or classics such as *Shang Shu* or *Shi Jing*. Fu Sinian stated that duke-gong, count-bo, viscount-zi, and baron-nan were originally used within a royal family as rankings; governmentally, 'bo' or count was the leader of a conferred fief while 'hou' or marquis was for denoting the vassal guarding border posts. Ancient title for 'Count' might not be of same level as that in Europe and should be **higher** than marquis in Shang-Zhou times. Zhou King Wenwang, i.e., Xibo or Count Of West, originally titled a marquis, at the same level as Jiu Hou and Er Hou, received the conferral of count from last Shang King. The Zhou court conferred the title of count on the descendants of the two uncles of Zhou King Wenwang. The ancestor of Chu Principality, Xiong Yi, was conferred by Zhou King Chenwang the title of count and the land of Dan'yang. Qin Lord Xianggong was conferred the title of Count by Zhou King Pingwang for the crackdown on the Rong barbarians. During the 10th year of the reign, Zhou King Huiwang conferred onto Lord Qi, i.e., Marquis Qi Huan'gong, the title of Count. King Xiangwang conferred onto Jinn Lord the title of Count and the land of Yangfan or 'he nei' (pronounced as He-rui in ancient Chinese to mean the winding section of the Yellow River).

In Zhou times, some of the 'gong' lords were indeed titled as equivalent to dukes. The brothers of Zhou King are entitled 'Duke'. The Shang capital areas were divided into three parts, Bei (Tangying, Henan) to the north, Yong to the west, and Wey to the east. Guan-shu, i.e., brother Shu-xian, was conferred Duke of Guan (Zhenzhou, Henan) as well as superintendent of Yong. Cai-shu, i.e., brother Shu-du, was conferred Duke of Cai (Shangcai, Henan) as well as superintendent of Wey. Bei was left with Shang Prince Wugeng, but under the

supervision of brother Huo-shu. Brother Dan, i.e., Zhougong, was conferred Duke Zhou of Qufu, Shandong Province. (Duke Zhougong would later send his son, Boqin, to Qufu, and Boqin built the city of Qufu.) Boqin's statelet would be **Lu**. Brother Shi, i.e., Zhaogong (Shaogong), was conferred the land of **Yan** (Jixian County, Tianjin, Hebei Prov), and he was referred to as 'Yanbo' or count of Yan. Duke Zhougong's taking over regency after King Wuwang's death triggered the rebellion. Zhougong would kill Wugeng and Guan-shu, and exiled Cai-shu. To the northeast of Luoyang, Zhougong built a city called Chengzhou and relocated Shang people of Bei-Yong-Wey to Chengzhou (Luoyi). Alternatively, Duke Zhaogong was said to be responsible for building Chengzhou city under the order of Zhou King Wuwang, while the original Zhou capital in Shenxi Prov was named 'Zongzhou' or ancestral Zhou capital. Zhougong conferred onto the younger brother the title of Wey-kang-shu, i.e., Marquis of **Wey** or Marquis of Meng. (The 16th generation descendant of Wey-kang-shu would be Wey Lord Yigong who died in the hands of Chang Di barbarians. Qi Lord Huangong, after defeating Chang-di, erected Wey Lord Wengong and relocated Wey capital to Chuqiu of Henan Prov.)

King Wuwang built a tomb for Shang Prince Bigan and then west back to the west. Wuwang made further conferrals, and made the descendant of Shen-nong-shi (Lord Yandi) inherit the land of Jiao (Shanxian County, Shenxi), the descendant of Lord Huangdi inherit the land of Zhu, the descendant of Lord Yao inherit the land of **Ji** (a statelet to the southwest of today's Beijing, Hebei which was taken over by Yan later), the descendant of Lord Shun inherit the land of **Chen** (Wanqiu County), and the descendant of Lord Yu inherit the land of Qih (Yongqiu, Bianzhou, near Kaifeng of Henan) with the title of Donglougong (whose 21st generation grandson was exterminated by Chu Principality). Remnants of Chen, pronounced as 'dan' in ancient Chinese and in today's Fujian dialect, later fled to Qi Principality, changed their name to Tian, and ultimately usurped the Qi principality of Jiang lineage.

The rest of the lords are mostly marquis, and this include Marquis Shenhou. (One of Marquis Shenhou was the father-in-law of last Western Zhou king.) Zhou King Wuwang, to thank his counsellor Jiang Taigong for the efforts in overthrowing Shang, had conferred the land of Yingqiu (today's Linzi, Shandong Province) as **Qi** Principality. Lord Qi Huangong was the first of the five hegemony lords during the Spring and Autumn time period. **Jin** (Jinn) Principality, i.e., today's Shanxi Province or the land of Tao-tang-shi clan, was

conferred to the king's brother (Shu-yu) by Zhou King Chengwang after Zhou Duke Zhougong quelled the Tao-tang-shi. King Chengwang was the son of King Wuwang and Yi-jiang (daughter of Jiang Taigong). Shu-yu's son, Ji Xie, was called Marquis Jinhou by citation of the Jinn-shui River of Shanxi Prov. (Scholar Liu Qiyu stated that ancient Jinn-shui was near Pingyang County of southern Shanxi Prov and later appropriated to northern Shanxi Prov's Taiyuan area. Tao-tang-shi was a vassal of Xia/Shang Dynasties and had a history of over 1100 years.) Shu-yu made the city of Ji[4] (i.e., Lord Yao's capital) as his capital. After Jinn Principality split into three states of Han, Zhao and Wei in 475 BC, the Zhou court had conferred the titles of marquis to all three rulers, respectively.

While Marquis Wei Wenhou was a marquis, his son, King Wei Huiwang, called himself 'king'. But this was during the Warring States time period. The lords who called themselves kings during the Spring and Autumn time periods would be those in southern and southeastern China, namely, the states of Chu, Wu and Yue.

The ex-Shang Prince Wei-Zi (Qi) was made the duke of **Song**. The inheritor of last Shang(1) Dynasty heritage was given the title of 'Shang(4) Gong', namely, the Highest Duke. This would be after Duke Zhougong quelled the rebellion of Shang Prince Wugeng and two brothers (Guan-shu and Cai-shu) in a matter of three years. Lord Song Xiangong was one of the five hegemonies, too.

Chu Principality Of The South

The ancestors of Chu, Xiong Yi, were originally conferred by Zhou King Chenwang the title of count and the land of Dan'yang (near today's Zigui, Three Gorges area, Hubei Province). Chu ancestors carried the last name of Xiong. Chu was the first state to declare themselves king during the Spring and Autumn time period.

Shi Ji stated that Chu ancestors derived from Lord Zhuanxu, i.e., Lord Huangdi's grandson. The great grandson of Lord Zhuanxu would be called Chongli who was named 'Zhu Rong' or the god of fire by Lord Diku. One brother, by the name of Wu-hui, inherited his brother's title of 'Zhu Rong'. Wu-hui born a son called Lu Zhong, and Lu Zhong married a woman from 'Gui-fang-shi' (ghost domain family) and born six sons, including Kunwu, Canhu, Pengzu, and Jilian etc, the youngest of whom would be traceable ancestor of Chu. At the end of Shang

Dynasty, a Chu descendant, by the name of Yu-zi (Xiong), after admonishing on Shang King Zhouwang 57 times in vain, left for the Zhou statelet, and Zhou King Wenwang conferred him the land of Shangdang and the post of '*gong qing*'. Yu-xiong, who served the Zhou court, was a Jilian descendant. The great grandson of Yu-xiong would be Xiong Yi, the founder of Chu Statelet.

Wu Principality Of The Yantze Delta

The Wu State was founded by two uncles of King Zhou Wenwang. The two uncles, headed by Tai Bo, decided to go to the Yantze Delta to launch a state because they did not want to contend with the necromancy note which stated that their nephew (Zhou King Wenwang) would revive Zhou. The Zhou court later conferred, on the descendants of the two uncles, the title of count. The Wa Japanese, who came to Han China in the first century, claimed to be descendants of Tai Bo, the uncle of Zhou King Wenwang (posthumously); Wa Japanese called themselves by the ancient title of 'Da Fu'.

Yue Principality Of The Yantze Delta

Lord Yu's tomb, on Mount Kuaijishan, in Shaoxing, Zhejiang, was a good monument validating the stories of Lord Yu. One of the sons of King Shaokang of Xia Dynasty was permanently assigned to the Kuaiji land to guard the tomb, and the later Yue Principality was said to have descended from this lineage.

Western Zhou (1134 - 771 BC; 1122 - 771 BC)

Zhou King Wuwang (Ji Fa, reign approx 1134-1115 BC; 1122-771 BC)

Wuwang established the Zhou Dynasty with the help of Jiang Ziya (Jiang Taigong). King Wuwang married the daughter of Jiang Ziya. King Wuwang conferred the land of Linzi, Shandong onto Jiang Ziya as Qi Principality. Qi continued their lineage till Tian family usurped it later. Details about King Wuwang were provided in topics above. Ex-Shang royal family member, Ji-zi (Qi Zi or Kija), was conferred the land of northern Korea in 1,121 BC (?).

Year 1122 BC was commonly treated as the year when Shang Dynasty ended. Using the first full year as the reign for a new dynasty, Zhou Dynasty counts 1121 BC as the first year of existence. In ancient times, two derivations had been used to determine the exact year Shang Dynasty ended. Ancient Scholar Liu Xin derived 1122 BC, while some others, including Seng Yixing's version in

"New History of Tang Dynasty", derived 1111 BC instead.

Zhou King Chengwang (Ji Song, reign approx 1,115-1,078 B.C.)

Zhou King Wuwang died after 7 years of reign. Archduke Zhougong (Ji Dan) took regency in 1,115 B.C. and did not return the regency till King Chenwang grew up in 7 years. Eastern capital was established at Luoyi (Luoyang). Zhougong (Duke of Zhou), under the order of King Chengwang, fulfilled the wish of King Wuwang in building the city of Luoyi (Luoyang) and moved the nine bronze utensils there. Duke Zhougong defeated the rebellion of two brothers and Shang Prince Wugeng. The ex-Shang Prince Wei-Zi (Qi) was made into the duke of Song. Duke Zhougong and King Chengwang further attacked Huai-yi (ancient Xu-guo statelet) barbarians around the Huai River, and attacked ex-Shang Marquisdom of An-guo fief and relocated An-guo marquis away from Qufu County, Shandong Prov. After King Chengwang attacked the Dong-yi barbarians, a statelet called Xi-shen (Sushen of Manchuria ?) came to pay pilgrimage. Qin's ancestors, i.e., the great grandson of Ji Sheng (Feilian's junior son), Meng Zhen, was hired by Zhou King Chengwang. King Chenwang also conferred on the descendent of Bo Yi the title of Marquis of Shen(1) or Shenhou. King Chengwang, upon death, decreed that Duke Zhaogong and Duke Bigong be responsible for assisting crown prince Ji Zhao.

Zhou King Kangwang (Ji Zhao, reign approx 1,078 - 1,052 B.C.)

King Kangwang, during his 40 year reign, had ruled the country in the spirits of King Wenwang and King Wuwang. Penalization tools were never called upon to punish the people. King Kangwang asked Duke Bigong dwell in the east.

Zhou King Zhaowang (Ji Xia, reign approx 1,052 - 1,001 B.C.)

King Zhaowang was hated for his lack of so-called 'De', i.e., virtues. He campaigned in the south. When he crossed the Huai River, sailors deliberately used rubber to seam the boat for King Zhaowang to use. The rubber-seamed boat melted mid-stream, and King Zhaowang, Duke Jigong and entourage all drowned.

Zhou King Muwang (Ji Man, reign approx 1,001 - 946 B.C.)

King Muwang would set up several posts, including the position of '*tai pu*', for sake of restoring Zhou kingdom's prestige and power. Against the advice of Duke Jigong's counsellor, King Muwang attacked the Rong-di people. Hence, Rongdi no longer came to pay pilgrimage to Zhou court. King Muwang, after defeating

Quan Rong, exiled Quanrong to Taiyuan of Shanxi Province. Muwang was said to be indulgent in travelling to the west. In the 17th year of his reign, he visited the Kun Lun Mountain. When he was toasting with Queen Mother of the West at Yao-Ci Lake on Mount Kunlun, the Xu statelet rebelled against Zhou. His chauffeur, Zaofu (or Zao Fu, i.e., Qin's ancestral relative), drove him home to quell the rebellion, in an eight horse chariot.

Zhou King Gongwang (Ji Yihu, reign approx 946 - 934 B.C.)

King Wuwang died after a reign of 50 years. King Gongwang visited the Mi-guo Statelet at Jingzhou Prefecture and saw three beautiful women in Mi-guo Lord Kanggong's residence. Kanggong's mother asked his son to surrender the three beauties, but Kanggong refused. One year later, King Gongwang attacked Mi-guo Statelet and exterminated it.

Zhou King Yiwang (Ji Jian, reign approx 934 - 909 B.C.)

King Yiwang relocated the Zhou capital from Hao (Haojing or Chongzhou) to Quanqiu (i.e., Feiqiu). Zhou Kingdom degraded in its ruling, and poets began to record events via poems.

Zhou King Xiaowang (Ji Pifang, reign approx 909 - 894 B.C.)

King Xiaowang ordered Marquis Shen (Shenhou) to attack Quan-Rong around 909 BC. Qin's ancestor, Fei Zi, lived in a place called Quanqiu (a place near Fufeng of Shenxi), and he was good at raising horses around the Wei-shui River. Marquis Shenhou, whose daughter married Daluo (Fei Zi's father), somehow persuaded Zhou King Xiaowang into bestowing the last name of 'Ying' on Daluo descendant for sake of pacifying or controlling the Xi Rong or Western Rong people. (This shows the influence of Daluo descendants in this barbaric area.)

Marquis Shenhou was quoted to have mentioned to Zhou King Xiaowang that his ancestor had married their woman to 'Rong Xuxuan' where Rong meant for the barbarians and 'Xuxuan' was the great grandson of Zhongyan. (In the eyes of Marquis Shenhou, Qin people might be equivalent to the 'rong' people.) *Shi Ji* was ambiguous in this section: Interpretation would be that Daluo had another son born with Marquis Shenhou's daughter, called 'Cheng'; Fei-zi, not Cheng, was conferred the ancestral name of 'Ying'. Note my general designation of 'Daluo descendants' below in lieu of either Fei-zi or Cheng.

Zhou King Xiaowang conferred them the land of Qin (today's eastern Gansu

Province) as a vassal, and hence Daluo's son was known as 'Qin Ying'. Qin became the vassal which was situated to the western-most part of then China. History records that two more groups of people dwelled to the west of Qin and Zhou Chinese, namely, the Western Rong nomads and the Yüeh-chih people.

Zhou King Yi(2)-wang (Ji Xie, reign approx 894 - 878 B.C.)

King Yiwang was another son of King Yiwang. He steam-killed Marquis Qi Aigong in a bronze utensil called 'ding' or cauldron.

Zhou King Liwang (Ji Hu, reign approx 878 - 827 B.C.)

King Liwang was in reign for over 30 years. He paid attention to material interests and used a minister called Rongyigong as his prime minister. Duke Zhaogong (descendant of Zhaokangong Mugonghu) admonished him by saying that civilians had complaints. King Liwang then hired a witch from Wey-guo fief to report on the populace. Liwang killed those who talked about him. Vassals did not come to Zhou court to show respect. During his 34th reign, people walking on the streets dared not talk to each other. Liwang gloated, saying to Zhaogong that nobody dared to vilify him any more. Zhaogong cited i) that **controlling the mouth of the populace would be more difficult than controlling the mountain torrents**, ii) that floods could kill lots of people once a dam was broken, and iii) that the populace would not be kept under control once their dissatisfaction broke out. King Liwang refused to take Zhaogong's advice. Three years later, ministers colluded with each other and attacked King Liwang. King Liwang fled to a place called Zhi (Huoyi or Yong'an in Shanxi), east of the East Yellow River Bend. Liwang's son fled to Zhaogong's home for asylum and when being attacked by the Guo-ren or civilians, Zhaogong said he would be willing to substitute his own son for the life of the prince because it was his fault that King Liwang did not take his advice.

While Zhou King Liwang was ruling despotically, the Xi Rong (Xirong or Western Rong) people had rebelled in the west and killed most of the Daluo lineage of Qin people. Zhou King Xuanwang conferred Qin Zhong (r. BC 845-822 ?) the title of '*Da Fu*' and ordered him to quell the Xirong. Qin Zhong got killed by Xirong after being a ruler for 23 years. Qin Zhong's five sons, under the elder son (Qin Lord Zhuangong), would defeat Xirong with 7000 relief army from Zhou. Qin Lord Zhuangong (r. BC 821-778) hence recovered the territories called Quanqiu and enjoyed Zhou court's conferral of the title of '*Xi Chui Da Fu*', i.e., the '*Da Fu*' on the western-most border. (Qin ancestor tombs had been discovered in Li-xian

county of Gansu Prov.)

Interregnum, i.e., Republican Administrative Period (841 - 828 B.C.)

Duke Zhaogong and Duke Zhougong took the regency as "interregnum". During the 14th of "interregnum", King Liwang passed away in Zhi, east of the Yellow River. Prince Jing, who spent the years in Zhaogong's home, was selected as the new Zhou king.

Zhou King Xuanwang (Ji Jing, reign 827 - 782 B.C.)

With two dukes as prime ministers, King Xuanwang renewed the Zhou spirits. Vassals began to come to show respect. During the 12th year of the reign, Lu Lord Wugong (r. BC 825-816) came to Zhou court. King Xuanwang, against the advice of Guo-fief Lord Wengong (descendant of Guo Zhong or Guo-shu, a brother of King Wenwang), did not take care of the thousand acre royal field. (This Guo-fief was the so-called West Guo Statelet in Chencang, Shenxi Prov.) During the 39th year of his reign, King Xuanwang attacked Jiang-rong barbarians (a race of Xi Yi or western Yi barbarians, said to be descendants of ancient minister '*Si Yue*' or 'four mountains'), but he was defeated by Jiang Rong and lost his Nan-ren (i.e., soldiers from Nanyang, Henan Prov) troops. King Xuanwang ordered Bo Yi to attack the west. He made his brother, Ji You, the inheritor of Zheng (i.e., Zheng Lord Huangong). King Xuanwang refused to listen to advice from a minister called Zhongshanfu of Fan-guo fief, and King Xuanwang killed another minister called Du Bo for no reason. Legends said that three years later, in his 46th reign, King Xuanwang died of an arrow shot by the ghost of Du Bo.

Zhou King Youwang (Ji Gongnie, reign 781 - 771 B.C.)

During the 2nd year of his reign, the San Chuan area, i.e., three rivers areas of Jing-Wei-Luo & Yellow River, had a big earthquake. Qishan Mountain shook during the quake, and rivers dried up. A Zhou minister, Boyangfu, commented that Zhou Kingdom might have bad fate. King Youwang would use Guozhifu as his minister. During the 3rd year, Youwang took in Baoshi (a woman from Shi family, of Xia heritage, who was adopted by people of Bao-guo fief) as the new queen and then bore a son called Bo-fu. At one time, King Youwang, for sake of making Bao-shi laugh, would ridicule the vassals by lighting the fire on the beacon towers that were designed for national defence. When King Youwang deposed the prince born from the old queen, the father-in-law, Marquis Shenhou, would invite Quanrong, Zeng-guo fief (descendants of Lord Yu of Xia

Dynasty) and Xi Yi (western Yi barbarians) to help him in attacking the Zhou king. Since vassals no longer responded to Youwang's beacon signal as a result of early ridiculing, King Youwang was killed by Quanrong at Lishan Mountain (today's Lantian, Shenxi). The Rong people who stayed on in Lishan Mountain areas were called Li-rong, and later Jinn Principality had married a woman called Li-ji who caused Prince Chong'er go into exile for 19 years. Western Zhou Dynasty ended after a duration of **257** years.

Eastern Zhou (770-256 BC)

Zhou King Pingwang (Ji Yijiu, reign 770-720 B.C.)

Zhou King Pingwang moved eastward to Luoyi in 770 BC under the escort of Qin lord, and promised to Qin the land of Feng and Qishan should Qin defeat Quanrong and recover the territories. Zhou King Pingwang conferred Ying Kai the title of count.

Qin Lord Xianggong (Ying Kai, reign BC 777-766) assisted Zhou King Pingwang (reign 770-720) in cracking down on both Western Rong and the Doggy Rong. Ying Kai came to the aid of Marquis Shen after Marquis Shen wrote four letters, including requests to: i) Ying Kai, Marquis Jinn (Ji Chou), ii) Marquis Wei (Ji He, Wei Lord Wugong, over 80 years old at the time) and iii) the son of count Zheng, requesting for help in driving the Doggy Rong nomads out of Zhou capital, Haojing. Zhou court had to rely upon vassals, such as Qin, Chu, Qi and Jinn, for governance. The title given for the vassal would be 'Fang-bo', i.e., the elder count or the count of a certain domain.

Ying Kai died during the 12th year of his reign (766 BC) when he campaigned against the Rong at Qishan. After Ying Kai would be Qin Lord Wengong (r. BC 765-716). Wengong, during his 3rd year reign, had a hunting in east, and the next year, he selected Qishan area for building a city as the capital. During his 13th year reign, Wengong began chronicle recording, and during his 16th year reign, Qin Wengong defeated Rong at Qishan. Qin Wengong would give the land east of Qishan back to Zhou court.

The records of 'Chun Qiu', Spring and Autumn, started in Lu Principality in 722 BC when Lord Lu Yingong (r. BC 722-712) got enthroned.

Zhou King Huanwang (Ji Lin, reign 719-697 B.C.)

When King Pingwang died, his son, Xiefu, also passed away. A grandson by the name of Ji Lin was selected. During the 3rd year of his reign, count Zheng Zhuangong came to the court. King Huanwang was not respectful to the Zheng count. Count Zheng was angry. During the fifth year of Huanwang's reign, Count Zheng, without Zhou court's approval, had exchanged the royal veneration site of 'Xu-tian' (near today's Xuchang, Henan) for another patch of land from Lu Principality. Xu-tian was the place given to Duke Zhougong by King Chenwang, and later Zhou court used this land for venerating Mount Taishan. (Count Zheng's ancestor would be the brother of King Xuanwang, Ji You, and King Xuanwang conferred Ji You the land of Zheng as Zheng Lord Huangong.) During the 8th year of his reign, i.e., 712 BC, Lord Lu Yingong was killed and Lu Huangong was enthroned. During the 13th year of his reign, King Huanwang campaigned against Zheng Principality, but incurred an arrow wound in the hands of a Zheng general by the name of Zhu Dan. This would be called the Battle of Ruge in 707 BC. Zhou court had rallied very little support during the campaign, and Zhou prestige was said to have been gone by that time.

The son of Jinn's Quwo Zhuang-bo, a relative of Jinn marquis, would attack, capture and kill Marquis Jinn Aihou (r 717-710 BC) in 710 BC. Qin Lord Ningong (r. BC 715-704) would defeat King Bo and drove King Bo towards the Rong people in 713 BC. Ningong conquered King Bo's Dang-shi clan in 704 BC. In 703 BC approx, Song captured Zheng lord and erected a new Zheng lord.

Zhou King Zhuangwang (Ji Tuo, reign 696-682 B.C.)

Duke Zhougong, Heijian, wanted to kill King Zhuangwang for sake of having Prince Ke (King Zhuangwang's brother, Ziyi) enthroned. A minister by the name of Xin-bo informed Zhou king of Heijian's scheme. King Zhuangwang killed Zhougong. Prince Ke fled to Yan Principality.

Qin Ningong's elder son (Wugong) was deposed, and Chu-zi, the son of Ningong's junior son, was enthroned by three ministers at the age of 5. Chu-zi was killed 6 years later and Qin Lord Wugong (r. BC 697-677) was selected. About this time, Qin Wugong campaigned against 'Pengxian-shi Rong' and reached the foot of Huashan Mountain. Qin Lord Wugong, in 688 BC, exterminated Gui-rong (Shanggui of Longxi) and Ji-rong (Tiansui Commandary), and the next year, exterminated Du-bo Fief (southeast of Xi'an), Zheng-guo Fief (Zheng-xian County) and Xiao-guo Fief (an alternative Guo Fief from the

domain conferred by Zhou King Wenwang onto his brother, Guo-shu).

At Zheng Principality, a minister by the name of Gaoqumi killed his lord Zheng Zhaogong (r. BC 696-695) in 695 BC. Qi Lord Xianggong (r. 697-686 BC) was assassinated by his minister (Guan Zhifu) in 686 BC; Jinn exterminated the fief statelets of Geng, Huo and Wei; another assassination in Qi would see Qi Lord Huan'gong (r. 685-643 BC) selected in 685 BC.

Zhou King Xiwang (Ji Huqi, reign 681-677 B.C.)

Lord Qi Huangong made Guan Zhong (?-645 BC) the counsellor in 685 BC(?). Qi Huangong (Xiao-Bai, ?-643 BC) rose to prominence in vassal politics beginning in 679 BC. During the 3rd year of the King Xiwang reign, i.e., 679 BC, Qi Lord Huan'gong proclaimed himself a 'hegemony lord'.

Also in 679 BC, Marquis Jinn Min-hou was killed by Jinn Quwo Wugong. Zhou King Xiwang conferred Marquisdom onto Quwo Wugong. Quwo Wugong called himself Jinn Wugong and died two years later. Qin Lord Wugong passed away in 677 BC, and 66 persons followed to his tomb as live burial.

Zhou King Huiwang (Ji Lang, reign 676-652 B.C.)

During the second year of the reign, an uncle by the name of Tui rebelled against King Huiwang. King Huiwang sought asylum in Zheng's capital, i.e., today's Yangdi County, Henan Prov. During the 4th year of the reign, Count Zheng Ligong and Lord of Guo-fief (Guogong Linfu) aided Zhou King Huiwang by killing Tui and restoring Huiwang's kingdom. During the 10th year of the reign, King Huiwang conferred onto Lord Qi, i.e., Marquis Qi Huangong, the title of Count. (Count is apparently higher ranking than marquis during the Zhou kingdom time period.)

Jinn Wugong's successor, Jinn Xian'gong (r. 676-651 BC), attacked Li-rong (Xi Rong) barbarians in 672 BC approx, and captured a Li-rong woman called Li-ji. Jinn Xian'gong killed most of the princes from the deposed Jinn Marquisdom lineage, and one such prince fled to Guo-guo statelet. Wars erupted between Jinn and Guo-guo. In 665 BC approx, Li-ji born Xiqi and then conspired to have Jinn Xian'gong's elder princes deposed or killed, pushing Jinn into another round of turmoils.

In 664 BC, Qi Lord Huangong destroyed the statelets of Shan-rong and Guzhu.

(Guzhu was formerly Zhu-guo Statelet, a vassal of ex-Shang dynasty.)

In 661 BC, the Chang Di barbarians who were located near today's Jinan City of Shandong Province, under Sou Man, attacked the Wey and Xing principalities. The Di barbarians killed Wey Lord Yigong (r. BC 668-660 ?) who was notorious for indulging in raising numerous birds called 'he'.

In 661 BC approx, Jin (Jinn) Principality eliminated Huo (Huo Zhou, Shanxi Prov), Wei and Geng fiefdoms. Jinn Xian'gong built the city of Quwo for Prince Shensheng, conferred General Bi-wan the domain of Wei and General Zhao Su the domain of Geng. Shiwei advised Prince Shensheng to flee as Zhou King Wenwang's uncles did. Jinn minister Po-yan advised against the conferral of Wei land onto Bi-wan. The next year, Prince Shensheng was ordered on a new campaign against Dongshan-Chidi barbarians. Shensheng sought advice with Li'ke as to his crown prince status. (Scholar Liu Qiyu pointed out that in southwestern Shanxi Prov, a statelet called Ji-guo, possible of Xia Dynasty descendants, with ancient Ji-zhou character embedded, had at one time attacked Jinn Principality and hence it should be looked at as a considerable power. Ji-guo, subsequently quelled by Jinn, had become the fiefs of several Jinn ministers consecutively, from 650 BC to 627 BC. Liu Qiyu mentioned excavations of Zeng-guo to prove that various powers had existed quite independently at the ancient times.) In 658 BC approx (i.e., 2nd year of Lu Lord Xigong), Jinn borrowed a path from Yu-guo and attacked Xiangyang of Guo-guo. In 656 BC approx, Li-ji conspired to put poison into the meat Shensheng gave to his father; Li-ji pasted honey onto her body to attract bees, asked Shensheng help her drive away the bees, and then accused Shensheng of trying to take advantage of her. Shensheng fled to Xincheng city and committed suicide. Jinn Lord Xian'gong (?-651 B.C.) hence fell under the trick of his concubine (a Li-rong woman), and Prince Chong'e (Chong Er, ?-628 BC) escaped to Di(2) Statelet in 655 BC. (Prince Chong Er's birth mother was from Di barbarian.) This year, Jinn borrowed path from Yu-guo again by sending Jinn Xian'gong stallion as a gift. A Yu-guo minister, Gong Zhiqi, advised against it, saying Yu-guo and Guo-guo were like lips and teeth to each other. Gong Zhiqi led his whole family away from the Yu-guo. Jinn Principality eliminated Guo and Yu statelets in the winter of 655 BC. Guo-gong fled to Zhou court. Yu-gong and his minister Baili Xi were captured and the stallion was found by Xunxi and delivered back to Jinn Xian'gong. In 654 BC approx, Jinn attacked Prince Yiwu at Quwo land, and Yiwu fled to a different statelet, Shaoliang land, at the advice of Ji-rui. Ji-rui

said that should Yiwu flee to Di2 barbarians, Jinn would attack Di because Chong'er was already there. Two years later, Jinn attacked Di2, and Di counter-attacked Jinn; hence, Jinn withdrew from their siege. Concubine Li-ji's brother had a son called Dao-zi in this year.

Zhou King Xiangwang (Ji Zheng, reign 651-619 B.C.)

Lord Qi Huangong held a meeting at Kuiqiu in 651 B.C. as a demonstration of his hegemony status. Qi Lord Huan'gong (r. 685-643 BC), who proclaimed himself a 'hegemony lord' in 679 BC and destroyed the statelets of Shan-rong and Guzhu in Manchuria in 664 BC, campaigned against Bai-di barbarians in the west in 651 BC, occupied 'da xia' (i.e., Grand Xia land) and crossed the river to subjugate 'xi yu' (i.e., western Yu-shi clan's land).

After the death of Jinn Lord Xian'gong, Li-ji's son, Xiqi, was erected, but a minister (Li'ke) killed Xiqi; after minister Xunxi erected another cousin of Xiqi (Dao-zi), Li'ke killed the new lord and Xunxi, consecutively. Li-ji was killed on the streets. Li'ke first sought for Prince Chong'er as the new Jinn lord, but Chong'er declined. Li'ke then went to Prince Yiwu. Jinn Prince Yiwu sought for help from Qin Lord Mugong (r. BC 659-621) in escorting him to the throne at Jinn, with a promise of seceding to Qin 8 cities to the west of Yellow River. Qi Huan'gong sent forces to help Yiwu as well, and Qi forces stopped marching at Gaoliang after finding out that Qin already delivered Yiwu, i.e., Jinn Huigong (r. 650-637 BC). Yiwu ate his words, and killed Li'ke instead of conferring him the land of Fengyang. Yiwu's emissary to Qin, Pi-zheng, being afraid of returning to Jinn to receive the same fate as Li'ke, would incite Qin Lord Mugong in having Jinn Prince Chong'er replace Yiwu. (In Sima Qian's self account of his lineage, Pi-zheng appeared to be a remote ancestor.) Pi-zheng was killed upon returning to Jinn, and his son (Pi-bao) fled to Qin. During 12th year reign, i.e., 648 BC, counsellor Guan Zhong of Qi passed away.

During the 3rd year of the King Xiangwang reign, a half brother, by the name of Shu-dai, colluded with Rong and Di barbarians in attacking King Xiangwang. (Rong-di barbarians had come to aid Shu-dai as a conspiracy of Shu-dai's mother, ex-queen Huihou.) Jinn Principality attacked the Rong to help the Zhou court. Shu-dai fled to Qi Principality. Qi Principality also helped Zhou court by sending Guan Zhong on a campaign against the Rong people. At Zhou court, King Xiangwang expressed gratitude to Guan Zhong, mentioning the fact that Zhou King Wuwang had married the daughter of Jiang Taigong (founder of

Qi Principality) as wife. Three years after the death of Qi Lord Huan'gong, Shu-dai returned to Zhou court from Qi Principality at the request of Zhou King Xiangwang.

During 12th year reign of Qin Mugong, i.e., 648 BC, Guan Zhong of Qi passed away.

Around 648 BC, when Jinn had a drought-related famine, Qin, against the proposal of Pi-bao in attacking Jinn, would dispatch ships with grains to Jinn, passing from Qin capital of Yong to Jinn capital of Jiang(4). Two years later, Qin had a famine, but Jinn refused to lend grains, and moreover attacked Qin in 645 BC. Qin Lord Mugong and Pi-bao fought against Jinn army at a place called Han-yuan in September. (See The Battle Of Han-Yuan). When Mugong saw Yiwu and his horse trapped in the mud, Mugong intended to capture Yiwu. But Jinn army came to aid Yiwu and encircled Mugong. Three hundred 'yeren' (countryside people) solders, who were spared death by Mugong for eating good horses as meat, would rush to rescue Mugong, and moreover captured Yiwu. When Mugong intended to sacrifice Yiwu for Lord Highness, i.e., Heaven, Zhou court came to petition for mercy, and Mugong's wife would beg for mercy for his brother (Yiwu). Mugong released Yiwu in November for sake of frustrating Jinn ministers' attempt to erect Yiqu's son as new Jinn lord.

Yiwu, upon return to Jinn, killed Qingzheng who refused to rescue him during the prior war, surrendered 8 cities to the west of Yellow River to Qin, and sent his son (Zi-yu) to Qin as a hostage. Yiwu, fearing that Prince Chong'er might stir trouble, sent an assassin to Di statelet and forced Chong'er into fleeing to Qi after a stay of 12 years with Di people. Qin gave Zi-yu a royal family girl for marriage.

In 642 BC, Qi Huangong passed away. Around 641 BC, Qin exterminated Liang and Rui statelets. (Zi-yu's mother was the daughter of Liang-bo, and hence Zi-yu was angry with Qin.) Another two years later, Jinn Prince Zi-yu fled the Qin capital, without taking his Qin wife, when he heard that his father was getting ill. Zi-yu's wife did not report his fleeing to Qin court but refused to follow Zi-yu. Jinn Lord Yiwu passed away the next year, i.e., in 637 BC, and Zi-yu was enthroned as Jinn Huaigong (r. 637-636 BC). Zi-yu killed a minister called Hu-tu for not recalling his two sons from Chong'er enrourage. Qin Lord Mugong, hating Zi-yu for his fleeing home, would retrieve ex-Jinn Prince Chong'er from

Chu, and further gave ex-wife of Zi-yu to Chong'er. In 636 BC, Qin Mugong, with **500 chariots, 2000 cavalry, and 50,000 field soldiers**, escorted Prince Chong'er to Jinn capital to become Jinn Lord Wengong (r. 636-628 BC), and Chong'er sent an assassin to have Zi-yu (Jinn Lord Huaigong) killed at Gaoliang. At the age of 62, Chong'er returned to Jinn after an exile of 19 years.

In 639 BC, during the 13th year reign of King Xiangwang, Zheng Principality attacked Hua-guo fief for its defection of loyalty to Wey Principality. (Hua-guo fief was of Lord Huangdi's surname and it was subservient to Jinn and Zheng. It was later exterminated by Qin Principality.) When King Xiangwang sent two '*da fu*' ministers to mediate on behalf of Hua-guo, Zheng Lord Ligong imprisoned the two ministers for his unhappiness over Zhou King Xiangwang's bestowing gifts on Lord of Guo Fief. Against the advice of a minister called Fuchen (who said that Zhou court had enjoyed protection from Zheng for past four generations), King Xiangwang campaigned against Zheng Principality in collaboration with Rong-di barbarians in 637 BC. King Xiangwang, to show his favor for Rong-di, took in the daughter of Rong-di ruler as his queen. But in the next year, King Xiangwang abandoned queen of Rong-di origin, and the Rong-di came to attack Zhou court as a revenge. In the autumn of 636 BC, the brother of Zhou King Xiangwang, Shu-dai, hired the Di barbarians in attacking the Zhou court. King Xiangwang fled to Zheng. When Rong-di sacked Zhou capital, King Xiangwang fled to Zheng. Shu-dai was made the king, and Shu-dai took over King Xiangwang's Rong-di queen as his concubine. Rong-di hence moved to live next to Zhou capital. Rong-di extended their domain as eastward as the Wey Principality.

Chong'er, at the age of 17, possessed five tutors: Zhao Shuai, Huyan Jiufan (uncle-in-law), Jia Tuo, Xian Zhen, and Wei Wu-zi. (Later, one follower, by the name of Jie Zi-tui, went to the mountains to be a hermit instead of accepting Chong'er awards. Jie might have perished after Jinn lord burnt the mountain to force him out of hermitage.) At Di statelet, he was given a Jiuru-Chidi (Gaoru-Chidi) woman of Kui surname; and a sister of the woman married with Zhao Shuai and later bore Zhao Dun. After staying in Di statelet for 12 years, Chong'er was forced into an exile tour of various Zhou vassals. Passing through Wey, Chong'er was mistreated by Wey Wengong and left Wey. At Wey land of Wulu, Chong'er begged for food from peasants who poured mud into the food. At Qi, Chong'er was given a royal girl and twenty carts for marriage. Chong'er stayed in Qi for five years, and under the collusion of Zhao Shuai, Huyan Jiufan

and Qi wife, Chong'er was fed a lot of wine and carried out of Qi capital in intoxicated status. Chong'er wife had asked him to think more about recovering his country than staying stuck with a woman for life and doing nothing good. Passing through Cao statelet, Chong'er was mistreated by Cao Gonggong, but received assistance from a Cao minister. Passing through Song, Chong'er was received by Song Xianggong in the rituals of a lord. (Song Lord Xianggong was 17th generation grandson of Song Duke Wei-zi, and Song Xianggong died of an arrow wound incurred during the Battle Of Hong-shui.) Passing through Zheng statelet, Chong'er was mistreated by Zheng Wengong. At Chu, Chong'er was given vassal treatment by Chu King Chengwang. When Qin retried Chong'er, Chu King escorted Chong'er with big gifts to Qin. Qin gave Chong'er 5 royal family girls, including Zi-yu's wife. At the age of 62, Chong'er retruned to Jinn after an exile of 19 years. When two ministers (Lü Sheng and Qie Rui) planned to rebell against Jinn Wengong, an eunuch, Lüti, who previously tried to assasinate Chong'er twice, informed Chong'er of the plot. Chong'er received the assiatance of Qin Mugong in having the rebels killed over the river. Qin Mugong dispatched 3,000 soldiers as Jinn Wengong's bodyguards.

In 635 BC, King Xiangwang sought help with Qin/Jinn. This is during Jinn Wengong's 2nd year reign. Qin Mugong led an army against Shu-dai and reached the Yellow River during the spring. Zhao Shuai advised that Jinn Wengong should aid Zhou court, too, and Qin-Jinn armies killed Shu-dai in April of the year. King Xiangwang conferred onto Jinn Lord the title of Count and the land of Yangfan or 'he nei' (pronounced as He-rui in ancient Chinese to mean the winding section of the Yellow River or equivalent 'Hanoi' in Vietnamese for the meaning of the innerside of the Yellow River, i.e., northern Henan Province where Yellow River flows to the east with a 90 degree turn).

In 633 BC, Chu led its vassals on a siege of Song. Xian Zhen advised Jinn Wengong that Jinn should aid Song as requital. Huyan proposed that Jinn attack Chu's two allies, i.e., Cao and Wey. Jinn dispatched three columns of army, with Qie Hu in the middle, Huyan in charge of the upper column, and Luan Zhi the lower column. In 632 BC, Jinn Wengong was refused a path by Wey for attacking Cao. Then, Jinn crossed the river elsewhere and attacked both Cao and Wey, taking over Wulu in Jan of 632 BC. In Feb, Jinn and Qi made an alliance at Wey land, and refused Wey's request for being a member. When Wey lord intended to ally with Chu, Wey ministers ousted him. Chu was defeated for aiding Wey. Jinn then sieged Cao. In March, Jinn took over Cao capital but

spared a Cao minister's home as a requital for the early help during Chong'er's exile. Chu then laid a siege of Song. Jinn Wengong intended to attack Chu to help Song, but he was hesitant since Chu king had given him a lot of favor before. Xian Zhen proposed that Jinn capture Cao-bo and divide Cao & Wey land for sake of Song so that Chu would release Song to aid Cao/Wey. Hence, Chu army withdrew the siege of Song capital.

Chu General Zi-yue adamantly insisted on a fight with Jinn, and Chu King allocated less soldiers. Jinn had Chu *da fu* Wan-chun retained under custody to anger Zi-yue and Jinn privately made peace with Cao/Wey for sake of making them defect to Jinn. Hence, Zi-yue was angered into a fight, and Jinn retreated three times as a fulfillment of promise that Chong'er made to Chu king while during exile stay at Chu. In April, Song-Qi-Qin-Jinn armies had a campaign against Chu at Chengpu (a Wey city), burnt Chu army for days, and defeated Chu at the Battle of Chengpu. (See [The Battle Of Chengpu](#)). (Zi-yue was ordered to commit suicide by Chu king later.) Zhou King Xiangwang personally went to Jinn camp to confer Marquisdom onto Jinn Wengong, and Jinn made a convenience palace of the king. Zheeng, seeing Chu defeat, went to ally with Jinn. In May, Jinn sent Chu prisoners to Zhou court. Zhou king dispatched *da fu* Wang Zi-hu to Jinn, conferred 'bo' (Count) onto Jinn Wengong, and offered royal arrows/bows and 300 royal guards to Jinn. Wang Zi-hu held an assembly of vassals. In June, Jinn restored Wey lord. In the winter, Jinn In the winter of 632 BC, Jinn Lord Wengong assembled vassals at a place called Wen (near Zhengzhou, Henan Prov) and called on the Zhou king to have a hunting party. Jinn restored Cao lord. Jinn first devised three columns of armies, with Xun Linfu in charge of the middle column, Xian Hu the right column, and Xian Mie the left column.

In 630 BC, Jinn Wengong wanted to punish Zheng for not helping him while he was in exile years ago, and Jinn Wengong sought help from Qin. Jinn/Qin laid a siege of Zheng and forced a Zheng minister to commit suicide. But Jinn refused to back off. Zheng dispatched Zhu Zhi-wu to Qin Mugong and successfully persuaded Qin into a withdrawal. Qin left three *da fu* and a small army at the north gate of Zheng. Jinn withdrew army, too.

Two years later, 628 BC, Jinn Wengong passed away. Zheng-bo, the lord of Zheng, also died. A Qin *da fu* at the north gate of Zheng sent a message to Qin Mugong, stating that Zheng could be taken over by a surprise attack. This

would be during the 24th year reign of Zhou King Xiangwang. Qin Mugong, against the advice of Jian Shu and Baili Xi, dispatched Mengmingshi (Baili Xi's son), Xiqishu (Jian Shu's son), and Baiyibin on a long distance campaign against Zheng. Baili Xi and Jian Shu were reprimanded for crying for their sons before the march, and the two old men said to their sons that Qin might suffer defeat at Xiao'er (Xiaoshan Mountain). In Dec of 627 BC, when Qin army passed through the front of the north gate of Zhou capital, Wangsun Man, still a kid at the time, commented that Qin army lacked respect for Zhou court and would for sure lose the war. At a place near Hua-guo, a Zheng merchant, by the name of Xuan Gao, donated his 12 buffalos to Qin army by pretending to do so under the order of Zheng lord. Three Jinn generals were surprised to know that Zheng had advance knowledge of the Qin attack, stopped at the Hua-guo Fief, and exterminated Count Hua's fief instead. Hearing of Qin attack on Hua-guo of Ji surname, Jinn Wengong's son, Jinn Xianggong (r. 627-621)), in the spring of 627 BC, sent an army to have Qin army ambushed at Xiao'er. Three Qin generals were captured, while their soldiers were all killed. Jinn Wengong's dowager wife requested with Jinn Xianggong to have the three guys released. Jinn Wengong later changed mind when Xian Zheng objected to the release, but Xian Zhen failed to chase the three guys who had been inside ship crossing the river. Qin Mugong wore mourning clothing and received the three generals at the outskirts of the Qin capital.

In 626 BC, Chu Prince Shang Chen assassinated his father King Chu Chengwang. Two years after Xiao'er defeat, in 625 BC, Qin Mugong dispatched Mengmingshi on another campaign against Jinn. Meantime, Qin Lord Mugong began to conquer the Western Rong tribes. Qin Lord Mugong began his expansion by attracting talents around China. Earlier, he played a trick to trade with Chu Principality for Baili Xi at the price of 5 sheep skins, claiming that Baili Xi was wanted for a crime in Qin Principality. Baili Xi was titled 'Five Sheep Da Fu'. Baili Xi later recommended his best friend, Jian Shu, for the position as a prime minister. Qin Mugong sent a minister disguised as a merchant on a trek to the Song Principality for Jian Shu. Qin Mugong's emissary, Gongzi Zhi, found Jian Shu in the countryside of Song and invited him over to Qin Court. Jian Su was titled 'Shang Da Fu', i.e., highest Dafu.

Qin Mugong heard of the fame of a talent called You Yu who deserted the Jin (Jinn) Principality for the Xirong (Western Rong) nomads, and he played a trick of dissension and managed to hire over this person when Xi-rong sent You Yu to

Qin as an emissary. Qin Mugong and You Yu had an exchange of opinions on China's system, law, music/rituals and the lack of such things in Xi-rong Statelet. You Yu rebutted the dilapidation of China's systems and laws that occurred after Huangdi and commented that Xi-rong had reached governance without knowing a sophisticated system via their king's self-perfection into a saint and that Xi-rong did not have to undergo the patricides and usurpations as Chinese did. Qin Mugong deliberately retained You Yu for one year while he sent some beauties and music to Xi-rong King as gifts. When You Yu went back to Xi-rong, Xi-rong king was indulgent in women and music. Hence, You Yu deserted Xi-rong for Qin at several invitations of Qin Mugong.

In 624 BC, Qin Mugong dispatched Mengmingshi against Jinn again. Qin armies burned their ships after crossing the river, and defeated Jinn and captured one of their outskirts palaces. Then, Qin armies crossed river at Maojin and buried Qin soldier's bodies at Xiao'er. Qin armies mourned for three days at Xiao'er, and Qin Mugong again expressed regrets about not taking the advice of Jian Shu and Baili Xi. The next year, in 623 BC, Jinn counter-attacked Qin and took over Xincheng.

In 623 BC, Qin Mugong, using You Yu as a guide, campaigned against the Xirong nomads and conquered the Xirong Statelet under their lord Chi Ban. Once Chi Ban submitted to Qin, the rest of Western Rong nomads in the west acknowledged the Qin overlordship. Qin Mugong would conquer altogether a dozen (12) states in Gansu-Shaanxi areas and controlled the western China of the times. Zhou King dispatched Duke Zhaogong to congratulate Qin with a gold drum.

In 622 BC, Jinn's ministers, Zhao Shuai (Zhao Shuai-cheng-zi), Luan Zhi (Luan Zhen-zi), Jiuji Zifan and Huobo, all passed away. Zhao Dun assumed Zhao Shuai's post. Lord Qin Mugong passed away in 621 BC, and 177 persons were buried live, including three Ziche brothers who, being distinguished ministers, had at one time promised to live and die with Qin lord together during a banquet. Historians commented that Qin could not campaign to the east because their best ministers were buried as funeral objects. Qin Mugong's son, Kanggong, succeeded the throne.

Jinn Lord Xianggong died in 621 BC, too. This would be during the 31st year reign of Zhou King Xiangwang.

Jinn Minister Zhao Dun sought for Jinn Lord Xianggong's brother (Yong) for Jinn Lord. Yong was born by the mother of Qin royal heritage and lived in Qin land. Qin sent Yong to Jinn and arrived at a place called Linghu, east of the river. At this time, Jinn had decided to select Jinn Xianggong's son as their lord. Zhao Dun attacked Qin at Linghu for sake of stopping Yong from coming back to Jinn, and Qin retreated with Zhao Dun's emissaries (Sui Hui and Xian Mie). The second year, Qin counter-attacked Jinn and took over Wucheng city.

In 619 BC, King Xiangwang passed away.

Zhou King Qingwang (Ji Renchen, reign 618-613 B.C.)

In 617 BC, Jinn attacked Qin and took over Shaoliang; Qin counter-attacked Jinn. Two years later, i.e., 615 BC approx, Qin Kanggong attacked Jinn and took over Jima. Jinn Linggong ordered Zhao Chuan, Zhao Dun and Qie Que on a counter-attack and defeated Jinn at He-qu (winding area of Yellow River). The next year, i.e., 614 BC approx, six prominent ministers of Jinn managed to have their general Wei Shouyu pretend to surrender to Qin; when Sui Hui came to see Wei Souyu, Jinn would have Sui Hui captured and brought back to Jinn.

King Qingwang passed away in 613 BC after a reign of only 6 years. In this year, Chu King Zhuangwang (r. BC 613-591) was enthroned.

Zhou King Kuangwang (Ji Ban, reign 612-607 B.C.)

Zhou ministers, Duke Zhougong (Yue) and Wangsun Su had disputes. Jinn dispatched Zhao Dun and 800 chriots to Zhou court, and Zhou King Kuangwang was selected.

In 611 BC (i.e., 16th year of Lu Lord Wengong), Yong-guo of today's northwestern Hubei Prov, a vassal who had participated in Zhou King Wuwang's campaign against Shang Dyansty in 12th cent BC, would rally numerous barbarian statelets against Chu Principality. Chu was defeated seven times and had at one time planned to relocate their capital. Chu King sought alliance with Qin, Ba-guo of Sichuan Prov and other barbarian statelets and exterminated Yong-guo statelet.

In 609 BC approx, Qi Lord Yigong (r. BC 612-609) was assassinated. Qin Kanggong was succeeded by his son, Qin Gonggong (r. BC 608-604) who was

enthroned next for 5 years.

In 607 BC, Jinn Lord Ligong had previously tried to assassinate Zhao Dun several times and caused Zhao Dun into fleeing the country. Ligong used bows to shoot people and killed his cook and other servants at random. An assassin, Chu Mi, committed suicide by bumping his head against a tree near Zhao Dun's house. When Ligong released a dog to bite Zhao Dun, a cook (who was previously saved from hunger by Zhao Dun) would fight off the dog. Zhao Dun's brother, Zhao Chuan, killed Ligong at Daoyuan Garden (i.e., Peach Garden) and sent a messenger to recall Zhao Dun. Zhao Dun dispatched Zhao Chuan to the Zhou court and then retrieved Jinn Xianggong's brother as Jinn Lord Chenggong (r. BC 606-600).

Zhou King Kuangwang passed away after a reign of only 6 years. His brother, Ji Yu, was selected as the king.

Zhou King Dingwang (Ji Yu, reign 606-586 B.C.)

During the first year, i.e., 606 BC, Lord Chu Zhuangwang campaigned northward against the Luhun-rong barbarians. Luhun-rong barbarians, according to *Hou Han Shu*, had relocated to northern China from ancient Gua-zhou prefecture of Gansu Prov. Alternatively speaking, per ancient scholar Du Yu, Luhun-rong barbarians, with clan name of Yun-shi, originally dwelled to the northwest of Qin and Jinn principalities, but Qin/Jinn seducingly relocated them to Yichuan area (i.e, Xincheng, Henan Prov) during the 22nd year reign of Lu Lord Xigong (r. BC 659-627), i.e., in 638 BC. Luhun-rong remnants were later known as Ma-shi where the surname of 'Ma' was said to have mutated from the word 'man(2)' for barbarians.

When passing through Luoyi (Luoyang), Lord Chu Zhuangwang inquired about the nine bronze ding or cauldrons of the Zhou court, which was a sign of usurpation in the eyes of the Zhou court. Zhou King Dingwang dispatched a minister, Wangsun Man, to the Chu camp to dissuade Chu Zhuangwang from an attempt at seeing the bronze cauldrons. (This episode would be termed 'inquiring about cauldrons'.)

In 606 BC, Jinn attacked Zheng for betraying Jinn. Two years later, in 604 BC approx, Chu attacked Zheng for betraying Chu for Jinn. Jinn came to the relief of Zheng. Qin Gonggong died in 604 BC.

Lao-zi or Li Dan was born in 604 B.C.

Three years later, in 601 BC approx, Jinn defeated, captured and killed one Qin general by the name of 'Chi'. In 600 BC, Jinn Chenggong competed against Chu for hegemony by calling an assembly of vassals at Hu(4), and Chen refused to attend for fearing Chu. Jinn Chenggong dispatched Zhongxing Huanzi against Chen statelet as well as rescued Zheng from Chu attack. Jinn defeated Chu. Jinn Chenggong (r. BC 606-600) died in 600 BC. Two years later, in 598 BC, Chu attacked Chen because a Chen minister killed their lord one year ago. The next year, in 597 BC, Chu King Zhuangwang (r. BC 613-591) lay siege on Zheng, and Count Zheng surrendered to Chu army. Jinn dispatched three armies led by Xunlinfu, Sui Hui and Zhao Suo to the relief of Zheng. Before crossing the Yellow River in June, Zheng had surrendered to Chu. Chu defeated Jinn. In 595 BC, Jinn attacked Zheng for surrendering to Chu. Chu Zhuangwang defeated Zheng, and went north to defeat Jinn on the bank of Yellow River. The next year, Chu attacked Song, and Song requested help with Jinn. Chu Zhuangwang held a hegemony assembly of Zhou vassals. In 593 BC, Jinn dispatched Sui Hui against the Chi-di statelet and exterminated it. Chu Zhuangwang passed away in 591 BC. Jinn attacked Qi, and Qi sent in a prince as a hostage.

Another two years, Qi attacked Lu; Lu requested help with Wey. Jinn sent 800 chariots, with Qie Ke, Luan Shu and HaanJue in charge, against Qi, defeated Qi Qinggong (r. BC 598-582) during the summer and pursued Qi back to their statelet. In this year, Chu minister Shen'gong Wuchen fled to Jinn with a Chu king's concubine.

The next year, in 588 BC, Qi lord went to Jinn and proposed that Jinn Jinggong be the king. Jinn Jinggong declined it, but he re-organized his armies into six columns in the same fashion as Zhou court. One year later, Lu lord Chenggong (r. BC 590-573) went to Jinn, but he betrayed Jinn later because Qi did not respect him. Jinn attacked Zheng in this year. In 586 BC, earthquake occurred.

Zhou King Jianwang (Ji Yi, reign 585-572 B.C.)

In 584 BC, Jinn and Wu began to ally against Chu. In 583 BC, the Zhao Tong and Zhao Gua families were exterminated in Jinn principality. In 580 BC, Jinn Lord Ligong had an alliance meeting with Qin Lord Huan'gong across the Yellow River. However, Qin Lord Huan'gong tore apart the alliance agreement after

returning home, and then cooperated with Di barbarians in attacking Jinn. Two years later, Jinn led vassals against Qin, pursued Qin to Jing River and captured a Qin general by the name of Chengchai.

In spring of 575 BC, Zheng betrayed Jinn for Chu. Jinn minister Luan Shu proposed a war with Chu. Jinn Ligong personally led troops across the river in May. Against the advice of Fan Wen-zi, Jinn Ligong fought with Chu, shot at the eye of Chu king, and defeated Chu King Gongwang (r. BC 590-560) at the Battle of Yanling (a place in southeastern Zheng). Chu General Zi-fan, who previously caused Chu king in killing Shen'gong Wuchen family, would be killed by Chu king.

During the 13th year reign of King Jianwang, Jinn Lord Ligong was killed by Luan Shu and Zhongxing Yan, and Jinn dispatched emissaries (led by a Zhi family member) to the Zhou court to retrieve Zi-zhou as Lord Daogong. Jinn Lord Daogong would attack Zheng in the autumn of 572 BC and reached Chen statelet.

Zhou King Lingwang (Ji Xiexin, reign 571-545 B.C.)

In 562 BC, Jinn Ligong commented that Wei-zi (Wei Jiang) had big contributions in assembling vassals 9 times and pacifying Rong/Di. In this year, Qin rescued Zheng from Jinn Lord Daogong's attack at Yangdi County, Henan Prov.

In 559 BC, Jinn Lord Daogong ordered that his six ministers assemble vassals and campaigned against Qin. Jinn pursued Qin across the Jing-shui River. In 558 BC, Jinn Lord Daogong inquired about governance with his blind-musician, Shi Kuang.

In 557 BC, Jinn attacked Qi. Qi Linggong (r. BC 581-554) retreated with the advice of Yan Ying. Jinn sieged Linzi and burnt city walls, and went as east as Jiao and as south as Yi on Shandong Peninsula.

In 552 BC, Lu Lord Xianggong (r. BC 572-542) came to Jinn court. Jinn minister Luan Cheng (Luan Shu's grandson) fled to Qi.

Confucius [Kong-zi] was born in 551 BC, i.e., 21st year of Zhou King Lingwang or 22nd (?) year of Lu Lord Xianggong.

In 550 BC, Qi Zhuangong (r. BC 553-548) escorted Luan Cheng back to Jinn and almost sacked the Jinn city of Jiang. Fan Xian-zi advised against Jinn Pinggong's suicide attempt, fought off Luan Cheng, and killed him near Quwo. Luan family was exterminated. Qi took over Chao and then retreated. In 548 BC, Cui Zhu assassinated Qi Zhuangong, and Jinn defeated Qi at the Battle of Gaotang. In 544 BC, a Wu prince came to Jinn and commented to Zhao Wen-zi, HaanXuan-zi and Wei Xian-zi that 'Jinn governance will lie in the hands of you three families.'

Zhou King Jing(3)-wang (Ji Gui, reign 544- 520 B.C.)

After the death of King Jing(3)-wang, three princes fought each other for the throne. Jinn people attacked Prince Zi-chao who killed elder prince Meng earlier. Prince Meng was made King Daowang posthumously. Jinn people erected Prince Gai as King Jing(4)-wang.

In 541 BC, Chu prince assassinated his father to become Chu King Lingwang (r. BC 540-529). In 538 BC, Chu King Lingwang assembled "hegemony meeting" at Shen (Nanyang, Henan Prov). Qin Jinggong passed way during the 40th year reign, i.e., 537 BC. In 536 BC, Jinn campaigned against Yan. Jinn Pinggong died in 532 BC.

529 BC, Chu prince assassinated Chu King Lingwang and became Chu King Pingwang (r. BC 528-516). In 526 BC, Chu King Pingwang sought Qin royal family girl for his son's wife, but Chu King Pingwang later took in Qin girl as his own concubine.

Jinn Qinggong (r. BC 525-512) was enthroned in 525 BC. Six prominent families of Jinn, Haan, Zhao, Wei, Fan, Zhongxing & Zhi, began to overpower Jinn court. (I deliberately spelled Han2 as Haan here.)

In 522 BC, Chu Elder Prince Jian fled to Zheng where he was killed. Wu Zixu fled to Wu after his father and brother were arrested and later put to death by the Chu king.

In 520 BC, Zhou King Jingwang died. Six ministers of Jinn went to Zhou court and quelled internal prince turmoils. Zhou King Jing4-wang was selected.

Six Jinn prominent families began to attack each other for control of Jinn. Jinn and Qin had peace for this time period.

Zhou King Jing(4)-wang (Ji Gai, reign 519-477 B.C.)

In 517 BC, the Ji(4) family of Lu drove Lu Lord Zhaogong (r. BC 541-510) away from the capital.

When Prince Zi-chao still opposed King Jing(4)-wang, Jinn Principality led various vassals on a march to the Zhou court during the 4th year reign of King Jing(4)-wang. Prince Zi-chao hence acknowledged himself as a minister, but he would rebel again during the 16th year reign of King Jing(4)-wang. King Jing(4)-wang fled to Jinn court and would not return till Jinn Lord Dinggong escorted him back to the throne the next year. Prince Zi-chao fled to Chu Principality. King Jing(4)-wang moved his capital to Chengzhou city.

In 515 BC, Wey and Song petitioned with Jinn to have Lu Lord Zhaogong restored. Ji Ping-zi bribed Fan Xian-zi, and Fan said to Jinn Qinggong that the Ji(4) family of Lu had no fault.

He-lu became the Lord of Wu Principality in 514 BC. Sun Wu, i.e., Sun Tzu or Sun Zi (535 B.C.-?), began to assist He-lu.

In 514 BC, 6 families of Jinn exterminated Jinn royal relatives, i.e., the families of Qi-xi-sun and Shu-xiang-zi. Two years later, Jinn Qinggong died.

In 506 BC, Wu King He-lu and Wu Zixu attacked Chu. Wu defeated Chu at the Battle of Yuzhang. Chu King Zhaowang (r. BC 515-489) fled to Sui Fief; Wu army occupied Chu capital; Wu Zixu dug up the dead body of Chu Pingwang (r. BC 526-516) and lynched it; and Chu Minister Shen Baoxu went to seek help with Qin and cried for seven days and nights. Qin Lord Aigong hence dispatched Zi Pu & Zi Hu, with 500 chariots, to Chu in 504 BC. Qin army defeated Wu army at Junxiang. Chu King Zhaowang returned to the capital.

King of Wu Fu-Chai (?-473 BC ?) defeated King of Yue Gou-jian in 494 BC (?). In 482 BC, Jinn Dinggong competed with King Wu Fu-chai for hegemony at Huangchi. Yue King Gou-jian attacked Wu by taking advantage of Fu-chai's absence from his country, and Wu secretly made peace with Gou-jian to prevent vassals from hearing about Wu defeat back at home. Zi Lu (Zhong You), i.e.,

Confucius's student, was killed in 480 BC (?).

Zhen-zi (505 - 436 BC ?) was born in 505 BC (?). Mo-zi (Mo Zhai, 480-390 BC ?) was born in 480 BC (?). [Scholar Liang Qichao claimed that Mo-zi was born in early years of Zhou King Dingwang (Ji Jie, reign 468-441 B.C.) and died in the middle of Zhou King Anwang (Ji Jiao, reign 401-376 B.C.) Mo-zi was from the country of Xiao-zhu-guo [i.e., small spider totem country] which, also known as "gentlemen country", was later exterminated by Lu Principality in 325 BC (?). Mencius had high regards for the school of thoughts propagated by Yang Zhu & Mo-zi.

In 481 BC, Qi minister Tian Chang assassinated his lord Qi Jian'gong. Kong-zi (Confucius) stopped the recording of *Chun Qiu* (i.e., Springs and Autums) in 481 B.C., two years before his death. Confucius passed away in 479 BC. In 478 BC, King Jing(4)-wang passed away.

Zhou King Yuanwang (Ji Ren, reign 476-469 B.C.)

In 475 BC, Jinn Dinggong died, and his son would be Jinn Lord Chugong (r. BC 474-457). *Zhan Guo* or Warring States time period began to count.

King of Yue, Gou-jian, who had undertaken secretive preparations and defeated Wu in 482 BC, would launch another attack at Wu Principality in 475 BC. Fu-chai had caused his best minister, Wu Zixu, to commit suicide. (Wu Zixu, the junior son of an ex-Chu official, had earlier sought asylum with Wu and then asked Wu King in successfully attacking Chu Principality. Wu Zixu was famous for his exile stories as well as digging up Chu King's dead body for lynching.) Gou-jian sieged the Wu capital for 3 years, and by 473 BC (?), and King of Wu Fu-Chai committed suicide. Zhou King Yuanwang upgraded Gou-jian's title to Count from viscount. Fan Li left Yue for Qi, saying to another Yue minister, Zhong, that he should retire to avoid the purge fate by citation that hunters ate their running dogs after dogs caught the rabbits.

King Yuanwang passed away after a reign of eight years.

Zhou King Zhendingwang (Ji Jie, reign 468-441 B.C.)

Qin Principality attacked Dali-rong barbarians in 461 BC and took over Dali-rong capital.

In 458 BC, Zhi-bo colluded with Zhao-Haan-Wei families in dividing the land of Fan and Zhongxing. Jinn Chugong planned to petition for help with Qi/Lu in restricting the 4 families. The four families hence attacked Jinn Chugong, and Chugong died on the road to Qi. Zhi-bo selected the great grandson of Jinn Zhaogong as Jinn Aigong (r. BC 456-439 ?). Zhi-bo became the main minister governing Jinn and controlled the land that belonged previously to the families of Fan and Zhongxing.

In 456 BC, Jinn took over the city of Wucheng.

In 453 BC, three Jinn prominent families (three separate states of Han(2), Zhao, and Wei)), under Zhao Xiang-zi, Haan Kang-zi and Wei Huan-zi, destroyed an opponent called Zhi-bo and split Zhi-bo's ex-Jinn land into three parts. Zhi-bo's son, Zhi Kai, fled to Qin in 452 BC.

In 444 BC, Qin Lord Ligong attacked Yiqu-rong barbarians in the areas of later Qingzhou and Ningzhou and captured the Yiqu-rong king. In 443 BC, Sun eclipse occurred and Qin Lord Ligong died and was succeeded by Qin Lord Zaogong.

Zhou King Aiwang (Ji Quji, reign 441-441 B.C.)

King Aiwang was killed by his brother after a reign of three months.

Zhou King Siwang (Ji Shu-xi, reign 441-440 B.C.)

King Siwang was killed by his junior brother after a reign of five months.

Zhou King Kaowang (Ji Wei, reign 440-426 B.C.)

In 439 BC, Jinn Aigong died, and Jinn Yougong (r. 438-421 BC ?) was erected as a puppet. Jinn held only the cities of Quwo and Jiang.

King Kaowang had a reign of 15 years. King Kaowang conferred the land south of the Yellow River onto his brother (Ji Jie) for sake of continuing Archduke Zhougong's officialdom. Ji Jie would be Lord Xizhou Huangong where Xizhou meant for 'Western Zhou'. Since King Jing(4)-wang moved his capital to Chengzhou city, the official Zhou court would be called Dongzhou or 'Eastern Zhou'.

Lord Xizhou Huangong would be succeeded by his son, Lord Xizhou Weigong. Lord Xizhou Weigong's son would be Lord Xizhou Huigong. During the 2nd year

reign of later Zhou King Xianwang, i.e., 367 B.C., Lord Xizhou Huigong made his son, Ji Ban, the so-called Lord Dongzhou Huigong for sake of supporting the official Zhou court at the old capital of Luoyang. Lord Dongzhou Huigong's son, i.e., Lord Dongzhou Wugong would be destroyed by Qin Principality. Note that Zhou Kingdom now possessed a king in Chengzhou, an eastern duke (Lord Dongzhou) in Luoyang, and a western duke (Lord Xizhou) in the land south of the Yellow River.

Chu Principality eliminated Lu Principality in 431 B.C.(?) Yiqu-rong barbarians counter-attacked Qin in 431 BC (?). Qin Lord Zaogong's brother, Huangong, succeeded in 430 BC (?).

Zhou King Weiliewang (Ji Wu, reign 425-402 B.C.)

During the 23rd year of Zhou King Weiliewang's reign, i.e., 403 B.C., the nine bronze utensils had vibrations. King Weiliewang conferred Marquisdom onto three Jinn statelets, Han-Zhao-Wei, i.e., Wei Si, Zhao Ji, and HaanQian. 'Zhan Guo' or Warring States time period started. History book 'Zi Zhi Tong Jian' record of history started in this year. The next year, King Weiliewang passed away and Chu King Shengwang was killed by a robber.

Zhou King Anwang (Ji Jiao, reign 401-376 B.C.)

King Anwang passed away after a reign of 26 years. King of Chu made Wu Qi the prime minister (384 BC ?).

Zhou King Liewang (Ji Xi, reign 375-369 B.C.)

King Liewang dispatched his civil and military officials to Qin Principality to show harmony. A Zhou chronicle official (Dan) went to see Qin Lord Xiangong and mentioned a necromancy note that Qin and Zhou had a fate of re-union and that Qin would produce a hegemony lord (i.e., Qin Lord Xiaogong) within 17 years. King Liewang passed away after a reign of ten years, and his brother succeeded him.

Meng-zi (Mencius, 372-289 BC ?) was born in 372 BC (?). Zhuang-zi (Chuang Tzu, 369-286 BC ?) was born in 369 BC (?).

Zhou King Xianwang (Ji Bian, reign 368-321 B.C.)

King Xianwang, during his 5th year reign, had congratulated Qin Lord Xiangong. During his 9th year reign, i.e., 360 BC, King Xianwang dispatched his

civil and military officials as well as 'royal bestowal meat' to Qin Lord Xiaogong. Shang Yang (?-338 B.C.) served Qin beginning from 361 BC. Qin made Xian'yang the capital and instated agriculture-related tax system in 350 BC and farming soldier rules. During King Xianwang's 25th year reign, Qin assembled all vassals on the Zhou domain. During King Xianwang's 33rd year reign, i.e, 336 BC, Zhou court congratulated Qin King Huiwang. Su Qin persuaded six principalities into an alliance to fight the Qin in 334 BC (?). Qin defeated Wei Principality in 333 BC (?). In 333 B.C, Zhou court dispatched the civil and military officials to Qin court to show respect. Zhang Yi (?-309 B.C.) served Qin Kingdom in 329 B.C.(?) During King Xianwang's 44th year reign, i.e., 325 B.C., Qin King Huiwang officially proclaimed himself a king. All vassals, Han-Wei-Qi-Zhao, followed suit by claiming to be kings as well.

Zhou King Shenjingwang (Ji Ding, reign 320-315 B.C.)

King Shenjingwang passed away after a reign of 6 years. Qin eliminated the Shu Kingdom in 316 B.C.(?)

Chu, Zhao, Han, Wei and Yan failed in their attack on Qin. Qi executed Su Qin, and made Zhang Yi the prime minister (317 BC ?).

Zhou King Nanwang (Ji Yan, reign 314-256 B.C.)

King Nanwang relocated his capital westward to Xizhou, i.e., the land south of the Yellow River, from Chengzhou in the east. Xizhou land would be where Duke Wugong (i.e., Xizhou-jun) dwelled. Xizhou-jun had more power and prestige than Zhou King Nanwang. This time period showed the pace of conquest picking up and the ultimate emergence of Qin as the hegemony. Qi Lord Xuan'gong eliminated the Yan in 314 B.C.(?) and Yan Lord Zhaowang was selected as lord of Yan in 312 B.C.(?) Xun-zi (Hsun Tzu, 300-230 B.C.?) was born in 300 BC (?).

When Xizhou-jun's elder son died, Chu Principality would give up some land to Prince Jiu of Xizhou-jun for sake of making Jiu the crown prince of Xizhou-jun. In 307 BC, Qin attacked Haan(2) land of Yiyang city. Chu came to the aid of Haan(2). Zhou court sent relief to Haan as well. Chu mis-took Zhou court as having sided with Qin and hence attacked Zhou court. A minister by the name of Su Dai went to Chu camp and explained the intricacies of the relationship between Zhou court and Qin-Chu statelets. When Qin tried to borrow a path from Xizhou-jun for sake of attacking Haan(2), a minister suggested that Xizhou-jun dispatched some hostages to Chu so that Qin would worry about

Chu-Zhou alliance. When Qin King invited Xizhou-jun for a state visit, Xizhou-jun sent someone to Haan for sake of having Haan send troops to Nanyang; then, Xizhou-jun made a pretext to Qin saying that he could not make the trip because Haan troops had invaded the Nanyang area. When the two Zhou fiefs, Xizhou and Dongzhou, fought each other, Haan sent troops to aid Xizhou but was dissuaded from doing so by Dongzhou. When Chu army lay a siege of Yangdi for three months, Haan sought for weaponry and grains from Dongzhou. Dongzhou-jun dispatched Su Dai to Haan and successfully persuaded Haan's prime minister from burdening Dongzhou; Su Dai claimed that Chu army must be ill for not taking Yangdi after three months and that Haan would show its illness should Haan have to appropriate weaponry and grains from Dongzhou.

Prince Mengchang-jun served the Qin in 299 B.C.(?) Prince Xinling-jun rescued the Zhao from the Qin attack. A Chu minister, by the name of Qu Yuan (343-289 B.C.), committed suicide by jumping into the Mi-Lou River. (Qu Yuan was a descendant of the son Xia of Chu King Wuwang and obtained the family name from the fief of 'Qu'.)

After Qin General Bai Qi successfully defeated Haan-Wei armies, a Zhou minister, Su Li, fearing that Bai Qi would pose a threat to Zhou court, would go to see Bai Qi in 281 BC and successfully persuaded Bai Qi into claiming sickness to Qin King: Su Li told Bai Qi that he could not afford to lose a battle and forfeit his past glorious military records should Bai Qi lose his campaigns against Wei Principality. In 273 BC, Qin army took over Hua'yang from Wei (Liang).

Tian Dan re-established the Qi in 279 B.C.(?).

Fearing the Qin encroachment, a Zhou minister (Ma Fan) went to see Wei (Liang) King and persuaded Wei from sending soldiers to Zhou for sake of guarding the Zhou court. Ma Fan, to balance off Wei's threat to Zhou court, then went to see Qin King and asked Qin send troops to the border areas to check the Wei (Liang) armies. In 270 BC, when Qin intended to attack Zhou court, a minister somehow dissuaded Qin from launching an attack on the pretext that should Qin attack Zhou, there would be nothing to gain since Zhou domain was small and vassals would all defect to Qi in the east as a result of fear for Qin.

Qin General Bai Qi defeated the Zhao in the Battle of Changping in 260 B.C.(?) and buried alive all Zhao prisoners of war.

In 257 BC, three Jinn statelets, Haan-Zhao-Wei, made an alliance against the Qin attack and Zhou court mediated over this war. In 256 BC, Qin took over Yangcheng (today's Yangcheng, Shanxi Prov) city of Haan Principality. Xizhou-jun, breaking peace treaty with Qin, allied with various vassals against Qin and marched out of Longmen Gorge area to cut off Qin armies in Yangcheng. Qin King Zhaowang got enraged and attacked Xizhou. Xizhou-jun (Duke Wugong) went to Qin camp to make an apology and surrendered his 36 cities and 30,000 population. Qin set free Xizhou-jun thereafter.

When both Xizhou-jun (Duke Wugong) and Zhou King Nanwang passed away, the Zhou people fled to the east. Qin retrieved the nine bronze utensils from the Zhou court and shipped them to Xian'yang. Qin relocated Xizhou-jun's son, Duke Xizhou Wengong, to a place near Luoyang of Henan Prov. An ancient scholar claimed that Zhou court had a domain of seven counties at the time of its demise: Henan, Luoyang, Gucheng, Pingyin, Yanshi, Gong, and Koushi (Yanshi, Henan Prov). After the death of Zhou King Nanwang, there was no king for 35 years, till Qin reunited China. 7 years later, Qin King Zhuangxiangwang exterminated Dongzhou fief. (*Zhan Guo Ce* mentioned the name of Zhou-wen-jun as the lord of Dongzhou fief at the time of its demise.)

The Zhou family heritage would not ensue till Han Emperor Wudi located a Zhou heir (Ji Jia) during the 4th year of the Yuanding Era (i.e., 113 BC) and conferred a title of Zhou-zi-nan-jun, over 90 years after the Zhou demise. Han Emperor Yuandi, during the 5th year of the Chuyuan Era (i.e., 48 BC), had conferred the Marquisdom onto the grandson of Ji Jia. Han Emperor Pingdi upgraded the title to 'Duke Zheng', and Latter Han Emperor Guangwudi conferred the title of 'Duke Wey' onto the Zhou heir.

Spring & Autumn

In Shang and early Zhou times, there are two seasons on record, spring and autumn. Confucius, who wrote the first private annals in history, had adopted the name "Chun-Qiu" (i.e., "Spring &

Map linked from
<http://www.friesian.com/>

Autumn") for his 18,000 character book which had a span of 242 years about the history of the Lu Principality, from Lord Lu Yingong (BC 722) to Lord Lu Aigong (BC 481).

Scholars claimed that various principalities had compiled their royal chronicles entitled "Spring & Autumn". However, only Lu Principality's version had survived as a result of Confucius' editing as well as Zuo Qiuming's version of *Zuo-shi Chun-qiu Zhuan* (i.e., *Zuo Zhuan*).

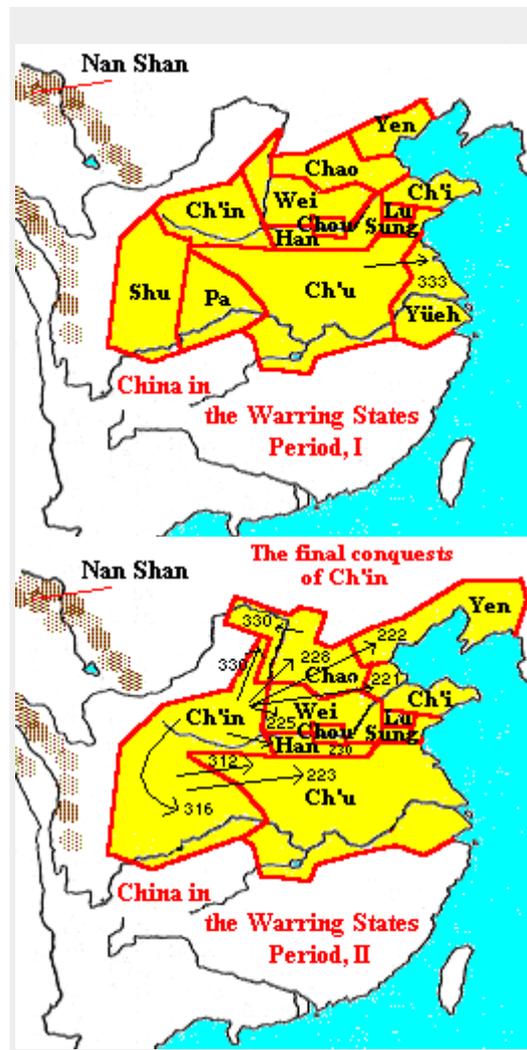


Zhou's royal house, after it relocated to today's Luoyang, declined in its power as well as prestige. Major powers among the subordinate statelets or principalities asserted their status by proclaiming successively the slogan of 'Aiding Zhou Royal House By Policing Those Rulers Who Conducted Patricides'. The five hegemon marquis or dukes of the Spring and Autumn Period

Despite the dynasty's decline, Zhou endured for another five and half centuries as a result of power checking among the competing statelets or principalities. Petty city-states were swallowed by bigger powers during the process, though. By the end of the Spring and Autumn Period (771-401 BC), China was left with about 10 states that would soon evolve into 7 states, called the 'Seven Strong Nations' of the Warring States (401 BC and 221 BC).

Warring States

Map linked from
<http://www.friesian.com/>



In 473 B.C., The Wu Principality was annexed by Yueh.

Chu Principality exterminated Yueh in 344 B.C. and Lu Principality in 249 B.C.

Qi annexed the state of Song in 286 B.C.

Qin exterminated the Zhou Dynasty in 256 B.C.

The years between 401 BC and 221 BC were known as the Warring States Period. Unlike the Spring and Autumn Period, warlords were keen on destroying each other instead of the old tradition of maintaining royal lines should some fiefs or principalities be overthrown by rivals. At the early times of the Warring States Period, ten states battled for supremacy. Soon, seven statelets were left, and

that would be Qin, Chu, Haan Zhao, Wei, Yan and Qi.

A new class would be born during this time period: the speculators who were attracted to various princes or kings of the statelets or principalities. Most famous would be the "Four Grand Princes", namely, Prince Xinling-jun, Lord of Wei; Prince Mengchang-jun, Lord of Qi; Prince Pingyuan-jun, Lord of Zhao; and Prince Chunshen-jun, Lord of Chu.

Major Wars & Campaigns

The Battle of Ruge (707 BC) - Zhou Kingdom versus Zheng

Zhou King Huanwang (Ji Lin, reign 719-697 B.C.) was not respectful to the Zheng Count. During the fifth year of Huanwang's reign, Count Zheng, without Zhou court's approval, had exchanged the royal veneration site of 'Xu-tian' (near today's Xuchang, Henan) for another patch of land from Lu Principality. Xu-tian was the place given to Duke Zhougong by King Chenwang, and later Zhou court used this land for venerating Mount Taishan. (Count Zheng's ancestor would be the brother of King Xuanwang, Ji You, and King Xuanwang conferred Ji You the land of Zheng as Zheng Lord Huangong.) During the 13th year of his reign, King Huanwang campaigned against Zheng Principality, but incurred an arrow wound in the hands of a Zheng general by the name of Zhu Dan. This would be called the Battle of Ruge in 707 BC. Zhou court had rallied very little support during the campaign, and Zhou prestige was said to have been gone by that time.

The Battle of Han-yuan (645 B.C.) - Qin vs Jinn

After the death of Jinn Lord Xiangong, Li-ji's son, Xiqi, was erected, but a minister (Li'ke) killed Xiqi; after minister Xunxi erected another cousin of Xiqi (Dao-zi), Li'ke killed the new lord and Xunxi, consecutively. Li-ji was killed on the streets. Li'ke first sought for Prince Chong'er, but Chong'er declined. Li'ke then went to Prince Yiwu. Jinn Prince Yiwu sought for help from Qin Lord Mugong in escorting him to the throne at Jinn, with a promise of seceding to Qin 8 cities to the west of Yellow River. Qi Huangong sent forces to help Yiwu as well, and Qi forces stopped marching at Gaoliang. Yiwu ate his words, and killed Li'ke instead of conferring him the land of Fengyang. Yiwu's emissary to Qin, Pi-zheng, being afraid of returning to Jinn to receive the same fate as Li'ke, would

incite Qin Lord Mugong in having Jinn Prince Chong'er replace Yiwu. Pi-zheng was killed upon returning to Jinn, and his son (Pi-bao) fled to Qin.

Around 648 BC, when Jinn had a dry weather related famine, Qin, against the proposal of Pi-bao to attack Jinn, would dispatch ships with grains to Jinn, passing from Qin capital of Yong to Jinn capital of Jiang(4). Two years later, Qin had a famine, but Jinn refused to lend grains, and moreover attacked Qin in 645 BC. Qin Lord Mugong and Pi-bao fought against Jinn army at a place called Han-yuan in September. When Mugong saw Yiwu and his horse trapped in the mud, Mugong intended to capture Yiwu. But Jinn army came to aid Yiwu and encircled Mugong. Three hundreds 'yeren' (countryside people) solders, who were spared death by Mugong for eating good horses, would rush to rescue Mugong, and moreover captured Yiwu. When Mugong intended to sacrifice Yiwu for Lord Highness, i.e., Heaven, Zhou court came to petition for mercy, and Mugong's wife would beg for mercy for his brother (Yiwu). Mugong released Yiwu in November for sake of frustrating Jinn ministers' attempt to erect Yiqu's son.

The Battle of Chengpu (632 B.C.) - Song-Qi-Qin-Jinn vs Chu

In 633 BC, Chu led its vassals on a siege of Song. Xian Zhen advised Jinn Wengong that Jinn should aid Song as requital. Huyan proposed that Jinn attack Chu's two allies of Cao and Wey. Jinn dispatched three columns of army, with Qie Hu in the middle, Huyan in charge of the upper column, and Luan Zhi the lower column. During Jinn Wengong's 5th year reign, i.e., in 632 BC, Jinn Wengong was refused a path by Wey for attacking Cao. Then, Jinn crossed the river elsewhere and attacked both Cao and Wey, taking over Wulu in Jan of 632 BC. In Feb, Jinn and Qi made an alliance at Wey land, and refused Wey's request for being a member. When Wey lord intended to ally with Chu, Wey ministers ousted him. Chu was defeated for aiding Wey. Jinn then sieged Cao. In March, Jinn took over Cao capital but spared a Cao minister's home as a requital for the early help during Chong'er exile. Chu then lay a siege of Song. Jinn Wengong intended to attack Chu to help Song, but he was hesitant since Chu king had given him a lot of favor before. Xian Zhen proposed that Jinn capture Cao-bo and divide Cao & Wey land for sake of Song so that Chu would release Song to aid Cao/Wey. Hence, Chu army withdrew the siege of Song capital.

Chu General Zi-yue adamantly insisted on a fight with Jinn, and Chu King

allocated less soldiers. Zi-yue sent an emissary (Wan-chun) to Jinn in request for restoration of Cao/Wey. Xian Zhen proposed that Jinn have Chu *da fu* Wan-chun retained under custody to anger Zi-yue and that Jinn privately made peace with Cao/Wey for sake of making them defect to Jinn. Hence, Zi-yue was angered into a fight, and Jinn retreated three times as a fulfillment of promise that Chong'er made to Chu king while during exile stay at Chu. In April, Song-Qi-Qin-Jinn armies had a campaign against Chu at Chengpu (a Wey city), burnt Chu army for days, and defeated Chu at the Battle of Chengpu. (Zi-yue was ordered to commit suicide by Chu king later.) Zhou King Xiangwang personally went to Jinn camp to confer Marquisdom onto Jinn Wengong, and Jinn made a convenience palace of the king. Zheng, seeing Chu defeat, went to ally with Jinn. In May, Jinn sent Chu prisoners to Zhou court. Zhou king dispatched *da fu* Wang Zi-hu to Jinn, conferred 'bo' (Count) onto Jin Wengong, and offered royal arrows/bows and 300 royal guards to Jinn. Wang Zi-hu held an assembly of vassals. In June, Jinn restored Wey lord. In the winter of 632 BC, Jinn Lord Wengong assembled vassals at a place called Wen (near Zhengzhou, Henan Prov) and called on the Zhou king to have a hunting party. Jinn restored Cao lord. Jinn first devised three columns of armies, with Xun Linfu in charge of the middle column, Xian Hu the right column, and Xian Mie the left column.

The Battle of Xiaoshan (627 B.C.) - Jinn vs Qin

The Battle of Yuzhang (508 B.C.)- Wu vs Chu

The Battle of Boju (627 B.C.) - Wu vs Chu (506 BC)

The Battle of Guiling (354 B.C.) - Qi versus Wei on behalf of Zhao

The Battle of Maling (342 B.C.) - Qi versus Wei on behalf of Han

The Battle of Changping (B.C.) - Qin vs Zhao

The Battle of Handan (262 B.C.) - Qin vs Zhao

Demise Of Zhou Kingdom

Qin Principality, under Qin King Zhaoxiangwang, continued wars against its neighbors, Wei & Zhao principalities. Duke Wugong of Zhou Kingdom, i.e., Xizhoujun, colluded with the other principalities. In 264 B.C., Qin army attacked Zhou Kingdom, and Zhou King Nanwang personally went to Qin army, bowed his head, and surrendered 36 cities and 30,000 people to Qin. The next year, Zhou people fled to the east. Qin acquired nine bronze utensils of Zhou Kingdom, supposedly embodiment of the ancient Nine Prefectures of China as described in *Yu Gong* (Lord Yü's Tributes). On the way of being shipped to Xian'yang, Qin's capital, one of the nine utensils fell into River Sisui and never was recovered again. When Xizhou-jun colluded with various marquis for sake of restricting Qin's expansion, Qin King Zhuangxiangwang sent his prime minister, Lu Buwei, to attack Zhou capital and relocated Zhou king and Xizhou-jun to today's Liangxian County, Henan Province. Zhou Kingdom officially ended in this year, 256 BC, after Zhou King Nanwang was on the throne for 59 years. In this year, both Duke Wugong of Zhou Kingdom (Xizhoujun) and Zhou King Nanwang passed away.

The wars of conquest already took place. In 473 BC, the Wu Principality was annexed by Yue (Yüeh). Chu Principality exterminated Yue in 344 BC and Lu Principality in 249 BC. Qi annexed the state of Song in 286 BC. And, Qin exterminated the Zhou Dynasty in 256 BC. Qin Lord Zhuangxiangwang became the king of the Qin in 249 BC (?). Shihuangdi (259-210 BC ?) became King of Qin in 246 BC.

Unification of China

The wars for unifying China now fell to the shoulder of Ying Zhen (Emperor Shihuangdi). At this time, Qin already took over today's Sichuan Province and the land between Sichuan and Shenxi Province and named it Nan Jun (Nanjun or Southern Commandary). Qin also took over the two Zhou fiefs and named the area San Chuan Jun (Three River Commandary), and the land of Taiyuan, Shanxi Province and made them into Shangdang, Taiyuan and Hedong commandaries. Shihuangdi gained power at the age of 13. Lü Buwei would be responsible for all political and military matters of Qin court for the 13 years in between.

In 244 BC, General Meng Ao grabbed 13 cities from Haan Principality. In 242 BC, Meng Ao grabbed 20 cities from Wei Principality and set up Dong-jun (East) Commandary. In 241 BC, a five statelet joint army attacked Qin. In 240 BC, comet was observed in the sky. General Meng Ao died in this year. Qin Queen

Dowager (Zi-chu's mother) died as well. In 239 BC, Prince Chang'anjun (Cheng Jiao), while under order to attack Zhao Principality, rebelled against his half brother Qin King. Eunuch Lao-Ai (Marquis Changxin-hou) rebelled in 238 BC and got quelled by Qin's prime ministers (Prince Changping-jun and Prince Changwen-jun, all princes of Chu Principality), with two sons (Shihuangdi's half brothers) ordered killed by throwing them onto the ground in bags. Lü Buwei was deprived of his post and titles for being implicated to Lao-Ai. A Qi person, by the name of Mao Jiao, somehow persuaded Shihuangdi into welcoming his birth mother back from banishment.

One legalist, Li Si, would play a role in Shihuangdi's political belief. Li Si once stopped Qin King from driving non-Qin people out of Qin capital. In face of allied attacks by various principalities, a person called Liao from Daliang (today's Kaifeng) would propose to Qin King to sow dissension among various principalities via bribing the ministers of the principalities. At one time, Liao fled Qin as a result of fearing for his life because he thought that Qin King, with **long eyes and leopard voice**, was ferocious and might someday kill him. Qin King caught Liao and conferred him the title of 'wei', equivalent to commander-in-charge. (Liao was hence referred to as 'Wei-liao'.) In 236 BC, General Wang Jian was ordered to attack Shanxi Province. In 235 BC, Lü Buwei died. His thousand followers were reprimanded by Qin King for mourning for Lü Buwei's death. In 234-233 BC, Qin army attacked Zhao. Haan(2) King sent his prince, Hanfei-zi, to Qin. Hanfei-zi (Haan Fei Zi), who admired the works of Shang Yang, was the prince of the state of Haan. When Hanfei-zi came over to Qin, his classmate, Li Si, would plot to have Qin King retain Hanfei-zi. Hanfei-zi was later killed by Li Si out of envy for the favor that Shihuangdi had shown to Hanfei-zi. Haan(2) King requested for vassalage with Qin. In 232 BC, Qin attacked Haan Principality again. Earthquake was recorded in this year. In 231 BC, both Haan and Wei surrendered some of their lands to Qin. In 230 BC, Haan was converted into Yinchuan Commandary and Haan King An surrendered to Qin. Earthquake was recorded again this year.

In a series of campaigns between 230 to 221 B.C., Qin, unified China and founded the Qin Empire in 221 B.C. From 230-221 BC., Qin Emperor Shihuangdi crushed Haan, Zhao, Wei, Yen, Chu, and Qi one by one. In 230 BC, Haan King An surrendered. In 229 BC, General Wang Jian attacked Zhao. In 228 BC, Zhao King Qian surrendered. Qin King went to Handan, Zhao's capital and killed all those Zhao people who offended Ying Zhen while he was a hostage in Zhao. In this

year, Qin King's birth mother died. One Zhao prince, Jia(1), went to the ancient Dai Prefecture and declared himself King of Dai. Prince Jia allied with Yan Principality. In 227 BC, Prince Yan, Dan, sent an assassin called Jing Ke to kill Qin King. Jing Ke, who borrowed the head of ex-Qin defector general Fan Yuqi, brought along a teenage called Qin Wuyang as his assistant. Jing Ke hid a knife inside the maps of Yan Principality and attempted to assassinate Qin King while he was showing the maps, but Qin King somehow escaped alive. (Prince Dan of Yan Principality once served as a hostage in Zhao capital and hence he was a childhood pal of Qin King.) Qin King sent General Wang Jian to attack Yan as a retaliation. In 226 BC, General Wang Ben, son of Wang Jian, took over Beijing and killed Prince Yan. General Wang Jian retired. In 225, General Wang Ben attacked Wei Principality and flooded Kaifeng. In this year, Wei King Jia(3) surrendered. In 224 BC, General Wang Jian was recalled for attacking Chu. Chu King Fu-Chu surrendered. Chu General Xiang Yan erected Prince Changpingjun as the new Chu King and counter-attacked Qin south of the Huai River. In 223 BC, General Wang Jian and General Meng Wu defeated Chu and killed Changpingjun. General Xiang Yan committed suicide. In 222 BC, General Wang Fen pursued Yan King who fled to the east Liaoning Province. Yan King Xi surrendered. On the way back, General Wang Ben attacked King of Dai, Jia, and captured him. Meanwhile, General Wang Jian went on to conquer the Yue land and set up Kuaiji Commandary. In 221 BC, Qi King Jian closed off the border with Qin. General Wang Ben went to attack Qi and Jian surrendered.

During the 26th year of his reign, by 221 BC, Shihuangdi completed the unification of China and he established the so-called 'Jun-Xian System', namely, commandary-county system, at the advice of his prime minister, Li Si (Li Szu). Shihuangdi rezoned his country into 36 commandaries in lieu of conferring dukes and kings to his sons.

QIN DYNASTY

Qin's ancestor could be traced to Bo Yi (aka Da-fei) under Lord Shun. Bo Yi's father was called Da-ye (Gaoyao). Da-ye was born by Nü-xiu who swallowed the egg of a sparrow, while Nü-xiu, in turn, was a descendant of Lord Zhuanxu. The story of sparrow totem shows that the ancestors of Qin people belonged to the so-called Dong-yi or Eastern Yi people. Bo Yi (aka Dafei) was in charge of mountains and lakes, and he assisted Lord Yu (Da Yu or Yu the Great) in mastering the floods. Because of the contributions in mastering the floods, Bo Yi was conferred the family name of 'Ying', with the water sign as a part of the character. Qin's ancestors, together with Shang people, belonged to the 'Yi' group of people who had previously relocated to the western China from the eastern part of China. Similar to Zhou founder, Qin's ancestors had emerged from the barbaric West to become the ruler of China. In both cases, they discarded the Rong & Di(2) customs and adopted the rituals of the central China of the time.

Bo Yi had two sons bearing the clan names of Niaosu-shi and Fei-shi. The character 'niao' meant for bird, and it further validated the claim that Qin people were bird-totem Eastern Yi people. One of the Fei-shi descendants would be called Fei Chang, and Fei Chang defected from Xia and assisted Shang Dynasty founder in defeating the last Xia lord, Jie, at a place called Mingtiao. One of the Niaosu-shi descendants, '*xuan sun*' or the son of great grandson, would be called Zhongyan who was said to have bird-like mouth and hands. Zhongyan's '*zeng sun*' or great grandson would be called Xuxuan (aka 'Rong Xuxuan' by Marquis Shenhou); Xuxuan's son would be called Zhongjue. Zhongjue's son would be Feilian.

By the end of Shang Dynasty (16th-1066 BC), Feilian and his elder son Wu Lai (also pronounced E'lai or Wulai), served as the hatchetmen for the last Shang Lord Zhouwang. Wu Lai was executed by the founder of Zhou Dynasty (1066-256 BC). Feilian was guarding northern post for Shang Dynasty; hearing of Shang King Zhouwang's death, he would come back to Shang capital to mourn last Shang lord. Then, he would go to the mountains east of the Yellow River where

he obtained a stone coffin. Feilian then bore another son, Ji Sheng. The great grandson of Ji Sheng, Meng Zhen, was hired by Zhou King Chengwang. Meng Zhen's grandson, Zao Fu, was assigned to the land of later Zhao Principality by Zhou King Muwang (r. 1002-947 BC). The place was called Zhaocheng city. Zao Fu was responsible for driving Zhou King Muwang on his western tour of Kunlun Mountains where Muwang met 'Xi Wang Mu', i.e., Queen Mother of the West. When there was a rebellion at home, Zao Fu would drive King Muwang back, one thousand Chinese mile within one single day (which was disputed as unrealistic). Zao Fu's descendants would be the ancestors of later Zhao Principality that was split from the Jin (Jinn) Principality. (Below, I deliberately spelled Jin(4) into Jinn for sake of distinction from Jurchen Jin(1). Jin(4) is spelled Tsin in Wade-Giles.)

Among Wu Lai's descendants would be someone called Rufang; Rufang bore Panghao; Panghao bore Taiji; and Taiji bore Daluo. Daluo's son would be Fei Zi (Fei-zi). They were offered residency in the same city as Zhaocheng, and hence they carried the same last name as their kinsmen, 'Zhao'. Fei Zi (Fei-zi) lived in a place called Quanqiu (a place near Fufeng? of Shenxi Prov or Tianshui? of Gansu Prov), and he was good at raising horses around the Wei-shui River. Marquis Shenhou, whose daughter married Daluo, somehow persuaded Zhou King Xiaowang into bestowing the last name of 'Ying' on Daluo descendant for sake of pacifying or controlling the Western Rong people. (This shows the influence of Daluo descendants in this barbaric area.) Marquis Shenhou was quoted to have mentioned to Zhou King Xiaowang that his ancestor had married their woman to 'Rong Xuxuan' where Rong meant for the barbarians and 'Xuxuan' was the great grandson of Zhongyan. (In the eyes of Marquis Shenhou, Qin people might be equivalent to the 'rong' people.) *Shi Ji* was ambiguous about Daluo descendant in this section: Interpretation would be that Daluo had another son born with Marquis Shenhou's daughter, called 'Cheng'; Fei-zi, not Cheng, was conferred the ancestral name of 'Ying'. Some scholar pointed out that Marquis Shenhou deliberately asked Zhou King Xiaowang to intervene in Daluo's selection of a junior son as inheriting the Qin family line while kicking out the senior son of Fei-zi as someone to adopt an ancient family name of 'Ying'. Later, the Daluo lineage, i.e., the descendants of 'Cheng', were all killed by Rong barbarians. Note my general designation of 'Daluo descendants' below in lieu of either Fei-zi or Cheng.

Qin Lord 'Qin Ying'

Zhou King Xiaowang conferred Daluo descendants the land of Qin (today's Tiansui, eastern Gansu Prov) as a vassal; hence Daluo's son was known as 'Qin Ying'. Qin became the vassal which was situated to the western-most part of then China. History records that two more groups of people dwelled to the west of Qin and Zhou Chinese, namely, the Western Rong nomads and the Yüeh-chih people. (Qin ancestor tombs had been discovered in Li-xian county of Gansu Prov, to the southwest of Tiansui.) Qin Ying bore Qin-hou; Qin-hou bore Gongbo; Gongbo bore Qin-zhong (Qin Zhong).

Qin Lord 'Qin Zhong' (r. BC 845-822 ?)

Qin Zhong would be four generations from Qin Ying. When Zhou King Liwang was ruling despotically, the Xi Rong (Xirong or Western Rong) people rebelled in the west and killed most of the Daluo lineage. Zhou King Xuanwang got enthroned when Qin Zhong was in his 18th year reign, and Xuanwang conferred Qin Zhong the title of '*Da Fu*' and ordered him to quell the Xirong. Qin Zhong got killed by Xirong after being a ruler for 23 years.

Qin Lord Zhuanggong (r. BC 821-778 ?)

Qin Zhong's five sons, under the elder son (Qin Lord Zhuanggong), would defeat Xirong with 7000 relief army from Zhou King. Qin Lord Zhuanggong hence recovered the territories called Quanqiu (i.e., Feiqiu, the land of Da-luo) and enjoyed Zhou court's conferral of the title of '*Xi Chui Da Fu*', i.e., the '*Da Fu*' on the western border. Qin Lord Zhuanggong had a reign of 44 years. Siman Qian commented that Qin Lord Zhuanggong began to revere Lord Highness, a sign of usurpation, since only Zhou Kingdom was allowed to revere Lord Highness while the vassals could only worship their ancestors.

Qin Lord Xianggong (r. BC 777-766) & Relocation Of Zhou Court

Qin Lord Zhuanggong's senior son, Shifu, would swear that he would kill the king of the Rong people to avenge the death of Qin Zhong before returning to the Qin capital. Zhuanggong's junior son would be Qin Lord Xianggong (Ying Kai) who assisted Zhou King Pingwang (reign 770-720) in cracking down on both the Western Rong and the Doggy Rong. Shifu was taken prisoner of war by Xi Rong during the 2nd year reign of Qin Lord Xianggong and did not get released till one year later.

During the 7th year reign of Qin Lord Xianggong, i.e., 771 BC, Doggy Rong barbarians sacked Zhou capital and killed Zhou king at the invitation of Marquis

Shen (i.e., Shenhou). Ying Kai came to the aid of Marquis Shen after Marquis Shen wrote four letters, i) to Ying Kai, 2) to Marquis Jinn (Ji Chou), iii) to Marquis Wey (Ji He, Wey Lord Wugong, over 80 years old at the time), and iv) to the son of Count Zheng, requesting for help in driving the Doggy Rong barbarians out of Zhou capital, Haojing. Zhou King Pingwang (reign 770-720) upgraded the rank of the son of Count Zheng to that of a marquis. Zhou King Pingwang conferred Ying Kai the title of Count and the old Zhou land to the west of Qishan and Feng (near today's Baoji and Xi'an areas) for the help in relocating Zhou capital to Luoyang. Ying Kai began to exchange embassy with other Zhou vassals. Within three years, Ying Kai drove off the Doggy Rongs and retook the lands of Qishan and Feng. Ying Kai died during the 12th year of his reign (766 BC) when he campaigned against the Rong at Qishan. (Scholar Fu Sinian studied the bronze inscriptions, i.e., *jin wen*, from Zhou times and concluded that the ancient five rankings of duke, marquis, count, viscount, and baron did **not** conform with bronze inscriptions or classics such as *Shang Shu* or *Shi Jing*. Fu Sinian stated that duke-gong, count-bo, viscount-zi, and baron-nan were originally used within a royal family as rankings; governmentally, 'bo' or count was the leader of a conferred fief while 'hou' or marquis was for denoting the vassal guarding border posts.)

Qin Lord Wengong (r. BC 765-716)

After Xianggong would be Qin Lord Wengong. Wengong, during his 3rd year reign, had a hunting in east, and the next year, he selected Qishan area for building a city as the capital. During his 13th year reign, Wengong began chronicle recording, and during his 16th year reign, Wengong defeated Rong at Qishan. Wengong would give the land east of Qishan back to Zhou court. During his 20th year reign, three lineage (father's line, mother's line and wife's line) extermination law came into existence. Wengong passed away during the 50th year reign, i.e., 716 BC. (I validated this year of Qin Wengong 44th year reign being equivalent to Lu Lord Yingong first year, i.e., 722 BC) Siman Qian commented that Qin began to converge with Zhou Chinese culture beginning with Qin Lord Wengong.

Qin Lord Ningong (r. BC 715-704)

After Wengong would be Qin Lord Ningong, i.e., the grandson of Wengong. Ningong relocated to Pingyang, to the west of Qishan, during his 2nd year reign. There would be one Xirong lord by the title of King Bo in a place called 'Dang She', a mutation of the Shang Dynasty founder, 'Tang'(1). (Ancient

classics claimed that this group of people claimed heritage from Shang Tang and used the ancient Shang capital name 'Bo' for the title of their Xi-rong king. Ancient scholar Xu Guang claimed that 'Dang' should be pronounced as 'Tang' for Shang founder, while 'She' was meant for Du-xian county. Huangfu Mi of Jin Dynasty treated King Bo as a branch of 'Xi-yi' or Western Yi aliens.) Qin Lord Ningong would defeat King Bo and drove King Bo towards the Rong people during the 3rd year reign, i.e., 713 BC. Ningong conquered King Bo's Dang-shi clan during the 12th year reign, i.e., 704 BC. Ningong died this year and was buried on Mount Xishan, i.e., Qinlingshan of Chencang.

Qin Lord Chu-zi (r. BC 703-698) & Qin Lord Wugong (r. BC 697-677)

Ningong's elder son (Wugong) was deposed, and Chu-zi, the son of Ningong's junior son, was enthroned by three ministers at the age of 5. Chu-zi was killed 6 years later and Wugong was selected. About this time, Wugong campaigned against 'Pengxan-shi Rong' and reached the foot of Huashan Mountain. Qin Lord Wugong, during the 3rd year reign, i.e., 695 BC, exterminated the three ministers and their three lineage families for killing Chu-zi. (Note: This year is validated against the 17th year reign of Lu Lord Huan'gong, r 711-694 BC.) At Zheng Principality, a minister by the name of Gaoqumi killed his lord Zheng Zhaogong. Qin Lord Wugong, during the 10th year reign, exterminated Gui-rong (Shanggui of Longxi) and Ji-rong (Tiansui Commandary), and the next year, exterminated Du-bo Fief (southeast of Xi'an), Zheng-guo Fief (Zhengxian County) and Xiao-guo Fief (an alternative Guo Fief, different from the Guo domain conferred by Zhou King Wenwang onto his brother Guo-shu). Xiao-guo Fief was said to be a branch of the Qiang people.

During the 13th year reign, i.e., 685 BC approx, in conflict with 686 BC under Zhou, Lu & Jinn records, Qi Lord Xiangong (r. 697-686 BC) was assassinated by his ministers; Jinn exterminated the fief statelets of Geng, Huo and Wei; another assassination in Qi would see Qi Lord Huan'gong (r. 685-643 BC) selected.

Jinn Prince Quwo vs Jinn Marquisdom

In 679 BC, Jinn Prince Quwo became lord. Zhou King Xiwang (Ji Huqi, reign 681-677 B.C.) conferred Marquisdom onto Quwo Wugong after Jinn internal power struggles settled down.

Quwo (today's Wenxi County, Shanxi Prov) was previously assigned to Marquis

Jinn Wenhou's brother by Marquis Jinn Zhaohou. For dozens of years, the descendants of Quwo Jinn royal family and the Jinn Marquisdom were entangled in a power struggle and assassinations of several Jinn marquis occurred. Historians commented that Jinn turmoils derived from Quwo. Zhou King Pingwang (Ji Yijiu, reign 770-720 B.C.) had dispatched Guo-gong against Quwo when Zhuang-bo, head of Quwo, attacked Jinn capital after Marquis Jinn Er'hou (r 723-718 BC) died. Years later, the son of Quwo Zhuang-bo, who claimed to be proxy Zhuang-bo (aka Quwo Wugong), would attack, capture and kill Marquis Jinn Aihou (r 717-710 BC). When Quwo Wugong called Jinn Xiao-zi (r 709-706 BC), the son of Marquis Jinn Aihou, to Quwo and killed him, Zhou King Huanwang (Ji Lin, reign 719-697 B.C.) dispatched Guo-zhong of Guo-guo statelet against Quwo Wugong. A brother of Marquis Jinn Er'hou, Min-hou (r 706-679 BC), was made into the new Jinn lord.

In 703 BC approx, Song captured Zheng lord and erected a new Zheng lord. In 686 BC approx, a Qi minister (Guan Zhifu) killed Qi Xianggong. In 679 BC, Qi Huan'gong became a hegemony lord.

During the 28th year reign of Jinn Min-hou (r 706-679), i.e., in 679 BC, Marquis Jinn Min-hou was killed by Quwo Wugong. Zhou King Xiwang (Ji Huqi, reign 681-677 B.C.) conferred Marquisdom onto Quwo Wugong. Quwo Wugong called himself Jinn Wugong and died two years later.

Jinn Quwo Wugong enthroned in 678 BC. This would be during the 20th year reign of Qin Lord Wugong (r. BC 697-677), i.e., 678 BC, in conflict with 679 BC under Zhou-Jinn-Lu-Qi records. (In another sense, Quwo Wugong killed Jinn Minhou in 679 BC and did not count his first year reign till 678 BC) Qin Lord Wugong passed away during the 21th year reign, i.e., 677 BC, and 66 persons followed to his tomb as live burial.

Qin Lord Degong (r. BC 677-676) & His Three Sons: Xuan'gong, Chenggong & Mugong

Qin Lord Degong got enthroned at the age of 33 and died after a reign of 2 years. Two fief lords, Rui-bo and Liang-bo, had come to pay respect during the 2nd year reign of Degong. Degong's elder son, Xuan'gong (r. BC 675-664), enthroned next. In this year, i.e., 675 BC, Wey and South-Yan (Huazhou Prefecture or Huatai) attacked the Zhou court; Zhou King Huiwang went into exile; Prince Tui was enthroned as Zhou king. During the 3rd year reign, in 673

BC, Zheng-bo (Count of Zheng) and Guo-shu (lord of East Guo-guo Fief) killed Tui and restored King Huiwang's throne.

Jinn Wugong's successor, Jinn Xian'gong (r. 676-651 BC), attacked Li-rong (Xi Rong) barbarians during his 5th year reign, i.e., 672 BC approx, and captured a Li-rong woman called Li-ji. Jinn Xian'gong took the advice of a minister (Shiwei) and killed most of the princes from the deposed Jinn Marquisdom lineage, and one such prince fled to Guo-guo statelet. Wars erupted between Jinn and Guo-guo. Twelve years later, during Jinn Xian'gong 12th year reign, i.e., in 665 BC approx, Li-ji born Xiqi and then conspired to have Jinn Xian'gong's elder princes deposed or killed, pushing Jinn into another round of turmoils. Three Jinn princes, Shensheng, Chong'er, and Yiwu, were dispatched to border cities, respectively. (Scholar Xu Zhuoyun analyzed Zhou's fief system to have derived a conclusion that cities at Zhou times could be differentiated into 'guo' for capital, 'yi' for 'fief', and 'tian' for countryside. Capital would be 'yi' with ancestral oblation. Jinn border cities like Quwo is considered a normal 'yi'.)

The next year, Qin Xuan'gong (r. BC 675-664) defeated Jinn at Heyang. Qin Xuan'gong died during the 12th year reign, i.e., 664 BC. In 664 BC, Qi Lord Huangong destroyed the statelets of Shan-rong and Guzhu. (Guzhu was formerly Zhu-guo Statelet, a vassal of ex-Shang dynasty.) A brother of Qin Xuan'gong was enthroned as Qin Chenggong (r. BC 663-660). Rui-bo and Liang-bo came to Qin court again. (Liang-guo fief was destroyed during 22nd year reign of Qin Lord Mugong, r. BC 659-621.)

During 16th year reign of Jinn Xian'gong (r. 676-651 BC), i.e., in 661 BC approx, Jin (Jinn) Principality eliminated Huo (Huozhou, Shanxi Prov), Wei and Geng fiefdoms. Jinn Xian'gong built the city of Quwo for Prince Shensheng, conferred General Bi-wan the domain of Wei and General Zhao Su the domain of Geng. Shiwei advised Prince Shensheng to flee as Zhou King Wenwang's uncles did. Jinn minister Po-yan advised against the conferral of Wei land onto Bi-wan. The next year, in 660 BC, Prince Shensheng was ordered on a new campaign against Dongshan-Chidi barbarians. Shensheng sought advice with Li'ke as to his crown prince status.

Qin Chengong died during the 4th year reign, i.e., 660 BC approx, and another brother was enthroned as Mugong, reign BC 659-621.

Zigzag With Rong & Di

Aside from the Rongdi Rong, Xirong, Jiangrong & Quanrong in northwestern China, there were the Mountain Rongs in the northeast and Chang-Di barbarian in Shandong. The Mountain Rongs went across the Yan Principality of Hebei Province to attack Qi Principality in today's Shandong Province. 44 years later, they attacked Yan. Around 664 BC, Yan-Qi joint armies destroyed the Mountain Rong Statelet as well as the Guzhu Statelet. The story of 'old horses knew the way home' would be about the joint army being lost after they penetrated deep into the Rong land. Hence, Yan Statelet extended by 500 li to the northwest, in addition to the eastward 50 li which was given by Marquis Qi to Count Yan for his escorting Marquis Qi all the way into Qi Statelet. During the 16th year of Zhou King Huiwang (reign 676-652), namely, 661 BC, the Chang Di barbarians who were located near today's Jinan City of Shandong Province, under Sou Man, attacked the Wey and Xing principalities. The Di barbarians, hearing of Qi army's counter-attacks, embarked on a pillage in central China by attacking Wey and Xing statelets. The Di barbarians killed Wey Lord Yigong (r. BC 668-660 ?) who was notorious for indulging in raising numerous birds called 'he' (cranes), and the barbarians cut him into pieces. A Wey minister would later find Yigong's liver to be intact, and hence he committed suicide by cutting apart his chest and saving Yigong's liver inside of his body.

In 649 BC, a half brother, by the name of Shu-dai, colluded with Rong and Di barbarians in attacking Zhou King Xiangwang. (Rong-di barbarians had come to aid Shu-dai as a conspiracy of Shu-dai's mother, dowager queen Huihou.) Over 20 years later, in 636 BC approx, the Rongdi nomads attacked Zhou King Xiangwang (reign 651-619) at the encouragement of Zhou Queen who was the daughter of Rongdi ruler. Jinn Principality helped Zhou King by attacking the Rongs and then escorted the king back to his throne 4 years after the king went into exile. After the defeat in the hands of Jinn, the Rongs moved to the land between the west segment of the Yellow River loop or bend and the Luo River, and two groups were known at the time, Chidi (Red Di) and Baidi (White Di). (Note that ancient West Yellow River Bend is the same as today's East Yellow River Bend. Ancient Yellow River Bend did not equate to today's inverse U-shaped course with the North Bend lying inside Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, but the U-shaped Bend with South Bend in southern Shanxi Prov and then a south-to-north turn in Hebei Province for exit into the sea.)

Qin Lord Mugong (r. BC 659-621)

In 659 BC, Qin Lord Mugong conquered Maojin-rong. During 19th year reign of Jinn Xian'gong (r. 676-651 BC), i.e., in 658 BC approx, Jinn borrowed a path from Yu-guo and attacked Xiangyang of Guo-guo.

During the 4th year reign of Qin Lord Mugong, i.e., 656 BC, Mugong was married with the sister of Prince Shensheng of Jinn. In this year, Qi Lord Huangong attacked Shaoling city of Chu.

During Jinn Xian'gong 21th year reign, i.e., in 656 BC approx, Li-ji conspired to put poison into the meat Shensheng gave to his father; Li-ji pasted honey onto her body to attract bees, asked Shensheng help her drive away the bees, and then accused Shensheng of trying to take advantage of her. Shensheng fled to Xincheng city and committed suicide. Jinn Lord Xian'gong (676-651 B.C.) hence fell under the trick of his concubine (a Li-rong woman), and Prince Chong'e (Chong Er, ?-628 BC) escaped to Di(2) Statelet in 655 BC. (Prince Chong Er's birth mother was from Di barbarian.) In 655 BC, Jinn borrowed path from Yu-guo again by sending Jinn Xian'gong's stallion as a gift. A Yu-guo minister, Gong Zhiqi, advised against it, saying Yu-guo and Guo-guo were like lips and teeth to each other. Gong Zhiqi led his whole family away from the Yu-guo. Jinn Principality eliminated Guo and Yu statelets in the winter of 655 BC. Guo-gong fled to Zhou court. Yu-gong and his minister Baili Xi were captured and the stallion was found by Xunxi and delivered back to Jinn Xian'gong. During Jinn Xian'gong 23rd year reign, i.e., in 654 BC approx, Jinn attacked Prince Yiwu at Quwo land, and Yiwu fled to a different statelet, Shaoliang land, at the advice of Ji-rui. Ji-rui said that should Yiwu flee to Di, Jinn would attack Di because Chong'er was already there. Two years later, Jinn attacked Di, and Di counter-attacked Jinn; hence, Jinn withdrew from their siege. Li-ji's brother had a son called Dao-zi in this year.

In 651 BC, Qi Lord Huangong assembled Zhou vassals at Kuiqiu.

The Battle Of Han-yuan

After the death of Jinn Lord Xian'gong (676-651 B.C.), Li-ji's son, Xiqi, was erected, but a minister (Li'ke) killed Xiqi; after minister Xunxi erected another cousin of Xiqi (Dao-zi), Li'ke killed the new lord and Xunxi, consecutively. Li-ji was killed on the streets. Li'ke first sought for Prince Chong'er, but Chong'er declined it. Li'ke then went to Prince Yiwu. Jinn Prince Yiwu sought for help from Qin Lord Mugong (r. BC 659-621) in escorting him to the throne at Jinn,

with a promise of seceding to Qin 8 cities to the west of Yellow River. Qi Huangong sent forces to help Yiwu as well, and Qi forces stopped marching at Gaoliang after knowing Qin already delivered Yiwu, i.e., Jinn Huigong (r. 650-637 BC).

Yiwu ate his words, and killed Li'ke instead of conferring him the land of Fengyang as promised. Yiwu's emissary to Qin, Pi-zheng, being afraid of returning to Jinn to receive the same fate as Li'ke, would incite Qin Lord Mugong in having Jinn Prince Chong'er replace Yiwu. Pi-zheng was killed upon returning to Jinn, and his son (Pi-bao) fled to Qin.

In 649 BC, a half brother, by the name of Shu-dai, colluded with Rong and Di barbarians in attacking King Xiangwang. (Rong-di barbarians had come to aid Shu-dai as a conspiracy of Shu-dai's mother, ex-queen Huihou.) Jinn Principality attacked the Rong to help the Zhou court. Shu-dai fled to Qi Principality. Three years after the death of Qi Lord Huangong, Shu-dai returned to Zhou court from Qi Principality at the request of King Xiangwang. During 12th year reign of Qin Mugong, i.e., 648 BC, Guan Zhong of Qi passed away.

When Jinn had a drought-related famine, Qin, against the proposal of Pi-bao to attack Jinn, would dispatch ships with grains to Jinn, passing from Qin capital of Yong to Jinn capital of Jiang(4). Two years later, Qin had a famine, but Jinn refused to lend grains, and moreover attacked Qin in 645 BC. Qin Lord Mugong and Pi-bao fought against Jinn army at a place called Han-yuan in September. When Mugong saw Yiwu and his horse trapped in the mud, Mugong intended to capture Yiwu. But Jinn army came to aid Yiwu and encircled Mugong. Three hundreds 'yeren' (countryside people) solders, who were spared death by Mugong for eating good horses, would rush to rescue Mugong, and moreover captured Yiwu. When Mugong intended to sacrifice Yiwu for Lord Highness, i.e., Heaven, Zhou court came to petition for mercy, and Mugong's wife would beg for mercy for his brother (Yiwu). Mugong released Yiwu in November for sake of frustrating Jinn ministers' attempt to erect Yiwu's son.

Yiwu, upon return to Jinn, killed Qingzheng who refused to rescue him during the prior war, surrendered 8 cities to the west of Yellow River to Qin, and sent his son (Zi-yu) to Qin as a hostage. Yiwu, fearing that Prince Chong'er might stir trouble, sent an assassin to Di statelet and forced Chong'er into fleeing to Qi after a stay of 12 years with Di people. Qin gave Zi-yu a royal family girl for

marriage. During 18th year reign of Qin Mugong, i.e., 642 BC, Qi Huangong passed away. Around 641 BC, Qin exterminated Liang and Rui statelets. (Zi-yu's mother was the daughter of Liang-bo, and hence Zi-yu was angry with Qin.) Three years later, Jinn Prince Zi-yu fled the Qin capital, without taking his Qin wife, when he heard that his father was getting ill. Zi-yu's wife did not report his fleeing to Qin court but refused to follow Zi-yu. Jinn Lord (Yiwu) passed away the next year, i.e., in 637 BC, and Zi-yu was enthroned as Jinn Huaigong (r. 637-636 BC).

Zi-yu killed a minister called Hu-tu for not recalling his two sons from Chong'er enrourage. Qin Lord Mugong, hating Zi-yu for his fleeing home, would retrieve ex-Jinn Prince Chong'er from Chu, and further gave ex-wife of Zi-yu to Chong'er. In 636 BC, Qin Mugong, with **500 chariots, 2000 cavalry, and 50,000 field soldiers**, escorted Prince Chong'er to Jinn capital to become Jinn Lord Wengong (r. 636-628 BC), and Chong'er sent an assasin to have Zi-yu (Jinn Lord Huaigong) killed at Gaoliang.

Chong'er, at the age of 17, possessed five tutors: Zhao Shuai, Huyan Jiufan (uncle-in-law), Jia Tuo, Xian Zhen, and Wei Wu-zi. (Later, one follower, by the name of Jie Zi-tui, went to the mountains to be a hermit instead of accepting Chong'er awards.) At Di statelet, he was given a Jiuru-Chidi (Gaoru-Chidi) woman of Kui surname; a sister of the woman married with Zhao Shuai and bore Zhao Dun. After staying in Di statelet for 12 years, Chong'er was forced into an exile tour of various Zhou vassals. Passing through Wey, Chong'er was mistreated by Wey Wengong and left. At Wey land of Wulu, Chong'er begged for food from peasants who added mud into the food. At Qi, Chong'er was given a royal girl and twenty carts for marriage. Chong'er stayed in Qi for five years, and under the collusion of Zhao Shuai, Huyan Jiufan and Qi wife, Chong'er was fed a lot of wine and carried out of Qi capital in intoxicated status. Chong'er wife had asked him to think more about recovering his country than staying with a woman. Passing through Cao statelet, Chong'er was mistreated by Cao Gonggong, but received assistance from a Cao minister. Passing through Song, Chong'er was received by Song Xianggong in a lord's rituals. Passing through Zheng statelet, Chong'er was mistreated by Zheng Wengong. At Chu, Chong'er was given vassal treatment by Chu King Chengwang. When Qin retried Chong'er, Chu King escorted Chong'er with big gifts to Qin. Qin gave Chong'er 5 royal family girls, including Zi-yu's wife. At the age of 62, Chong'er retruned to Jinn after an exile of 19 years. When two ministers (Lü Sheng and Qie Rui) planned to rebell

against Jinn Wengong, an eunuch, Lüti, who previously tried to assassinate Chong'er twice, informed Chong'er of the plot. Chong'er received the assistance of Qin Mugong in having the rebels killed over the river. Qin Mugong dispatched 3,000 soldiers as Jinn Wengong's bodyguards.

In the autumn of 636 BC, the brother of Zhou King Xiangwang, Shu-dai, hired the Di barbarians in attacking the Zhou court. King Xiangwang fled to Zheng. In 635 BC, King Xiangwang sought help with Qin/Jinn. This is during Jinn Wengong's 2nd year reign. Qin Mugong led an army against Shu-dai and reached the Yellow River during the spring. Zhao Shuai advised that Jinn Wengong should aid Zhou court, too, and Qin-Jinn armies killed Shu-dai in April of the year. Zhou King Xiangwang conferred onto Jinn the title of Count and the land of Yangfan or 'he nei' (pronounced as He-rui in ancient Chinese to mean the winding section of the Yellow River or equivalent 'Hanoi' in Vietnamese for the meaning of the innerside of the Yellow River, i.e., northern Henan Province where Yellow River flows to the east with a 90 degree turn).

The Battle Of Chengpu

In 633 BC, Chu led its vassals on a siege of Song. Xian Zhen advised Jinn Wengong that Jinn should aid Song as requital. Huyan proposed that Jinn attack Chu's two allies, i.e., Cao and Wey. Jinn dispatched three columns of army, with Qie Hu in the middle, Huyan in charge of the upper column, and Luan Zhi the lower column. During Jinn Wengong's 5th year reign, i.e., in 632 BC, Jinn Wengong was refused a path by Wey for attacking Cao. Then, Jinn crossed the river elsewhere and attacked both Cao and Wey, taking over Wulu in Jan of 632 BC. In Feb, Jinn and Qi made an alliance at Wey land, and refused Wey's request for being a member. When Wey lord intended to ally with Chu, Wey ministers ousted him. Chu was defeated for aiding Wey. Jinn then sieged Cao. In March, Jinn took over Cao capital but spared a Cao minister's home as a requital for the early help during Chong'er exile. Chu then lay a siege of Song. Jinn Wengong intended to attack Chu to help Song, but he was hesitant since Chu king had given him a lot of favor before. Xian Zhen proposed that Jinn capture Cao-bo and divide Cao & Wey land for sake of Song so that Chu would release Song to aid Cao/Wey. Hence, Chu army withdrew the siege of Song capital.

Chu General Zi-yue adamantly insisted on a fight with Jinn, and Chu King allocated less soldiers. Zi-yue sent an emissary (Wan-chun) to Jinn in request

for restoration of Cao/Wey. Xian Zhen proposed that Jinn have Chu *da fu* Wanchun retained under custody to anger Zi-yue and that Jinn privately made peace with Cao/Wey for sake of making them defect to Jinn. Hence, Zi-yue was angered into a fight, and Jinn retreated three times as a fulfillment of promise that Chong'er made to Chu king while he was in exile stay at Chu. In April, Song-Qi-Qin-Jinn armies had a campaign against Chu at Chengpu (a Wey city), burnt Chu army for days, and defeated Chu at the Battle of Chengpu. (Zi-yue was ordered to commit suicide by Chu king later.) Zhou King Xiangwang personally went to Jinn camp to confer Marquisdom onto Jinn Wengong, and Jinn made a convenience palace for the king. Zheng, seeing Chu defeat, went to ally with Jinn. In May, Jinn sent Chu prisoners to Zhou court. Zhou king dispatched *da fu* Wang Zi-hu to Jinn, re-conferred 'bo' (Count) onto Jin Wengong, and offered royal arrows/bows and 300 royal guards to Jinn. Wang Zi-hu held an assembly of vassals. In June, Jinn restored Wey lord. In the winter of 632 BC, Jinn Lord Wengong assembled vassals at a place called Wen (near Zhengzhou, Henan Prov) and called on the Zhou king to have a hunting party. Jinn restored Cao statlet's lord. Jinn first devised three columns of armies, with Xun Linfu in charge of the middle column, Xian Hu the right column, and Xian Mie the left column.

In 630 BC, Jinn Wengong wanted to punish Zheng for not helping him while he was in exile years ago, and Jinn Wengong sought help from Qin. Jinn/Qin lay a siege of Zheng and forced a Zheng minister to commit suicide. But Jinn refused to back off. Zheng dispatched Zhu Zhi-wu to Qin Mugong and successfully persuaded Qin into a withdrawal. Qin left three *da fu* and a small garrison army at the north gate of Zheng. Jinn withdrew army, too.

The Battle Of Xiao'er

Qin Lord Mugong began his expansion by attracting talents around China. Earlier, he played a trick to trade with Chu Principality for Baili Xi at the price of 5 sheep skins, claiming that Baili Xi was wanted for a crime in Qin Principality. Baili Xi was titled 'Five Sheep Da Fu'. Baili Xi later recommended his best friend, Jian Shu, for the position as a prime minister. Qin Mugong sent a minister disguised as a merchant on a trek to the Song Principality for Jian Shu. Qin Mugong's emissary, Gongzi Zhi, found Jian Shu in the countryside of Song and invited him over to Qin Court. Jian Su was titled '*Shang Da Fu*', i.e., highest Dafu.

Two years after Qin-Jinn confrontation over Zheng, in 628 BC approx, Jinn Wengong passed away, after a reign of 9 years. Zheng-bo, the lord of Zheng, also died. A Qin *da fu* at the north gate of Zheng sent a message to Qin Mugong, stating that Zheng could be taken over by a surprise attack. Qin Mugong, against the advice of Jian Shu and Baili Xi, dispatched Mengmingshi (Baili Xi's son), Xiqishu (Jian Shu's son), and Baiyibin on a long distance campaign against Zheng. Baili Xi and Jian Shu were reprimanded for crying for their sons before the march, and the two old men said to their sons that Qin might suffer defeat at Xiao'er (Xiaoshan Mountain). In Dec of 628 BC, when Qin army passed through the front of the north gate of Zhou capital, Wangsun Man, still a kid at the time, commented that Qin army lacked respect for Zhou court and would for sure lose the war. At a place near Hua-guo, a Zheng merchant, by the name of Xuan Gao, donated his 12 buffalos to Qin army by pretending to do so under the order of Zheng lord. Three Qin generals were surprised to know that Zheng had advance knowledge of the Qin attack, stopped at the Hua-guo Fiefdom, and exterminated Count Hua's fief instead. Hearing of Qin attack on Hua-guo of same Ji surname as Jinn, Jinn Wengong's son, Jinn Xianggong (r. 627-621), in the spring of 627 BC, sent an army against Qin, and had Qin army ambushed at Xiao'er in April. Three Qin generals were captured, while their soldiers were all killed. Jinn Wengong's dowager wife requested with Jinn Xianggong to have the three guys released. Jinn Wengong later changed mind when Xian Zheng objected to the release, but Xian Zhen failed to chase the three guys who had been inside ship crossing the river. Qin Mugong wore mourning clothing and received the three generals at the outskirts of the Qin capital.

In 626 BC, Chu Prince Shang Chen assassinated his father King Chu Chengwang. Two years after Xiao'er defeat, in 625 BC, Qin Mugong dispatched Mengmingshi on another campaign against Jinn.

Meantime, Qin Lord Mugong began to conquer the Western Rong tribes. Qin Mugong heard of the fame of a talent called You Yu who deserted the Jin (Jinn) Principality for the Xirong (Western Rong) nomads, and he played a trick of dissension and managed to hire over this person when Xi-rong sent You Yu to Qin as an emissary. Qin Mugong and You Yu had an exchange of opinions on China's system, law, music/rituals and the lack of such things in Xi-rong Statelet. You Yu rebutted the dilapidation of China's systems and laws that occurred after Huangdi (Yellow Emperor) and commented that Xi-rong had reached governance without knowing a sophisticated system via their king's

self-perfection into a saint and that Xi-rong did not have to undergo the patricides and usurpations as Chinese did. Qin Mugong deliberately retained You Yu for one year while he sent some beauties and music to Xi-rong King as gifts. When You Yu went back to Xi-rong, Xi-rong king was indulgent in women and music. Hence, You Yu deserted Xi-rong for Qin at several invitations of Qin Mugong.

In 624 BC, Qin Mugong dispatched Mengmingshi against Jinn again. Qin armed burned their ships after crossing the river, and defeated Jinn and captured one of their outskirts palaces. Then, Qin armies crossed river at Maojin and buried Qin soldier's dead bodies at Xiao'er. Qin armies mourned for three days at Xiao'er. Qin Mugong again expressed regrets about not taking the advice of Jian Shu and Baili Xi. When Qin Mugong repented over his mistake in invading Zheng Principality which had led to the ambush disaster at the Battle of Xiao'er, he used the characters 'huang fa po po [fan fan]' (white hair turning yellowish) to describe the high age of his two counsellors, Jian Shu and Baili Xi. The next year, in 623 BC, Jinn counter-attacked Qin and took over Xincheng.

In 623 BC, i.e., during the 37th year reign, Qin Mugong, using You Yu as a guide, campaigned against the Xirong nomads and conquered the Xirong Statelet under their lord Chi Ban. Once Chi Ban submitted to Qin, the rest of Western Rong nomads in the west acknowledged the Qin overlordship. Qin Mugong would conquer altogether a dozen (12) states in Gansu-Shaanxi areas and controlled the western China of the times. Zhou King dispatched Duke Zhaogong to congratulate Qin with a gold drum.

In 622 BC, Jinn's ministers, Zhao Shuai (Zhao Shuai-cheng-zi), Luan Zhi (Luan Zhen-zi), Jiuji Zifan and Huobo, all passed away. Zhao Dun assumed Zhao Shuai's post. Lord Qin Mugong passed away in 621 BC, and **177 persons were buried live**, including three Ziche brothers who, being distinguished ministers, had at one time promised to live and die with Qin lord together during a banquet. Historians commented that Qin could not campaign to the east because their best ministers were buried as funeral objects. Jinn Lord Xianggong died early in this year, too.

Qin Lord Kanggong (r. BC 620-609), Qin Lord Gonggong (r. BC 608-604)

Qin Mugong's son, Kanggong, succeeded the throne in 620 BC. Qin Kanggong had a reign of 12 years, till 609 BC.

Jinn Minister Zhao Dun sought for Jinn Lord Xianggong's brother (Yong) as Jinn Lord. Yong was born by the mother of Qin royal heritage and lived in Qin land. Qin sent Yong to Jinn and arrived at a place called Linghu, east of the river. At this time, Jinn had decided to select Jinn Xianggong's son as their lord. Zhao Dun attacked Qin army at Linghu for sake of stopping Yong from coming back to Jinn, and Qin retreated with Zhao Dun's emissaries (Sui Hui and Xian Mie). The second year, Qin counter-attacked Jinn and took over Wucheng city. During the 4th year reign of Jinn Linggong (r. BC 620-607), i.e., 617 BC, Jinn attacked Qin and took over Shaoliang; Qin counter-attacked Jinn. Two years later, i.e., 615 BC approx, Qin Kanggong attacked Jinn and took over Jima. Jinn Linggong ordered Zhao Chuan, Zhao Dun and Qie Que on a counter-attack and defeated Jinn at He-qu (inflexion point of Yellow River). The next year, i.e., 614 BC approx, six prominent ministers of Jinn managed to have their general Wei Shouyu pretend to surrender to Qin; when Sui Hui came to see Wei Souyu, Jinn would have Sui Hui captured and brought back to Jinn.

Still one more year later, in 613 BC approx, when Zhou King Qingwang died, Zhou ministers, Duke Zhougong (Yue) and Wangsun Su had disputes. In this year, Chu King Zhuangwang (r. BC 613-591) was enthroned. Jinn dispatched 800 chriots to Zhou court, and Zhou King Kuangwang (Ji Ban, reign 612-607 B.C.) was selected as king in 612 BC.

In 609 BC approx, Qi Lord Yigong (r. BC 612-609) was assassinated. Qin Kanggong was succeeded by his son, i.e., Qin Gonggong (r. BC 608-604) who was enthroned next for 5 years.

In 607 BC, Jinn Lord Ligong had previously tried to assassinate Zhao Dun several times and caused Zhao Dun into fleeing the country. Ligong used bows to shoot people and killed his cook and other servants at random. An assasin, Chu Mi, committed suicide by bumping his head against a tree near Zhao Dun's house. When Ligong released a dog to bite Zhao Dun, a cook (who was previously saved from hunger by Zhao Dun) would fight off the dog. Zhao Dun's brother, Zhao Chuan, killed Jinn Ligong at Daoyuan Garden (i.e., Peach Garden) and sent a messenger to recall Zhao Dun. Zhao Dun dispatched Zhao Chuan to the Zhou court and then retrieved Jinn Xianggong's brother as Jinn Lord Chenggong (r. BC 606-600). The assassination of Jinn Lord Linggong (r. BC 620-607) would be during the 2nd year reign of Qin Gonggong (r. BC 608-604), 607 BC approx.

During the 3rd year reign of Qin Gonggong, i.e., 606 BC, Lord Chu Zhuangwang campaigned northward against the Luhun-rong barbarians and inquired about the Zhou cauldrons when passing through the Zhou capital.

606 BC approx would be the 1st year reign of Jinn Chenggong (r. BC 606-600). Jinn attacked Zheng for betraying Jinn. Two years later, in 604 BC approx, Chu attacked Zheng for betraying Chu for Jinn. Jinn came to the relief of Zheng. Qin Gonggong died during 5th year reign, i.e., 604 BC.

Three years later, in 601 BC approx, Jinn defeated, captured and killed one Qin general by the name of 'Chi'.

Barbarian Groups

As to barbarian groups, there were Mianzu-Quanrong-Di-Wanrong to the west of Qin Principality, Yiqu-Dali-Wushi-Xuyan etc to the north of Qin Principality, Linhu-Loufan to the north of Jin (Jinn) Principality, and Donghu-Shanrong to the north of Yan Principality. (Mianzu could be pronounced Raozhu. Quanrong was know as Kunrong or Hunrong or Hunyi. The character 'hun4' for Hunyi or Hun-yi is the same as Hunnic King Hunye or Kunye and could mean the word of mixing-up. Wan-rong dwelled in today's Tianshui, Gansu Prov. Yiqu was one of the Xirong or Western rong stateles at ancient Qingzhou and Ningzhou. Dali-rong dwelled in today's Fengxu County. Wushi was originally Zhou land, but it was taken over by Rong. Qin King Huiwang took it back from Rong later. Linhu was later destroyed by General Li Mu. Loufan belonged to Yanmenguan Pass.)

In 606 BC, Lord Chu Zhuangwang campaigned northward against the Luhun-rong barbarians. Luhun-rong barbarians, according to *Hou Han Shu*, had relocated to northern China from ancient Gua-zhou prefecture of Gansu Prov. Alternatively speaking, per ancient scholar Du Yu, Luhun-rong barbarians, with clan name of Yun-shi, originally dwelled to the northwest of Qin and Jinn principalities, but Qin/Jinn seducingly relocated them to Yichuan area (i.e, Xincheng, Henan Prov) during the 22nd year reign of Lu Lord Xigong (r. BC 659-627), i.e., in 638 BC.

Qin Lord Huan'gong (r. BC 603-577)

Qin Lord Huan'gong was next enthroned in 603 BC. During the 3rd year reign, 601 BC approx, Jinn defeated, captured and killed one Qin general by the name

of 'Chi'.

In 600 BC, Jinn Chenggong competed against Chu for hegemony by calling an assembly of vassals at Hu(4), and Chen refused to attend for fearing Chu. Jinn Chenggong dispatched Zhongxing Huanzi against Chen statelet as well as rescued Zheng from Chu attack. Jinn defeated Chu. Jinn Chenggong (r. BC 606-600) died in 600 BC and was succeeded by his son, Jinn Jinggong (r. BC 599-581).

Two years later, in 598 BC, Chu attacked Chen because a Chen minister killed their lord one year ago. The next year, in 597 BC, Chu King Zhuangwang (r. BC 613-591) lay siege on Zheng. Jinn dispatched three armies led by Xunlinfu, Sui Hui and Zhao Suo to the relief of Zheng. Before crossing the Yellow River in June, Zheng had surrendered to Chu. Chu defeated Jinn, and Jinn, when fleeing across the river, cut tons of their soldier's fingers off for sake of getting rid of the soldiers climbing up the ships. Xian Hu (Xian Zhen's son) fled to Di statelet the next year for fearing punishment as to his bad advice in fighting Chu when Zheng had surrendered already. Xian Hu's family was exterminated for collusion with Di barbarians.

In 595 BC, Jinn attacked Zheng for surrendering to Chu. Chu Zhuangwang defeated Zheng, and went north to defeat Jinn on the bank of Yellow River. The next year, Chu attacked Song, and Song requested help with Jinn. (This would be the year 594 BC, during the 10th year reign of Qin Lord Huan'gong.) Chu Zhuangwang held a hegemony assembly of Zhou vassals. In 593 BC, Jinn dispatched Sui Hui against the Chi-di statelet and exterminated it. In 592, a Jinn emissary, Qie Ke, was ridiculed by the mother of Qi lord for his deformed body and hence swore on the Yellow River bank that he would someday revenge on Qi. In 591 BC, about six years after victory over Jinn, Chu Zhuangwang passed away. Jinn attacked Qi, and Qi sent in a prince as a hostage.

Another two years, Qi attacked Lu; Lu requested help with Wey. Jinn sent 800 chariots, with Qie Ke, Luan Shu and Han Jue in charge, against Qi, defeated Qi Qinggong (r. BC 598-582) during the summer and pursued Qi back to their statelet. In this year, Chu minister Shen'gong Wuchen fled to Jinn with a Chu king's concubine.

The next year, in 588 BC, Qi lord went to Jinn and proposed that Jinn Jinggong

be the king. Jinn Jingong declined it, but he re-organized his armies into six columns in the same fashion as Zhou court. One year later, Lu lord Chengong (r. BC 590-573) went to Jinn, but he betrayed Jinn later because Qi did not respect him. Jinn attacked Zheng in this year. In 586 BC, earthquake occurred. In 584 BC, an ex-Chu defector minister (i.e., Shen'gong Wuchen), who resided in Jinn, would petition for a mission to Wu in the attempt of avenging on his family's extermination by Chu. Shen'gong Wuchen asked his son to teach Wu soldiers how to fight with chariots. Jinn and Wu began to ally to attack Chu. In 583 BC, the Zhao Tong and Zhao Gua families were exterminated. At the urge of Haan Jue, a Zhao family member, Zhao Wu, was retained to inherit the lineage of Zhao Shuai and Zhao Dun. In 581 BC, Jinn Jingdong got ill, and Jinn Ligong (Shouman, r. BC 580-573) was enthroned. Jinn Jingdong died months later. This would be during the 24th year reign of Qin Lord Huan'gong, i.e., 580 BC. Jinn Lord Ligong had an alliance meeting with Qin Lord Huan'gong across the Yellow River. However, Qin Lord Huan'gong tore apart the alliance agreement after returning home, and then cooperated with Di barbarians in attacking Jinn. Two years later, Jinn led vassals against Qin, pursued Qin to Jing River and captured a Qin general by the name of Chengchai. One year later, Qin Lord Huan'gong (r. BC 603-577) passed away, and his son, Qin Jingong (r. BC 576-537) was enthroned.

Qin Lord Jingong (r. BC 576-537)

In 576 BC, three Qie family ministers impeached a Jinn *da fu* called Bozong and had Jinn Ligong kill Bozong. In spring of 575 BC, Zheng betrayed Jinn for Chu. Luan Shu proposed a war with Chu. Jinn Ligong personally led troops across the river in May. Against the advice of Fan Wen-zi, Jinn Ligong fought with Chu, shot at the eye of Chu king, and defeated Chu King Gongwang (r. BC 590-560) at the Battle of Yanling (a place in southeastern Zheng). Chu General Zi-fan, who previously caused Shen'gong Wuchen family extermination, would be killed by Chu king.

Jinn Ligong intended to have the brothers of his concubines replace various ministers. Most notable would be someone called Xutong. In Dec of 573 BC, during 8th year reign of Jinn Ligong, Xutong killed three Jinn brother ministers and captured Luan Shu and Zhongxing Yan. Jinn Ligong released the two ministers against the advice of Xutong, but Luan Shu and Zhongxing Yan conspired to attack Xutong and Jinn Ligong in the 13th month ('*run yue*') of 573 while the Jinn lord was visiting a fief of his concubine's relative. Xutong

was killed, and Jinn Lord Ligong (r. BC 580-573) was killed after being under arrest for 6 days. Jinn dispatched emissaries (a Zhi family member) to the Zhou court to retrieve Zi-zhou as Lord Daogong (r. BC 572-558). Zi-zhou's father was the great grandson of Jinn Xianggong, and he was at age 14 at that time. 573 BC would be the 4th year reign of Qin Lord Jinggong or the 13th year reign of Zhou King Jianwang.

Jinn Lord Daogong would attack Zheng in the autumn of 572 BC and reached Chen statelet. In 570 BC, Jinn Ligong held an assembly of vassals. Jinn minister Qixi recommended both his feud and his son for government posts. Another minister, Wei Jiang, executed a driver of Yanggan (Jinn Ligong's brother) when Yanggan was messing up the Chen statelet. Qixi was commented to be selfless, and Wei Jiang commented to be saintly. Wei Jiang was appointed the task to have peace with Rong & Di peoples. In 562 BC, Jinn Ligong commented that Wei-zi (Wei Jiang) had big contributions in assembling vassals 9 times and pacifying Rong/Di barbarians.

This would be during the 15th year reign of Qin Jinggong, i.e., 562 BC. In this year, Qin rescued Zheng from Jinn Lord Daogong's attack at Yangdi County, Henan Prov. In 559 BC, Jinn Lord Daogong ordered that his six ministers assemble vassals and campaigned against Qin. Jinn pursued Qin across the Jing-shui River. In 558 BC, Jinn Lord Daogong inquired about governance with his blind-musician, Shi Kuang. Shi Kuang proposed that 'ren' (compassion or benevolence) and 'yi' (righteousness) should be the fundamentals in governing a country. In the winter, Jinn Lord Daogong passed away, and was succeeded by his son, Jinn Pinggong (r. BC 557-532).

In 557 BC, Jinn attacked Qi. Qi Linggong (r. BC 581-554) retreated with the advice of Yan Ying. Jinn sieged Linzi and burnt city walls, and went as east as Jiao and as south as Yi on Shandong Peninsula. In 552 BC, Lu Lord Xianggong (r. BC 572-542) came to Jinn court. Jinn minister Luan Cheng (Luan Shu's grandson) fled to Qi. Two years later, Qi Zhuanggong (r. BC 553-548) escorted Luan Cheng back to Jinn and almost sacked the Jinn city of Jiang. Fan Xian-zi advised against Jinn Pinggong's suicide attempt, fought off Luan Cheng, and killed him near Quwo. Luan family was exterminated. Qi took over Chaoge and then retreated. In 548 BC, Cui Zhu assassinated Qi Zhuanggong and Jinn defeated Qi at the Battle of Gaotang. In 544 BC, a Wu prince came to Jinn and commented to Zhao Wen-zi, Haan Xuan-zi and Wei Xian-zi that 'Jinn

governance will lie in the hands of you three families."

In 541 BC, Chu prince assassinated his father to be Chu King Lingwang (r. BC 540-529). Qin Jinggong's brother fled to Jinn with thousand carts of wealth and said to Jinn Lord Pinggong (r. BC 557-532) that he would return to Qin after the death of his brother. When Qi's emissary, Yan Ying, came to Jinn in 539 BC, a Jinn minister, Shu-xiang, commented that Jinn might not last long since the ministers were in charge. In 538 BC, Chu King Lingwang assembled hegemony meeting at Shen (Nanyang, Henan Prov). Qin Jinggong passed way during the 40th year reign, i.e., 537 BC, and his son Qin Lord Aigong (r. BC 536-501) was enthroned.

Qin Lord Aigong (r. BC 536-501)

In 536 BC, Jinn campaigned against Yan. Jinn Pinggong died in 532 BC, and Jinn Zhaogong (r. BC 531-526) was enthroned for 6 years.

During the 8th year reign of Qin Aigong, i.e, 529 BC, Chu prince assassinated Chu King Lingwang and became Chu King Pingwang (r. BC 528-516). In 526 BC, Chu King Pingwang sought Qin royal family girl as his son's wife, but Chu King Pingwang later took in Qin girl as his own concubine.

Jinn Qinggong (r. BC 525-512) was enthroned in 525 BC. Six prominent families of Jinn, i.e., Haan, Zhao, Wei, Fan, Zhongxing & Zhi, began to overpower Jinn court. (I deliberately spelled Han2 as Haan here.)

In 522 BC, Chu Elder Prince Jian fled to Zheng where he was killed. Wu Zixu fled to Wu after his father and brother were arrested and later put to death by Chu King Pingwang. In 520 BC, Zhou King Jingwang died. Six ministers of Jinn went to Zhou court and quelled internal prince turmoils. Zhou King Jing4-wang was selected. Six Jinn prominent families began to attack each other for control of Jinn. As a result of this turmoil, Jinn and Qin had peace for this time period.

In 517 BC, the Ji(4) family of Lu drove Lu Lord Zhaogong (r. BC 541-510) away from the capital. In 515 BC, Wey and Song petitioned with Jinn to have Lu Zhaogong restored. Ji Ping-zi bribed Fan Xian-zi, saying to Jinn Qinggong that the Ji(4) family of Lu had no fault. In 514 BC, 6 families of Jinn exterminated Jinn royal relatives, i.e., the families of Qi-xi-sun and Shu-xiang-zi. Two years later, Jinn Qinggong died, and Jinn Dinggong (r. BC 511-475) was enthroned.

During the 31th year reign of Qin Lord Aigong, i.e., 506 BC, Wu King He-lu and Wu Zixu attacked Chu. Wu defeated Chu at the Battle of Yuzhang. Chu King Zhaowang (r. BC 515-489) fled to Sui Fief; Wu army occupied Chu capital; Wu Zixu dug up the dead body of Chu King Pingwang (r. BC 526-516) and lynched it; and Chu Minister Shen Baoxu went to seek help with Qin and cried for seven days and seven nights. Qin Lord Aigong hence dispatched Zi Pu & Zi Hu, with 500 chariots, to Chu in 504 BC and defeated Wu army at Junxiang. Chu King Zhaowang returned to the capital.

Qin Lord Aigong passed away during the 36th year reign, i.e., 501 BC. A grandson was selected as Qin Lord Huigong (r. BC 500-491).

Qin Lord Huigong (r. BC 500-491)

In 500 BC, Confucius, i.e., Kong-zi, was offered a job as prime minister for Lu.

In 497 BC, Zhao Yang intended to kill Jinn *da fu* Wu. Wu colluded with Zhongxing Ying and Fan Jieshe in attacking Zhao Yang. Zhao Yang fled to Jinyang city. Jinn Dinggong sieged Jinyang. Xue Yue, Haan Buxin, and Wei Chi came to attack Zhongxing Ying and Fan Jieshe. Zhongxing Ying and Fan Jieshe counter-attacked Jinn Dinggong. Jinn Dinggong defeated the two, and Zhongxing Ying and Fan Jieshe fled to Chaoge city. Haan and Wei families thanked Jinn lord for saving Zhao Yang.

In 496 BC, Zhongxing and Fan families rebelled against Jinn lord. Zhi and Zhao Jian-zi were ordered to quell the Zhongxing and Fan families.

Qin Huigong died during the 10th year reign, i.e., 491 BC, and his son was erected as Qin Lord Daogong.

Qin Lord Daogong (r. BC 490-477)

In 490 BC, Zhongxing Ying and Fan Jieshe were defeated, and their sons fled to Qi.

In 489 BC, Qi minister Tian Qi assassinated his lord (Ru-zi, reign 489 BC) and selected Ru-zi's brother as Qi Daogong (Yangsheng, reign 488-485 BC). In 485 BC, Wu defeated Qi army. Qi Daogong was assassinated and his son was erected as Qi Jian'gong (r. BC 484-481).

In 482 BC, Jinn Dinggong competed with King Wu Fu-chai for hegemony at Huangchi. Yue King Gou-jian attacked Wu by taking advantage of Fu-chai's absence, and Wu secretly made peace with Gou-jian to prevent vassals from hearing about Wu defeat at home. Zhao Yang died at the meeting. Before his death, Zhao Yang was said to have overwhelmed Wu king in securing the hegemony status for Jinn Dinggong.

In 481 BC, Tian Chang assassinated Qi Jian'gong (r. BC 484-481) and Qi Pinggong (r. BC 481-456) was erected. Kong-zi (Confucius) stopped the recording of *Chun Qiu* (i.e., Springs and Autums) in 481 B.C., two years before his death. In 479 BC, Confucius passed away. In 478 BC, King Jing(4)-wang passed away.

Qin Lord Ligong (r. BC 476-443)

In 475 BC, Jinn Dinggong died, and his son would be Jinn Lord Chugong (r. BC 474-457). *Zhan Guo* or Warring States time period began to count.

King of Yue, Gou-jian, who had undertaken secretive preparations to defeat Wu in 482 BC, would launch another attack at Wu Principality in 475 BC. Fu-chai had caused his best minister, Wu Zixu, to commit suicide. (Wu Zixu, the junior son of an ex-Chu official, had earlier sought asylum with Wu and then asked Wu King in successfully attacking Chu Principality. Wu Zixu was famous for his exile stories as well as digging up Chu King's dead body for lynching.) Gou-jian sieged the Wu capital for 3 years, and by 473 BC (?), and King of Wu Fu-Chai committed suicide. Zhou King Yuanwang upgraded Gou-jian's title to Count from Viscount.

In 461 BC, Qin Lord Ligong, with 20,000 army, attacked Dali-rong barbarians and took over Dali-rong capital.

In 458 BC, Zhi-bo colluded with Zhao-Haan-Wei families in dividing the land of Fan and Zhongxing. Jinn Chugong planned to petition for help with Qi/Lu in restricting the 4 families. The four families hence attacked Jinn Chugong, and Chugong died on the road to Qi. Zhi-bo selected the great grandson of Jinn Zhaogong as Jinn Aigong (r. BC 456-439 ?). Zhi-bo became the main minister governing Jinn and controlled the land that belonged previously to the families of Fan and Zhongxing.

In 456 BC, Jinn took over the city of Wucheng. In 453 BC, i.e., during the 24th year of the Qin Lord Ligong reign, three Jinn prominent families, i.e., later rulers of three separate states of Haan², Zhao, and Wei, under Zhao Xiang-zi, Haan Kang-zi and Wei Huan-zi, respectively, killed opponent Zhi-bo and split Zhi-bo's ex-Jinn land into three parts. Zhi-bo's son, Zhi Kai, fled to Qin in 452 BC.

In 444 BC, Qin Lord Ligong attacked Yiqu-rong barbarians in the areas of later Qingzhou and Ningzhou and captured the Yiqu-rong king. Sun eclipse occurred the next year, i.e., 443 BC, and Ligong died and was succeeded by Qin Lord Zaogong (r. BC 442-429).

Qin Lord Zaogong, Qin Lord Linggong & Qin Lord Jianguong

In 441 BC, Nanzheng area rebelled against Qin.

In 439 BC, Jinn Aigong died, and Jinn Yougong (r. 438-421 BC ?) was erected as a puppet. Jinn held only the two cities of Quwo and Jiang(4).

Around 430 BC, Yiqu-rong barbarians counter-attacked Qin and reached south of Wei-shui River. The next year, i.e., 429 BC, Zaogong died and his brother, Qin Huangong (r. BC 428-425), succeeded the throne. Qin Huangong committed suicide when being attacked by a minister during the 4th year reign, i.e., 425 BC. His grandson was selected as Qin Lord Linggong (r. BC 424-415).

In 424 BC, Wei Lord Wenhou became a marquis. In 421 BC, Jinn Yougong died of his wife's adultery. Wei Lord Wenhou quelled the Jinn turmoils and selected Jinn Liegong (r. BC 419-393 ?) as a puppet.

Qin attacked Jinn during the 6th and 13th year reign of Linggong. When Linggong died, his uncle was selected as Lord Qin Jian'gong (r. BC 414-399). Lord Jianguong allowed ministers to carry swords to the court. Qin Lord Jianguong died after a reign of 16 years. His son would be Qin Huigong II (r. BC 399-387).

Qin Lord Huigong II (r. BC 399-387) & Qin Lord Chuzei (r. BC 386-385)

Jinn Liegong died in 393 BC (?), and Jinn Xiaoong (aka Jinn Huan'gong) was erected as a puppet (r. BC 392-378 ?).

Huigong had his son Chuzei during the 12th year reign, i.e., 388 BC. The next

year, in 387 BC, Qin attacked Shu statelet (Sichuan-Hanzhong areas) and took over Nanzheng city. Huigong passed away this year, and Chuzei was enthroned. Chuzei and his mother were assassinated by a minister during the 2nd year reign, and Lingong's son was selected as Qin Lord Xian'gong (r. BC 384-361).

In 384 BC (?), Wei Wuhou became a marquis and attacked Handan of Zhao family. As a result of Qin turmoils, Jinn (Wei) re-took from Qin the 8 cities to the west of the Yellow River.

Qin Lord Xiangong (r. BC 384-361)

During the 1st year reign, Qin Xiangong forbade live funeral burial. The next year, he relocated capital to Yueyang (Lintong, Shenxi Prov). During the 4th year reign, in 383 BC, son (later Qin Xiaogong) was born.

Jinn Xiaogong (aka Jinn Huan'gong) died in 378 BC (?), approximately the time Qi King Weiwang (r. BC 378-343) was enthroned. Jinn Jingong was erected as a puppet (r. BC 377-376 ?). In 376 BC (?), Jinn Jingong was forced to abdicate and become a civilian, and Wei Wuhou, Haan Aihou and Zhao Jinghou officially split the Jinn land into three parts.

In 374 BC, Zhou King Liewang (Ji Xi, reign 375-369 B.C.) dispatched his civil and military officials to Qin Principality to show harmony. Zhou '*tai shi*' (chronicle official), Dan, went to see Qin Lord Xiangong and mentioned a necromancy note stating that Qin and Zhou had a fate of re-union and that Qin would produce a hegemony lord (i.e., Qin Lord Xiaogong) within 17 years.

In 369 BC, peach trees blossomed during the winter. In 367 BC, gold rain fell to the Qin capital. In 364 BC, Qin defeated Jinn at Shimen and killed 60,000 Jinn (Wei) soldiers. Zhou king sent congratulations. This would be Zhou King Xianwang 5th year reign, i.e., 364 BC. In 362 BC, Qin defeated Wei/Jinn at Shaoliang and captured General Gongsun Cuo. The next year, Qin Xian'gong passed away, and Qin Xiaogong enthroned at age 21.

Qin Lord Xiaogong (r. BC 361-338) & Shang Yang Reform

During the first year reign, Qin Xiaogong made an open announcement for seeking talents all over China in the attempt of restoring Qin Mugong's glories. In the east, Qin Xiaogong took over Shaancheng city, and in the west, he defeated and killed a Rong king by the name of Huan-wang near Tiansui, Gansu

Prov. Shang Yang (?-338 B.C.) heard Xiaogong's announcement and came to serve Qin beginning from 361 BC.

In 360 BC, Zhou King Xianwang dispatched his civil and military officials as well as delivered 'royal bestowal meat' to Qin Lord Xiaogong.

During the 3rd year reign, i.e., in 359 BC, Qin Xiaogong, against objections of Gan Long and Du Zhi, would adopt Shang Yang's advice in reforming criminal laws, encouraging agriculture, clarifying reward and penalty system. The populace first resented the new laws, but became accustomed to them in 3 years. Shang Yang was conferred the post of *zuo shu zhang* (10th level in 20 tiers).

In 355 BC, Qin Xiaogong met Wei King Huiwang at the border. In 354 BC, Qin fought Wei at Yuanli.

During the 10th year reign, i.e., in 352 BC, Shang Yang was conferred the post of *da liang zao* (16th level in 20 tiers), and he took over Anyi city of Wei to the east of the river. In 350 BC, Qin Lord Xiaogong made Xian'yang (today's Chang'an county, Xi'an Municipality) the capital. (Xian'yang was previously known as Weicheng.) Shang Yang first set up the county system by merging the small units of *xiang* (12500 households). Shang Yang devised the county civil magistrate of *xian ling* or *xian zhang* and the military post of *cheng wei*. Altogether 41 counties were set up. In 348 BC, Shang Yang instated agriculture-related tax system. Shang Yang also devised 20 levels of officialdom.

Shang Yang devised some laws as to farming soldiers. Shang Yang encouraged peoples from Haan-Zhao-Wei to migrate to Qin land for farming. For every one hundred persons, 50 would rotate for military exercises while the other 50 would farm the land. Shang Yang would change the Zhou measure of 100 steps to 240 steps as one acre and each person would be offered one acre of land. Scholars have credited Shang Yang with initiating the totalitarian rule that enabled Qin (Ch'in) to expand into the whole China domain. To show Qin people what a law was like, Shang Yang announced that whoever moved a three-Chinese-yard pole to the opposite city gate would be rewarded gold of 10 Chinese ounces. When nobody dared to move the pole, he raised the award to 50 Chinese ounces of gold. Many people were sarcastic, but they were convinced when one guy dared to move the pole and got rewarded. Shang Yang also made

laws that would punish the royal family and the privileged. When Prince Huiwenjun violated the law, Shang Yang would order Prince Huiwenjun's teachers (Gongzi Qian and Gongsu Jia) be punished, as a substitution, by peeling off the nose of Gongsu Jia. Gongzi Qian's nose was peeled in a later offense.

Reformer of Qin Principality, Shang Yang, was credited with enforcing a rule of neighborhood watch. Shang Yang made five households into a so-called 'bao', and ten 'bao' would be a collective unit for punishment should the neighbors fail to report the crime of one member. (Shang Yang had ordered the passes be closed at nights, and when he later fled the capital, he could not sneak out of Hanguguan Pass at night.)

In 343 BC, Zhou king passed on respect for Qin Xiaogong. The next year, various Zhou vassals sent congratulations. Xiaogong sent his prince to Kaifeng area for assembling Zhou vassals for a hegemony meeting and then paying a visit to the Zhou king.

In 341 BC, Qi defeated Wei at the Battle of Maling. Qi, under the advice of strategist Sun Bin, captured Wei Prince Shen and killed Wei General Pang Juan. (In early years, Pang Juan cheated his classmate Sun Bin to Wei and then paralyzed Sun by peeling off the knee bones. Sun Bin was said to be a descendant of great Chinese strategist Sun-zi [aka Sun Wu].) The next year, Shang Yang proposed that Qin attack Wei by taking advantage of Wei's conflicts with other vassals. Shang Yang attacked Wei and captured Wei Prince Mao by pretending to have a peace talk. Shang Yang then defeated Wei while Prince Gongzi Mao was in his custody. Wei King relocated his capital to Da-liang (Kaifeng) from Anyi and seceded to Qin the land to the west of the river. King Liang (Wei) Huiwang angrily said that he regreted not taking the advice of Gongsun Zuo in killing Shang Yang before Shang Yang left for Qin. Shang Yang was conferred Marquisdom (19-20th level in 20 tiers), the title of 'Shang-jun' or Prince Shang, and the land of Shangluo county (15 cities in Yu-xian and Shang-xian counties, later Hongnong area).

Zhao Liang advised Shang Yang to be merciful to people since Shang Yang was too cruel and made too many enemies. Zhao Liang proposed that Shang Yang retire. Shang Yang claimed that he should be ascribed great contributions to Qin and that he was responsible for renovating Qin's Rong-Di customs such as

"parent and son living in same bedroom" and for differentiating the protocol of men from women. Shang Yang compared himself to the same level as 'Five Sheep Skin Da Fu'. Zhao Liang cited the punishment of Gongzi Qian and Gongsu Jia, stated that Gongzi Qian had not stepped out of door for 8 years, and reminded Shang Yang that he had killed Zhu Huan. Zhao Liang cited *Shi Jing* in saying that whoever won over people would succeed and whoever lost people would demise; Zhao Liang cited *Shang Shu* in saying that whoever relied upon violence would perish and whoever relied upon virtues would prosper. Shang Yang refused to take the advice.

In 338 BC, Qin attacked Wei/Haan and captured Wei General Wei Cuo. In this year, Qin Xiaogong passed away. Gongzi Qian disciples accused Shang Yang of rebellion against Qin. Shang Yang fled to the Pass but could not get out at night. When he looked for rest in a commoner's residence, he was told that he could not stay because Prince Shang Laws forbade it. Shang Yang then fled to Wei, but Wei people drove him off for his early cheating on Prince Mao. Shang Yang fled back to his domain, assembled his people and attacked Zheng-xian area. Qin army then defeated and captured him. Prince Huiwenjun, to avenge on his teacher's humiliation, would kill Shang Yang during the 1st year reign by accusing him of treason in fleeing Qin. Shang Yang suffered the cruelest penalty, i.e., 'five horses splitting body'. Shang Yang's whole family lineage was exterminated.

Qin Lord Huiwang (Huiwenjun, r. BC 337-311), Qin King Wuwang (r. BC 310-307)

Chu-Haan-Zhao and Shu (Sichuan) dispatched emissaries to show respect for Huiwenjun's enthronement. During the 2nd year reign, Zhou king sent congratulations. This would be during Zhou King Xianwang's 33rd year reign, i.e, 336 BC, when Zhou court congratulated Qin King Huiwang. During the 3rd year reign, Huiwenjun went through the '20th year imperial crown ritual'. The next year, in 334 BC, Zhou king dispatched the civil and military officials to Qin court to show respect. In this year, Qi and Wei lords became Qi King Weiwang and Wei King Huiwang.

Su Qin persuaded six principalities into an alliance to fight the Qin in 334 BC (?). Qin defeated Wei Principality in 333 BC (?). During the 4th year reign, i.e., 333 BC (?), Zhou court dispatched the civil and military officials to Qin court to show respect.

Lord Xiaogong's son, Prince Huiwenjun, proclaimed himself as a king, and began encroaching on the Zhou Kingdom.

During the 5th year reign, Zhang Yi (?-309 B.C.) served Qin Kingdom in 329 BC (?). During King Xianwang's 44th year reign, i.e., 325 B.C., Qin King Huiwang officially proclaimed himself a king. All vassals, Han-Wei-Qi-Zhao, followed suit by claiming to be kings as well. Chu, Zhao, Han, Wei and Yan failed in their attack on Qin. Qi executed Su Qin, and made Zhang Yi the prime minister (317 BC ?). Huiwenwang would adopt the old advice of Zhang Yi, i.e., attack the San Chuan area of Haan Principality and conquer Ba & Shu areas of today's Sichuan Province. General Sima Cuo took over Sichuan and General Gan Mao took over San Chuan. Qin eliminated the Shu Kingdom in 316 B.C.(?)

The two successive Jinn states which bordered the northern nomads, Wei & Zhao, plus Qin and Yan, would be busy fighting the nomads for hundreds of years, and they built separate walls to drive the nomads out. Zhao Xiang-zi of Zhao Principality took over Bing and Dai areas near Yanmenguan Pass. Zhao, together with Haan and Wei families, destroyed another opponent called Zhi-bo and split Jin (Jinn) into three states of Han, Zhao & Wei. Yiqu-Rong built castles to counter Qin. Qin King Huiwang took over 25 cities from Yiqu-rong.

After Huiwenjun's death, Qin King Wuwang was enthroned. Wuwang's half-brother, Zhaoxiangwang, would be recalled from Yan Principality where he served as a hostage. Zhaoxiangwang succeeded the throne because Wuwang had no son by his birth.

Qin King Zhaoxiangwang

Qin, under Qin King Zhaoxiangwang, continued wars against Wei & Zhao principalities. Duke Wugong of Zhou Kingdom, i.e., Xizhoujun, colluded with the other principalities. In 264 B.C., Qin army attacked Zhou Kingdom, and Xizhou-jun (Duke Wugong) personally went to Qin armies, bowed his head and surrendered 36 cities and 30,000 people to Qin. The next year, Zhou people fled to the east. Qin acquired nine bronze utensils of Zhou Kingdom, supposedly embodiment of the ancient Nine Prefectures of China as described in *Yu Gong* (Lord Yu's Tributes). On the way of being shipped to Xian'yang, Qin's capital, one of the nine utensils fell into River Sisui and never ever was recovered again. In 262 BC, Wei Principality was late in paying pilgrimage to Qin, and Qin

attacked Wei and took over the city of Wucheng. During this time period, a huge water project called 'Dujiangyan Fork Dam' was launched by a Qin governor called Li Bing in Sichuan Province.

King Zhaoxiangwang's mother, Queen Dowager Xuantaihou, adulterated with a Rong king from Yiqu Statelet in today's northwestern Shenxi Province. She had two sons born with Yiqu Rong King, but she killed Yiqu King and incorporated the lands of Longxi (Gansu), Beidi (Yinchuan of Ningxia) and Shangjun (Yulin, Shenxi Prov) on behalf of Qin. Qin took over Shangjun from Wei. Qin took over Longxi of Gansu, Beidi and Shangjun of Shenxi, and built the Great Wall. Zhao King Wulingwang adopted reforms by wearing Hu cavalry clothing and he defeated Linhu and Loufan and built Great Wall from Dai to Yinshan Mountain. Zhao set up Yunzhong, Yanmen and Dai prefectures. A Yan Principality General by the name of Qin-kai, after returning from Donghu as a hostage, would attack Donghu and drive them away for 1000 li distance. Yan built Great Wall and set up Shanggu, Yuyang, You-beiping, Liaoxi and Liaodong prefectures.

In 259 BC, King Zhaoxiangwang died and King Xiaowenwang got enthroned. King Xiaowenwang died shortly, and King Zhuangxiangwang (Zi-chu) got enthroned at age 32.

Qin King Zhuangxiangwang & Demise Of Zhou

When Dongzhou-jun of the Zhou court colluded with various marquis for sake of restricting Qin's expansion, Qin King Zhuangxiangwang sent his prime minister, Lü Buwei, on an attack at Zhou capital and relocated Zhou duke to today's Liangxian County, Henan Province. Zhou Kingdom officially ended in this year, 256 BC, after Zhou King Nanwang was on the throne for 59 years. In this year, both Duke Wugong (Xizhoujun) and Zhou King Nanwang passed away.

Zhuangxiangwang dispatched General Meng Ao on a campaign against Haan Principality, forcing Haan into giving up the Zhou land (around Hulao-guan pass) that Haan acquired by taking advantage of Zhou's demise. Meng Ao also attacked Wei and San-chuan-jun Commandary was set up. Meng Ao would continue on to Zhao Principality, taking over Taiyuan, Shanxi Province. In the 3rd year of Qin King Zhuangxiangwang, Meng Ao attacked Wei Principality and Zhao Principality. A sun eclipse occurred in April of this year. The next year, Wei General Wuji, i.e., Prince Xingling-jun, led a joint army of Yan-Zhao-Haan-Chu-Wei against Qin and defeated Qin General Meng Ao. In the month of May,

around 246 BC, Qin King Zhuangxiangwang died after 3-4 years on the throne, and Ying Zheng (Emperor Shihuangdi, r. 246-210 BC) got enthroned.

Qin Empire & Unification Of China

The wars for unifying China now fell to the shoulder of Ying Zheng (Emperor Shihuangdi, r. 246-210 BC). Shihuangdi, enthroned at the age of 13, would unite China during the 25th year of his reign. At this time, Qin already took over today's Sichuan Province and the land between Sichuan and Shenxi Province and named it Nan-jun (Nan meaning Southern) Commandary. Qin also took over the two Zhou fiefs and named the area San-Chuan-jun (Three River) Commandary, and the land of Taiyuan, Shanxi Province and made them into Shangdang, Taiyuan and Hedong-jun (East of Yellow River) commandaries.

In the first month of 259 BC (lunar calendar), Ying Zheng was rumored to have been born after being inside of his mother's womb for 12 months and hence was implicated to Lü Buwei or Luu Buwei (Qin's Prime Minister under Zi-chu). (Lü Buwei gave Ying Zheng's mother to Qin King Zhuangxiangwang and further smuggled Zhuangxiangwang out of Zhao Principality's capital. Zhuangxiangwang previously served as a hostage in Zhao. Lü Buwei was responsible for making Zhuangxiangwang an adopted son of the Qin king.) Qin's queen dowager would certainly possess the earliest record of royal adultery. Before Ying Zheng's mother, there would be Qin King Zhaoxiangwang's mother, Queen Dowager Xuantaihou of Chu Principality origin, who adulterated with a Rong king from Yiqu-rong Statelet in today's northwestern Shenxi Province. Xuantaihou had two sons born with Yiqu-rong King, but she killed Yiqu King, hence playing a role of incorporating the lands of Longxi, Beidi and Shangjun (Yulin, Shenxi) on behalf of Qin. In this sense, Xuantaihou was more a spider woman. Yiqu-rong was commented to be a branch of the Xi-rong or Western Rong people.

Ying Zheng, (Emperor Shihuangdi), Qin's First Emperor, gained power at the age of 13. Lü Buwei, as prime minister and Marquis Wenxin-hou, would be responsible for all political and military matters of Qin court for the 13 years in between. Lü Buwei was said have to given Lao Ai, a man disguised as an eunuch, to Qin queen (who was Lü's mistress while in Zhao principality). Qin queen had two sons born with Lao-Ai, but the two half-brothers got killed by Ying Zheng when he found out about it. Shihuangdi had earlier regarded Lü

Buwei as so-called 'Zhong Fu', namely, second father. (In Chinese, the term for uncle was written as Uncle-Father. It basically means that an uncle could act as a proxy father.)

The wars of conquest already took place. In 473 B.C., the Wu Principality was annexed by Yüeh. Chu Principality exterminated Yüeh (Yue) in 344 B.C. and Lu Principality in 249 B.C. Qi annexed the state of Song in 286 B.C. And, Qin exterminated the Zhou Dynasty in 256 B.C.

In 244 BC, General Meng Ao grabbed 13 cities from Haan Principality. In 242 BC, Meng Ao grabbed 20 cities from Wei Principality and set up Dong-jun (East) Commandary. In 241 BC, a five statelet joint army attacked Qin. In 240 BC, comet was observed in the sky. General Meng Ao died in this year. Qin Queen Dowager (Zi-chu's mother) died as well. In 239 BC, Prince Chang'anjun (Cheng-Jiao), while under order to attack Zhao Principality, rebelled against his half brother Qin King. Eunuch Lao-Ai (Marquis Changxin-hou) rebelled in 238 BC, and Lao-ai got quelled by Qin's prime ministers, i.e., Prince Changping-jun and Prince Changwen-jun (formerly princes of Chu Principality). Lao-ai's two sons (Shihuangdi's half brothers) were ordered killed by throwing them onto the ground in bags. Lü Buwei was deprived of his post and titles for implication to Lao-Ai. A Qi person, by the name of Mao Jiao, somehow persuaded Shihuangdi into welcoming his birth mother back to the palace from banishment after Qin Shihuangdi killed over dozen of ministers who admonished him of filial piety.

One legalist, Li Si, would play a role in Shi Huangdi's political beliefs. Li Si was previously a small potato official in Chu Principality, and he was a legalist. He first observed the difference of behavior of mice in state's grain warehouse and in poor people's house. Li Si commented about the psychology of officials who engaged in embezzlement and corruption by saying that "the mice was content with eating grains in the state's grain warehouse, but the mice in poor people's house would be scared into fleeing once people came back home". Li Si was responsible for advising on Qin King to revoke an order to expell non-Qin officials out of Qin land. In face of allied attacks by the various principalities, a person called Liao from Daliang (today's Kaifeng) would propose to Qin King to sow dissension among various principalities via bribing their ministers with 300,000 units of gold. Liao once fled Qin capital as a result of fearing for his life because he thought that Qin King, with long eyes, concave nose and leopard voice, might someday kill him. Qin King caught Liao and conferred him the title

of 'wei', equivalent to commander-in-charge. Liao was also named Wei-Liao for his title. Haan Principality, one of the Zhou vassals, in order to divert Qin's efforts at wars, would send someone called Zhengguo to Qin for sake of diverting Qin's manpower to irrigation projects. Ying Zheng, piercing Zhengguo's plot, still hired him as an irrigation expert. Zhengguo dug the famous 'Zhengguo Qu' or Zhengguo Trench.

In 236 BC, General Wang Jian was ordered to attack Shanxi Province. In 235 BC, Lü Buwei died by drinking a traditional poison called 'zhen' that was made from a bird who preyed on poisonous snakes for living. His thousand followers were reprimanded by Qin King for mourning Lü Buwei's death. In 234-233 BC, Qin army attacked Pingyang of Zhao multiple times and killed 100,000 Zhao soldiers. Haan(2) King sent his prince, Hanfei-zi, to Qin. Hanfei-zi (also spelled Haan Fei Zi) admired the works of Shang Yang. When Hanfei-zi came over to Qin, his classmate, Li Si, would plot to have Qin King retain Hanfei-zi. Hanfei-zi was later killed by Li Si out of envy for the favor that Shihuangdi had shown to Hanfei-zi. Haan(2) King requested for vassalage with Qin. In 232 BC, Qin attacked Haan Principality in today's Shanxi Province again. Earthquake was recorded in this year. In 231 BC, both Haan and Wei surrendered some of their lands to Qin. In 230 BC, Haan was converted into Yinchuan Commandary after Haan King An surrendered to Qin. Earthquake was recorded again. Qin Queen Dowager Huayang-taihou died this year.

In a series of campaigns between 230 to 221 B.C., Qin unified China and founded the Qin Dynasty in 221 B.C. From 230-221 BC., he crushed Haan, Zhao, Wei, Yen, Chu, and Qi one by one.

Map linked from
<http://www.friesian.com/>

In 230 BC, Haan King An surrendered. In 229 BC, General Wang Jian attacked Zhao. In 228 BC, Zhao King Qian surrendered. Qin King went to Handan, Zhao's capital and killed all those Zhao people who offended Ying Zhen while he was a hostage in Zhao. In this year, Qin King's birth mother died. One Zhao

prince, Jia(1), went to the ancient Dai Prefecture and declared himself King of Dai. Prince Jia allied with Yan Principality.



In 227 BC, Prince Yan, Dan, aka Yan-Dan, sent an assassin called Jing Ke (aka Qing-qing or Jing-qing) to **abduct** Qin King as a fast solution against the advice of his teacher who proposed a long term plan in allying with multiple statelets and the Huns against Qin. Prince Dan of Yan Principality once served as a hostage in Zhao capital and hence he was a childhood pal of Qin King. Prince Yan-Dan later went to serve as a hostage at Qin capital but requested for a return when he was mistreated. (Jing Ke was from Wey statelet, toured numerous countries, finally arrived in Yan statelet where he made friend with a dog-butcher called Gao Jianli and drank wine and sang songs together all through the day. Note that today's Koreans still enjoyed eating dog meat.) Jing Ke was located by Tian Guang who later committed suicide to prove to Prince Yan-Dan that he would not divulge the assassination scheme. Prince Yan-Dan befriended Jing Ke with gold and women and rode chariots together inside palaces, Yan-Dan even killed his stallion when Jing Ke mentioned that stallion's liver should taste good, and Yan-Dan cut off the fingers of a court-maid when Jing Ke praised the artistic skills of the maid's fingers in playing musical instruments. Jing Ke then borrowed the head of ex-Qin defector general Fan Yuqi and brought along a 13-year-old teenager called Qin Wuyang as his assistant. (Qin Wuyang, a descendant of Qin Kai who had led Yan forces in defeating Eastern Hu barbarians on behalf of Yan, was hired by Prince Yan-Dan hastily rather than waiting for Jing Ke's better-qualified pal to come to the assistance.) On the bank of Yi-shui River, Prince Yan-Dan and his entourage wore the mourning clothes, Gao Jianli beat the instrument and Jing Ke sang the song, "Bitter cold the water of Yi-shui River under the wind blowing with

whistling sounds, brave man now departs on the road of no return". Jing Ke hid a knife inside the maps of Yan Principality and attempted to abduct Qin King while he was showing the maps at Xianyang-gong Palace. When the page turned and revealed the poisonous dagger, Jing Ke grabbed the dagger, charged against Qin King, sliced off Qin King's robe when Qin King wrestled off, and chased Qin King by circling the bronze pillar several times till an imperial doctor threw a medicine box at Jing Ke. Qin ministers, daring not come upward due to Qin King's rule of distance, shouted at Qin King that he could push the sword to the back and pull out his long blade against his spine. Qin King cut Jing Ke's left buttock, Jing Ke threw the dagger at Qin King and hit the bronze pillar with sparks, Qin King attacked Jing Ke 8 more times, and Qin King escaped alive. Jing Ke leaned against the pillar and laughed aloud, stating that Qin King had escaped alive because he was trying to capture Qin King alive as he had promised to Prince Yan-Dan. Qin Wuyang was killed by garrison guards down at the palace steps. Qin King, unhappy over the assassination for a long time, then awarded his doctor Xia-wu-qie with 200 taels of gold. (Sima Qian validated the assassination story by meeting with personal friends of this imperial doctor.) Thereby, Qin King sent order to Qin army at Zhao Principality and dispatched General Wang Jian and General Xin Sheng on a campaign to attack Yan as a retaliation. In Oct of 226 BC, Ji-cheng city the Yan capital was taken. General Wang Ben, son of Wang Jian, took over Beijing. King Xi of Yan and Prince Yan-Dan fled to Liao-dong or east of Liao River. Qin General Li Xin continued to pursue Yan remnants. King Xi of Yan, at the advice of King Jia of Dai, killed Prince Yan-Dan to appease Qin General Li Xin. In this year, General Wang Jian retired. (4-5 years later, in 222 BC, Qin armies attacked King Xi of Yan again and captured him. Gao Jianli, hiding himself for years, was later captured and spared by Qin Emperor Shihuangdi. Shihuangdi made Gao Jianli beat instrument with his eyes blinded with application of horse's discharge. Gao Canli later filled his instrument with mineral led and tried to hit Shihuangdi in vain. Shihuangdi ordered that Gao Jianli be executed for his assassination attempt.)

In 225, General Wang Ben attacked Wei Principality and flooded Kaifeng. In this year, Wei King Jia(3) surrendered. In 224 BC, General Wang Jian was recalled for attacking Chu. Chu King Fu-Chu surrendered. Chu General Xiang Yan erected Prince Changpingjun as the new Chu King and counter-attacked Qin south of the Huai River. In 223 BC, Wang Jian and Meng Wu defeated Chu and killed Prince Changpingjun. Chu General Xiang Yan committed suicide. In 222 BC, General Wang Fen pursued Yan King to the east Liaoning Province. Yan King Xi

surrendered. On the way back, General Wang Ben attacked King of Dai, Jia, and captured him. Meanwhile, General Wang Jian went on to conquer the ex-Yue land and set up Kuaiji Commandary. In 221 BC, Qi King Jian closed off the border with Qin. General Wang Ben went to attack Qi and Qi(2) King Jian surrendered.

By 221 BC, Shihuangdi, during the 26th year of his reign, completed the unification of China.

Ying Zheng's ministers, *cheng xiang* Wang Guan, *yushi dafu* Feng Bo & *ting wei* Li Si, suggested a title called *Qin Huang* with the character 'huang' taken from Three Ancient Sovereigns. Ying Zheng adopted a title of 'huangdi' or emperor for himself by combining the words of 'Huang' and 'Di' from the Eight Ancient Lords. (In Chinese, there is no comparable words for emperor or empire. The terminology for the empire came from an imported word, 'Teikoku', which the Japanese derived by lining up the two Chinese characters for lord and state.) After driving away the Huns in the north and conquering the south, Shihuangdi adopted the commandary-county system advice of his minister Li Si (Li Szu) who had risen to leftside prime minister from so-called *ting wei* (i.e., court captain).

Shihuangdi rebutted *bo shi* (i.e., doctor) Chunyu Yue and established the so-called 'Jun-Xian System', namely, commandary-county system. Shihuangdi rezoned his country into 36 commandaries in lieu of conferring dukes and kings to his sons.



Qin Statelet's organization chart showed the best balance of power of ancient China. Early Qin had used Bali Xi and Jian Shu as the rightside prime minister and leftside prime minister. **Three branches of governance were utilized, namely, chief counselor (*chengxiang*), grand marshal (*taiwei*), and censor-in-chief or inspector-in-chief (*yushi dafu*).** The commandary-county system would see a similar power balance in each and every commandary, a governor-general and a censor, respectively.

Sima Qian commented that Qin was able to defeat all rivals as a result of its abilities to conduct reforms and changes. Sima Qian said that Qin's armies might not be that strong as the three Jinn principalities, and Qin's morality and justice could not compared with that of the other vassals. The only strength was its ability to change the status quo. Sima Qian's insight could be applied to today's China as well !

In the next 11 years, Shihuangdi would be responsible for attacking the Huns in the Hetao and Ordos areas, building and linking the Great Walls, standardizing writing system, coins and measures, paving the highways across the country, and digging canals to link up the water system. In the north, after the rebuilding of the Great Wall, General Meng Tian was ordered to pave a road across the mountains to reach Inner Mongolia. To the south, a highway would continue up the valley of the Xiangjiang River, along the present-day railway line, southeastward into Lingling. South of the county of Lingling, by the present-day town of Xingan, Shihuangdi had a canal cut across the watershed to link the Xiangjiang River with the head-waters of the Lijiang River, namely, Ling Qu ("Magic Trench"), for sake of conquest of the south. In the southwest, after Qin unification of China in 221 BC, Chang E, governor for Sichuan Prov, extended the road to Yunan Prov's Shaotong and Qujing on basis of Li Bing's pavement. This is the so-called "Five Chinese Feet Road" that was paved with raw stone slates, with over thousand meter long trace recognizable today still.

Campaigns Against Xiongnu

Emperor Shihuangdi, being given a necromancy note stating that the people who would destroy Qin would be named 'Hu' (which turned out to be the name of his junior son Hu Hai [aka Huhai or Hu-Hai]), would embark on a northern expedition against a group of people called Xiongnu (i..e, Huns) who were categorically called Hu nomads at that time. The record shows that the Huns

lived not far away from the Chinese after all. Qin empire would take over today's Hetao (the sleeve-shaped land surrounded by the Yellow River on three sides) areas and set up 44 counties. Thereafter, Shihuangdi ordered General Meng Tian to cross the Yellow River, and Yinshan Mountains of Inner Mongolia were taken, where 43 more counties were set up. In both campaigns, Qin migrated convicts to the new counties. It is very clear to me that the Huns had been driven out of China from the very beginning.

To drive out the Huns, Shihuangdi ordered Meng Tian to construct and link the various walls into the Great Wall. The Great Wall project cost innumerable human lives, and one legend goes that Lady Menjiangnu had caused a segment of the wall break down after crying for her lost husband for a long time. In the north, after the rebuilding of the Great Wall, General Meng Tian was ordered to pave a road across the mountains to reach Inner Mongolia. (This highway must have gone into oblivion in later times. See <http://www.secretchina.com/news/articles/4/9/19/72164.html> for writings on Qin highways.) Another project, the imperial palace of "Er Pang Gong" ("E Pang Gong" or "E'pang Gong"), took another toll on the nation's manpower and resources. (General Xiang Yü later burned down the whole palace.) "Er Pang Gong" project was started one year after book burning event. Shihuangdi personally reviewed the project. The area of Shanglinyuan royal garden south of Wei-shui River was chosen, and 700,000 labor were called upon from all over the nation. After touring the completed "Er Pang Gong", Shihuangdi travelled to Lishan Mountain where he decided for himself to have his underground tomb palace built.

Shihuangdi collected private weapons from all over the nation and melted into 12 huge bronze statues in the hope of depriving people of weaponry and lengthening his dynasty. Bronze statues weighed 240,000 Chinese grams each. (Per *Han Shu*, 12 giants in 'Yi-di' alien clothing were sighted at Lingtiao of Gansu in 221 BC, i.e., during the 26th year reign, and Shihuangdi instructed that the bronze statues were made on basis of the image of the giants.) Shihuangdi ordered all royal descendants of ex-Zhou principalities rounded up for closer supervision at the capital. About 120,000 households of noble heritage relocated to Xian'yang. Shihuangdi also ordered that citadels and castles across the nation be dismantled. Sima Qian commented that Shihuangdi, though clamping down on the royals, failed to control the civilians. Later, Chen Sheng and consecutively Liu Bang, who rebelled against Qin Empire, were both

civilians. Shihuangdi encountered numerous assassination attempts as a result of his cruelty to the people. Shihuangdi's cruelty would also be shown in his order to have all civilians living near a rock be executed in 211 BC after someone left inscription words stating that Qin would disintegrate once Shihuangdi died.

Book Burning & Confucian Burying

Shihuangdi was angered by two Confucians (i.e., Lu Sheng & Hou Sheng, more semi-Daoist and semi-alchemist) who had cheated him in finding panacea. Li Si (Li Szu), leftside prime minister, after winning favor over Chunyu Yue on the matter of commandary-county system, would propose book burning. In 213 BC, on Li Si's urging, Shihuangdi outlawed all other schools of thought ("Hundred Schools") except for Legalism, and he ordered book burning. 346 Confucians local to Qin capital were buried alive at one time. When Shihuangdi's elder son, Prince Fu-Su (aka Fu Su), encountered the rows of Confucians who were on the way to the burial ground, he went straight to Shihuangdi pleading for amnesty on behalf of the Confucians. Shihuangdi rebuffed Fu-Su and further sent his elder son to Shangjun (today's Suide and ancient Suizhou) Commandary on the northern border to be with General Meng Tian. Shihuangdi then played a trick to have various prefectures send over about 700 more Confucians and scholars. All 700 Confucians were stoned to death in a valley, a place later named 'valley of Confucian killing'. Mao Tse-tung was reported to have commented on Shihuangdi's book burning and Confucian killing in 1958: "What's so unusual about Emperor Shihuangdi of Qin Dynasty? He had buried alive 460 scholars only, but we have routed millions of rightists..."

Sima Qian signed when he wrote about 'book burning'. Valuable records were lost forever. Why? Sima Qian said that Qin Shihuangdi ordered all histories and chronicles of Zhou Kingdom and various principalities be burnt, that only Qin chronicles were left intact, and that the worst thing about Qin's chronicle was that Qin, unlike Zhou and other vassals, did not write the dates in their chronicle. Sima Qian also expressed relief that ancient classics, like *Si Jing* (classics of poems) etc, had survived because they were hidden by civilians outside of the court. But the histories and chronicles, only kept in Zhou court or the courts of the vassals, were all destroyed.

Campaigns In The South

Shihuangdi also sent expeditions to the south and southwest, taking over Guangdong Prov, parts of Guangxi Prov, and coastal Fujian Province. Qin army

moved eastwards from today's Jiangxi Province, crossed Wuyishan Mountains, and went southwards to today's Guangdong Province. Between 220 BC and 214 BC, Qin expeditions conquered two small states of the Yue people, in present-day Wenzhou and Fuzhou, and set up the Commandery of Minzhong. During this campaign, Qin mobilized an army of 100 to 200 thousand people, mostly consisting of the so-called outcasts of then China, i.e., the men who lived in wives' homes after the marriage and the merchants whose occupation was deemed the lowest in then society. Qin Emperor Shihuangdi, after conquering the south, set up the commandaries of Guiling, Nanhai (south sea), and Xiangjun (elephant commandary, i.e., later Rinan Commandary of Han Dynasty) etc. History recorded that altogether 500,000 people, consisting of the disgraced men and the merchants and etc, were relocated to southern China. This explains the fact that today's Guangdong Province still possesses the most variety of ancient Chinese dialects.

Shihuangdi's Nationwide Tours & His Death

Shihuangdi went on numerous inspection tours of the nation. In order to travel faster around the nation, he ordered the pavement of so-called 'Zhi Dao', i.e., straight highways. Zhidao might have gone into oblivion later, but its existence could be corroborated by Sima Qian's comments that he returned to Han capital via an ex-Qin Zhidao. During the autumn of 27th year reign, Shihuangdi travelled westward to Longxi of Gansu Prov and returned via Beidi of northern Shenxi Prov; the next spring, he travelled eastward to Shandong Peninsula. Shihuangdi also climbed Mount Taishan, and later dynasties would make it a rule to revere Mount Taishan (considered one of three 'Di' or overlords). On top of Mt. Taishan, he conferred the title of *Five Dafu* onto five big trees for sheltering him from the storm. Shihuangdi climbed Mt. Langya-shan and ordered a renovation surpassing Yue King Gou-jian's project. 100 days later, the project was completed with 30,000 labor; Shihuangdi climbed up the storey and looked into the east sea for the three legendary islands of Peng-lai, Fang-zhang and Ying-zhou. An article extolling his unification of China was inscribed on Mount Langya-shan. He arrived at Mount Jieshi, near today's Qinhuangdao and Shanhaiguan Pass, to see sunrise; later, Cao Cao came to the same spot and wrote a famous poem to express his ambition at a high age by making an analogy of him to an old warring horse. Shihuangdi travelled to Mount Kuaijishan where he revered Lord Yü the founder of Xia Dynasty. Shihuangdi admired the building of Langye, i.e., a costal palace that King Yue had used after relocating capital from Kuaiji. Shihuangdi also oversaw two panacea-

finding overseas trips by Xu Fu at Langye port of present Jiangsu-Zhejiang province, somewhere near the Yangtze Delta mouth. (The always-on lamps inside of Shihuangdi's tomb, lit by oil refined from mermaid fish from the East China Sea, corroborated the fact that Chinese fishing vessels were very active in the East Sea 2200 years ago. Xu Fu, by the way, was speculated to have arrived in Japan with 3000 virgin boys and girls, plus artisans.) At one time, on the road, near Bolangsha of Yangwu County, he encountered the 'iron hammer' attack of an assassin sent by Zhang Liang, an ex-Haan(2) royal descendant. Shihuangdi, during the last trip, had the accompaniment of his 18th son (Huhai). Zhao Gao, the 'zhongchefu-ling' (i.e., the eunuch officer in charge of palace), was the tutor of Huhai. During his last trip on which occasion he died at a place called Shaqiu (near today's Xingtai of Hebei or ancient Xingzhou prefecture), Zhao Gao would collude with Li Si in hiding the death of Shihuangdi and revising Shihuangdi's will. Zhao Gao and Li Si bought carts of salt fish ('bao4 yu2') to cover the stinky smell of Shihuangdi's dead body. They later sent an order in the name of Shihuangdi to have the elder prince (Fu-Su) and General Meng Tian commit suicide on the pretext that they had failed to complete the Great Wall project within 10 years. Fu-Su was originally banished to Shangjun to build the Great Wall after he offended Shihuangdi earlier on the matter of Confucian burying. Thereafter, Hu-hai arrested Meng Yi and ordered Meng Tian to commit suicide. Meng Tian, at the Great Wall, would give up military authorization to General Wang Li and surrender himself against his generals' advice to stage a rebellion. Meng Tian said he did not want to defame the three-generation loyalty of his family. (Cao Cao of Latter Han Dynasty had cited Meng Tian's loyalty as one reason that he still upheld last Han Emperor Xiandi as the lord.) The two Meng brothers were killed thereafter. By Sept of this year, Hu-hai dispatched Shihuangdi's coffin to Lishan Mountain. Right after Hu-hai's ascension to the throne, he would order that all his half brothers (12 in total) and half sisters (10 in total), relatives, some generals and ministers, be killed for sake of solidifying his rule.

At the time of Shihuangdi's death, Qin already abolished 'live human funereal burial'. The [terra-cotta army](#) would be replacement for the old funeral burial.

terracotta soldier

Hu-hai, however, was recorded to have ordered that all Shihuangdi's concubines who had no childbirth be buried inside of Shihuangdi's tomb. To prevent the artisans from disclosing the inside of the tomb, Hu-hai, at the advice of Zhao Gao, also sealed off the tomb, with the artisans inside. The tomb, according to Sima Qian, had numerous traps, mercury rivers and automatic arrows, designed to be detente for any tomb-diggers.



Also recorded by *Shi Ji* would be:

- i) always-on lamps lit by oil refined from mermaid fish from the East China Sea, and
- ii) diamonds and other precious stones used for decorations as stars, sun and moon on the dome of the tomb.

China & The Name Of Chin (Qin), & Qin Ethnicity

The name of 'China' itself is mistakenly linked to the so-called first united empire of China, Qin or Chin, which lasted just a dozen or so years, from 221 BC to 206 BC. The word 'china' or 'China' deserves another look as to its origin. The name of China has nothing to do with chinaware. As to the chinaware, that will point to the inventions from Song/Ming dynasties, not the ancient pottery. The chinas of Song & Ming are famous for their blue and white patterns and the hardness of the product as a result of high temperature manufacturing process. While I read about citation of a similar name in Sanskrit, i.e., Cina or Cin, some scholar had speculated that the name 'Chin' could be a mutation of 'Jing' the alias for the Chu State in Southern China during the Zhou Dynasty. This may sound a bit extrapolated. However, it is believable in light of the fact that Han emissary Zhang Qian mentioned he saw in the Oxus and Fengana Valley the silk and clothing produced in Sichuan Province which merchants said were shipped over from India. Around 122 BC, Zhang Qian saw cloth of Sichuan in Bactria and reported that he saw Zangke bamboo products and Sichuan clothing which the Bactria merchants said were shipped over from India. Emperor Wudi then ordered expeditions to the west in search of a route to India.

In 135 BC, Han emissary noted that Nan-Yue or Southern Yue was using soy sauce from Sichuan Province. Yelang Statelet, with 100,000 strong army, was targeted by Han as a ally in the war on Southern Yue. Han emissary said that the Zangke River (a place in today's Sichuan Province), by which the Yelang Statelet dwelled, would flow into Panyu of today's Guangdong Province. Looking at the map, we could assume the ancient Zangke River must have flowed down today's Guizhou Province to converge with the West River of Guangdong Province.

Chinese history recorded that the people living to the south of Vietnamese, in both Linyi (Champa) and Funan, possessed **curly hair**, a Negroid characteristic that has more to do with Dravidians of India. It is no strange to see this phenomenon when we examined the history of southeast Asia as a whole to find that Indian influence had spread across the whole area much before the Chinese poked their nose in the same area. In 110s BC, General Lu Bode (carrying the same title 'Quelling Sea Waves' as the Latter Han General Ma Yuan) was ordered by Han Emperor Wudi to campaign in the south, and he first set up Rinan Commandary. The Linyi (Champa) Statelet would be where the Xianglin County of Rinan Commandary was. General Ma Yuan erected two bronze pillars here as a demarcation line of Han China's boundary.

We could not completely discount the name for China as having origin in Qin Dynasty. Some scholars pointed out that the Huns used to call Han Chinese by 'Qin Ren', i.e., Qin people. Some records in Chinese Turkistan did point to the continued usage of 'Qin Ren' well after Qin's demise. In between the name of Qin and Cathay, there was another name for China, i.e., Tabgac or Toba, that was inscribed on some stone monument by the Turks during Tang Dynasty.

Qin's Ethnicity

I consider Qin people as mainly Sino-Tibetan speaking Chinese versus the Indo-European Yuezhi or Altaic steppe people. I had examined [terra cotta soldiers](#) and almost all figures possessed Mongolian eyes which were more slanted than today's Chinese. Qin's ancestors dwelled in the border areas of Gansu-Shenxi, and they might have conquered and absorbed various Xi Rong or Western Rong tribes, i.e., Qiangic nomads. No conclusive evidence suggested that Qin's ancestors had noticeable deviation from the Zhou Chinese. Qin was considered a vassal of the same big family. No history showed that Zhou Chinese and vassals

had any direct contact with Yuezhi in Chinese Turkistan and Gansu Province. *Shi Ji* recorded that Qin's ancestors were called 'Rong Xuxuan', carrying a denotation that they might be mixed with the Rong people; later, reformer Shang Yang's boasting that he had reformed Qin people's Rong/Di customs into civilized mode did point to the fact that Qin people had carried lots of Rong-di traits.

Rong's ethnicity, difficult to expound either via classic books or archaeological findings, was more likely associated with the Qiangic people whose ancestors, SanMiao or Three Miao people, were relocated to Gansu Prov 4000 years. In the hun.htm section, I had expounded that the Rong people in the west, sharing possibly the same blood-line with Xia Chinese but differing in 'Culture' such as cuisine, clothing, money and language, appeared to be an early offshoot of Sino-Tibetan speaking Qiangic people.

The wars on record would be between Qin and the Xirong, Doggy Rong and various other Rong people, and between Zhou Chinese and Rongdi (which split into Baidi and Chidi) etc. The wars on record would be : i) between Qin and the Xirong, ii) between Quan-rong and Zhou, iii) between Qi/Yan and Shan-rong (i.e. Bei-rong), iv) between Chang-di and Wey/Xing, v) between Chi-di/Bai-di and Jinn, vi) between Dali-rong and Qin, vii) between Linhu and Zhao, viii) between Yiqu-rong and Qin, and ix) between Zhou Chinese and Rongdi (which split into Baidi and Chidi) etc. Other wars would be with Maojin-rong, Li-rong, Gui-rong, Ji-rong, Lunhun-rong & Wan-rong etc.

Dwelling close to various Rong people (including Xirong) would be the Yuezhi. The relationship of the Yuezhi to Rong or Rong-di people is not clear. Bai-di and Chi-di evolved from Rong-di. Baidi (White Di) dwelled in ancient Yanzhou (today's Yan'an), Suizhou (today's Suide) and Yinzhou (today's Ningxia). Chidi (Red Di) dwelled in a place called Lu(4), near today's Shangdang (Changzhi, Shanxi). In the West Yellow River Bend area could also be found Yuezhi people. *Gua Di Zhi* stated that Yuezhi country included ancient Liangzhou, Ganzhou, Suzhou, Yanzhou and Shazhou, i.e., today's Gansu, Ningxia and Shenxi Provinces. I could not speculate about it simply by interpreting the words here, i.e., Bai meaning white, Chi meaning red, and Rong meaning hairy. Note that white or red were designations of tribal clothing customs or related symbols, and they had nothing to do with hair or skin. Shang Dynasty used black bird as a totem, for example, and Clyde Winters' appropriation in claiming a Negroid

origin of Shang people was fallacious. Similarly, minority people in Southwest China, like Bai-zu and Yi-zu, had derived from Bai-man (white barbarian) and Hei-man (black barbarian) of Di-Qiang people or ancestors of today's Tibetans.

Qin/Zhou Chinese Zigzags With Rong & Di Peoples

Now back to Rong people at the time of Zhou Dynasty. Count of West, Xibo, namely, Zhou Ancestor Ji Chang, once attacked the Doggy Rongs (said to be same as Xianyun barbarian on the steppe). Dozen years later, Zhou King Wuwang exiled the Rongs north of the Jing & Luo Rivers. The Rongs were also called Huangfu at the time, a name to mean their 'erratic submission'. 200 years later, Zhou King Muwang attacked the Doggy Rongs and history recorded that he captured four white wolves & four white deers (white deer and white wolf being the titles of ministers of Rongdi barbarians) during his campaign. The Huangfu (Doggy Rong) people then no longer sent in yearly gifts and tributes. Zhou King Yiwang, the grandson of King Muwang (r. 1,001 - 946 BC), would be attacked by the Rongs. The great grandson, King Xuanwang (reign 827 - 782), finally fought back against the Rongs. *Shi Jing* eulogized King Xuanwang's reaching Taiyuan of Shanxi Province and fighting the Jiangrong. Thereafter, King Youwang (reign 781-771) was killed by the Doggy Rongs at the foothill of Lishan Mountain and capital Haojing was sacked. Quanrong & Xirong had come to aid Marquis Shenhou (father-in-law of King Youwang of Western Zhou, c 11 cent - 770 BC) in killing King Youwang of Zhou Dynasty in 770 BC. Rongs who stayed on at Lishan were called Li-rong. The Rongs moved to live between the Jing & Wei Rivers. Lord Qin Xianggong was conferred the old land of Zhou by Zhou King Pingwang (reign 770-720). Zhou King Pingwang encouraged the Qin Lord to drive out the Quanrongs.

Quanrong or Doggy Rong of the west were also named Quan-yi-shi (Doggy alien tribe) or Hunyi / Kunyi (Kunlun Mountain aliens?, but was commented to be the same as character 'hun4' for the meaning of mixing-up). *Shan Hai Jing* legends stated that Huangdi or Yellow Emperor bore Miao-long, Miaolong bore Nong-ming, Nongming bore Bai-quan (White dog) which was the ancestors of Quanrong. *Shan Hai Jing* also stated that Quan-yi had human face but beast-like body. An ancient scholar called Jia Kui stated that Quan-yi was one of the varieties of Rong people. Among the above names, one group of barbarians would be called the Rong-di(2) people. Some Rong and Di must have mixed up, and one more designation would be Rongdi Rong which later split into Chidi and Baidi. History book mentioned that Rongdi was of dog ancestry, related to

Pan-hu, the ancestor of San-Miao people who were exiled to Gansu by Lord Shun.

Qin warred with various Rong peoples over a time span of over 600 years. When Zhou King Liwang was ruling despotically, the Xi Rong (Xirong or Western Rong) people rebelled in the west and killed most of the Daluo lineage of Qin people. Zhou King Xuanwang conferred Qin Lord 'Qin Zhong' (r. BC 845-822 ?) the title of 'Da Fu' and ordered him to quell the Xirong. Qin Lord Zhuanggong's senior son, Shifu, would swear that he would kill the king of the Rong people to avenge the death of Qin Zhong before returning to the Qin capital. Zhuanggong's junior son would be Qin Lord Xianggong (Ying Kai) who assisted Zhou King Pingwang (reign 770-720) in cracking down on both the Western Rong and the Doggy Rong. Shifu was taken prisoner of war by Xi Rong during the 2nd year reign of Qin Lord Xianggong and did not get released till one year later. During the 7th year reign of Qin Lord Xianggong, i.e., 771 BC, Doggy Rong barbarians sacked Zhou capital and killed Zhou king at the invitation of Marquis Shen (i.e., Shenhou). Qin Lord Xianggong (Ying Kai) died during the 12th year of his reign (766 BC) when he campaigned against the Rong at Qishan. Qin Lord Wengong (r. BC 765-716), during his 16th year reign, Wengong defeated Rong at Qishan. Wengong would give the land east of Qishan back to Zhou court. Qin Lord Ningong (r. BC 715-704) would defeat King Bo and drove King Bo towards the Rong people during the 3rd year reign, i.e., 713 BC. Ningong conquered King Bo's Dang-shi clan during the 12th year reign, i.e., 704 BC. Qin Lord Wugong (r. BC 697-677), during the 10th year reign, exterminated Gui-rong (Shanggui of Longxi) and Ji-rong (Tiansui Commandary), and the next year, exterminated Du-bo Fief (southeast of Xi'an), Zheng-guo Fief (Zheng-xian County) and Xiao-guo Fief (an alternative Guo Fief, different from the Guo domain conferred by Zhou King Wenwang onto his brother, Guo-shu). Xiao-guo Fief was said to be a branch of the Qiang people.

Meanwhile, lord of the Jinn Principality, Jinn Xian'gong (r. 676-651 BC), attacked Li-rong (Xi Rong) barbarians during his 5th year reign, i.e., 672 BC approx, and captured a Li-rong woman called Li-ji. In 664 BC, Qi Lord Huan'gong destroyed the statelets of Shan-rong and Guzhu. (Guzhu was formerly Zhu-guo Statelet, a vassal of ex-Shang dynasty. The Shan-rong or Mountain Rongs went across the Yan Principality of Hebei Province to attack Qi Principality in today's Shandong Province. 44 years later, they attacked Yan. Around 664 BC, Yan-Qi joint armies destroyed the Mountain Rong Statelet as

well as the Guzhu Statelet.

During the 16th year of Zhou King Huiwang (reign 676-652), namely, 661 BC, the Chang Di barbarians who were located near today's Jinan City of Shandong Province, under Sou Man, attacked the Wey and Xing principalities. The Di barbarians, hearing of Qi army's counter-attacks at Mountain-rong, embarked on a pillage in central China by attacking Wey and Xing statelets. The Di barbarians killed Wey Lord Yigong (r. BC 668-660 ?) who was notorious for indulging in raising numerous birds called 'he' (cranes), and the barbarians cut him into pieces. A Wey minister would later find Yigong's liver to be intact, and hence he committed suicide by cutting apart his chest and saving Yigong's liver inside of his body.

Over 20 years later, in 636 BC approx, the Rongdi nomads attacked Zhou King Xiangwang (reign 651-619) at the encouragement of Zhou Queen who was the daughter of Rongdi ruler. Jinn Principality helped Zhou King by attacking the Rongs and then escorted the king back to his throne 4 years after the king went into exile. After the defeat in the hands of Jinn, the Rongs moved to the land between the Yellow River and the Luo-shui River, and two groups were known at the time, Chidi (Red Di) and Baidi (White Di). Baidi (White Di) dwelled in ancient Yanzhou (today's Yan'an), Suizhou (today's Suidi) and Yinzhou. *Zuo Shi Chunjiu* stated Jinn defeated Baidi and remnants were known as Bai-bu-hu later. Chidi (Red Di) dwelled in a place called Lu(4), near today's Shangdang. *Zuo Shi Chunjiu* stated that Jinn Principality destroyed the Lu(4) tribe of the Chidi, and the remnants were known as Chi-she-hu nomads later.

In 659 BC, Qin Lord Mugong conquered Maojin-rong. In 623 BC, i.e., during the 37th year reign, Qin Mugong, using You Yu as a guide, campaigned against the Xirong and conquered the Xirong Statelet under their lord Chi Ban. Once Chi Ban submitted to Qin, the rest of Western Rong nomads in the west acknowledged the Qin overlordship. Qin Mugong would conquer altogether a dozen (12) states in Gansu-Shaanxi areas and controlled the western China of the times. Zhou King dispatched Duke Zhaogong to congratulate Qin with a gold drum.

During the 3rd year reign of Qin Gonggong, i.e., 606 BC, Lord Chu Zhuangwang campaigned northward against the Luhun-rong barbarians and inquired about the Zhou cauldrons when passing through the Zhou capital. Luhun-rong

barbarians, according to *Hou Han Shu*, had relocated to northern China from ancient Gua-zhou prefecture of Gansu Prov. Alternatively speaking, per ancient scholar Du Yu, Luhun-rong barbarians, with clan name of Yun-shi, originally dwelled to the northwest of Qin and Jinn principalities, but Qin/Jinn seducingly relocated them to Yichuan area (i.e, Xincheng, Henan Prov) during the 22nd year reign of Lu Lord Xigong (r. BC 659-627), i.e., in 638 BC.

Great Walls & The Barbarians

As to barbarian groups, there were Mianzu-Quanrong-Di-Wanrong to the west of Qin Principality, Yiqu-Dali-Wushi-Xuyan etc to the north of Qin Principality, Linhu-Loufan to the north of Jin (Jinn) Principality, and Donghu-Shanrong to the north of Yan Principality. Mianzu could be pronounced Raozhu. Quanrong was know as Kunrong or Hunrong or Hunyi. The character 'hun4' for Hunyi or Hun-yi is the same as Hunnic King Hunye or Kunye and could mean the word of mixing-up. Wan-rong dwelled in today's Tianshui, Gansu Prov. Yiqu was one of the Xirong or Western rong stateles at ancient Qingzhou and Ningzhou. Dali-rong dwelled in today's Fengxu County. Wushi was originally Zhou land, but it was taken over by Rong. Qin King Huiwang took it back from Rong later. Linhu was later destroyed by General Li Mu. Loufan belonged to Yanmen'guan Pass.

During the 13th year reign of King Jianwang, i.e., 573 BC, Jinn Lord Ligong was killed by Luan Shu and Zhongxing Yan, and Jinn dispatched emissaries (led by a Zhi family member) to the Zhou court to retrieve Zi-zhou as Lord Daogong. Jinn Lord Daogong made peace with Rongdi (who attacked Zhou King Xiangwang earlier), and the Rongdi sent in gifts and tributes to Jinn. Another one hundred years, Zhao Xiang-zi of Zhao Principality took over Bing and Dai areas near Yanmen'guan Pass. Zhao, together with Han and Wei families, destroyed another opponent called Zhi-bo and split Jinn into three states of Han, Zhao & Wei. Yiqu-Rong built castles to counter Qin. Qin King Huiwang took over 25 cities from Yiqu.

In 461 BC, Qin Lord Ligong, with 20,000 army, attacked Dali-rong barbarians and took over Dali-rong capital. In 444 BC, Qin Lord Ligong attacked Yiqu-rong barbarians in the areas of later Qingzhou and Ningzhou and captured the Yiqu-rong king. Around 430 BC, Yiqu-rong barbarians counter-attacked Qin and reached south of Wei-shui River. Qin Lord Xiaogong (r. BC 361-338), during the first year reign, Qin Xiaogong made an open announcement for seeking talents all over China in the attempt of restoring Qin Mugong's glories. In the east, Qin

Xiaogong took over Shaancheng city, and in the west, he defeated and killed a Rong king by the name of Huan-wang near Tiansui, Gansu Prov. Qin, under Qin King Zhaoxiangwang, continued wars against Wei & Zhao principalities. King Zhaoxiangwang's mother, Queen Dowager Xuantaihou, adulterated with a Rong king from Yiqu Statelet in today's northwestern Shenxi Province. She had two sons born with Yiqu Rong King, but she killed Yiqu King and incorporated the lands of Longxi, Beidi and Shangjun (Yulin, Shenxi Prov) on behalf of Qin. Qin took over Shangjun from Wei. Qin built the Great Wall at Longxi of Gansu, Beidi and Shangjun of Shenxi land. The two successive Jinn states which bordered the northern nomads, Wei & Zhao, plus Qin and Yan, would be busy fighting the nomads for hundreds of years, and they built separate walls to drive the nomads out. Zhao King Wulingwang adopted reforms by wearing Hu cavalry clothing and he defeated Linhu / Loufan and built Great Wall from Dai to Yinshan Mountain. Zhao set up Yunzhong, Yanmen and Dai prefectures. A Yan Principality General by the name of Qin-kai, after returning from Donghu as a hostage, would attack Donghu and drive them away for 1000 li distance. Yan built Great Wall and set up Shangu, Yuyang, You-beiping, Liaoxi and Liaodong prefectures.

Qin State founded the first united empire of Qin in 221 BC. After Qin unification of China, Emperor Shihuangdi ordered General Meng Tian on a campaign that would drive the so-called Hu nomads or the Huns out of the areas south of the Yellow River. The Huns under Modok's father, Dou-man (Touman), fled northward and would not return till General Meng Tian died ten years later. Details about barbarians were also covered at [prehistory](#) section.

'Qian Shou' & 'Li Min'

Often misinterpreted would be two words in *Shi Ji*, 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min'. Qian Shou means dark head. 'Qian' would be used as an alias for Guizhou Province in the south, and it means dark or black. Li Min or Limin means the people whose face had turned darkish and became brown. Both terms were used for designating the lower level people. I noticed one or two claims on the internet saying that the Chinese people being ruled were of Negroid origin and that the two terms validated this fact. This is fallacious the same way as those who claim that the rulers of China, Zhou or Qin, were of Caucasian origin and they ruled the Mongoloid people. I deem both sayings as fallacious.

My interpretations would be based on the following quotes and citations. *Shi Ji* recorded that Qin's second emperor (Huhai) had once rebutted Li Shi's loyalty

by citing Lord Yu's hardwork on behalf of Lord Shun. Emperor Huhai said that Lord Yu had spent years travelling around the country for sake of flood control and that Lord Yu's face had turned 'li hei', that is, the kind of brownish darkness. Also on record would be Li Shi's self account by calling himself a 'qian shou' (or 'qianshou'), i.e., a civilian. *Haan Fei Zi* said that the working people possessed hardened palms and 'li' face as a result of hard work and that they should be ascribed big contributions to the society. Later records in 4-5th century continued to use the word 'li' or 'zheng li' (steaming or sweating li people) for designating the masses. (The character 'zheng', per Chinese dictionary, means a huge number, but I would rather interpret it on basis of its original meaning, i.e., steam. This character was also used for the relationship between a man or emperor and his father's concubine.)

To dispel Nordic racist extrapolation, I will give two good examples to show that Qin Chinese were not color-blind people. The blackness, coined in 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min', was related to the skin, not the hair. When Qin Mugong repented over his mistake in invading Zheng Principality which had led to the ambush disaster at the Battle of Xiao'er, he used the characters 'huang fa fan fan' (white hair turning yellowish) to describe the high age of his two counsellors, Jian Shu and Baili Xi. Both old men, 80-90 years old, had objected to Mugong's war against Zheng in the first place. The second example would be the reference to Daoist founder, Lao-zi, as *Huang Lao*. Lao-zi was recorded to have grown yellow beard and he was called Huang Lao or the Yellow Elderly. This shows that ancient Chinese did know the difference between 'huang' (yellow) and black. The universal feature of 'black' hair was not something that would have deserved a special coding in the terms of 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min'. 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min' meant nothing other than brownish dark skin as a result of sunlight exposure, not hair !!! White racists would have to stop their over-excitement in here.

The second example would be the reference to Daoist founder, Lao-zi, as *Huang Lao*. Lao-zi was recorded to have grown yellow beard and he was called Huang Lao or the Yellow Elderly. This shows that ancient Chinese did know the difference between 'huang' (yellow) and black. The universal feature of 'black' hair was not something that would have deserved a special coding in the terms of 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min'. 'Qian Shou' and 'Li Min' meant nothing other than brownish dark skin as a result of sunlight exposure, not hair !!!

Then, what was ancient Chinese hair color after all? A dumb question. Today's Chinese are direct descendants of ancient Chinese. To dispell any speculation, I will list the following sentence as a proof that ancient Chinese took pride in hair's density and blackness as beauty and health: In classics *Zuo Zhuan*, during the 28th year reign of Lu Lord Zhaogong, a statement was made to infer that in the old times, a You-reng-shi woman bore a beautiful daughter, with 'zhen[3] hei[1]' (i.e., dense and black) hair.

Qin Chinese were still considered a part of Zhou family. Shi Ji mentioned the union and separation of the Qin people and Zhou people. Shi Ji also talked about how much influences Qin people had over the Xi Rong or Western Rong people and why Zhou court conferred the land of Qin or Gansu Province onto Qin people at the advice of Marquis Shenhou. Shi Ji talked about generations of fightings between Qin and Xi Rong nomads.

Demise Of Qin Empire

But, three years after Shihuangdi's death, by 207 BC, rebellions, touched off by [Chen Sheng & Wu Guang](#), would erupt over the country. This was to do with Hu-hai's continuing the policies of employing huge manpower for building the Great Wall & the Shihuangdi's Tomb on Lishan Mountain, and for the fightings with northern nomads. Latter historians commented that China's dynasty substitution could be said to have been induced by events in the east, but whoever succeeded in establishing an empire would be from the west. Zhou Kingdom's demise was attributed to Tian Chang's setting an example via killing his lord in Qi Principality. Qin's demise was attributed to the rebellion touched off by the Chen Sheng gang who were destined for northern post in Beijing area. The most recent dynastic change would be the communists destroying the nationalists (KMT) in 1949, and again the demise of the KMT government was induced by Japanese invasion in the east.

Zhao Gao would kill his competitor Li Si and his whole family. Li Si suffered a cruel penalty called 'decapitation at the waist'. Li Si's elder son was exempt because Li You was a general stationed outside of the capital. Li You would die fighting the rebels later. Qin's ennuich prime minister, Zhao Gao, would kill the second emperor, Hu-hai, in order to negotiate a peace with Liu Bang's Chu army. Liu Bang was able to take over Qin's capital because General Xiang Yü had

entangled major Qin armies in Zhao Principality. Liu Bang declined the request to divide Qin land into two parts. Prince Zi Ying would succeed as the third emperor, and he, with the help of two sons, killed Zhao Gao. In this year, 206 BC, Zi Ying surrendered to Liu Bang after being on the throne for 46 days. Xiang Yu would enter Qin's capital, Xian'yang, and he killed Qin's last emperor, Zi Ying and Zi Ying's royal family members. After pillaging Qin's 'Er Pang Gong' Palace which ran for 300 Chinese li distance, Xiang Yu ordered the palace burnt. The fire went on for three months. Xiang Yu then sent soldiers to Lishan Mountain to dig Qin Emperor Shihuangdi's tomb. The lootings took one month to move to Xian'yang. Exact damages to Shihunagdi's tomb would not be known till it is fully excavated by the future archaeologists.

Counting Qin Lord Xianggong as the starting point, Qin Statelet enjoyed a history of altogether 617 years. Qin kinsmen, descending from 'Ying' surname, would include the family names of Xu[2], Huang[2], Jiang[1] and Qin[2], Feilian-shi, and Zhongli-shi etc.

HAN DYNASTY

Early Han Dynasty was, in fact, a restoration of Zhou Dynasty's feudal system. Numerous independent statelets were in existence. Chen Sheng & Wu Guang rebellion against Qin resulted in restoration of some of the ex-Zhou principalities. General Xiang Yu would declare himself the 'Hegemony King of Western Chu Principality', in addition to conferrals of 18 kings. During and after the Chu-Han Wars, Han Emperor Gaozu or Gaodi (Liu Bang) had conferred kingship to numerous generals who contributed to the overthrow of Qin Empire and the later campaigns against General Xiang Yu.

Early Han Dynasty, however, was also commented to have inherited Qin's cruel system and layout without any fundamental changes or reforms. Han Emperor Gaozu had an official called Xiao He who had once served as an ex-Qin clerk in a county. Xiao He, being conferred the post of '*xiangguo*', i.e., prime minister, would be responsible for maintaining the existing layout of the Qin system. Three branches of ex-Qin governance were utilized, namely, chief counselor (*chengxiang* or *xiangguo*), grand marshal (*taiwei*), and censor-in-chief or inspector-in-chief (*yushi dafu*). Chief Counselor was supposed to rule over nine chief ministers (*jiu qing*) and thirteen departments. By Emperor Wudi's times, censor-in-chief was in charge of inspecting on 13 circuits (*zhou* or *fu*) with circuit inspector (*cishi*) in charge, 100 commandaries and 1200 counties.

Qin's cruel laws began with reformer-legalist Shang Yang and got much more crueler under Li Si. In early Han times, cutting off feet, peeling off noses as well as inscribing black ink marks on faces were still common. Criminal law reform would begin with Han Emperor Wendi (reign 179-157 BC). In 167 BC, a famous doctor called Chunyu Yi offended some powerful patient and was sentenced for 'bodily penalty'. Since Chunyu Yi once served as a county magistrate in Taicang County, he was sent to the nation's capital for incarceration ('bodily penalty'). Chunyu Yi had five daughters, with the youngest one called Tiying. Tiying submitted a request to Emperor Wendi, saying she would be willing to be sold to the government as a slave for substituting her father's bodily punishment. Hence, Emperor Wendi was moved

by Tiying and decreed that 'bodily penalty' be abolished.

The domain of early Han China was not as extensive as Qin Empire. Independent statelets would be the Nan-yue Statelet, Min-yue Statelet and Dong-yue Statelet. Non-Chinese statelets would include Dian-Yue, Yelang and etc. After being defeated by the Huns, Han Emperor Gaozu or Gaodi adopted a pacifying policy by supplying Han princess for inter-marriage with the Huns. Emperor Huidi and Empress Lohou as well as Emperor Wendi and Emperor Jindi followed through with old policies. It would be during the times of Han Emperor Wudi (reign 140-87 BC) that Han China's territories would expand in all directions. Wudi would launch offensives against the Huns, retake control of southern China, and invade Manchuria and Korea.

Han Dynasty's notable deeds would be the restoration of Confucianism as the creed for ruling the nation. (This compliment, widely quoted by historians, should be looked at through a different perspective. As Lin Yutang said, Chinese practiced Legalism in essence while Confucianism on surface. More than that, Daoism had much more effect than the former two. See Confucianism versus Daoism below.) At the times of Wudi, around 124 BC, '*Tai Xue*', i.e., *university* or Grand School, was created for attracting talents and *Five Classics* became the official moral and political ideology of the state. 50 doctoral students were enrolled. By 50 BC, the palace school had 3000 students enrolled, and by 1 AD, the graduates would staff the bureaucracy. Wudi, meaning "Martial Emperor", was also credited with inception of the imperial eras. The definition of the Chinese New Year, the second New Moon after the winter solstice, could be dated from the inception of the *Taichu Era* in 103 BC. 'Recommendation System' was adopted for purpose of having talented people sent to the prefecture capitals and the nation's capital as a reserve for officialdom. Han Dynasty's '*Tai Xue*' would be the model for Western Jin Dynasty's '*Guo Zi Xue*', Toba Wei Dynasty's '*Si Meng Xue*', and Sui-Tang and Yuan's '*Guo Zi Jian*'.

Serving under Wudi would be the historian Sima Qian (Szu-ma Ch'ien) (145-86 BC) who, having undergone castration for offending Wudi on the matter of absolving Li Ling's surrender to the Huns, would live with humiliation in order to finish his history book, *Shi Ji*, "Historian's Records". (*Shi Ji* was not officially sanctioned. Later, during the times of Latter Han Dynasty, another historian, Cai Yong, was executed by Wang Yun for sake of stopping him from compilation of history book.) Sima Qian underwent castration for lack of financial resources.

Han Dynasty usually allowed people to either pay money or undergo castration in exchange for absolving from death penalty. Also note that in ancient China, death row convicts would be absolved from execution during the year a new emperor was enthroned. It is called 'imperial amnesty'. Death convicts were usually executed in the autumn of the year, i.e., autumnal executions.

Han Dynasty possessed the typical characteristics as far as the pattern of power corruption was concerned. There would appear 'empress power' ('in-law power'), 'eunuch power' and 'warlord power'. Gradually, the tripartite functions lost their influences, and the departments like '*shangshu sheng*' (state affairs) and '*zhongshu sheng*' (secretariat) would weigh on the emperors. The influence from people in palace, 'empress power', led to the demise of the Western Han. Wang Mang, who usurped Western Han and founded Xin Dynasty, derived his power from Empress Wang. All three forms of power corruption led to the demise of Eastern Han. We would touch on this in the sections below.

Confucianism vs Daoism During Early Han Dynasty

Mr Lin Yutang proposed during early 20th century the notion that 'ancient Chinese were Confucian superficially, Daoist innerside, and legalist in governance.' A careful perusal of early Han Dynasty history will show the kind of intertwining nature of the three schools of thought in governance and philosophy.

Han Dynasty founder (Han Emperor Gaodi, Liu Bang) was never fond of Confucians. When receiving a 60-year-old confucian by the name of Li Yiji, Gaodi deliberately had two maids wash his feet; when Li Yiji challenged Gaodi on the matter of not showing respect for the old confucian, Liu Bang called the name of 'shu ru' (i.e., damned confucian); Liu Bang did not show respect for Li Yiji till Li Yiji cited successes and failures in history as examples for Liu Bang to win the war against Qin Empire.

At the time of Emperor Jingdi (reign 156-141 BC), a Confucian, by the name of Dong Zhongshu, was made into a so-called '*bo shi*', i.e., doctor, for his research into Confucius' book *Springs & Autums*. In 140 BC, when Emperor Wudi got enthroned at the age of 16, he would make a decree that local governors send in learned persons to the capital, and over one hundred intelligentsia, include

Dong Zhongshu of Guangchuan, Gongsun Hong of Zichuan, and Yan Zhu of Kuaiji, came to the capital. Wudi disapproved of the old officialdom policy which was to have officials (worthy of a pay of 2000 units of grains) recommend their sons and nephews for various posts. The new decree, 'advocating thrift people and recommending filial people', discounted the family origin. A good story about Wudi would be his assigning Yan Si (an old man who went through two prior emperors' rule without any promotion) for the post of *du wei* (governing captain) of Kuaiji Commandary. Wudi was impressed by Dong Zhongshu's article which advocated Confucianism as the creed for ruling a nation. Wudi conferred Dong a post as prime minister for King of Jiangdu (Liu Fei).

Prime Minister Wei Guan suggested to Wudi that only few Confucian intelligentsia like Gongsun Hong and Yan Zhu should be retained while the rest non-Confucians could be sent back to their homes. After Wudi replaced Wei Guan with Dou Ying (nephew of Dowager Empress Doutaihou), Dou Ying and Tian Fen would locate two Confucians for Wudi: Zhao Guan and Wang Zang. Zhao Guan and Wang Zang were two of the thousand students of an eighty-year-old Shen-gong of ex-Chu Principality. Shen-gong was renowned for his research into ancient *Shi Jing* [classics of poems]. Shen-gong was invited to the capital by Wudi, but Shen-gong somehow performed modestly for sake of avoiding palace struggles. Dowager Empress Doutaihou, who previously intended to kill 'bo shi' Yuan Gu who served under Emperor Jingdi, would force Wudi into having Zhao Guan and Wang Zang arrested for propagation of Confucianism. Doutaihou was fond of Daoism and hated Yuan Gu, Zhao Guan and Wang Zang for advocating Confucianism. Zhao Guan and Wang Zang, who offended Doutaihou for advising Wudi on prevention of empress intervention in politics, would commit suicide inside the prison. Under the pressure of Doutaihou, Wudi deprived Dou Ying and Tian Fen of their posts. Shen-gong claimed illness and went home. Confucianism did not get developed until much later.

After the death of Dowager Empress Doutaihou, Tian Fen was assigned the post as prime minister. Dong Zhongshu, who was conferred a post as prime minister for King of Jiangdu (Liu Fei), would be impeached by an official called Zhufu Yan in 135 BC. Han General Guan Fu tried to mediate over the relationship of Tian Fen and Dou Ying, but he offended Tian Fen in a marriage banquet in 131 BC. With the help of Dowager Empress Wangtaihou, Tian Fen made Wudi order that both Guan Fu and Dou Ying be executed. Guan Fu's whole family were

exterminated.

Wudi's brother, King of Lu, discovered some surviving books hidden by the 8th generation grandson of Confucius (Kong Zixiang) inside of the walls of Confucius' house. Zhang Tang, a censor or inspector under Wudi and a cruel criminal law official, would order '*bo shi*' scholars to research into *Shang Shu* and *Shi Jing*. (Zhang Tang was notorious for his childhood article 'Interrogating Mice' on which occasion he caught and interrogated mice after digging through mice's underground caves to catch the mice for mice's stealing his family's grains.) In 130 BC, at the age of 80, Gongsun Hong, who claimed illness after returning from the Huns as an emissary, was recommended to the court again. Yuan Gu was over the age of 90 by that time. Gongsun Hong was conferred the post as *yushi dafu*, i.e., censor-in-chief.

Zhufu Yan, using Jia Yi's ideas, proposed to Wudi to have various Liu kings divide their domain into smaller fiefs among their brothers and sons so that various Liu kings would not be strong enough to pose a threat to the central government. Zhufu Yan also proposed pacifying policies with the Huns; but, after General Wei Qing and General Li Xi defeated the Hunnic kings in Loufan and Baiyang and took over the Hetao land south of the Yellow River in 127 BC, Zhufu Yan changed his mind and proposed to Wudi to have a castle built on the north bank of the North Yellow River Bend in the same way as Qin Emperor Shihuangdi did. Gongsun Hong advised against Zhufu Yan's proposal by citing the futile attempts of Qin Shihuangdi in mobilizing 300,000 people for building the castle. Wudi concurred with Zhufu Yan in relocating over 100,000 people to the north bank. Zhufu Yan impeached King of Yan for his lasciviousness, and King Yan was ordered by Wudi to commit suicide. Zhufu Yan was dispatched to King of Qi as prime minister. Angry that his daughter could not be married over to King Qi, Zhufu Yan impeached King Qi for King Qi's affairs with a sister. King Qi committed suicide. Gongsun Hong impeached Zhufu Yan for King Qi's death, and Wudi ordered Zhufu Yan and his family be executed. Wudi deprived Xue Ze of the prime minister post; Gongsun Hong was conferred the post of prime minister (the post that belonged to three so-called '*san gong*' or three duke-equivalents) and the title of Marquis Pingjin in 124 BC. Gongsun Hong, following the practice of eminent princes of Warring States time period, set up several guest houses for attracting talents and counsellors. Gongsun Hong appeared thrifty and pious, but jealous of talents and extravagant inside. Dong Zhongshu had criticisms of Gongsun Hong. Gongsun Hong somehow inhibited

Wudi's attempt to recall Dong Zhongshu.

With Gongsun Hong as prime minister, Wudi instituted the position of *wu jing bo shi*, i.e., Five Classics Doctorals and ordered that prefectures and various Liu kingdoms dispatch learned youths to the capital as doctoral students. Confucius' ninth generation grandson, Kong An'guo, was among the doctorals teaching the students.

Gongsun Hong recommended Ji An for the post of rightside *nei shi* and recommended Dong Zhongshu for the post of prime minister for King of Jiaoxi (Liu Rui), in the attempt of ridding the two political enemies by means of 'borrowed knife'. Dong Zhongshu resigned his post for retirement shortly thereafter and then finished a 100,000 character book entitled *Chunqiu Fanlu* (miscellaneous dewes from Spring & Autumn era).

Zhang Tang was conferred the post of *ting wei* (court captain). Zhang Tang and Gongsun Hong colluded with each other, and Ji An refused to show respect for the two. Zhang Tang had under his service a learned doctoral student called Ni Kuan; Ni Kuan was known to Wudi for his article that Zhang Tang submitted to Wudi. In 124 BC, Wei Qing was conferred the post of *Da Jiangjun* (Grand General or Generalissimo) for defeating Hunnic 'rightside virtuous king' and capturing 150,000 Huns; Wei's three babies and his generals were conferred marquisdom titles; Wei Qing married with 40 year old widow, Princess Pingyang. Though, Ji An still showed no respect for Wei Qing. The next year, Wei Qing led 6 columns against Huns. General Zhao Xin surrendered to Huns. General Huo Qubing, however, had a small victory. Wudi, to enrich the depleted royal savings spent on campaigns against the Huns, would decree that officialdom could be bought with money.

King of Huainan, Liu An, hired eight elderly intelligentsia and completed the alchemy and legends book, *Huai Nan Zi*. King of Huainan committed suicide when his attempt to rebel against Wudi was exposed, and Zhang Tang tried accomplices and exterminated the families of people involved. Huainan fief was reduced to Jiujiang Commandary. King of Hengshan, Liu Ci, followed the suit of Liu An. Hengshan fief was reduced to a commandary. Seven year old prince was made a crown prince. Marquis Bowang-hou (Zhang Qian) was dispatched to the west again.

Also notable would be a figure called Dongfang Shuo who, per research of some scholar, had been recorded to have travelled to the Arctic area more than 2000 years ago. The basis of this claim would be Dongfang Shuo's writings in regards to 'extreme darkness' and 'extreme daylight' for six months, respectively.

Demise Of Qin & Chu-Han Wars

Emperor Shi Huangdi, Qin's First Emperor, was enthroned at the age of 13. During the 26th year of his reign, by 221 BC, Shihuangdi completed the unification of China and he established the so-called 'Jun-Xian System', namely, commandary-county system, at the advice of his prime minister, Li Tsu. Shihuangdi re-zoned his country into 36 commandaries in lieu of conferring dukes and kings onto his sons. In the next 11 years, Shihuangdi would be responsible for attacking the Huns in the Hetao and Ordos areas, building the Great Wall, standardizing writing system, coins and measures, paving the highways across the country, and digging canals to link up the water system.

But, three years after Shihuangdi's death, by 207 BC, rebellions, touched off by Chen Sheng & Wu Guang Rebellion of 209 BC, would overthrow Qin rule. In 207 BC, Qin's eunuch prime minister, Zhao Gao, would kill the second emperor, Hu Hai, in an attempt to negotiate peace with rebel Liu Bang. Liu Bang declined the request to divide Qin land into two parts. Prince Zi Ying would succeed as the third emperor, and he, with the help of two sons, killed Zhao Gao. In this year, 206 BC, Zi Ying surrendered to Liu Bang after being on the throne for 46 days. Liu Bang was able to take over Qin's capital because General Xiang Yu had entangled major Qin armies in former Zhao Principality territories. Xiang Yu would enter Qin's capital, Xian'yang, and killed Qin's last emperor, Zi Ying and Qin's royal family members.

Chen Sheng & Wu Guang Rebellion

In 209 BC, 900 recruits from Yangcheng in ex-Chu Principality area were on the way of being dispatched to the northern post of Yuyang (near today's Beijing). However, rainy season stopped them from going further. Fearing Qin's punishment of death penalty for missing schedules, two team leaders, Chen Sheng & Wu Guang, killed two Qin captains and declared an uprising in the name of restoring Chu.

Chen Sheng & Wu Guang took over Qixian County, Hubei Province soon. Chen Sheng sent someone called Ge Ying on a campaign to the east, and Chen himself went to attack Chenxian County with tens of thousands of rebels he assembled in a matter of months. Two Confucians, Zhang Er & Chen Yu, came to see Chen Sheng and recommended that Chen Sheng restore ex-Zhou descendants as kings of various principalities. Chen Sheng, however, declared himself King of 'Zhang-Chu', namely, king of expanding Chu. Chen Sheng dispatched Wu Guang as 'proxy king' on a northward campaign against Henan Province. Zhang Er & Chen Yu requested with Wu Guang for 3000 soldiers to attack ex-Zhao territories, and Wu Guang sent Wu Chen as the head of this expedition into north of the Yellow River. When Ge Ying arrived at Jiujiang, on the Jiangxi side of the Yantze River, he met an ex-Chu royal descendant, Xiang Jiang, and Ge Ying enthroned him as King of Chu. Hearing that Chen Sheng already declared himself King of Zhang-Chu, Ge Ying killed Xiang Jiang. But Ge Ying still got executed by Chen Sheng for his mistake. Chen Sheng sent Deng Zong to Jiujiang, instead, and he also sent Zhou Shi to ex-Wei territories to fight Qin armies. Wu Guang, failing to take Yingyang of Henan Province, would take advice from someone called Cai Ci and sent Zhou Wen on a western expedition against Qin capital in Shenxi Province. On the road to Qin capital, Zhou Wen was joined by tens of thousands of people. Confucius' 8th generation grandson, Kong Fu, recommended to Chen Sheng that he should make preparations for bitter fights with Qin armies. Wu Chen, after crossing the Yellow River at Baimajin, took over more than 30 towns and counties in a matter of months and occupied ex-Zhao capital of Handan. Zhang Er & Chen Yu persuaded Wu Chen into declaring himself King of Zhao Principality. Wu Chen, against Chen Sheng's order to go west to aid Zhou Wen, would send Han Guang to ex-Yan territories in the northeast, Li Liang to Changshan of northern Shanxi, and another general to Shangdang of Shanxi Province. Qin Emperor Huhai would take the advice of Zhang Han in arming the convicts on Lishan Mountains. Zhang Han faced up with Zhou Wen and drove Zhou Wen out of Hanguan Pass.

In Peixian County, Jiangsu Province, 48 year old **Liu Bang**, an ex-Qin county official who was hiding in Mount Dangshan (in today's Anhui Province) for setting free Lishan-destined convicts, would answer Chen Sheng's uprising by killing the county magistrate. In the Yangtz Delta, Xiang Liang and his nephew, **Xiang Yu**, would kill governor Yin Tong of Kuaiji Commandary and they assembled an army of 8000 men, the later so-called 'brother-soldiers from east of the Yangtze River'. (In ancient times, Wu-Yue people around the Yangtze

Delta were famous for carrying swords and their belligerency, similar to Japanese samurai.)

Zhou Shi attacked the ex-Wei city of Dicheng. An ex-Qi royal descendant, Tian Dan, would kill the county sheriff and declare himself King of Qi Principality. Tian Dan went on to drive Zhou Shi away. Zhou Shi, rejecting request from his soldiers to be a king, sought from Chen Sheng (the Zhang-Chu King) an ex-Wei royal descendant, Prince Jiu, as King of Wei Principality. Wu Chen's general, Han Guang, would declare himself King of Yan Principality after defeating Qin armies in ex-Yan territories. By this time, Chu-Zhao-Qi-Wei-Yan statelets were restored.

After Li Liang took over Changshan of Shanxi, King Zhao, i.e., Wu Chen, would order his general to attack Taiyuan of Shanxi. Qin armies played a trick of dissension. Li Liang killed Zhao King (Wu Chen). Zhang Er & Chen Yu located an ex-Zhao royal descendant, Zhao Xie, and made him the new King of Zhao Principality. Li Liang, after being defeated by the new Zhao king, would surrender to Qin General Zhang Han. Qin General Zhang Han had earlier defeated the western expedition led by Zhou Wen, and Zhou Wen committed suicide after a defeat. Proxy King Wu Guang was still encircling Yingyang at this time, but he refused to listen to opinions from two of his generals. Hearing of Zhou Wen defeat, the two generals under Wu Guang would kill Wu Guang with a pretext of an order from King Chen Sheng. Soon, the two generals (Tian Zang and Li Gui) were defeated by Qin General Zhang Han and got killed. Qin General Zhang Han went on to attack Chen Sheng. Chen Sheng was killed by his driver, Zhuang Jia, after being a king for 6 months. Chen Sheng's general, Lü Chen, would bury Chen Sheng on Mount Dangshan. (Later, Han Emperor Liu Bang would order 30 families to guard Chen Sheng's tomb, and Chen Sheng was treated as the 'father of revolution'.)

After the death of Chen Sheng, someone called Qin Jia would locate an ex-Chu royal descendant and make him King of Chu. Lü Chen met a rebel called Qiong Bu (Ying Bu). Together, they retook Chenxian County from Qin armies. Hearing that Xiang Liang & Xiang Yu crossed the Yantze River, Qiong Bu went to join their camp. Xiang army, numbering 8000, was cheated across the Yangtze by a Zhang-Chu general who issued an order in the name of dead King Chen Sheng. Chen Ying, an ex-Qin clerk of Dongyang County, combined forces with Xiang Liang. Together with Chen Ying & Qiong Bu, Xiang army swelled to 40-50,000 men. Another rebel, by the name of General Pu(3), led 10-20,000 people to the

Xiang camp. Xiang armies went on to route the new Chu king at Pengcheng. Xiang army then had a first battle with Qin army, but Xiang Liang was defeated by Zhang Han. Xiang Liang then attacked Xiecheng. At this time, Liu Bang, together with Zhang Liang whom he met on route, came to Xiang Liang to borrow soldiers. Xiang Liang invited Liu Bang to a meeting for selection of a new Chu king. An old man called Fan Zeng would recommend finding an ex-Chu royal for the post. The grandson of Chu King Huaiwang, a shepherd at the time, was enthroned and he was entitled Chu King Huaiwang. Zhang Liang proposed to Xiang Liang for restoration of Haan Principality. Zhang Liang located an ex-Haan royal called Cheng and restored Haan(2) Principality.

Qin General Zhang Han would attack the rebels in Wei Principality. Qi-Chu joint armies went to the relief. Zhang Han would kill Qi's King (Tian Dan) as well as Wei General Zhou Shi. Wei King (Prince Jiu) committed suicide. Xiang Yu rescued Jiu's brother, Prince Bao. Zhang Han went on to attack Qi city which was guarded by Tian Rong. Qi people enthroned Tian Jia, the brother of pre-Qin-era ex-Qi King Jian, as the new king. Tian Dan's brother, Tian Rong, did not obey to the new Qi king. Xiang armies helped Tian Rong in defeating the Qin armies. But Tian Rong would not follow Xiang Yu in pursuit of Qin armies. Tian Dan family enthroned the son of the dead Qi King (Tian Dan) as another new Qi king. Xiang Liang army went on to take over Dingtao City and killed Qin General Li You (son of dead Qin prime minister Li Tsu). In an ensuing battle, Xiang Liang would be defeated by Zhang Han and got killed. Hence, Xiang Yu and Liu Bang retreated towards the south and moved Chu King Huaiwang to Pengcheng. Hearing that Zhang Han went northward to attack Zhao territories, King Huaiwang sent Prince of Wei, Bao, to retake Wei territories. King Huaiwang decreed that whoever entered Qin capital would be conferred the title of King of Qin Principality. Both Liu Bang and Xiang Yu requested for the task to attack Qin. Zhao King Xie, being attacked by Qin General Zhang Han, requested for relief. Hence, Xiang Yu was eager to go to Zhao territories to fight Zhang Han for sake of avenging his uncle's death. Liu Bang campaigned towards the Qin capital.

The Demise of Qin

In the land of Zhao Principality, Zhang Er, Zhao's prime minister, was unhappy that his blood-brother pal (Chen Yu) did not send enough relief army to him. The two would become feuds after the war, and Chen Yu would desert Zhao Principality for the mountains. Zhang Er's son, Zhang Ao, would come to Julu to

aid Zhao Principality. Once General Xiang Yu arrived in Julu, allied armies began to battle with Qin armies. Qin General Wang Li was captured, and Qin General Zhang Han and his 200,000 army surrendered to Xiang Yu after the mediation of Sima Xin. (Sima Xin had once rescued Xiang Liang from Qin's prison dozens of years ago.) Xiang Yu, on the way westward, would kill the 200 thousand Qin prisoners of war.

Liu Bang was able to take over Qin's capital because General Xiang Yu had entangled major Qin armies in Zhao Principality. Earlier, on the road, Liu Bang was joined by Peng Yue and his thousands of rebels. An old Confucian called Li Yiji came to serve Liu Bang. Li Yiji would use a trick in taking over the crossroad town of Chenliu, and Li Yiji's brother (Li Shang) would lead 4000 men to attack Kaifeng. Zhang Liang would come to join Liu Bang at this time. Hearing that Zhao General Sima Mao had crossed the Yellow River to attack Qin, Liu Bang would hasten his war efforts for sake of being the first to enter Qin capital. Liu Bang went south to attack Luoyang first, and then Nanyang of Henan Province. Then, Liu Bang went westward, taking over Wuguan Pass (Danfeng of Shenxi Prov). Qin Prime Minister, Zhao Gao, would kill Qin Second Emperor Hu-Hai in order to negotiate a peace with Liu Bang's Chu army. Liu Bang declined the request to divide Qin land into two parts. Qin Prince Zi-Ying, a grandson of Qin Shihuangdi, would succeed as the third emperor, and he, with the help of two sons, killed Zhao Gao when Zhao Gao came to Zi-ying's home for inviting Zi-ying as the new emperor. In this year, 206 BC, Zi-Ying surrendered to Liu Bang after being on the throne for 46 days.

When General Xiang Yu arrived at Hanguguan Pass, he met with Liu Bang's soldiers who refused to allow him to enter Qin's land. Xiang Yu, with soldiers four times more than Liu Bang, would order Ying Bu (Qiong Bu) to attack Hanguguan. Liu Bang, using the tips from Zhang Liang, would bribe Xiang Yu's uncle, Xiang Bo, for reconciliation. There was a banquet called Hongmen Banquet from which Liu Bang slipped away alive. Xiang Yu would enter Qin's capital, Xian'yang, and he killed Qin's last emperor (Zi Ying) and Qin's royal family members. After pillaging Qin's "Er Pang Gong Palace" which ran for 300 Chinese li distance, Xiang Yu ordered that the palace be burnt. The fire went on for three months. Xiang Yu sent soldiers to Lishan Mountain to dig Qin Emperor Shihuangdi's tomb as well. The lootings took one month to move to Xian'yang. Then, Xiang Yu would make Chu King Huaiwang the so-called Emperor Yidi and proclaim himself the King of Xichu Ba Wang, namely, the hegemony king of

Western Chu Principality. General Xiang Yu would rezone the country into the following vassalages:

King of Han for Liu Bang, with domains covering Sichuan Province and Hanzong (the land between Sichuan and Shaanxi);
King of Yong for Zhang Han, with domains covering west of ex-Qin capital, Xianyang;
King of Sai for Sima Xin, with domain covering the areas between east of Xianyang and the Yellow River;
King of Di for Dong Yi, with domain covering Shangjun;
King of Xiwei (Western Wei) for King Bao of Wei, with domain moved to the east of Yellow River;
King of Henan for Shen Yang, with domain covering Luoyang city, Henan Province;
King of Haan for King Cheng of Haan, with domain at Yangdi city;
King of Yin for Sima Mao, with domain inside of the Yellow River Bend;
King of Dai for King Xie of Zhao, with domain around Dai Prefecture;
King of Changshan for Zhao Er, with domain at ex-Zhao Principality;
King of Qiujiang for Qiong Bu, with domain around Dangyang;
King of Hengshan for Wu Rui, with domain in the middle Yangtze River areas;
King of Linjiang for Gong Ao, with domain covering Jiangling, Hubei Province;
King of Liaodong (eastern Liaoning Province) for King Han Guang of Yan Principality, with domain moved to southern Manchuria;
King of Yan for Zang Tu, with domain covering Beijing, Hebei Province;
King of Jiaodong for King Tian Shi of Qi Principality, with domain relocated to eastern Shandong Province;
King of Qi for Tian Du, with domain covering ex-Qi principality;
King of Jibei for Tian An, with domain covering northern Shandong Province.

Chu-Han Wars

Liu Bang's Han Dynasty would come from the title of King of Han(4). General Xiang Yu, after pillaging the Qin capital, left for Pengcheng. On the way, Xiang Yu took King of Haan(2), Haan Cheng, into custody for his allowing Zhang Liang to escort Liu Bang westward. Xiang Yu killed King Cheng of Haan(2) shortly thereafter. King of Yan, Han Guang, refused to relocate to eastern

Liaoning Province, and King Zang Tu expelled Han Guang and chased him to death at Wuzhongshan Mountain. Xiang Yu conferred Zang Tu the Liaoning land as well. King of Jiaodong, Tian Shi, was killed by his general Tian Rong. Tian Rong sent army to defeat King of Qi, Tian Du. Tian Rong further killed King of Jibei, Tian An, and declared himself King of Three Qi Lands ('San Qi'). Tian Rong then conferred the seal of a general on Peng Yue and ordered Peng Yue to attack the Liang (Wei) places. Chen Yu would come out of seclusion and request for aid from Tian Rong in attacking King of Changshan, Zhao Er, his one time blood brother. Chen Yu welcomed King of Dai (previously King Xie of Zhao) back to Zhao, and King Xie conferred Chen Yu the kingship of Dai.

Liu Bang, at Xiao Heh's recommendation, would use Haan Xin as '*Da Jiangjun*', i.e., grand marshal. Haan Xin, pretending that Han(4) armies were busy repairing the so-called 'zhan dao', wood and bamboo roads carved in the middle of the cliffs, would circumvent to Nanzheng. (The 'zhan dao' road was burnt by Zhang Liang earlier to show to Xiang Yu that Liu Bang had no ambition for the east.) Haan Xin would soon arrive at Chencang and defeat King of Yong, Zhang Han. Zhang Han committed suicide. Within one month, King of Sai (Sima Xin) and King of Di (Dong Yi) both surrendered, and Liu Bang retook the old Three Qin Lands ('San Qin').

Xiang Yu would order that Zheng Chang be the new King of Haan(2) for sake of countering Liu Bang's Han(4) armies. Xiang Yu also ordered a campaign against Peng Yue. Thinking that Peng Yue received the backing from Tian Rong of Qi, he would concentrate on fighting Qi armies first. Liu Bang would dispatch an ex-Haan(2) royal called Xin to the old Haan(2) land as the new King of Haan(2). Liu Bang conferred Marquis Chengxin-hou onto Zhang Liang; Liu Bang dispatched Li Shang on a campaign against Shangjun and Beidi commandaries. In 205 BC, Liu Bang dispatched a column to fetch his father and wife, but the contingent was stopped by Xiang Yu's army. Xiang Yu ordered that Emepror Yidi leave Pengcheng so that he could come back to the city, and thereafter ordered that King of Qiujiang (Ying Bu) send assassins to kill Emepror Yidi. King of Haan(2) Haan Xin defeated Zheng Chang. King of Henan (Shen Yang) surrendered to Liu Bang. Liu Bang devised the 'three elderly' system for each county he occupied. After pacifying Shenxi Province, Liu Bang crossed the Yellow River at Linjin-guan Pass and arrived at He-nei land. King of Yin (Sima Mao) was defeated and he fled to his capital Chaoge. Liu Bang dispatched Fan Kuai against Chaoge. In Shandong Province, Xiang Yu defeated Tian Rong; Tian

Rong fled his capital Chengyang for Pingyuan where he was killed by civilians; Xiang Yu erected Tian Jia as the new king of Qi. Qi people located Tian Heng (Tian Rong's brother) as their king, drove off Tian Jia and retook Chengyang. At Chaoge, Han² Xin tricked Sima Mao out of the city by pretending a retreat and then ordered that Fan Kuai, Guan Ying and Zhou Bo ambush Sima Mao. Sima Mao was captured, and he surrendered to Liu Bang. A Chu *du wei*, Chen Ping, fled to Han camp and was recommended to Liu Bang by General Wei Wuzhi. Chen Ping first answered Chen Sheng's rebellion and then joined the ranks of Xiang Yu. Chen Ping proposed that Liu Bang lead a surprise attack at Pengcheng by taking advantage of Xiang Yu's entanglement in Shandong Province. Chen Ping was conferred the post of *hujun zhongwei*, i.e., captain for pacifying army. Upon arriving Luoyang of Henan Prov, Liu Bang met an elderly called Donggong who proposed that Liu Bang uphold the slogan that his army was to fight Xiang Yu on behalf of Emperor Yidi assassinated by Xiang Yu. Liu Bang ordered that his army mourned Yidi for three days and sent decrees across the nation.

King of Wei, Bao, answered Liu Bang's decree. King of Zhao followed. Liu Bang assembled an army of 500-600,000, comprising of soldiers from Sai, Di, Haan, Wei, Yin, Zhao and Henan principalities. When Peng Yue reported that he had defeated Chu army, Liu Bang ordered that Peng Yue be the prime minister for King of Wei. Liu Bang took over Pengcheng without a fight.

Remnants fled to Chengyang to report to Xiang Yu. Xiang Yu personally led 30,000 men back to Pengcheng. Xiang Yu drove Liu Bang out of Pengcheng. Altogether over 100,000 Han army were destroyed by Xiang Yu, and another 300-400,000 fled. Chu army chased Han army to Sui-shui River of Anhui Prov, and another 100,000 were drowned in the river. Liu Bang barely escaped after begging two Chu generals for mercy. Liu Bang's family members at Fengxiang were captured by Xiang Yu. While passing through a village, Liu Bang met an old man by the name of Qie, and Qie married his daughter to Liu Bang. (Concubine Qie would be tortured to death by Empress Lühou later.) Liu Bang converged with his General Xiahou Ying, and the two met two of Liu Bang's children. When chased by Chu General Ji Bu, Liu Bang tried to rid his children of the chariot. Xiahou Ying rescued the two children and carried them on his horseback. Liu Bang converged with the army led by Lü Ze, the brother of Lühou. King Yin, Sima Mao, died in this battle; King Sai (Sima Xin) and King Di (Dong Yi) surrendered to Xiang Yu. King Zhao etc fled home. Liu Bang's father, Taigong, and wife Lü-shi, were both captured by Xiang Yu.

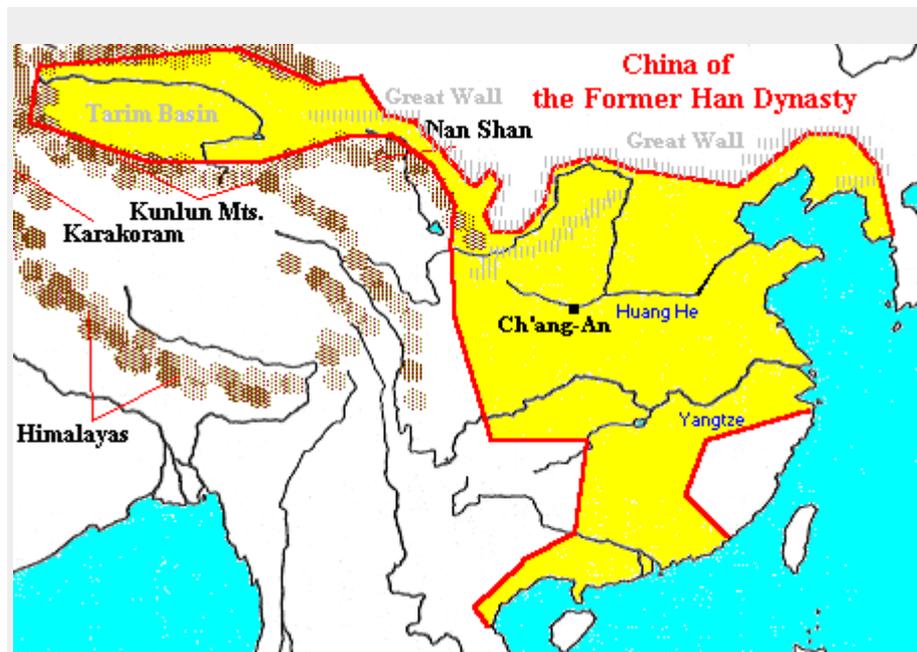
Zhang Liang proposed that Liu Bang confer the lands east of Hanguan Pass onto Haan Xin, Peng Yue and Chu General Ying Bu for sake of fighting Xiang Yu. Liu Bang dispatched emissary for seeking alliances with Peng Yue. Then, Liu Bang relocated to Yingyang for re-organization. Xiang Yu arrested the mother of a Han general called Wang Ling; Wang Ling's mother committed suicide for sake of having his son serve under Liu Bang instead of surrendering to Xiang Yu. Haan Xin led relief army to Yingyang, and Xiao He dispatched homeland soldiers to the aid of Liu Bang, too. Haan Xin took charge and defeated Chu army at Yingyang, Nanjing and Suocheng. Liu Bang conferred crown prince on his five year old son, Liu Ying, and ordered that Xiao He and crown prince guard homeland inside of Hanguan Pass. King Wei, Bao, requested for going home on the pretext that his mother was ill; Liu Bang released Bao; Bao rebelled against Liu Bang upon return to Pingyang; Liu Bang dispatched Haan Xin against King Wei Bao. Haan Xin deliberately prepared ships at Linjin to attract the attention of Wei army, while he secretly made wooden cauldron, crossed the river at Xiayang and defeated Wei army at Dongzhang. Han General under Haan Xin, Cao Can, defeated Wei General Wang Xiang and took over the city of Anyi. At Quyang, Haan Xin and Cao Can fought with King Wei and captured Wei Bao. Then, Han army went to take over the capital of Pingyang. Wei Bao's family was sent to Liu Bang, and Liu Bang took over Bao's concubine (Bo-shi) as his own and bore Liu Huan (i.e., later Han Emperor Wendi). (Wei Bao was said to have rebelled against Liu Bang because a necromancer stated to Bao and Bo-shi that Bo-shi's son would be an emperor in the future.)

Haan Xin requested for 30,000 men for sake of fighting Zhao principality. Haan intended to take over Zhao, Yan and Qi one by one before fighting Xiang Yu. At Pingyang, Haan Xin was joined by Zhang Er. Chen Yu, prime minister for Zhao, rebelled against Han because he heard that his feud Zhang Er (one time blood brother) was serving Han. Haan Xin went on to attack Dai, the land conferred onto Chen Yu. Three columns led by Cao Can, Guan Ying and Zhang Er defeated Dai prime minister and took over Daicheng city. Cao Can was recalled by Liu Bang. Haan Xin recruited more soldiers locally and then went to fight Zhao army of 200,000 at Jingjingkou Pass. A Zhao counsellor, Li Zuoche, proposed to lead an army of 30,000 to cut off Han army's grain supply. Chen Yu failed to adopt the advice. The road to Jingjingkou Pass was said to be so narrow that only one chariot could pass at one time. Haan Xin secretly ordered that *qi duwei* Jin Xi circumvent to the back of the pass, that *zuo qi jiang* Fu Kuan and

Zhang Cang (*tai shou* of Changshan) set up an ambush near the front of the pass, and a column of army stand against the bank of a river. In early morning, Haan Xin told soldiers that they could have breakfast after finishing off Zhao army. When Zhao army came out of the pass to fight Haan Xin, Haan Xin pretended to flee towards the river. For the whole morning, the two armies fought bitterly near the bank. When Chen Yu called for a retreat, he was ambushed by Fu Kuan and Zhang Cang near the pass. Jin Xi took over the pass and captured King Zhao Xie. Chen Yu (Prince Cheng'an-jun) was defeated and killed by Han armies. Haan Xin ordered that Zhao King be executed. Haan Xin gave an reward to have Li Zuoche captured, and Li Zuoche proposed to Haan Xin that he should send a messenger to Yan for pacifying King Yan (i.e., Zang Tu) instead of driving weakened soldiers to Yan land and that Han army could then go to the east to fight Qi Principality. King of Yan surrendered to Haan Xin.

Liu Bang then ordered that Zhang Er be the new Zhao king and that Haan Xin fight Qi. At Qiujiang, Han emissary, Sui He, successfully persuaded Ying Bu into an alliance with Liu Bang against Xiang Yu.

Map linked from <http://www.friesian.com/>



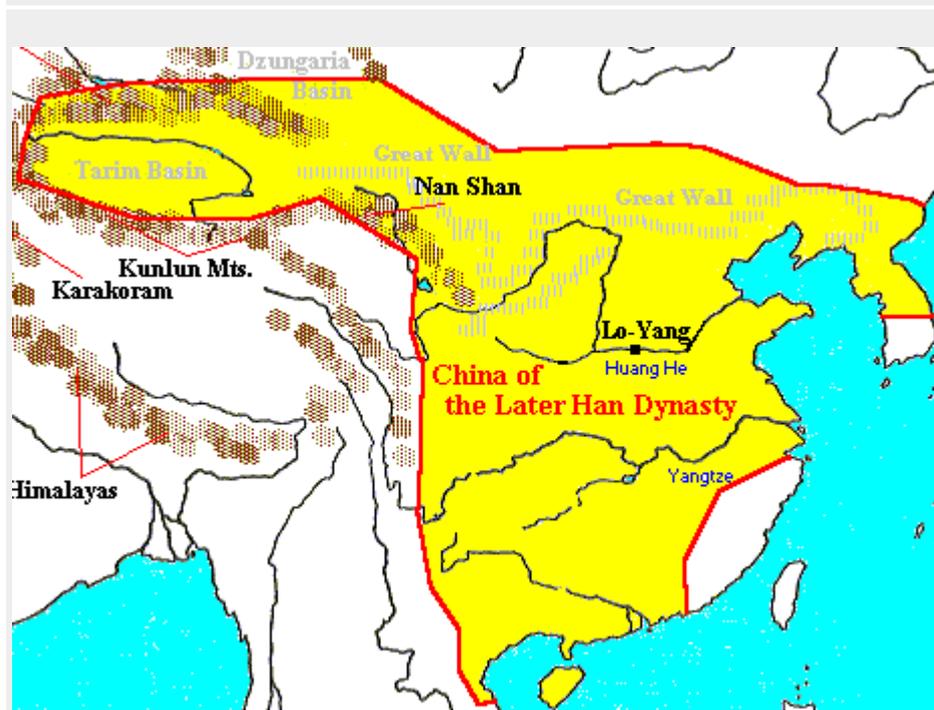
Western Han Dynasty (Former Han Dynasty)

Han Emperor Gaozu continued the practice of General Xiang Yu by conferring kingships to non-Liu generals and ministers. For example, King Lu Wan of Yan Principality, was one of the non-Liu kings. At one time, Lu Wan sent his general Zhang Sheng to Modu (Hunnic king) in the attempt of stopping Modu from aiding Chen Xi. But, Zhang Sheng, incited by the son of ex-Yan king Zang Tu who had been seeking asylum with the Huns, had decided to go against Lu Wan's will. King Lu Wan acquiesced when he thought to himself that the non-Liu kings had now been reduced to only two, himself and King of Changsa Principality while Han Emperor Liu Bang had conferred 8 king titles to his own kinsmen (6 being Liu Bang's own sons and 2 the sons of his two brothers). The 8 kings would be for Qi, Chu, Dai, Wu, Zhao, Liang, Huaiyang and Huainan. Han Emperor sent his general Fan Kuai to campaign against King Lu Wan when he heard of the Yan Principality's collusion with the Huns. Han Emperor passed away shortly. King Lu Wan, hearing about the emperor's death, led his people northward and surrendered to King Modu. King Lu Wan was conferred the title of 'Eastern Hun Ru King'. By that time, only one non-Liu king was in existence.

Non-Chinese Southern Statelets

Among the non-Chinese statelets would be the Nan-yue or Nan Yue Statelet led by Zhao Tuo, an ex-Qin general. Here, the prefix 'Nan' means southern. Also in existence would be Min-yue Statelet and Dong-yue Statelet. Among the southern nomads, the **Yelang Statelet**, located in the southwestern mountains of today's Sichuan Province, was the biggest of all. Further to the west will be a statelet called **Dian-yue**, located in today's Yunnan Province. North of Dian-yue would be a statelet called Qiongnu. Half a dozen small statelets existed to the southwest of Sichuan Province at that time.

Map linked from <http://www.friesian.com/>



Latter Han Dynasty

THREE KINGDOMS

The time period of Three Kingdoms was very well covered by Luo Guanzhong's *San Guo Yan Yi*. Chinese people often take for granted that Luo Guanzhong's *San Guo Yan Yi* was history. In the 70s, across China, radio stations had been broadcasting various *yan yi* (i.e., romance) stories, including Liu Lanfang's story about General Yue Fei of Northern Song Dynasty, Shan Tianfang's story about Sui-Tang generals, Yuan Kuocheng's story about the Three Kingdoms, among others. This section would be based on Fan Ye's *Hou Han Shu*, Chen Shou's *San Guo Zhi* and Cai Dongfan's *Hou Han Yan Yi*. So far, I had transcribed Chen Shou's section on the Xianbei/Wuhuan of Manchuria and Eastern Yi aliens (like Koreans and Japanese) in the Korean section. A lot of extra work is needed to cover the Three Kingdoms.

Three Kingdoms time derived from the demise of Latter Han Dynasty. Han Dynasty possessed the typical characteristics as far as the pattern of power corruption was concerned. There would appear 'empress power' (in-law power, in fact), 'eunuch power' and 'warlord power'. The tripartite functions of imperial house gradually lost their influences, and the departments like '*shangshu sheng*' (state affairs) and '*zhongshu sheng*' (secretariat) would weigh on the emperors. The influence from people in palace, 'empress power' or 'in-law power', led to the demise of the Western Han Dynasty. Wang Mang, who usurped Western Han and founded Xin Dynasty, derived his power from Empress Wang. All three forms of power corruption led to the demise of Eastern Han. During late Eastern Han (Latter Han), five emperors were erected by empress-related ministers, and six dowager empresses had intervention in politics. To combat the overpowerment of in-law families, weak Han emperors resorted to their best friends, i.e., eunuchs, for assistance, which led to rise of the eunuch power. When empress-related ministers (i.e., *wai qie* or in-law ministers) invited governor-generals (*zhou mu*) to the capital for cracking down on the eunuchs, the outcome would be: i) the death of both the eunuchs and the in-law ministers and ii) the emergence of various governor-generals. Governor-generals (*zhou mu*), however, had grown in strength due to the uprising of the Yellow Turbans Rebellion, and their power had become unrestrained during the process of recruiting armies. Cai Dongfan gave four names as the representative of various powers weighing

on the emperors, i.e., Empress Denghou, in-law minister Liang Ji, eunuch Cao Teng, and governor-general Cao Cao. The rise of the Yellow Turbans was a result of corrupt government and over-exploitation by the government. Compounding the Yellow Turbans rebellion would be the Qiangic rebellions. While Cao Cao etc rose to power in the process of cracking down on the Yellow Turbans, Dong Zhuo achieved his power via cracking down on the Qiangs in the northwestern part of China. We would touch on the thread of events below.

Han Emperor Lingdi deposed his empress. Two years later, a concubine by the name of He (Heh) bore a son for the emperor and was upgraded to empress. Empress He-hou was recorded to be a beauty who had a height of 7 Chinese feet and 1 inch. Her son would be called Liu Bian who would later be the short life expectancy emperor (King Hongnong-wang, r AD 189-189) poisoned by Dong Zhuo in AD 189. Dowager Empress Hehou was of a butcher's family. After becoming empress, her brother Heh Jin was conferred the post of *shi zhong*, and her father Heh Zhen, the post of *cheqi jiangjun* (chariot general) and Marquis Wuyang-hou. Hehou poisoned a concubine for bearing a boy called Liu Xie who would later be the last Han Emperor Xiandi (r. AD 190-220). The in-law minister, Heh Jin (i.e., He Jin), would invite Governor-General Dong Zhuo to the capital for sake of cracking down on the eunuchs. Once Heh Jin and eunuchs boiled down with each other, Dong Zhuo would come to dominate Han court. Dong Zhuo, who hand-picked last Han Emperor Xiandi, might have some heritage of the nomads in the Qiangic northwest area.

The Yellow Turbans

Han Emperor Lingdi was notorious for his sexual indulgence, game playing and resorting to over 10 eunuchs (*zhong chang shi*) for governance. One story about Lingdi would be his game of making his palaces into shopping malls, with concubines acting as vendors and himself acting as a buyer; Lingdi would often personally drive a cart with four donkeys into the malls for shopping. Several righteous ministers were executed, and three remaining '*san gong*' (three duke-equivalents) ministers colluded with eunuchs in controlling the court.

At Julujun Commandary, three Zhang brothers, i.e., Zhang Jiao, Zhang Bao and Zhang Liang, secretly set up a society in the name of *Huang Lao*, i.e., Daoism. (Lao-zi was recorded to have grown yellow beard and he was called Huang Lao

or the Yellow Elderly.) When epidemic erupted over the nation, Zhang Jiao would devise some prescriptions for curing patients, with a curing success rate of 90%. Hence, Zhang Jiao proclaimed himself '*Taiping Daoren*, i.e., a Daoist of Grand Peace, and dispatched disciples across the nation for expanding membership. Over a dozen years later, Zhao Jiao's influence reached eight prefectures, covering today's provinces of Jiangsu, Henan, Shandong, Hebei and Hubei. Membership swelled to over 100,000. Zhang Jiao zoned his members into 36 domains, with larger domain controlling as many as 10,000 people and small domain 6-7000 people. Each domain was controlled by a person called '*qu shuai*', similar to marshal. Zhang Jiao secretly propagated a slogan stating that the grey sky was to die, that the yellow sky was to emerge, that the transition would be in the year of *jia zi* (i.e., the 7th year reign of Lingdi), and that the nation would be in great luck after that. Ma Yuanyi, '*qu shuai*' of Hubei and Jiangsu areas, secretly entered the Han capital and bribed one eunuch (Xu Feng) and other officials for assistance in rebellion. Ma Yuanyi then notified Zhang Jiao that he was ready for rebellion in the capital on March 5th. A disciple under Zhang Jiao, Tang Zhou, betrayed the scheme to the government. Han court arrested and executed Ma Yuanyi and over 1000 accomplices in the capital. Upon hearing the disclosure of rebellion scheme, Zhang Jiao ordered that his disciples in 36 domains launch the uprising right away. Zhang Jiao called himself General Tian-gong (Heaven Duke), Brother Bao General Di-gong (Earth Duke), and Brother Liang General Reng-gong (Human Duke).

Lingdi conferred the title of *Da Jiangjun* (Grand General or Generalissimo) and Marquis Shenhou onto Heh Jin for sake of defending against the Yellow Turbans.

Huangfu Song, *tai shou* (governor) of Beidi Commandary, proposed that Emperor Lingdi absolve the previous persecutions against the '*dang ren*' (ministers and generals who worked together against the eunuch and in-law clans) and that Emperor Lingdi disburse royal savings for sake of fighting the Yellow Turbans.

Emperor Lingdi further conferred the post of *bei zhonglang jiang* (Northside Zhonglang General) onto *shang shu* Lu Zhi, the post of *zuo zhonglang jiang* (Leftside Zhonglang General) onto Huangfu Song, the post of *you zhonglang jiang* (Rightside Zhonglang General) onto *da fu* Zhu Juan.

Two ministers, Lü Qiang and Zhang Jun, impeached ten eunuchs for the

exploitations and oppression that the common people suffered in the hands of the families, relatives and friends of the ten eunuchs across the nation. Lü Qiang and Zhang Jun blamed the Yellow Turban rebellion on the ten eunuchs. The Ten Eunuchs, headed by Zhang Rang, would make Emperor Lingdi order that the two be arrested. Lü Qiang committed suicide, and Zhang Jun was beaten to death at prison. Emperor Lingdi deprived Yang Ci of the *tai wei* (grand captain) post and conferred it onto Deng Wei, and Emperor Lingdi replaced Zhang Ji's *si kong* post with Zhang Wen.

At Yingchuan, Lu Zhi, Huangfu Song and Zhu Juan were engaged in bitter fightings with a Yellow Turban rebel called Bo-cai and suffered some setbacks. At Nanyang, Yellow Turban rebel Zhang Mancheng killed *tai shou* Chu Gong. At Runan, *tai shou* Zhao Qian was defeated by the Yellow Turbans. At Youzhou, *tai shou* Liu Wei and *ci shi* (circuit inspector) Guo Xun were both killed by the Yellow Turbans. At the city of Changshe, Huangfu Song's several thousand soldiers were surrounded by Bo-cai's Yellow Turbans. Huangfu Song used a fire attack at the Yellow Turban camp and defeated rebel Bo-cai who boasted of tens of thousands of head counts. At this time, Cao Cao, *qi duwei* (cavalry captain), came to the aid of Huangfu Song. (Cao Cao's son would be the later founder of **Cao Wei** Dynasty, while Cao Cao's father was an adopted son of Eunuch Cao Teng.) Huangfu Song, Cao Cao and Zhu Juan combined their armies and thoroughly defeated Bo-cai's Yellow Turbans. Huangfu Song was conferred the title of Marquis Duxiang-hou. Huangfu Song then led Zhu Juan and Cao Cao against Yellow Turbans at Runan and Chen'guo, and quelled the rebellion there. Hence, Zhu Juan was conferred the title of Marquis Xixiang-hou, and Cao Cao was conferred the post of *jinan xiang* (prime minister for Jinan). Huangfu Song was ordered to attack Yellow Turbans in Dongjun, and Zhu Juan was to attack Yellow Turbans in Nanyang.

Lu Zhi defeated Zhang Jiao and lay siege of the city of Guangzong. An eunuch claimed to Emperor Lingdi that Lu Zhi did not have the courage to sack the city; Lu Zhi was arrested and ordered to be replaced by Dong Zhuo (*tai shou* of Hedong). Dong Zhuo, famous for his strength and capabilities of shooting arrows with both hands, was from Lintiao of today's Shenxi Prov; Dong Zhuo earlier followed *zhonglang jiang* Zhang Huan in quelling Qiangic rebellions and was conferred the post of *jun sima* by Emperor Huandi; he was later offered the post and title of *lang zhong*, *ci shi* of Bingzhou, and *tai shou* of Hedong Commandary. Zhang Jiao would launch a counter-attack out of the city of

Guangzong, defeated Dong Zhuo, chased Dong Zhuo to the city of Quyang, and took over Quyang from Han army. Dong Zhuo was deprived of his post by Emperor Lingdi, and Huangfu Song was ordered to replace Dong's post. At this time, Zhang Jiao got ill, and Zhang Liang was in charge of Yellow Turbans. When news came that Zhang Jiao had died, Huangfu Song counter-attacked the Yellow Turbans, killed Zhang Liang and then sacked the city of Guangzong. Yellow Turbans, numbering tens of thousands, were drowned in a river when chased by Huangfu Song. Huangfu Song went on to attack Quyang which was guarded by Zhang Bao. With the help of Julu *tai shou* Guo Dian, Huangfu Song defeated Zhang Bao and captured over 100,000 Yellow Turbans. The heads of three Zhang brothers were cut off and sent to the capital. Lingdi conferred the title and post of *zuo cheqi jiangjun* (leftside chariot general), *zhou mu* (governor-general) of Jizhou and Marquis Kuili-hou onto Huangfu Song. Huangfu Song declined an advice of a counsellor called Yan Zong, which was about going to the capital and purging the eunuchs. Yan Zong left for Liangzhou where he was later made into a warlord by rebels there.

At Nanyang, Zhu Juan fought Yellow Turbans headed by Zhang Mancheng. The new *tai shou* of Nanyang, Qin Xie, would kill Zhang Mancheng. Yellow Turbans made another rebel, Zhao Hong, into their new leader, and sacked the city of Wancheng. Zhu Juan, together with Qin Xie and Xu Qiu, defeated Zhao Hong. Yellow Turbans erected Han Zhong as the new leader. Zhu Juan deliberately withdrew the siege; when Han Zhong fled the city, Zhu Juan ordered an attack and captured Han Zhong. Remnant Yellow Turbans erected Sun Xia as their head and fled to the mountains. Zhu Juan followed the rebels into the mountains and quelled them. Zhu Juan was conferred the post of *you cheqi jiangjun* by Emperor Lingdi.

Fu Xie, *hujun sima* under Zhu Juan, impeached the eunuchs and was assigned the post of *du wei* of Anding. Wang Yun, *ci shi* of Yuzhou, was arrested for submitting to the court the letters between the Yellow Turban and the counsellors of the eunuchs. When Zhu Juan returned to the court, Emperor Lingdi changed the era of the 7th year of Guanghe to the 1st year of Zhongping Era. Amnesty was declared. Both Wang Yun and Lu Zhi were spared. Zhu Juan was conferred the post of *guang lu da fu*. Huangfu Song recommended Lu Zhi for the post of *shang shu*.

In earlier years, Lu Zhi had several students, including Gongsun Zan of Liao-xi

and Liu Deran/Liu Bei of Zhuoxian County. Liu Bei would be the later founder of **Shu Han** Dynasty. Liu Bei's ancestor was Liu Sheng, King of Zhongshan-jing-wang and son of Former Han Emperor Jingdi. Liu Bei was recorded to have a height of 7 Chinese feet and 5 inches, and he had big dangling ears that he could see with his own eyes. At age 15, he went to Lu Zhi for tutorship. Liu Bei was joined by two blood-sworn brothers, Guan Yu of Hedong Commandary and Zhang Fei of Zhuojun Commandary. (To be blood brothers, ancient Chinese needed to dip blood together in a bowl and drink it.) Guan Yu, recorded to have red hairy face, had fled to Zhouzhou area after killing someone in a brawl in his hometown. The three had promised to be blood brothers in *Dao Yuan* (i.e., Peach Garden) at the backyard of Zhang Fei's house. When Yellow Turbans invaded Zhuoxian county, the three would answer county *xiao wei* (i.e., captain) Zou Jing in assembling soldiers and fighting the rebels. When the Yellow Turbans were driven off, Zou Jing recommended Liu Bei for officialdom. Liu Bei was assigned the post of *wei* (captain) for Anxi-xian county. While on the post, the three brothers beat an arrogant government postal official, surrendered the county seal, and went into exile.

Qiangic Rebellions

During the 2nd year reign of Zhongping Era, Han royal palace experienced a fire disaster. In order to rebuild the palace, Lingdi adopted eunuchs' advice in levying extra taxes on the populace and extracting building materials from various prefectures. Lu Kang, *tai shou* of Le'an, was impeached by the eunuchs for objecting to levying taxes. Sima Zhi, *tai shou* of Julu, committed suicide for rejecting the court order. Under the oppression, populace resorted to banditry all over the country. Various bands, under such nicknames as Leigong (lightening duke or grandpa), Baiqi (white horse knight), Damu (big eye), and Feiyan (flying swallow), erupted over the nation. Han court pacified bandit Feiyan (Chu Yan) of Changshan and conferred him the post of *pingnan zhonglang jiang* in charge of areas north of the Yellow River. In Longxi of Gansu Prov, the Hu nomads rebelled as well.

By the end of the Han Dynasty, Qiangs were controlled by warlord governors in the northwestern part of China. They had rebellions every once a while. Under Emperor Huandi, General Zhang Huan had campaigned against the Qiangs and quelled them. When the Qiangs rebelled again, Huangfu Song, Zhang Wen and

Dong Zhuo were called upon to quell the Qiangs. Later, during the Three Kingdom time period, the Qiangs and Xianbei had participated in the wars as mercenaries for Cao Wei and Shu Han dynasties, respectively.

The Hu nomads selected someone called Beigong Boyue as a general. They colluded with Xianling Qiangs and the bandits in pillaging the country. The bandits abducted Bian Zhuang / Han Sui and made them into military heads. They killed Chen Yi (*tai shou* of Jincheng) and Ling Zheng (*hu jiang xiaowei*). Zuo Chang, *ci shi* of Longyou, refused to come to aid of Chen Yi & Ling Zheng. Zuo Chang dispatched Gai Xun to Heyang, but the Qiangic rebels circumvented to attack Zuo Chang at Jicheng. When Gai Xun returned to the rescue of Zuo Chang, Bian Zhuang led rebels into a retreat. Zuo Chang and his successor were both rebuked by Han court. When the new *hu jiang xiaowei* or 'Colonel in charge of Qiangs' (Xia Yue) was surrounded by the Qiangs, Gai Xun went to the relief; but Gai Xun was defeated by a Qiangic rebel called Dianwu. Dianwu released Gai Xun for his righteousness. Han court conferred the post of *taolu xiaowei* (i.e., colonel who campaigns against enemies) onto Gai Xun.

At Han court, *du wei* Fu Xie rebuked *si tu* Cui Lie for his proposal to abandon Liangzhou. Han Lingdi ordered that Huangfu Song guard the city of Chang'an. Huangfu Song beat off the invasion by Bian Zhuang / Han Sui. Eunuchs Zhang Rang & Zhao Zhong impeached Huangfu Song, and Huangfu Song was deprived of the post of *zuo cheqi jiangjun*. Han Lingdi conferred marquis onto 13 eunuchs. Han Lingdi then ordered that *si kong* Zhang Wen replace Huangfu Song and that Dong Zhuo assist Zhang Wen as *puolu jiangjun* (i.e., general who breaks the enemies).

Zhang Wen arrived at Shanyang. Zhang Wen and Dong Zhuo, with over 100,000 army, were defeated by Bian Zhuang at the beginning. In a severe winter, when a meteorite passed through the sky, the Qiangic rebels were frightened and planned to return to Gansu Prov. Calling on a Han official at You-fufeng to assist him, Dong Zhuo led a surprise attack at the rebels and defeated the rebels. Zhang Wen ordered that Dong Zhuo chase the Qiangs and Zhou Shen (*tang kou jiangjun*) chase Bian Zhuang. Bian Zhuang fled to Yuzhong. Not taking advice from *zuojun sima* Sun Jian (who would be the founder of later **Sun Wu** Dynasty), Zhou Shen was defeated by Bian Zhuang. Dong Zhuo, when chasing the Qiangs, was surrounded by a large Qiangic relief army. Dong Zhuo devised a tactic, pumping out the water of a river for retreat across the river as

well as drowning the Qiangic chasers. Dong Zhuo returned to Fufeng of Shenxi. When Bian Zhuang / Han Sui pretended to surrender to Zhang Wen, Zhang Wen sent a message to Han court. Han Lingdi thought that the Qiangic rebellions were quelled and conferred onto Dong Zhuo the title of a marquis and the post of *zhou mu* for Bingzhou. Dong Zhuo became arrogant and challenged Zhang Wen's authority. Sun Jian proposed to Zhang Wen that Dong Zhuo be caught and executed for insulting Zhang Wen; Zhang Wen was worried that campaigns against Qiangs would not go smoothly should he execute Dong Zhuo. Zhang Wen was conferred the post of *tai wei* (i.e., Grand Captain). Zhang Wen recommended Sun Jian for the post of *yi lang*. (Sun Jian was a descendant of Sun Wu, China's military strategist from Warring States time period. Sun was made *jun wei* and *si ma* by Wujun Commandary. Sun later worked on the post of *xian cheng* (i.e., county magistrate) for three terms. When Yellow Turbans rebelled, Zhu Juan hired Sun Jian as an assistant.)

Emergence of Governor-Generals

Han Emperor Lingdi re-instituted two royal officials, Yang Ci and Liu Tao, for their warning against Yellow Turbans before the rebellion eruption. Yang Ci was conferred the post of *si kong* and Marquis Linjin; Yang CI died in a few months; Yang Ci's son, Yang Biao, inherited the marquis title. Liu Tao was assigned the post of *jianyi dafu*. Liu Tao impeached the eunuchs, was arrested by the eunuchs, and committed suicide at prison. Eunuch Zhao Zhong was assigned the post of *cheqi jiangjun*, and he tried to bribe Fu Xie. To get rid of Fu Xie, eunuchs made Lingdi order that Fu Xie be assigned the post of *tai shou* for Hanyang.

In AD 186, Han Sui killed Bian Zhuang, colluded with Beigong Boyue, and lay siege of Longxi of Gansu Prov with over 100,000 army. *tai shou* Li Xiangru colluded with Han Sui. At Hanyang, a bandit called Wang Guo answered Han Sui in rebellion. Geng Bi, *ci shi* of Liangzhou of Gansu Prov, refusing to take the advice of Fu Xie, went to fight the rebels. Geng Bi was killed at Didao. A *si ma* under Geng Bi, by the name of Ma Teng, would refuse to aid Geng Bi's army. Rebels sieged Hanyang, and Fu Xie refused to surrender. Rebel Wang Guo dispatched *tai shou* of Jiuquan (Huang Yan) to Fu Xie for sake of having Fu Xie surrender the city. Fu Xie declined the offer, had a fight with rebels outside of the city, and died. His son, Fu Gan, was retrieved by the rebels and sent to the hometown; Fu Gan later was assigned the post of *tai shou* for Fufeng.

Banditry was not restricted to Qiangs. Yellow Turban remnants were still active in the east. In the northeast, Xianbei remnants pillaged Youzhou and Bingzhou though their chieftan (Tanshikui) had died of illness.

In Jiangxia area, Zhao Ci's army bandits killed *tai shou* Qin Xie; *ci shi* of Jingzhou (Wang Min) quelled Zhao Ci. At Yingyang, county magistrate of Zhongmou was killed by the bandits. He Miao, *yi* of Henan, was ordered to quell Yingyang bandits. In Hunan Prov, banditry erupted in Changsha and Lingling areas. Sun Jian was dispatched to Changsha for quelling rebellion there. At Yuyang, Zhang Chun and Zhang Ju killed *tai shou* of You-beiping (Liu Zheng), *tai shou* of Liaodong (Yang Zhong) and *hu Wuhuan xiaowei*. Zhang Chun claimed to be emperor, while Zhang Ju called himself *mi tian jiangjun* (general who permeates the sky). Han Emperor Lingdi ordered that *qi duwei* Gongsun Zan depart for Youzhou to quell the two Zhang rebellion.

Hunnic tribe of Xiutu (Xiuzhu) pillaged Xihe area, killed *jun shou* (Xing Ji), and then attacked Bingzhou and killed *ci shi* Zhang Yi. Yellow Turbans remnants at Taiyuan area also rebelled again under the head of Guo Tai. The leftside Xiuzhu tribe pressured Southern Hunnic Chanyu into rebelling in the north.

Jizhou *ci shi* Wang Feng intended to purge the eunuchs by taking advantage of Han Lingdi's tour outside of the capital. He consulted with Cao Cao for support, but Cao Cao did not agree with it. Wang Feng, thinking that his plot was disclosed, hastily committed suicide when being recalled by the emperor.

At Yizhou (Sichuan Prov), Yellow Turban remnants, under Ma Xiang, rebelled against corrupt *ci shi* Qie Jian. *tai chang* Liu Yan (a descendant of Former Han King Lugong-wang) was conferred the post of *zhou mu* for Yizhou and the title of Marquis Yangcheng. Before Liu Yan arrived in Sichuan, Red Turbans were quelled by a Yizhou official. Han Lingdi then ordered that Liu Yu (a descendant of King Donghai-wang) be the *zhou mu* for Youzhou. (Note that beginning from Liu Yan and Liu Yu, *zhou mu* replaced *ci shi* as the leader of various 'zhou' prefectures. The 'zhou' prefectures would be in charge of various 'jun' or commandaries.)

Han Emperor Lingdi, fearing insufficiency of palace defence, would order that an eunuch by the name of Jian Shuo to replace Zhao Zhong as *shang jun*

xiaowei. Under Jian Shuo would be seven *xiao wei*, i.e., captains, including Yuan Shao (*hu ben zhong-lang-jiang*), Bao Hong (*dun qi xiaowei*), Cao Cao (*yi lang*), Zhao Rong, Feng Fang, Zhao Feng, Xia Mou (*jianyi dafu*), and Chunyu Qiong (*jianyi dafu*). The eight guys were collectively known as Eight Xiaowei or Eight Captains.

Gai Xun admonished Emperor Lingdi about his palace army inspection. When Gai Xun met Yuan Shao (son of late *si kong* Yuan Feng) and talked about eunuchs influencing the emperor, Yuan Shao would invite Gai Xun to his residence for a talk about exterminating the eunuchs. *tai wei* Zhang Wen returned to the capital. Eunuch Jian Shuo recommended Gai Xun for a relocation to be a *jing zhao yi*.

In Liangzhou prefecture, bandits under rebel Wang Guo laid siege of the Chencang city. Emperor Lingdi ordered that Huangfu Song / Dong Zhuo lead 20,000 army to the relief of Chencang. Huangfu Song had disputes with Dong Zhuo as to tactics. Huangfu Song deliberately waited for 80 days while Dong Zhuo advocated a fight with the rebels. Rebels retreated after failing to take over Chencang. Then, Huangfu Song had another dispute with Dong Zhuo. Huangfu Song ordered a chase of the retreating rebels while Dong Zhuo stated that ancient tactics forbade chasing of retreating enemies. Huangfu Song defeated Wang Guo and killed about 10,000 rebels. When Emperor Lingdi called upon Dong Zhuo to return to the capital, Dong Zhuo deliberately delayed the trip. (Historians commented that Dong Zhuo deliberately avoided going to the capital few times for sake of retaining the control of his army: Dong Zhuo did not serve the post of *shao fu* at the capital; Dong Zhuo did not transfer the military to Huangfu Song; Dong Zhuo stayed on at He-dong, east of the river, for observing the developments of palace turmoils.) Huangfu Song's son advised his father that Dong Zhuo had high ambitions and should be dealt with earlier than later. Huangfu Song rebuked Dong Zhuo by writing a letter to the emperor, and the two hence became feuds.

At Youzhou prefecture, two ex-Han officials, Zhang Chuan / Zhang Ju, were in fights with Gongsun Zan. Gongsun Zan defeated Zhang Chun at Jizhong area. Zhang Chuan invited a Wuhuan chieftan (Qiuliju) for raiding Yuyang, Hejian and Bohai. After another defeat in the hands of Gongsun Zan, Zhang Chun fled out of the border. When Gongsun Zan chased the two Zhangs to Guanzi-cheng city in Liaoxi, Wuhuans, under Qiuliju, surrounded Gongsun Zan for 200 days.

Gongsun Zan barely survived when heavy snows fell and Wuhuan fled to Liucheng city. Gongsun Zan was conferred Marquis Duting-hou and the post of *jiang lu xiaowei*. Zhang Chun / Zhang Ju fled to Xianbei camp. Liu Yu arrived in Youzhou and dispatched emissaries to the Xianbei for the heads of the two Zhangs. Xianbei chieftan Budugeng, the grandson of Tanshikui, sent the head of Zhang Chun to Liu Yu when Zhang Chun's servant killed Zhang Chun. Wuhuan chieftan Qiuliju sent emissary to Liu Yu to show submission. Liu Yu proposed to Emperor Lingdi to have peace with Wuhuan and Xianbei and ordered that Gongsun Zan guard You-beiping with 10,000 army. Gongsun Zan, eager to fight Wuhuan and Xianbei, hence became unhappy with Liu Yu and became feuds. Liu Yu was conferred the post of *tai wei*.

In-law Ministers Against Eunuchs

In April of the 6th year reign of Han Emperor Lindi's Zhongping Era, i.e, AD 189, Lingdi fell sick. Eunuch Jian Shuo, in order to get rid of Heh Jin, would ask emperor decree that Heh Jin go to the west to attack bandit Han Sui. Heh Jin delayed his trip by pretending that he had orderd Yuan Shao to go to the Xuzhou and Yanzhou areas for recruiting soldiers first. Lingdi died suddenly without a will. Eunuch Jian Shuo called upon in-law minister Heh Jin to enter the palace. Heh Jin, on the road, met a friend and was told that eunuchs plan to kill him and erect junior Prince Liu Xie. Heh Jin dared not enter the palace till his sister, Dowager Empress Hehou, called him in. Eunuchs under Jian Shuo temporarily supported Dowager Empress Hehou in erecting 14 year old Liu Bian as the new emperor. Prince Liu Xie was conferred the title of King of Bohai-wang. Dowager Empress Hehou conferred Yuan Kui the title of *tai fu* and made Yuan Kui / Heh Jin in charge of *shang shu* duties.

When Yuan Shao returned to the capital, Heh Jin secretly planned to purge the eunuchs. Heh Jin assigned He Yong the title of *bei jun zhong hou*, Xun You the post of *huangmen shilang*, and Zheng Tai the post of *shang shu*. Eunuchs prepared for self-defence against in-law ministers. Eunuch Jian Shuo wrote letters to other eunuchs about killing Heh Jin. One eunuch, Guo Sheng, went straight to Heh Jin's house and showed Jian Shuo's letter. Heh Jin hence took action by killing Jian Shuo first.

He Jin then purged a rival, *piaoqi jiangjun* Dong Zhong and his mother

(dowager grand empress Dong-tai-hou). King Bohai-wang, Liu Xie, was renamed King of Chenliu-wang. Yuan Shao proposed to have all eunuchs purged; Heh Jin consulted with Empress Hehou; Dowager Empress He-hou did not approve for fearing turmoils; Heh Jin asked Yuan Shao whether it was OK to get rid of the top eunuchs; Yuan Shao insisted that all eunuchs should be purged. Eunuchs began to bribe Heh Jin's mother (Madam Wuyang-jun) and Heh Jin's brother (Heh Miao) as an expression of friendship with the Heh family. Heh Jin and Dowager Empress He-hou hence had disagreements as to dealing with eunuchs.

At the insistence of Yuan Shao, Heh Jin secretly sent orders to governor-generals for sake of having them march on the capital. A Han minister, *zhu bo* Chen Lin, advised against Heh Jin's invitation for governor-generals. Cao Cao, *dian jun xiaowei*, ridiculed Heh Jin's decision. Dong Zhuo answered Heh Jin's call from Hedong areas and stated that he would depart for the capital in a few days. Zheng Tai, *shi yushi*, advised Heh Jin of Dong Zhuo's arrogance and cruelty and expressed worries that should Heh Jin confer the military leadership onto Dong Zhuo, Han court might be endangered. Xun You stated that they had better retire to avoid turmoils. Zheng Tai retired for his home in Henan. Lu Zhi, *shang shu*, also advised against Heh Jin's using Dong Zhuo for purging eunuchs.

Heh Jin further ordered that Wang Kuang and Bao Xin recruit soldiers in their homeland and that Qiao Mao (*tai shou* of Dongdu) guard Chenggao. When eunuchs asked Heh Miao to talk to the brother for mercy, Heh Jin dispatched Zhong Shao to Dong Duo for sake of stopping him from marching further. Dong Zhuo already arrived at Mianchi and refused to stop. Under the pressure of Zhong Shao, Dong Zhuo retreated to Xiyangting. When Yuan Shao heard about the stop order for Dong Zhuo, he went to see Heh Jin and asked him not to forget about Dou inlaw family's mistake. Heh Jin then ordered that Yuan Shao be the so-called *si li xiaowei* in charge of the purging action, that Wang Yun be magistrate for Henan prefecture [*henan yi*], and that Dong Zhuo hasten his march on the capital.

Eunuchs began to come to see Heh Jin for mercy, and Heh Jin asked the eunuchs to retire for their hometowns. However, Yuan Shao privately ordered that various prefectures arrest the family members of the eunuchs. Eunuch Zhang Rang went to see his daughter-in-law (sister of Heh Jin) and kowtowed to her, asking her to request mercy with Madam Wuyang-jun. Heh Jin and

Dowager Empress He-hou disagreed over their mother Madam Wuyang-jun's amnesty request. Eunuchs, learning of Heh Jin's determination to purge them, ambushed and killed Heh Jin. Eunuchs then decreed in the name of the emperor that Yuan Shao and Wang Yun be deprived of their posts and replaced by Fan Ling and Xu Xiang. Eunuchs closed off the gates of the imperial palace and threw Heh Jin's decapitated head outside. Lu Zhi picked up the head and brought it to Heh Jin's camp to show to two subordinate officers, Wu Kuang and Zhang Zhuang. Wu Kuang and Zhang Zhuang led army against the southern palace. Yuan Shao ordered that his brother, Yuan Shu (*huben zhonglangjiang*), assist Wu Kuang and Zhang Zhuang in the siege of palace. Fire was set on the southern palace, and Eunuch Zhang Rang abducted Empress He-hou, the emperor and King of Chenliu-wang to the northern palace.

At the northern palace, Yuan Shao and Heh Miao caught Eunuch Zhao Zhong. When Heh Miao showed pity for the execution of the eunuch, Wu Kuang killed Heh Miao. Altogether 3000 eunuch-related people were killed. Lu Zhi rescued Empress He-hou and chased Eunuch Zhang Rang etc who had fled with the young emperor and King of Chenliu-wang out of the north palace gate. Lu Zhi and Min Gong caught the fleeing entourage by mid-night and rescued emperor and King Chenliu-wang. Eunuch Zhang Rang and Duan Gui jumped into a river to commit suicide.

By early morning, Lu Zhi and Min Gong, together with emperor and King of Chenliu-wang, met Dong Zhuo's column in front of Mt. Beimang-shan. While receiving Dong Zhuo, the young emperor was too scared to say a word, while King Chenliu-wang substituted the emperor in explaining the circumstances of the turmoils. Dong Zhuo was impressed by the courage and wisdom of King Chenliu-wang. Upon return to the palace, the emperor declared a general amnesty and decreed that Guangxi Era be changed to Zhaoning Era.

Dong Zhuo Turmoils

Bao Xin, *qi duwei* (cavalry captain), returned to the capital with new recruits from Taishan. Bao Xin proposed to Yuan Shao that Dong Zhuo should be rid of so that the country could enjoy peace. Yuan Shao was hesitant about it. Bao Xin hence dismissed his new recruits and retired for his hometown (Taishan area). Dong Zhuo, with only three thousand cavalry, played a trick of deceit by

ordering his soldiers leave the capital at mid-night and then march into the capital at daybreak. Dong Zhuo created a false impression that his soldiers from the northwest had been continuously coming to the capital. (In 1920s, Xu Shuzheng, a Duan Qirui crony of Wan-xi faction of the northern warlord lineage government, played a similar trick in re-taking Ulan Bator and Outer Mongolia.) Dong Zhuo took over control of the soldiers previously serving Heh Jin. Emperor called upon Ding Yuan to return to the capital from Henei area where he was previously ordered to station troops by Heh Jin. Dong Zhuo, being fond of a strengthful person under Ding Yuan, would bribe this person with gifts, treasures and a stallion with the color of burning fire. This person would be called Lü Bu and the horse 'chi tu' (i.e., red rabbit). Dong Zhuo then instructed his hatchetman (Li Shu) to have Lü Bu assassinate Ding Yuan. Once Ding Yuan was killed, Dong Zhuo conferred Lü Bu the post of *qi duwei* in charge of the soldiers previously under Ding Yuan. Lü Bu took Dong Zhuo as adopted father.

Dong Zhuo deprived Liu Hong of *si kong* post and assumed it himself. Dong Zhuo, hearing of the fame of an ex-Han official called Cai Yong, would forcefully call Cai Yong into the capital; within 3 days, Dong Zhuo conferred Cai Yong the posts of *ji jiu*, *shi yushi*, *shi shu yushi* and *shang shu*. Dong Zhuo further contacted the Yuan family for support. Dong Zhuo made Yuan Kui *tai fu*. Dong Zhuo called upon Yuan Shao for sake of having him support the idea of deposing the young emperor and erecting King of Chenliu-wang. Yuan Shao countered it by stating that the young emperor had no fault and the change of emperor should be decided by the ministers. Dong Zhuo pulled out his blade, put it on the table and threatened Yuan Shao. Yuan Shao pulled out his blade and said to Dong Zhuo, "Are you sure that there is no other ferocious fighter other than Dong Zhuo in this world?" Yuan Shao then left for his office, hanged his seal on the front door, and fled to Ji-zhou prefecture. Dong Zhuo assembled ministers and proposed to have emperor deposed. Lu Zhi, *shang shu*, opposed Dong Zhuo; Dong Zhuo pulled out his blade and chased Lu Zhi; Cai Yong went to Dong Zhuo for pacification; Lu Zhi left the court for his hometown by taking an alternative route; Dong Zhuo sent assassins after Lu Zhi but failed to catch Lu Zhi; Dong Zhuo forcefully asked Yuan Kui to have emperor deposed. Dong Zhuo and Yuan Kui went to Empress He-hou, explaining why they decided to depose the emperor: The reason was because the emperor did not show sorrow for the death of Emperor Lingdi. In September of this year, King Chenliu-wang (Liu Xie) was made into Emperor Xiandi. The young emperor stayed on the throne for only five months. Dong Zhuo would order Empress Doager He-hou be poisoned

for her early crime in poisoning Lingdi's concubine (i.e., Xiandi's mother) and Dowager Grand Empress Dong-hou. Dong Zhuo further ordered that He-hou's mother, Madam Wuyang-jun, be killed.

Dong Zhuo declared himself *tai wei* (i.e., Grand Captain) and his mother Madam Chiyang-jun. Dong Zhuo further conferred *da (grand) sima* onto Liu Yu, *si kong* onto Yang Biao, and *si tu* onto Huang Wan.

Warlord Fightings

Xianbei vs Chinese

The Xianbei were the northern branch of the Donghu (or Tung Hu, the Eastern Hu), a proto-Tunguz group mentioned in Chinese histories. Xianbei and Wuhuan would be those people who fled to the two mountains, by the names of Xianbei and Wuhuan, when their ancestors accused Hunnic founder Modu of patricide and got defeated by Modu. By the first century, two major subdivisions of the Donghu had developed: the Xianbei in the north and the Wuhuan in the south. Apparently, Xianbei and Wuhuan people were located much to the center of Mongolia and northern China in earlier times. They lived to the east of the Huns. They were later relocated to today's Manchuria by Han Emperor Wudi for segregation from the Huns, and hence they inherited the ancient name of Donghu, in my opinion. Xianbei could be differentiated into i) Greater Xianbei under Budugeng, ii) Lesser Xianbei under Kebineng, and iii) Manchurian Xianbei. (An alternative school of thought stated that Xianbei people were comprised of the Chinese coolie who fled from Qin Emperor Shihuangdi's order to build the Great Wall at the northern borders.)

The Huns suffered setbacks under constant Han Chinese attacks, and they split into Southern Huns and Northern Huns, with Southern Huns subject to Chinese. The weakened Huns provided a vacuum for the Xianbei (or Hsien-pei in Wade-Giles) to move in in the middle of 1st century AD. The Xianbei expanded their territories, and they took over most of the northern territories held by the Huns previously. The Xianbei mixed up with the Huns. The Hunnic Xia Dynasty,

established by Helian Bobo, was said to be of a mingle nature, called 'Tie Fu'. The *Tie Fu* Huns were born of Xianbei mother and Hunnic Father. The Xianbei and the Wuhuan used mounted archers in warfare, and they had been good mercenaries for the Han Chinese and the Wei Chinese. Among General Ts'ao Ts'ao columns of army against the Shu State during the three Kingdoms Period (AD 220-280), many happened to be the Xianbei nomads wearing stirrups. Later, in General Liu Yu's armies, Xianbei warriors using long spears called 'shuo' could be found as well.

There appeared a Xianbei chieftan called Tanshikui (reign AD 156-181) who established a Xianbei alliance by absorbing dozens of thousands of Huns. The Tanshikui alliance disintegrated after the death of Tanshikui. (The later Khitans were said to be descendants of Tanshikui Xianbei.) By the time of Three Kingdoms Period (AD 220-280), the Wuhuan nomads had taken control of today's Hebei Province and Peking areas. Ts'ao Ts'ao broke a new Xianbei alliance by sending an assassin to kill a Xianbei chieftan called Kebineng. Warlord Yuan Shao campaigned against the Wuhuan and controlled three prefectures of Wuhuan nomads. After Ts'ao Ts'ao defeated Yuan Shao, Yuan's two sons, Yuan Shang and Yuan Xi fled to seek refuge with the Wuhuans. Ts'ao Ts'ao campaigned against the Wuhuan, killed a chieftan called Tadun (with same last character as Hunnic Chanyu Modu), and took over the control of southern Manchuria. (The later Xi people were said to be descendants of Tadun Wuhuan.)

The demise of Han Dynasty saw Xianbei and Wuhuan taking over the old territories from the Huns in the northern borders as well as invading into Korea Peninsula. Chen Shou commented that Kebineng Xianbei had at one time covered the territories from the Liao River of Manchuria in the east to Yunzhong/Wuyuan in the west. Xianbei had prospered after Cao Cao conquered their kinsmen, i.e., Wuhuan. Wuhuan was absorbed by both Cao Cao and Xianbei, and its name disappeared thereafter, only to re-emerge in 10th century war with Khitans.

Several Wuhuan chieftans enjoyed the conferral of a title called *Da Ren*, namely, 'high-ranking person'. They included Qiuliju (Liaoxi Wuhuan *Da Ren*, with 5000 households), Nanlou (Shanggu Wuhuan *Da Ren*, with 9000 households), Supuyan (Liaodong Wuhuan *Da Ren*, with thousands of households) and Wuyan (You-beiping Wuhuan *Da Ren*, with 800 households), were controlled by a Han Chinese rebel governor called Zhang Chun of Zhongshan Prefecture. Han

Emperor Lingdi (r. 168-189) assigned Liu Yu as governor-general of Youzhou (Beijing) and Liu Yu hired some nomads to have Zhang Chun killed. After the death of Chieftan Louban, an adopted son called Tadun (Tadu) took over the chieftan post. Tadun assisted Yuan Shao in the wars on Gongsun Zan. At one time during the Three Kingdoms time period, Yuan Shao had pacified three prefectures of Wuhuan and heavily recruited them as mercenary cavalry. Yuan Shao privately conferred the title of 'Chanyu' on Wuhuan chieftans in the name of Han court. When the son of Wuhuan Chieftan Qiuliju grew up, he would compete with Tadun for power. A Chinese by the name of Yan Rou (who enjoyed trust among Wuhuan-Xianbei for his spending childhood years with the barbarians) would kill the Chinese 'xiaowei' (colonel) in charge of Wuhuan and usurped the post. Yuan Shao retained Yan Rou as the 'Wuhuan Colonel'. Cao Cao later defeated Tadu (Tadun) who offered asylum to two sons of Yuan Shao. Cao Cao won over Yan Rou when he campaigned against Wuhuan in AD 206. Wuhuan chieftans were all decapitated when they fled to Liaodong (east Liaoning Province) for asylum. Over 10,000 Wuhuan households under Yan Rou would relocate to China under the order of Cao Cao. Wuhuan people would serve Cao Cao as mercenary cavalry.

Two Xianbei tribal groups came into play, and this will include the Lesser Xianbei under Ke'bineng and Greater Xianbei under Budugeng and his brother Fuluohan. This is in addition to Manchurian Xianbei. Ke'bineng heavily employed Chinese defectors and utilized Chinese weaponry and language. Ke'bineng had at one time assisted Cao Cao in cracking down on Tian Ying Rebellion, but he also rebelled against Cao Cao and Cao Wei several times. Cao Cao once sent Marquis Yanling to defeat Ke'bineng and cause him flee outside of Chinese border. In AD 219, Ke'bineng sent an emissary, with tributes of horses, to last Han Emperor Xiandi who was under Cao Cao protection. Cao Wei Emperor Wendi conferred Ke'bineng the title of King of Fuyi (attached loyalty). Beginning from AD 221, several times, Ke'bineng repatriated Cao Wei Chinese back to Chinese territories. Ke'bineng rebelled against Cao Wei Chinese again because Tian Yu interfered in Ke'bineng wars with both Eastern Xianbei under Suli and Xianbei Chieftan under Budugeng. Ke'bineng complained about this to General Xianyu Fu, mentioning the fact that his brother was killed by Budugeng. Ke'bineng said he was recommended for the post by Yan Rou, he was grateful to Chinese and he did not want to rebel against Chinese simply because Tian Yu was giving him troubles. Ke'bineng boasted of over 100,000 cavalry. A Wuhuan chieftan at Dai Prefecture, by the name of Nengchendi, surrendered to

Budugeng but also asked for protection from Ke'bineng. When the two Xianbei chieftans converged for controlling the Wuhuan, Ke'bineng killed Fuluohan and took over the Xianbei people led by Fuluohan's son, Xie-guini. Hence, two Xianbei tribes warred with each other. Cao Wei Emperor Wendi (Cao Pi) conferred Tian Yu the post of Wuhuan Captain with extra authority over Xianbei people, and Tian Yu had his office situated at Changping (near Beijing). Ke'bineng would defeat all tribes including Wuhuan, extending their territories from Yunzhong & Wuyuan north of Shanxi border all the way to Manchuria. Ke'bineng defeated two Chinese generals, Tian Yu and Bi Gui. The other chieftan, Budugeng, relocated to Taiyuan and Yanmen with his over 10,000 households. Budugeng further sent a messenger to his niece Xie-guini and caused Xie-guini defect from Ke'bineng. By AD 224, Budugeng sought vassalage with Cao Wei Emperor Wendi. In AD 228, Tian Yu's emissary to Xianbei was killed by Ke'bineng's son-in-law. Hence, Tian Yu dispatched Pudou (Western Xianbei Chieftan) and Xie-guini to attack Ke'bineng as a retaliation. When Ke'bineng encircled Tian Yu with 30,000 cavalry, Governor-General of Shanggu, Yan Zhi (Yan Rou's brother), went to see Ke'bineng and persuaded Ke'bineng into a ceasefire. Later, the new governor-general of Youzhou, Wang Xiong, was conferred the post of Wuhuan Colonel. Ke'bineng, several times, expressed loyalty to Wang Xiong. In AD 233, Ke'bineng won back Budugeng by means of an inter-marriage. Budugeng ordered Xie-guini to go back and serve under Ke'bineng, pillaging Chinese prefecture of Bingzhou. General Qin Lang counter-attacked, and Xie-guini surrendered and was conferred the title of King of Guiyi (i.e., returning loyalty) and the land of Bingzhou. Later, Budugeng was killed by Ke'bineng. Ke'bineng ordered his son go to Loufan to fight the wars with General Su Shang and Dong Bi (both under Governor Bi Gui of Bingzhou) and killed the two. During Qinglong Era, about 235 AD, Cao Wei Emperor Mingdi (Cao Rui) took the advice of Wang Xiong and had Ke'bineng assassinated by someone called Han Long. The brother of Ke'bineng was selected as the chieftan. In southern Manchuria, Eastern Xianbei enjoyed more head-count than Ke'bineng Xianbei. There would exist chieftans like Suli, Mijia and Jueji in Liaoxi (western Liaoning Prov), Youbeiping (northwest of Beijing) and Yuyang. Jueji's son was conferred the title of King Qinhan (befriending Han), and Suli's brother, Chengluegui, succeeded the King title, too.

The Xianbei nomad, with major tribes of Murong, Yuwen, Duan, would establish many short-lived successive Yan statelets along the Chinese frontier and in northern China. Ultimately, the Toba (T'o-pa in Wade-Giles), a subgroup of the

Xianbei, who migrated to modern China's Shanxi Province, would reunite China under Toba Wei Dynasty. In AD 443, the barbarians who took over Toba's old territories, upper Heilongjiang River and northern Xing'an Ridge, came to see Toba Wei Emperor (Toba Tao) and told him that they found Toba ancestor's stone house, called 'Ga Xian Dong'. Toba Tao sent a minister called Li Chang to the stone house which was carved out of a natural cavern. In 1980s, this cavern was discovered as well as the inscriptions left by Li Chang.

Jinn Reuniting China

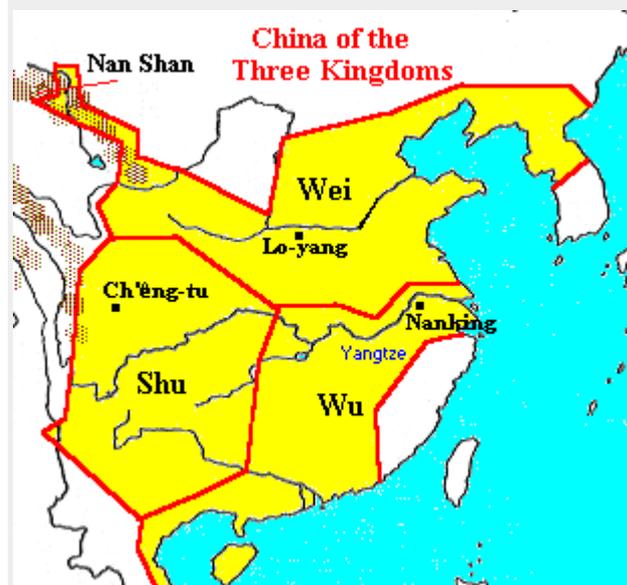
Jinn Dynasty was founded by Sima family. Sima Yi was originally a clerk under Han Prime Minister Cao Cao. Cao Cao used to cite the saints in ancient times to show his loyalty for the Han emperors, but his son (Cao Pi) usurped Han Dynasty and established Wei Dynasty, leading to the Three Kingdoms time period. Sima Yi would be responsible for fighting the wars with Shu-Han Dynasty and Wu Dynasty on behalf of Wei Dynasty for dozens of years. Sima Yi's elder son, Sima Shi, would depose Wei Emperor Cao Fang (reign AD 240-254). Sima Yi's junior son, Sima Zhao, would authorize his people (Jia Chong) in killing Wei Emperor Cao Mao (reign AD 254-260). Sima Zhao selected fifteen year old Cao Huan as the new Wei Emperor. Then, Sima Zhao dispatched General Zhong Hui and Deng Ai on a campaign against Shu Han Dynasty and destroyed Shu Han in AD 263. The last Shu Han emperor was made into Duke of Anle-gong (happiness).

Hence, Sima Zhao was conferred the title of Duke of Jinn and the post as '*xiangguo*', i.e., chief counsellor or prime minister. Shortly after that, Sima Zhao died, and his son, Sima Yan, succeeded him, and further pressured Cao Huan into abdication.

Sima Yan declared his Jinn Dynasty in AD 265, with Luoyang as the capital city. Sima Yan would be titled Jinn Emperor Wudi posthumously. Eighty year old Sima Fu, the brother of Sima Yi, would retire as a loyal minister of Wei Dynasty. Sima Yan, thinking that Wei was usurped by him as a result of lack of support among royal family kings and dukes, would confer eight kingships onto his kinsmen while all ex-kings of Wei Dynasty were downgraded into marquis. Sima

Yan also conferred the title of Duke of Lugong on Jia Chong for his contribution to usurpation. In AD 267, under the influence of Empress Yanghou and Jia Chong, Sima Yan (Emperor Jinn Wudi) made his retarded son as the Crown Prince. In AD 271, Tufa Xianbei first rebelled against Jin China. In AD 272, Jia Chong's daughter was married over to the retarded Jinn Crown Prince. In AD 280, a Jinn General would lead a column of ships down the Yangtze River and overthrow Wu Dynasty. China was finally reunited again.

Map linked from <http://www.friesian.com/>



JIN (JINN) DYNASTY

Jin (Jinn) Dynasty could be compared with the Roman Empire. In the Dark Age in Europe, Roman Empire experienced incessant waves of invasions by barbarians like the Alamanni, the Anglo-Saxons, the Franks, the Gepids, the Goths, the Lombards and the Vandals as well as the Huns and the Avars. It would be the so-called Huns who would be responsible for pushing the Germanic Ostrogoths and Visigoths in late 4th century. The Huns drove the Visigoths across the Danube into the Roman Empire and caused the chain reaction that led to the defeat of the Roman army under the Emperor Valens at Adrianople in 378 AD. In China, the Hunnic-Xianbei rebellions against Jinn Chinese led to the turmoils in northern China called 'Sixteen Nations' or 'Five Nomadic Groups Ravaging China'. Jinn China would be divided into two periods, Western Jinn Dynasty (AD 265-317) and Eastern Jinn (AD 317-420), with the latter ruling southern China, only. Here, I deliberately spelled Jin(4) into Jinn for sake of distinction from Jurchen Jin(1). Jin(4) is spelled Tsin in Wade-Giles.

The Hunnic-Xianbei rebellions were the result of internal turmoils among Jinn Chinese princes. The late Jinn China period was known as the 'Turmoils of Eight Horses' or 'Turmoils of Eight Kings' (Ba Wang Zhi Luan) because the eight Jinn princes were named Sima, carrying the last character 'ma' (meaning 'horse'). From AD 291 onwards, under the instigations of empresses, Jinn Court underwent numerous coups. The Sima princes started their wars as a result of the manipulation by Empress Jia who was married to the retarded son of Jinn Emperor Wudi. When Sima princes almost finished off each other, a border general at today's Beijing, Wang Jun, would collude with Xianbei in the attempt of fighting Jinn Court. Liu Yuan, a Hun hostage at Jinn Court, would be released for organizing anti-Xianbei forces among the Southern Huns. Soon after that, Liu Yuan proclaimed the founding of Hunnic Han Dynasty (AD 304-329) and went on to route two Jinn capitals of Luoyang and Xi'an, respectively. In AD 308, Liu Yuan captured Luoyang, the capital of the Western Jinn Dynasty, and caught the emperor. In AD 316, he routed the new Jinn emperor in Chang'an (present Xi'an). The Western Jinn Dynasty lasted fifty-one years with four emperors on the throne. China endured disunity for 272 years thereafter. A

Jinn prince, Sima Rui, had earlier crossed the Yangtze River, and he proclaimed Jinn Chinese Court in Nanking in AD 317, i.e., Eastern Jinn Dynasty.

In northern China, the time period called 16 Nations (AD 304-420) would be started already. Chinese chronology set the year of AD 304 as the start of this period. Cheng Han (AD 301-347) of Di(1) nomadic nature already took over Sichuan Province by AD 301. 16 Nations (AD 304-420) were comprised of various nomadic groups of people, Huns, Jiehu, Xianbei (including Wuhuan & Toba), Qiang, & Di. A Jiehu nomad under Hunnic Han (alternatively named Zhao) Dynasty would set up Posterior Zhao Dynasty. Ran Min, the adopted son of Shi Le, would kill all Jiehu and set up a Wei Dynasty, alternatively called Ran Wei. Some Chinese general on the Silk Road would set up Anterior Liang (AD 317-376). A Xianbei by the name of Murong Jun would rebel against Ran Min's Ran Wei, caught Ran Min, and set up Anterior Yan (AD 337-370). Murong Jun's brother, Murong Chui, would defeat the northern expedition led by Eastern Jinn China's Heng Wen, but Murong Chui was not trusted by the nephew emperor. Hence, Murong Chui fled to Fu Jian's Di (1) nomads. Fu Jian, whose ancestor served under Jiehu, would defeat Anterior Yan and set up Anterior Qin (AD 351-394). After the fall of Di's Anterior Qin, Xianbei re-established Posterior Yan (AD 384-409) and Qiangs set up Posterior Qin (AD 384-417). Among Western Xianbei, Qifu would set up Western Qin (AD 385-431), and Tufa would set up Southern Liang (AD 397-414). Numerous statlets, like Posterior Liang, Northern Liang, Southern Yan, Western Liang, Hunnic Xia and Northern Yan would follow. Ultimately, the Tobas, who were of Xianbei heritage, took over northern China and assumed power in northern China after defeating Xianbei, and Huns. Toba would set up their Toba Wei or Northern Wei Dynasty, lasting through AD 386-534, till it split into Eastern Wei (AD 534-550) and Western Wei (AD 535-557).

Western Jinn Dynasty

Jinn Dynasty was founded by Sima family. Sima Yi was originally a clerk under Han Prime Minister Cao Cao. Cao Cao used to cite the saints in ancient times to show his loyalty for the Han emperors, but his son (Cao Pi) usurped Han Dynasty and established Wei Dynasty, leading to the Three Kingdoms time period. Sima Yi would be responsible for fighting the wars with Shu-Han Dynasty and Wu Dynasty on behalf of Wei Dynasty for dozens of years. Sima Yi's

elder son, Sima Shi, would depose Wei Emperor Cao Fang (reign AD 240-254). Sima Yi's junior son, Sima Zhao, would authorize his people (Jia Chong) in killing Wei Emperor Cao Mao (reign AD 254-260). Sima Zhao selected fifteen year old Cao Huan as the new Wei Emperor. Then, Sima Zhao dispatched General Zhong Hui and Deng Ai on a campaign against Shu Han Dynasty and destroyed Shu Han in AD 263. Last Shu Han emperor was made into Duke of Anle (happiness).

Hence, Sima Zhao was conferred the title of Duke of Jinn and the post as 'xiangguo', i.e., chief counsellor or prime minister. Shortly after that, Sima Zhao died, and his son, Sima Yan, succeeded him, and further pressured Cao Huan into abdication.

Sima Yan declared his Jinn Dynasty in AD 265, with Luoyang as the capital city. Sima Yan would be titled Jinn Emperor Wudi posthumously. Eighty year old Sima Fu, the brother of Sima Yi, would retire as a loyal minister of Wei Dynasty. Sima Yan, thinking that Wei was usurped by him as a result of lack of royal family kings and dukes, would confer eight kingships to his kinsmen while all ex-kings of Wei Dynasty were downgraded into marquis. Sima Yan also conferred the title of Duke of Lugong on Jia Chong for his contribution to usurpation. In AD 267, under the influence of Empress Yang and Jia Chong, Sima Yan (Emperor Jin Wudi) made his retarded son as the Crown Prince. In AD 271, Tufa Xianbei first rebelled against Jinn China. In AD 272, Jia Chong's daughter was married over to the retarded Jinn Crown Prince. In AD 280, A Jinn General would lead a column of ships down the Yangtze River and overthrow Wu Dynasty. China was finally reunited again.

16 NATIONS

The Hunnic-Xianbei rebellions against Jinn Chinese led to the turmoils in northern China called 'Sixteen Nations' or 'Five Nomadic Groups Ravaging China' (i.e., *Wu Hu Luan*

Cheng Han	Di 301-347
-----------	------------

Zhong Hua). The rebellions were the result of internal turmoils among Jinn Chinese princes. The late Jinn China period was known as the 'Turmoils of Eight Sima Kings'. The eight Jinn princes were named Sima, carrying the last character 'ma' (meaning 'horse'). When Sima princes almost finished off each other, Wang Jun, a border general at today's Beijing, would collude with Xianbei in the attempt of fighting Jinn Court. Liu Yuan, a Hun hostage at Jinn Court, would be released for organizing anti-Xianbei forces among the Southern Huns. Soon after that, Liu Yuan proclaimed the founding of Hunnic Han Dynasty (AD 304-329), and went on to route two Jinn capitals of Luoyang and Xi'an, respectively. Shi Le, a Jiehu under Hunnic Han (alternatively named Zhao) Dynasty, would set up Posterior Zhao Dynasty. Ran Min, the adopted son of Shi Le, would kill all Jiehu and set up a Wei Dynasty, alternatively called Ran Wei. Some Chinese general on the Silk Road would set up Anterior Liang (AD 317-376). A Xianbei by the name of Murong Jun would rebel against Ran Min's Ran Wei Dynasty, caught Ran Min live, and set up Anterior Yan (AD 337-370). Murong Jun's brother, Murong Chui, would defeat the northern expedition led by Eastern Jinn China's Heng Wen. But Murong Chui was not trusted by the nephew emperor. Hence, Murong Chui fled to Fu Jian's Di[1] nomads. Fu Jian, whose ancestor served under Jiehu, would defeat Anterior Yan Dynasty and set up Anterior Qin (AD 351-394). After the fall of Anterior Qin, Xianbei re-established Posterior Yan (AD 384-409) and Qiangs set up Posterior Qin (AD 384-417). Among Western Xianbei, Qifu clan would set up Western Qin (AD 385-431), and Tufa clan would set up Southern Liang (AD 397-414). Numerous statelets, like Posterior Liang, Northern Liang, Southern Yan, Western Liang, Hunnic Xia and Northern Yan would follow.

16 Nations (AD 304-420) were comprised of various nomadic groups of people, Huns, Jiehu, Xianbei (including Wuhuan & Toba), Qiang, & Di[1]. Ultimately, the Tuoba, who were of Xianbei heritage, took over northern China and assumed

Hun Han (Zhao)	Hun 304-329
Anterior Liang	Chinese 317-376
Posterior Zhao	Jiehu 319-352
Anterior Qin	Di 351-394
Anterior Yan	Xianbei 337-370
Posterior Yan	Xianbei 384-409
Posterior Qin	Qiang 384-417
Western Qin ss	Xianbei 385-431
Posterior Liang	Di 386-403
Southern Liang	Xianbei 397-

power in northern China after defeating Xianbei and Huns. Toba would set up their Toba Wei or Northern Wei Dynasty, lasting through AD 386-534, till it split into Eastern Wei (AD 534-550) and Western Wei (AD 535-557). While Chinese chronology set the year of AD 304 as the start of the 16 Nations time period, Cheng Han (AD 301-347) of Di[1] nomadic nature already took over Sichuan Province by AD 301. Not included in the sixteen nations would be the so-called Ran Wei Dynasty set up by Ran Min, the adopted son of Shi Le the Jiehu ruler. Ran Min at one time killed about 200 thousand Jiehu and history said he killed whoever looked like Jiehu because of high nose bridge. Among the 16 nations, Anterior Liang (AD 317-376), Western Liang (AD 400-421) and Northern Yan (AD 409-436) were ruled by Chinese. One more statelet not included on the list would be that of Tuyuhun, a Xianbei tribal statelet, which lasted for about 350 years in history, from the end of Yongjia years (AD 310s) of Jinn Dynasty to the 3rd year of Longshuo (AD 663) of Tang Dynasty. Tuyuhun would be responsible for defeating last Hunnix Xia ruler, Helian Ding, and handed over Delian Ding to Toba Wei Dynasty for execution.

	414
Northern Liang	Hun 397- 439
Southern Yan	Xianbei 398- 410
Western Liang	Chinese 400- 421
Xia	Hun 407- 431
Northern Yan	Chinese 409- 436

In the following, I will expand on the topic of Sixteen Nations by expounding on the nature of nomadic groups and their respective statelet's histories.

Southern Huns became sedentary people after they were relocated to northern Chinese prefectures where they multiplied into millions to pose a threat to Jinn Dynasty (AD 265-316) in the 3-4th centuries. The impact of the nomads on northern China had been compared to that felt by Rome. We could probably sense the influx of the sinicized barbarians by calculating a rough figure for the Huns. General Cao Cao (Ts'ao Ts'ao) re-organized thirty thousand Hun tribes in today's Shanxi-Shaanxi provinces during the 2nd century AD. We could estimate the Huns to be having 50 persons per tribe, to yield about 1.5 million. As to the Chinese population, it had been in a state of fluctuating towards the peak of 50 million every dynastic cycle, with every dynastic change costing a loss of half the population at a minimum. In AD 280, China's population was estimated to

be 16.16 million in total. Two very good examples remain to achieve a more accurate estimation of the figures. One example would be Emperor Fu Jian's order to disseminate his Di[1] nomads among posts in northern China, and another example would be the extermination of Jiehu. Emperor Fu Jian, after a revolt of his kinsmen, decided to disperse his tribesmen across various military posts, and altogether 15,000 households were driven out of the capital. As to the Jiehu, Shi Min, an adopted son of Jiehu's Posterior Zhao, had at one time killed about 200,000 Jiehu.

By the end of Ts'ao Wei Dynasty, the title of 'marshal' for Hunnic governor was changed to 'duwei'. Leftside Tribe 'duwei' was allowed to control 10,000 households and they dwelled in Cishi County, Taiyuan; Leftside Tribe, 6,000 households, Qixian County; Southside Tribe, 3,000 households, Puzi County; Northside Tribe, 4,000 households, Xingxin County; and Central Tribe, 6,000 households, Daling County. (Here, we could add up the households to derive a total of 29,000 for the five Hunnic tribal groups. Using 4 persons per household, those Huns would number 116,000 heads.) After Jinn Dynasty was founded in AD 265, the Huns outside of the border suffered flooding, and hence 20,000 more households of Huns from Saini and Heinan were relocated to Yiyang, west of the Yellow River Bend. In AD 284, 29,300 Huns, led by Hutai Ah'hou, submitted to Jinn Chinese. The second year, another group of Huns, 11,500 Huns in total, came to Jinn China. *History of Jinn Dynasty* recorded that altogether 19 Hunnic tribal affiliations came to China. Among them, the Tuge (or Zhuge) tribal affiliation was the most elite, and the Hunnic 'chanyu' would be selected out of this group. The Huns enjoyed 4 big family names, Huyan, Po, Lan, and Qiao. Huyan could assume the title of leftside or rightside 'sun chasing kings', Po the title of leftside or rightside 'juqu', Lan leftside or rightside 'danghu', and Qiao leftside or rightside 'duhou'. Around 295s AD, the Huns began to rebel against Jinn Chinese authorities, killing officials and looting.

Replacing the Hunnic Han & Zhao Dynasty would be Posterior Zhao of the Jiehu nomads. Jiehu, according to *History of Toba Wei Dynasty*, obtained its name from the localities of Shangdang-Wuxiang-Jieshi in today's Shanxi Province. They were recorded to be an alternative tribe of the Huns. They should belong to those Southern Huns who had been dwelling in northern China during Han-Wei-Jinn times. I could not find a particular reason why ancient Chinese classified Jiehu as a separate entity of the five nomadic groups ravaging China. There must have existed some difference between the Huns and the Jiehu. The

only difference on record, between the Jiehu and the Huns, probably lie in the high nose bridge. When Shi Min, an adopted son of Shi Le, killed about 200,000 Jiehu nomads, he was recorded to have closed down the four gates of the Jiehu capital and then sorted out the Jiehu on basis of high nose bridge. Ran Min further ordered governor-generals across northern China to exterminate their Jiehu officers and soldiers.

In addition to the Huns, another group of people, Xianbei, would come into play. The Xianbei were the northern branch of the Donghu (or Tung Hu, the Eastern Hu), a proto-Tunguz group mentioned in Chinese histories. Xianbei and Wuhuan would be those people who fled to the two mountains, by the names of Xianbei and Wuhuan, when their ancestors accused Hunnic founder Modu of patricide and got defeated by Modu. By the first century, two major subdivisions of the Donghu had developed: the Xianbei in the north and the Wuhuan in the south. Apparently, Xianbei and Wuhuan people were located much to the center of Mongolia and northern China in earlier times. They lived to the east of the Huns. They were later relocated to today's Manchuria by Han Emperor Wudi for segregation from the Huns, and hence they inherited the ancient name of Donghu, in my opinion. Xianbei could be differentiated into i) Greater Xianbei under Budugeng, ii) Lesser Xianbei under Kebineng, and iii) Manchurian Xianbei. (An alternative school of thought stated that Xianbei people were comprised of the Chinese coolie who fled from Qin Emperor Shihuangdi's order to build the Great Wall at the northern borders.)

The Huns suffered setbacks under constant Han Chinese attacks, and they split into Southern Huns and Northern Huns, with Southern Huns subject to Chinese. The weakened Huns provided a vacuum for the Xianbei (or Hsien-pei in Wade-Giles) to move in in the middle of 1st century AD. The Xianbei expanded their territories, and they took over most of the northern territories held by the Huns previously. The Xianbei mixed up with the Huns. The Hunnic Xia Dynasty, established by Helian Bobo, was said to be of a mingle nature, called 'Tie Fu'. The *Tie Fu* Huns were born of Xianbei mother and Hunnic Father. The Xianbei and the Wuhuan used mounted archers in warfare, and they had been good mercenaries for the Han Chinese and the Wei Chinese. Among General Ts'ao Ts'ao columns of army against the Shu State during the three Kingdoms Period (AD 220-280), many happened to be the Xianbei nomads wearing stirrups. Later, in General Liu Yu's armies, Xianbei warriors using long spears called 'shuo' could be found as well.

There appeared a Xianbei chieftan called Tanshikui (reign AD 156-181) who established a Xianbei alliance by absorbing dozens of thousands of Huns. The Tanshikui alliance disintegrated after the death of Tanshikui. (The later Khitans were said to be descendants of Tanshikui Xianbei.) By the time of Three Kingdoms Period (AD 220-280), the Wuhuan nomads had taken control of today's Hebei Province and Peking areas. Ts'ao Ts'ao broke a new Xianbei alliance by sending an assassin to kill a Xianbei chieftan called Kebi'neng. Warlord Yuan Shao campaigned against the Wuhuan and controlled three prefectures of Wuhuan nomads. After Ts'ao Ts'ao defeated Yuan Shao, Yuan's two sons, Yuan Shang and Yuan Xi fled to seek refuge with the Wuhuan. Ts'ao Ts'ao campaigned against the Wuhuan, killed a chieftan called Tadun (with same last character as Hunnic Chanyu Modu), and took over the control of southern Manchuria. (The later Xi people were said to be descendants of Tadun Wuhuan.)

The demise of Han Dynasty saw Xianbei and Wuhuan taking over the old territories from the Huns in the northern borders as well as invading into Korea Peninsula. Chen Shou commented that Ke'bineng Xianbei had at one time covered the territories from the Liao River of Manchuria in the east to Yunzhong/Wuyuan in the west. Xianbei had prospered after Cao Cao conquered their kinsmen, i.e., Wuhuan. Wuhuan was absorbed by both Cao Cao and Xianbei, and its name disappeared thereafter, only to re-emerge in 10th century war with Khitans.

Several Wuhuan chieftans enjoyed the conferral of a title called *Da Ren*, namely, 'high-ranking person'. They included Qiuliju (Liaoxi Wuhuan *Da Ren*, with 5000 households), Nanlou (Shanggu Wuhuan *Da Ren*, with 9000 households), Supuyan (Liaodong Wuhuan *Da Ren*, with thousands of households) and Wuyan (You-beiping Wuhuan *Da Ren*, with 800 households), were controlled by a Han Chinese rebel governor called Zhang Chun of Zhongshan Prefecture. Han Emperor Lingdi (r. 168-189) assigned Liu Yu as governor-general of Youzhou (Beijing) and Liu Yu hired some nomads to have Zhang Chun killed. After the death of Chieftan Louban, an adopted son called Tadun (Tadu) took over the chieftan post. Tadun assisted Yuan Shao in the wars on Gongsun Zan. At one time during the Three Kingdoms time period, Yuan Shao had pacified three prefectures of Wuhuan and heavily recruited them as mercenary cavalry. Yuan Shao privately conferred the title of 'Chanyu' on Wuhuan chieftans in the name of Han court. When the son of Wuhuan Chieftan Qiuliju grew up, he would

compete with Tadun for power. A Chinese by the name of Yan Rou (who enjoyed trust among Wuhuan-Xianbei for his spending childhood years with the barbarians) would kill the Chinese 'xiaowei' (colonel) in charge of Wuhuan and usurped the post. Yuan Shao retained Yan Rou as the 'Wuhuan Colonel'. Cao Cao later defeated Tadu (Tadun) who offered asylum to two sons of Yuan Shao. Cao Cao won over Yan Rou when he campaigned against Wuhuan in AD 206. Wuhuan chieftans were all decapitated when they fled to Liaodong (east Liaoning Province) for asylum. Over 10,000 Wuhuan households under Yan Rou would relocate to China under the order of Cao Cao. Wuhuan people would serve Cao Cao as mercenary cavalry.

Two Xianbei tribal groups came into play, and this will include the Lesser Xianbei under Ke'bineng and Greater Xianbei under Budugeng and his brother Fuluohan. This is in addition to Manchurian Xianbei. Ke'bineng heavily employed Chinese defectors and utilized Chinese weaponry and language. Ke'bineng had at one time assisted Cao Cao in cracking down on Tian Ying Rebellion, but he also rebelled against Cao Cao and Cao Wei several times. Cao Cao once sent Marquis Yanling to defeat Ke'bineng and cause him flee outside of Chinese border. In AD 219, Ke'bineng sent an emissary, with tributes of horses, to last Han Emperor Xiandi who was under Cao Cao protection. Cao Wei Emperor Wendi conferred Ke'bineng the title of King of Fuyi (attached loyalty). Beginning from AD 221, several times, Ke'bineng repatriated Cao Wei Chinese back to Chinese territories. Ke'bineng rebelled against Cao Wei Chinese again because Tian Yu interfered in Ke'bineng wars with both Eastern Xianbei under Suli and Xianbei Chieftan under Budugeng. Ke'bineng complained about this to General Xianyu Fu, mentioning the fact that his brother was killed by Budugeng. Ke'bineng said he was recommended for the post by Yan Rou, he was grateful to Chinese and he did not want to rebel against Chinese simply because Tian Yu was giving him troubles. Ke'bineng boasted of over 100,000 cavalry. A Wuhuan chieftan at Dai Prefecture, by the name of Nengchendi, surrendered to Budugeng but also asked for protection from Ke'bineng. When the two Xianbei chieftans converged for controlling the Wuhuan, Ke'bineng killed Fuluohan and took over the Xianbei people led by Fuluohan's son, Xie-guini. Hence, two Xianbei tribes warred with each other. Cao Wei Emperor Wendi (Cao Pi) conferred Tian Yu the post of Wuhuan Captain with extra authority over Xianbei people, and Tian Yu had his office situated at Changping (near Beijing). Ke'bineng would defeat all tribes including Wuhuan, extending their territories from Yunzhong & Wuyuan north of Shanxi border all the way to Manchuria.

Ke'bineng defeated two Chinese generals, Tian Yu and Bi Gui. The other chieftan, Budugeng, relocated to Taiyuan and Yanmen with his over 10,000 households. Budugeng further sent a messenger to his niece Xie-guini and caused Xie-guini defect from Ke'bineng. By AD 224, Budugeng sought vassalage with Cao Wei Emperor Wendi. In AD 228, Tian Yu's emissary to Xianbei was killed by Ke'bineng's son-in-law. Hence, Tian Yu dispatched Pudou (Western Xianbei Chieftan) and Xie-guini to attack Ke'bineng as a retaliation. When Ke'bineng encircled Tian Yu with 30,000 cavalry, Governor-General of Shanggu, Yan Zhi (Yan Rou's brother), went to see Ke'bineng and persuaded Ke'bineng into a ceasefire. Later, the new governor-general of Youzhou, Wang Xiong, was conferred the post of Wuhuan Colonel. Ke'bineng, several times, expressed loyalty to Wang Xiong. In AD 233, Ke'bineng won back Budugeng by means of an inter-marriage. Budugeng ordered Xie-guini to go back and serve under Ke'bineng, pillaging Chinese prefecture of Bingzhou. General Qin Lang counter-attacked, and Xie-guini surrendered and was conferred the title of King of Guiyi (i.e., returning loyalty) and the land of Bingzhou. Later, Budugeng was killed by Ke'bineng. Ke'bineng ordered his son go to Loufan to fight the wars with General Su Shang and Dong Bi (both under Governor Bi Gui of Bingzhou) and killed the two. During Qinglong Era, about 235 AD, Cao Wei Emperor Mingdi (Cao Rui) took the advice of Wang Xiong and had Ke'bineng assassinated by someone called Han Long. The brother of Ke'bineng was selected as the chieftan. In southern Manchuria, Eastern Xianbei enjoyed more head-count than Ke'bineng Xianbei. There would exist chieftans like Suli, Mijia and Jueji in Liaoxi (western Liaoning Prov), Youbeiping (northwest of Beijing) and Yuyang. Jueji's son was conferred the title of King Qinhan (befriending Han), and Suli's brother, Chengluegui, succeeded the King title, too.

The Xianbei nomad, with major tribes of Murong, Yuwen, Duan, would establish many short-lived successive Yan statelets along the Chinese frontier and in northern China. Ultimately, the Toba (T'o-pa in Wade-Giles), a subgroup of the Xianbei, who migrated to modern China's Shanxi Province, would reunite China under Toba Wei Dynasty. In AD 443, the barbarians who took over Toba's old territories, upper Heilongjiang River and northern Xing'an Ridge, came to see Toba Wei Emperor (Toba Tao) and told him that they found Toba ancestor's stone house, called 'Ga Xian Dong'. Toba Tao sent a minister called Li Chang to the stone house which was carved out of a natural cavern. In 1980s, this cavern was discovered as well as the inscriptions left by Li Chang.

Toba Xianbei was said to be a group of people who dwelled to the northeastern-most of all Xianbei, near today's northern segment of Da Xing'an Ridge. The Eastern Xianbei would include tribes like Yuwen, Murong and Duan, while the Western Xianbei would include Qifu & Tufa (to mutate into Tubo in Chinese and Tibet in English). The early Eastern Xianbei people were closely allied with the Koguryo people in the areas of today's Manchurian-Korean border. The Xianbei people were said to be related to the Tungus, the same as later Malgal (ancestors of later Jurchens), Puyo, Koguryo, Po'hai (Parhae), Khitans, and Jurchens. Do note that ancient statelet of Sushen, bordering the Japan Sea, had long existed at Zhou times.

By the end of the fourth century, the region between the Huai River and the Gobi, including much of modern Xinjiang, was dominated by the Toba. The word "To" means earth and "Ba" means descendants in northern Chinese dialect. Toba nomads are said to be a branch of the Xianbei nomads, the proto-Tunguz people. According to *History Of Toba Wei Dynasty*, the Tobas claimed heritage from the junior son of the Yellow Emperor. The Yellow Emperor was said to represent the virtue of 'earth', one of the five forms of materials in ancient Chinese metaphysics. Further, it is claimed that the Tobas were not recorded in Chinese history because the ancestors of Tobas did not want to join the ranks of the Huns etc in pillaging China. Toba Xianbei, who claimed heritage from Huangdi, did not consider themselves the same barbarians as other Xianbei. While Toba looked down upon Huns, Turks and etc, they did not demonize their Xianbei compatriots. According to *History Of Toba Wei Dynasty*, Toba people moved out of the Xing'an Ridge; their ancestors left the forest for the Huron Lake; and then, with guidance of a semi-ox semi-horse animal, they walked out of the marshlands and came to the territories between the Yingshan Mountain and the Yanshan Mountain.

In earlier times of Western Jinn Dynasty, Tobas were befriended by a Chinese border general called Liu Kun whose strategy was to "fight the aliens via the aliens". Liu Kun had requested with Western Jinn emperor for the authorization to have the Tobas settle down in today's Yanmenguan Pass, an area called the Dai prefecture in Qin Empire's times. Liu even sent his son to the Tobas as a hostage. After the death of Liu Kun in the hands of Liu's Xianbei ally in today's Beijing area, the Tobas would assert themselves over the other nomads. Between A.D. 338 and 376, in the Shanxi area, the Toba established control over the region as the Northern Wei Dynasty. Taking advantage of wars which weakened

the Xianbei, the Qiangs and the Chinese, respectively, namely, 1) the northern expedition by General Liu Yu on both Xianbei and Qiang, and 2) the war waged by Hunnic Xia (AD 407-431) on Liu Yu's Chinese in Xi'an, the Tobas turned out to be the last beneficiary in northern China. General Liu Yu of Jinn Dynasty first attacked the Xianbei in today's Jiangsu-Shandong provinces, and then attacked the Qiangic nomads in today's Luoyang-Xi'an areas. However, General Liu was eager to return to Nanking to usurp the Jinn Dynasty, and his army in Luoyang-Xi'an areas were defeated by the Hunnic Xia. The Hunnic Xia, however, would soon be replaced by the Tobas who had steadily built up their power base in today's Shanxi-Hebei areas. The Hunnic Xia had once requested aid from another Hunnic people, the Ruruans in the Altai Mountains, but the Tobas had been able to defeat them both.

Qiang: In the sections on Hun and Turk, we had covered early Huns, Turks, Xianbei and Toba extensively. The Qiangs are covered in details at Tibetan section. The origin of the Qiangic people could be traced to the Fiery Lord (Yandi) Tribe which carried the name of 'Jiang'. A famous linguist believed that Qiang was a mutation of 'Jiang'. Early peoples in western China had another blending, the 'San Miao' peoples. According to Sima Qian, the 'Sanmiao' people were mostly relocated to western China to guard against the western nomads. Lord Shun relocated them to western China as a punishment for their aiding the son of Lord Yao (Dan Zhu) in rebellion. To the west of today's Dunhuang, Gansu Province was a mountain named 'San Wei Shan' (namely, the Sanmiao Precarious Mountain) where the Three Miao peoples were exiled.

People in Gansu-Qinghai areas had still one more blending, the Xianbei peoples. A group of Eastern Xianbei, who split with the later founder of Anterior Yan (AD 337-370), would set up a statelet called Tuyuhun which competed with Tibetans well into 7th century. Western Xianbei would set up Western Qin (AD 385-431) and Southern Liang (AD 397-414).

Ancient classics stated that the word 'qiang' means the shepards in the west. The book which was called 'Continuum To Hou Han Shu' stated that the Qiangs were alternative race of the Jiang surname tribes of San Miao. There were 150 different groups of Qiangic peoples, widely dispersed among Sichuan, Gansu, Qinghai and Shenxi provinces. The Qiang people differentiated into two groups in Latter Han Dynasty, Western Qiang (Xi Qiang) and Eastern Qiang (Dong Qiang). *New History Of Tang Dynasty* said the Tibetans belonged to the Xi Qiang, namely,

the western Qiangic peoples. However, *New History Of Tang Dynasty* also cited a mutation of pronunciation for the name of founder of Southern Liang (a Xianbei Statelet, AD 397-414), Tufa Lilugu. What it said is that the Southern Liang's last name, Tufa, had mutated into Tubo in Chinese pronunciation or English Tibet. Western history books, whenever referring to the Qiangs, Di nomads, and the later Tanguts (Danxiang Qiangs), would claim that those peoples were Tibetan in nature. The statelet of Tibet would be a matter of 7th century, however.

We will now return to the topics on the Di(1) nomads. The pronunciation for the character Di(1) is different from another character for the ancient group of northern barbarians that came to be known as the ancestors of the Huns, Di(2). The two characters were written different as well. Di, together with Qiangs, had long existed at the times of three dynasties, Xia-Shang-Zhou. Ancient classics, *Shi Jing*, recorded that "Di & Qiang dared not stop paying pilgrimage to Xia-Shang-Zhou dynasties." The difference between Di and Qiang is not clear. Records show that Di belonged to alternative race of the ancient Xi Yi, namely, western Yi barbarians. They were alternatively called 'Bai Ma', i.e., white horse, and 'Bai Di', i.e., white Di. During Qin-Han times, the Di people resided in the areas south of Qishan (Zhou ancestral land) and Long (Gansu Province) and west of Hanzhong (the areas between Sichuan and Shaanxi) and Chuan (Sichuan Province). Han Emperor Wudi sent General Guo Chang/Wei Guang against them and set up the Wudu Commandary in the Di land. The Di people fled to the mountains and two groups were known, Qing Di (Green Di) and Bai-Di(1) or Bai-ma-di (White Horse Di). The Di people were said to be descendants of Xi-nan-yi, i.e., southwestern aliens. Ancient classics mentioned that Di(1) meant for the sheeps. (The word 'qiang' means the shepards in the west.) In early AD 200s, a Di chieftan called Yang Teng was named Duke of Qiuchi. Ts'ao Wei conferred his descendant, Yang Qianwan, the title of King of Di. A nephew of the Yang family, Linghu Maosou, was conferred the title of King Youxianwang by Western Jinn Emperor Huidi (reign 290-306) and the title of King Zuoxianwang by Western Jin Emperor Mindi (reign 313-317). Internal killings among Di family ensued. The Di people sought vassalage with Shi Hu's Jiehu Posterior Zhao Dynasty, Eastern Jinn Dynasty, and Fu Jian's Anterior Qin Dynasty. In AD 371, another Di, Fu Jian of Anterior Qin Dynasty, conquered the Qiuchi Di and relocated all of them to Guanzhong, the areas of Xi'an, Shenxi Province. After the death of Fu Jian in the hands of the Qiangs, a Di descendant called Yang Ding, would lead his people to Longyou, the areas to the west of

Gansu Province, and declared himself Duke of Qiuchi. In AD 389, Yang Ding occupied the Qinzhou Prefecture and declared himself King of Longxi (i.e., west of Gansu). (Note that ancient China divided today's Gansu Province into Longxi, Qinzhou and other prefectures.) Fugou would later be killed by Qifu Qian'gui of Western Qin Dynasty. Yang Ding's son, Yang Shen, would later seek vassalage with Western Jinn Dynasty. Yang Shen would be conferred the title of King of Chengdu by Liu Yu, the founder of Liu Song Dynasty. Yang Shen told his son, Yang Xuan, to always seek vassalage with Southern Chinese regimes. Yang Xuan would be conferred the title of King of Nan Qin (i.e., south of Qinzhou Prefecture). Beginning from AD 500, Di people began to seek vassalage with Toba Wei Dynasty in the north. Wars between Toba Wei Dynasty and Southern Liang erupted over the control of Di people. Below, we will concentrate on Di's Anterior Qin Dynasty, only.

Hunnic Han & Zhao

Hunnic Han & Zhao Dynasty

Hunnic Han & Zhao Dynasty (AD 304-329)

When Western Jinn Dynasty (AD 265-316) reunited China, Hunnic King Zuoxianwang sent his son Liu Yuan to Jinn Dynasty to be a hostage, which was a norm laid out by Ts'ao in late Han period. Liu Yuan spent most of his time in Chinese court and was a very ambitious man suspected by one Chinese minister as well as protected by another minister. When Liu Yuan's father died, he was allowed to go back to the Hun tribes for the funeral in AD 304. Then, he returned to the court to fulfill his mission as a hostage. When a Jinn Dynasty border general (Wang Jun) invited the Xianbei and Wuhuan nomads (proto-Tunguz people) in attacking Jinn Chinese capital, Liu Yuan requested with Jinn emperor to go back to the Hun tribes for organizing counter-Xianbei forces. Liu Yuan returned to the Huns in AD 308, and helped Jinn defeat the Xianbei and the Jinn rebel Wang Jun. Thereafter, Liu Yuan returned to Jinn court and was appointed Dadudu (i.e., "grand marshal") of the five Hunnic Tribal Groups. In AD 311, Hunnic King Youxianwang Liu Xuan proposed that Liu Yuan proclaim to be the great Hunnic emperor. Liu Yuan, who, like all other Hunnic kings, had adopted the family name "Liu" of Han emperors, agreed to the proposal and

proclaimed the founding of the dynasty of Hunnic Han, meaning a posterior dynasty of Han against Jinn (AD 265-316) and Wei (AD 220-265) which usurped Han, in the sense of succession. Liu stated, "The great Chinese saint, Lord Yu, was originally a Xirong (western Rong) nomad and the Zhou kings (1122? BC - 221 B.C.) were from the Dongyi (eastern Yi) barbarians, where is the logic that the emperors must be of the same ethnical origin?" After Liu Yuan's death, the Huns under Liu Yuan's son, Liu Cong took over Jinn capital Luoyang in AD 311; the Western Jinn selected a new emperor one year later and re-established its capital in Chang'an (today's Xi'an, Shaanxi province), only to be sacked again in AD 316. Hence began the historical time period called "Five Nomads Ravaging China", with the five nomads being Huns, Jiehu, Xianbei (including Wuhuan & Toba), Qiang, & Di.

The Hun's Han Dynasty did not last long. The same palace power struggles between queens and princes, which plagued the Western Jinn dynasty just years earlier, would reemerge. The father-in-law of Liu Can, the new Hunnic Han emperor, would kill Liu Can and dug up the tombs of Liu Yuan and Liu Cong. Prime Minister Liu Zhuo (cousin of the Hunnic Han emperor) and General Shi Le (a Jie or Jiehu nomad, from one of the five nomad groups) led the troops to crack down on the palace rebellion. Later, Liu Zhuo would change the dynasty name to Zhao from Han in AD 319. General Shi Le's ambition led to the declaration of a separate Zhao Dynasty (AD 319-352), called Posterior Zhao Dynasty in contrast with Liu Zhuo's Zhao Dynasty. By AD 326, Shi Le's Posterior Zhao destroyed Liu Zhuo's Zhao, ending the small Hunnic empire established in China's central plains spanning Henan and Shanxi-Shaanxi provinces.

Five Nomads Ravaging China

By AD 317, all of China north of the Yangtze River/Huai River had been overrun by nomadic peoples: the Xianbei from the north; some remnants of the Xiongnu from the northwest; and the Qiang people of Gansu and Tibet from the west and the southwest. Chaos prevailed as these groups warred with each other. The Chinese south of the Yangtze had failed to reconquer the northern region. General Zu Di crossed the Yangtze River but failed to hold on to the gain. The notable thing about this time period is that there were still several Chinese strongholds in today's Hebei/Shandong provinces and in the western Silk Road corridor, that were cut off from the court in southern China.

Ran Wei

Ran Wei Dynasty

Shi Le's son, Shi Hu, would be killed by his own general Ran Min (a Chinese), and Jiehu nomad's Posterior Zhao (AD 319-352) was destroyed in AD 352. Ran Min's Ran Wei Dynasty (short-lived to be on the list of 16 Nations) would be destroyed by Xianbei nomad's Anterior Yan (AD 337-370) Dynasty. Di nomad's Anterior Qin (AD 351-394) would destroy Xianbei's Anterior Yan in AD 370. Di nomad's Qin would try to attack the Eastern Jinn Dynasty (AD 317-420) south of the Huai River. After losing the battle to the Jinn Chinese under general Xie Xuan and Xie An in AD 384, two Qin generals (of the Qiang and the Xianbei origins, respectively) overthrew the Di nomad's Qin (AD 351-394) and set up separate Posterior Qin Dynasty (AD 384-417) and Posterior Yan Dynasty (AD 384-410). Eastern Jinn Dynasty's army, under general Liu Yu, would renew northern expeditions and finally destroyed the Posterior Qin Dynasty of the Qiangs (AD 384-417) and Posterior Yan Dynasty of Xianbei (AD 384-409) south of the Yellow River and today's Xi'an area.

Southern China: In AD 420, General Liu Yu (who claimed Han herotage) of Eastern Jinn Chinese would usurp the power by proclaiming the Southern Song Dyasty (AD 420-479) in place of Eastern Jinn Dynasty. There would appear three more Han Chinese dynasties, namely Southern Qi (AD 479-502), Southern Liang (AD 502-557), and Southern Chen (AD 557-589). The last one, Chen, would be swallowed by the Sui Dynasty (AD 581-618) which had replaced the nomadic dynasties in Northern China.

Han Dynasty had inherited the domain of the Qin Empire, and it would wage zigzag warfare with the Huns for centuries, but a breach similar to the Visigoths destroying the Roman Empire would not come till the 4th century when the so-called 'Five Nomads' ravaged China as a result of disintegration of Western Jinn Dynasty (AD 265-316). Historians blamed it on General Ts'ao Ts'ao who relocated the Huns back to their homeland in Taiyuan, Shanxi Province during the Three Kingdoms Period (AD 220-280). By AD 317, all of China north of the Yangtze River/Huai River had been overrun by nomadic peoples: the Xianbei from the north; some remnants of the Xiongnu (Huns) from the northwest; and the Qiang people of Gansu and Tibet from the west and the southwest. This situation was

last resolved by the Tobas who united northern China into the Wei Dynasty (AD 386-534).

That was a time of the 'melting pot' in northern China. But the separation along ethnic lines did exist. Before Toba, the Chinese had limited participation in the wars among the tribal states, and they were used as 'field armies' in later campaigns by the nomads. Except for a few strongholds along the Silk Road, the Chinese city-states like Beijing and others in Shanxi-Hebei-Shandong Provinces would fall into the hands of either Xianbei or Toba in a dozen years. The Xianbei and Toba nomads were once allies of those city-states in fighting against the Huns, Hehu and the Di-Qiang nomads who ravaged the Central China of Henan Province as well as the Western Province of Shaanxi. Chinese in Henan and Shaanxi Province had fled to the south in hordes, and they would be ancestors of today's Hakka in Sichuan-Guangdong-Fujian provinces.

Posterior Qin

Posterior Qin Dynasty of Qiang nomads

When General Liu Yu re-captured Chang'an during his northern campaigns and finally destroyed the Posterior Qin Dynasty of Qiang nomads(AD 384-417) and Posterior Yan Dynasty of Xianbei nomads(AD 384-409) , the local elderly people said to him that they had not seen Han clothes for one hundred years. Liu Yu would leave his teenage son in charge of Chang'an and ultimately lose Chang'an to the nomads again. Once the whole northern China was overrun, the remaining Chinese would have few alternatives living under alien rules. They would be prohibited from bearing arms in those nomadic states. At most, a few Chinese intellectuals acted as counsels (or prime ministers as you might call them) for the rulers of those nomadic states. When the Toba State of Wei decided to include the Chinese in its army ranks and the ruling officialdom, the so-called Toba conservatives staged a rebellion, ending in the slaughter of Chinese and the disintegration of Toba Wei into two separate states of Eastern Wei and Western Wei, to be usurped later by their Xianbei generals, respectively. The famous tribal names, like Murong (Mujong) and Yuwen, were the legacy of those Xianbei nomads who belonged to the group of Donghu or the Eastern Hu nomads.

First Forced Migration Of Northern Chinese

Scholar Luo Xianglin, in *History of Chinese Nationalities* (Chinese Culture Publishing Enterprise Co, Taipei, Taiwan, May 1953 edition), pointed out that turmoils in northern China led to three kinds of "liu [flow] min[people]": Qin-Yong Migrants from Shenxi & Gansu provinces, Si-Yu Migrants from Hebei & Henan provinces, and Qing-Xu Migrants from Shandong & Jiangsu provinces. Major factions and families of Eastern Jin Dynasty had originated Qing-Xu Migrants.

Those who remained in northern China often assembled soldiers and militia, built citadels and castles, and established semi-autonomous regimes. Those small pockets of Chinese regimes often cooperated with nomadic invaders for survival.

SOUTH-NORTH DYNASTIES

Continuing the section on Sixteen Nations would be the time period called South-North Dynasties. Most historians classified it as Southern-Northern Dynasties to emphasize that both the northern and southern dynasties were part of one whole China. The division between the two time periods will be the demise of Eastern Jin Dynasty (AD 317-420) and the usurpation by Eastern Jin General Liu Yu.

The Hunnic-Xianbei rebellions against Western Jin Chinese led to the turmoils in northern China called 'Sixteen Nations' or 'Five Nomadic Groups Ravaging China'. The rebellions were the result of internal turmoils among Jin Chinese princes. The late Jin China period was known as the 'Turmoils of Eight Horses' because the eight Jin princes were named Sima, carrying the last character 'ma' (meaning 'horse'). When Sima princes almost finished off each other, a border general at today's Beijing, Wang Jun, would collude with Xianbei in the attempt of fighting Jin Court. Liu Yuan, a Hun hostage at Jin Court, would be released for organizing anti-Xianbei forces among the Southern Huns. Soon after that,

Liu Yuan proclaimed the founding of Hunnic Han Dynasty (AD 304-329), and went on to route two Jin capitals of Luoyang and Xi'an, respectively. A Jiehu nomad under Hunnic Han (alternatively named Zhao) Dynasty would set up Posterior Zhao Dynasty. Ran Min, the adopted son of Shi Le, would kill all Jiehu and set up a Wei Dynasty, alternatively called Ran Wei. Some Chinese general on the Silk Road would set up Anterior Liang (AD 317-376). A Xianbei by the name of Murong Jun would rebel against Ran Min's Ran Wei, caught Ran Min, and set up Anterior Yan (AD 337-370). Murong Jun's brother, Murong Chui, would defeat the northern expedition led by Eastern Jin China's Heng Wen, but Murong Chui was not trusted by the nephew emperor. Hence, Murong Chui fled to Fu Jian's Di (1) nomads. Fu Jian, whose ancestor served under Jiehu's Posterior Zhao, would defeat Anterior Yan and set up Anterior Qin (AD 351-394). After the fall of Di's Anterior Qin, Xianbei re-established Posterior Yan (AD 384-409) and Qiangs would set up Posterior Qin (AD 384-417). Among Western Xianbei, Qifu would set up Western Qin (AD 385-431), and Tufa would set up Southern Liang (AD 397-414). Numerous statlets, like Posterior Liang, Northern Liang, Southern Yan, Western Liang, Hunnic Xia and Northern Yan would follow.

Eastern Jin Dynasty's army, under general Liu Yu, would renew northern expeditions and finally destroyed the Posterior Qin Dynasty of the Qiangs (AD 384-417) in Xi'an and Posterior Yan Dynasty of Xianbei (AD 384-409) south of the Yellow River area. Before this campaign, Southern Chinese had staged quite a few northern campaigns. Zu Di, organizing refugees and civilians with minimal Eastern Jin Court support, would cross the Yangtze to mount a campaign against nomads in the northern China. General Heng Wen would continue the campaigns to the north and he met Wang Meng who later served Anterior Qin ruler (Fu Jian).

General Liu Yu of Jin Dynasty first attacked the Xianbei in today's Jiangsu-Shandong provinces, and then attacked the Qiangic nomads in today's Luoyang-Xi'an areas. However, General Liu was eager to return to Nanking to usurp the Jin Dynasty, and his army in Luoyang-Xi'an areas were defeated by the Hunnic Xia. The Hunnic Xia, however, would soon be replaced by the Tobas who had steadily built up their power base in today's Shanxi-Hebei areas. The Hunnic Xia had once requested aid from another Hunnic people, the Ruruans in the Altai Mountains, but the Tobas had been able to defeat them both. Toba would set up their Toba Wei or Northern Wei Dynasty, lasting through AD 386-534, till it split into Eastern Wei (AD 534-550) and Western Wei (AD 535-557). Eastern Wei and

Western Wei would be usurped by two generals of Xianbei origin, respectively, who set up Northern Qi (AD 550-577) and Northern Zhou (AD 557-581). The three Toba Wei dynasties, plus Northern Qi and Northern Zhou, would be called Northern Dynasties (AD 386-581).

In AD 420, General Liu Yu (who claimed Han heritage) would usurp the power by proclaiming the Southern Song Dynasty (AD 420-479) in place of Eastern Jin Dynasty. In southern China, the so-called South Dynasties (AD 420-589) would include three more Han Chinese dynasties, namely Southern Qi (AD 479-502), Southern Liang (AD 502-557), and Southern Chen (AD 557-589). The last one, Chen, would be swallowed by the Sui Dynasty (AD 581-618) which had replaced the nomadic dynasties in Northern China.

Buddhism Taking Root In China

Toba Northern Wei Dynasty

In Jan of AD 386, Toba Gui, namely, Toba Wei Emperor Daowudi, declared the founding of Dai Dynasty. Three months later, he renamed it to Wei Dynasty. Toba Wei defeated Northern Liang Dynasty in AD 439 and reunited northern China.

Toba Western Wei Dynasty

Toba Eastern Wei Dynasty

Liu Song

Southern Qi Dynasty

Southern Liang Wei Dynasty

Southern Chen Dynasty

SUI - TANG DYNASTIES

With the unification of China by Sui Emperor Yang Jian in AD 589, the traces of the five nomadic groups had largely melted away. Both Emperor Yang Jian and later Tang Emperor Li Yuan were said to be semi-Toba. This would have to do with their families marrying with the Dugu family of Toba heritage. Dugu is a Tuoba [Toba or To'pa] name, with characters 'du' meaning lonely and 'gu' orphaned. Toba possessed a famous general called Dugu Xin who bore two daughters. Sui Emperor Wendi (Yang Jian) married with one of the Dugu daughters, and the other Dugu daughter was the mother of Tang Dynasty founder (Li Yuan). Toba considered themselves successors of Chinese culture, and their emperor Toba Hong had decreed that their royal family name be changed to 'Yuan' when he relocated his capital to Luoyang of Henan Prov. The only remaining trace of Toba, a sub-branch of Tungunzic Xianbei, would be the group who had mixed up with Di[1] and Qiang[1] nomads in today's Gansu-Qinghai-Ningxia area. They established a state called 'Tuyuhun' which would be in constant fights with the Tibetans for control of the area called 'Frontal Tibet', namely, today's Qinhai-Gansu Province during the Tang Dynasty.

Sui Dynasty, for its short life duration of 37 years and the despotic ruling of Sui Emperor Yangdi, was treated as part of the Northern Dynasties by Tang historian Li Yanshou. Similar to Qin Dynasty, Sui Dynasty had given itself away to the later Tang Dynasty as Qin did to later Han Dynasty. Tang Dynasty lasted 290 years thereafter, and it could be considered a great international empire in the scale of Rome and Greece. The Tang Dynasty was full of inter-racial exchanges, with Koreans (Heichichang-zi & Kao Hsien-chih), Turks (Geshu Han, Qibi Heli and Pogu Huai'en) and many other nomads serving as the generals in wars with the Turkic Khanates and the Arabs. One Japanese (Nakamaro) was given a post as a civil service official in the court. Arabs, Persians and other Central Asians constantly travelled to China, and some of them had stayed on in China for life and married Chinese women. (Note one interesting Tang law in regards to foreigners marrying Chinese women: The foreigners could marry Chinese women but they were not allowed to take Chinese women out of the country.) Numerous campaigns had brought the relocation of hundreds of thousands of Turkic tribesmen to the whole northern frontier as well as the capital city of

Chang'an. Tang army general Su Dingfang was famous for fighting on both the front in Oxus valley and on Korean Peninsula. Tang army heavily employed nomads, which eventually turned into An-Shi Rebellion. Famous Tang general Li Guangbi's father was said to be a Khitan. With the weakening of Tang, the alliance of Tibetans and Uygurs encroached upon the Tang territories, and even invaded Tang capital. The consequence of An-Shi Rebellion will be the abandonment of garrisons west of the Yellow River and the emergence of various governor-generals. When Tang Court was plagued by the eunuchs, Zhu Wen, who first betrayed peasant rebel leader Huang Chao, would lead an army against Tang capital and exterminate all eunuchs. Soon after that, Zhu Wen would usurp Tang Dynasty and start the era of Five Dynasties by proclaiming his Posterior Liang Dynasty. Three dynasties of Five Dynasties, in between Posterior Liang and Posterior Zhou, were of alien nature, founded by generals who belonged to a group of nomads called Shatuo (Sha'to), a Turkic tribe. That would be Posterior Tang (AD 923-936), Posterior Jin (AD 936-946) and Posterior Han.

Sui Dynasty

Northern Zhou (AD 557-581) Emperor Xuandi (Yuwen Yun), in order to indulge himself in leisure and sex, had decreed in AD 578 that his seven-year-old son (Yuwen Yan or Yuwen Chan) be on the throne. The first year of Dacheng Era became the first year of Daxiang Era. Xuandi had altogether four empresses, with the primary empress being the daughter of Yang Jian. The good thing about Xuandi is that he was Confucian enough in not taking over his step-mother who was an Ashina Turkic woman. Xuandi later grabbed the wife of Duke Xiyang-gong (Yuwen Wen) and made her into the fifth empress by killing the whole family of Yuwen Wen. Xuandi promised to marry over the daughter of King Zhao to Turkic khan as Princess Qianjin for sake of having Turks deliver Gao Shaoyi of former Northern Qi (AD 550-577). Xuandi also ordered campaign against Chen Dynasty (557-589) in the south.

Usurpation By Sui Dynasty (581-618)

When Xuandi died at the age of 22, after being in self-abdicated reign for less than three years, Yang Jian was made 'grand leftside prime minister' for assisting the young Emperor Jingdi (Yuwen Yan, reign AD 578-581). Yang Jian sent over Princess Qianjin to the Turks; Turkic Khan Tabo cheated Gao Baoyi out

for a hunting and delivered Gao into Yang Jian's hands; Gao was exiled to Sichuan by Yang. For sake of usurping Northern Zhou, Yang Jian would recall various Yuwen kings of Northern Zhou to the capital in the name of imperial burial. A Northern Zhou duke, Shuguo-gong Yuchi Jiong, would oppose Yang Jian. Yang Jian killed one Yuwen king (King of Bi, Yuwen Xian) of Yongzhou Prefecture. King of Zhao (Yuwen Zhao) failed to assassinate Yang Jian in a home banquet. Yuwen Zhao was being restricted to the residency in Chang'an. Hence, Yang Jian ordered that Grand General Yuan Zhou (who forced Yang Jian out of the banquet earlier) lay siege on the residencies of King Zhao/King Yue and slaughtered the two families. Duke Shuguo-gong Yuchi Jiong called upon various kings and governors to oppose Yang Jian, and contacted remnant Southern Liang (AD 502-557) lord for an alliance. Governor Wang Qian of Yizhou Prefecture in today's Sichuan Prov and Duke Yingyang-gong Sima Xiaonan joined Yuchi Jiong's rebellion.

Yang Jian dispatched Marshal Wei Xiaokuan to fight Yuechi Jiong at the Qinshui River (which originated from Shanxi Prov and flowed into Yellow River in Henan Prov). The son of Yuechi Jiong, Yuechi Dun, with 100,000 strong army, intended to attack Wei Xiaokuan when Wei's army were half crossing the river. But Wei Xiaokuan managed to cross the river and then dismantled the bridges to show to his soldiers that they had no way out but forward against the rebels. After being defeated, Yuechi Dun fled back to Ye-cheng city (Anyang, Henan Province). While two parties were fighting, civilians, in tens of thousands, were watching the fight in the sidelines. Wei Xiaokuan ordered that his soldiers shoot arrows at the civilians to make them panic and flee and then shouted that the enemy had fled. Yuechi Jiong soldiers were shaken by the fleeing crowd and hence Yuechi Jiong lost the battle 68 days after he first rebelled against Yang Jian. Wei Xiaokuan killed Yuechi Jiong and his son, and sent their heads to Yang Jian. Duke Yingyang-gong (Sima Xiaonan) fled to Chen Dynasty in the south. Governor Wang Qian of Yizhou Prefecture was betrayed by his own men to Yang Jian. Yang Jian then forced two remaining Northern Zhou kings to commit suicide, forced Northern Zhou Emperor Jingdi to confer the post of Prime Minister onto him, and upgraded the hereditary title of Duke Sui to King Sui. One year later, in AD 581, Yang Jian forced Northern Zhou Emperor Jingdi into abdication and declared the founding of Sui Dynasty (AD 581-618).

Sui Emperor Wendi (Yang Jian or Yang Chien, r. 581-604)

Sui's founder, Yang Chien (Jian), was said to be the descendant of a Han

Dynasty official called Yang Zheng, while Tang's founder, Li Yuan, was said to be the 7th grandson of the emperor of Western Liang (AD 400-421), one of the few Chinese nations among the nomadic "Sixteen Nations" preceding the North-South Dynasties (AD 386-589). Yang Jian and Li Yuan were relatives. Li Yuan's wife was the sister of Sui Dynasty's Empress Dugu.

Sui Emperor Yangdi (Yang Guang, r. AD 605-618)

Tang Dynasty

Tang Dynasty was noted for the same symptoms as Han Dynasty, i.e., empress intervention, eunuch power corruption, and warlord turmoils. Li Yuan was said to have rebelled against Sui Dynasty after he slept with Sui Emperor Yangdi's concubines in Jinyang Palace as a result of Li Shimin's plot in intoxicating his father for offending Sui Dynasty. Historian commented that Tang Dynasty emperors were all womanizers doomed in losing their throne to their wives or concubines. Cai Dongfan commented that Tang Emperor Taizong's admonition official Wei Zheng never mentioned abstinence in sex in his "Ten Admonitions". After the death of Empress Zhangsun (again a Toba woman), Tang Emperor Taizong took in a young girl called Wu Zhao, i.e., later Empress Wu Zetian, someone who would kill two of her four own sons for sake of usurping Tang Dynasty. Wu Zhao, being almost put to death by Tang Emperor Taizong for her affairs with heir Gaozong, had survived by begging to be a nun. After Tang Emperor Gaozong's enthronement, Wu Zhao was retrieved from the monastery. Tang Dynasty's decline would start with An-Shi Rebellion during Emperor Xuanzong's reign, with Concubine Yang Gui-fei being the scapegoat in history. Cai Dongfan called Tang emperors "turtles" for the apparent "incest" within the royal family.

Tang Emperor Gaozu (reign AD 618-626)

Sui Dynasty's demise was very much to do with its two defeats by Koguryo. Hundreds of thousands of Chinese never returned from Korean battlefield, and Koguryo erected monuments at the site of Sui Dynasty soldiers' mass graves. Dozen years later, Tang Emperor Taizong dispatched troops for dismantling Koguryo monuments at the site of Sui Dynasty soldiers' mass graves, scaring Koguryo King Jianwu into building walls from Fuyu in northeastern Korean

coast to the seaside in northwestern Korean coast. It would be in AD 668, during Tang Emperor Gaozong's reign, that China would defeat Koguryo, with 30000 Koguryo people exiled to Yangtze and Huai-shui River area as well as Shan-na (i.e., southern China).

Over a dozen rebellions erupted against Sui Dynasty. Tang Dynasty's founder, Li Yuan, rebelled against Sui Dynasty as a result of his son Li Shimin's mastermind. Li Yuan, for sake of fighting Sui Dynasty, would collude with Turks. Li Yuan would sent his minister (Liu Wenjing) to the Eastern Turks (ruled by Khan Shibi) for borrowing 2000 horses and 500 cavalry.

At this time, Turkic Khan Shibi subjugated Tuyuhun in Gansu-Qinghai, Gaochang near Turpan, Khitans and Shiwei in northwestern Manchuria and eastern Mongolia. Khan Shibi intervened in China's civil wars and assisted Li Yuan's rivals, such as Liu Wuzhou & Liang Shidu. After the death of Khan Shibi, his brother, Chuluo Khan (same name as Chuluo Khan during Sui Dynasty time period but a different person), would be enthroned. Chuluo Khan assisted another Tang rival, Wang Shichong. Later, Chuluo Khan retrieved ex-Sui Empress Xiaohou and ex-Sui royal family from still another Tang rival called Dou Jiande. Chuluo Khan erected an ex-Sui royal member as the new Sui King. Chuluo Khan was determined to fight Tang on behalf of dethroned Sui Dynasty, saying that he wanted to return favor to Sui for Sui's helping his ancestors in the restoration of the Turkic khanate. Later, Chuluo Khan died and his brother, Khan Xieli, would be enthroned. Khan Xieli was dissuaded from an alliance with another Tang rival called Xue Ju. Khan Xieli would erect his cousin, i.e., Shibi Khan's son, as Khan Tuli (same name as Tuli during Sui Dynasty time period) in the east, and Tuli would take charge of the ancient tribes of Khitans and Mohe (ancestors of Jurchens. Khan Xieli would take over Princess Yicheng as his wife. Princess Yicheng's brother (Yang Sanjing) and Wang Shichong's emissary would somehow persuade Khan Xieli into challenging Tang Dynasty on behalf of dethroned Sui. In AD 621, Khan Xieli invaded Yanmenguan Pass and Dai Prefecture.

For several years, Tang and Turks fought numerous battles across the northern border areas. By the 7th year of Tang Emperor Gaozu, in AD 626, Li Shimin or Li Shih-min (i.e., King Qin of Tang Dynasty and later Tang Emperor Taizong or Taitsung, AD 597-649), would sow a dissension among Xieli Khan and Tuli Khan. Unable to call upon Tuli to fight Tang further, Xieli Khan sent Tuli Khan and

Simo to Tang for sake of a peace treaty with Tang. Tuli Khan and King Qin promised to be brothers, while Tang Emperor Gaozu said to Simo that he felt he had seen Khan Xieli by meeting with Simo. In the following two years, Tang was busy building ships around the North Bend of the Yellow River for defence against Turks, while Turks broke the peace and kept attacking Tang.

Tang Emperor Taizong (reign AD 627-649)

Li Shimin [aka Li Shih-min], being merely 16 years old at the time of rebellion against Sui, was credited as the real initiator and founder of the Tang state and the mastermind of rebellion against the Sui. During the 22 years of reign, Li Shimin, i.e., Tang Emperor Taizong, was able to build a grand-scale empire extending from Korea to Central Asia. Taizong defeated the Turks of Mongolia in AD 630, and the Tibetans in two campaigns of AD 639-40 & AD 647-48. However, Taizong's two wars against Koguryo during AD 640s failed. In the matter of Tibet, Taizong pacified King Srong-tsan-sgam-po of Tibet by marrying over Princess in AD 641 and helping convert Tibet to Buddhism. Taizong was credited with propogating the civil service exam system that was well developed during Sui Dynasty. Though people attributed the developments of various religions, including Daoism, Buddhism and Nestorian Christian, to Emperor Taizong, do note that Tang Dynasty forbade travelling overseas. Note that Tang famous monk Xuanzang [Hsüan-tsang] had stealthily crossed the border, with no government sanctions. And, Tang Dynasty often resorted to forceful conversion of monks and nuns to civilians for sake of raising taxes and depriving religious facilities of their "tax-exempt" status.

In AD 626, Tang Emperor Taizong killed two brothers (i.e., Li Jiancheng & Li Yuanji) and later forced Emperor Gaozu into abdication. This is called 'Xuanwumen Coup' in Tang history. History stated that Li Yuanji, a culprit, intended to hire over Li Shimin's generals by proposing to elder brother Li Jiancheng that a gift (i.e., "silver cart") be given to Yuchi Jingde. This is because Li Yuanji, having at one time lost three rounds of "shuo" (long spear) contest against Yuchi Jingde, was afraid of Yuchi Jingde (i.e., a general of To'pa clan origin). Yuchi Jingde declined Li Jiancheng's offer and moreover informed Li Shimin of it. Li Jiancheng brothers then dispatched an assassin against Yuchi Jingde, but the assassin retreated after seeing Yuchi Jingde deliberately left door of his residency open. Ji Jiancheng brothers petitioned Tang Emperor Gaozu in 1) killing Yuchi Jingde, 2) banishing Cheng Zhijie to Kangzhou prefecture as a satrap, and 3) removing the rest of Li Shimin cronies (like Fang

Xuanling, and Du Ruhui etc) from Li Shimin's King Qin Office.

Fang Xuanling hence asked Zhangsun Wuji in relaying a message to Li Shimin for an initiative against Li Jiancheng brothers. Among Li Shimin's cronies, Li Jing & Li Shiji were said to have had no opinion as to coup. Using Turkic invasion as an excuse, Li Jiancheng recommended Li Yuanji for the expedition job for sake of segregating those cronies away from Li Shimin. Li Yuanji requested for Yuchi Jingde and King Qin's cronies for joining the campaign against Turks. When Li Shimin heard that Li Jiancheng brothers intended to assassinate him at the scene of seeing Li Yuanji off, Li Shimin instructed Yuchi Jingde and Zhangsun Wuji in arranging a coup. Li Shimin first went to see his father-emperor with accusation that Li Jiancheng brothers had sex with concubines inside imperial palace. Tang Emperor Gaozu called on Li Jiancheng brothers to come to the court for an explanation. When Li Jiancheng brothers came, they fell into Li Shimin's ambush and were killed. The followers of Li Jiancheng brothers, after failing to come into palace, went to attack King Qin Li Shimin's residency. Yuchi Jingde took the heads of Li Jiancheng brothers to those followers and quelled/dispersed them. Thereafter, Yuchi Jingde rode to the palace to have Tang Emperor Gaozu decree that King Qin be the crown price and take charge of military. All sons of Li Jiancheng brothers were ordered executed.

Wei Zheng, a counsellor (i.e., "xi ma") of Li Jiancheng, was called over by Li Shimin. Li Shimin rebuked Wei Zheng for his constant advice in getting rid of Li Shimin as well as for his refusal to bow down in front of Li Shimin. After Wei Zheng cited the story of Guan Zhong of Qi Principality, Li Shimin pardoned Wei Zheng and retained him as a counsellor (i.e., "zhu bu"). A few more officials were retained by Li Shimin. At Youzhou (Peking), King Lujiangwang, a brother of Tang Emperor Gaozu, was sold out by his inlaw-general Wang Junkuo for the implication with Li Jiancheng. At the urge of Wei Zheng, an amnesty was issued to pardon followers of Dong-gong (Eastern Palace of Li Jiancheng), King Qi-wang, and King Lujiang-wang. Wei Zheng was dispatched to the east for pacification. A concubine of Li Yuanji was taken over by Li Shimin, and mourning and posthumous titles were given for the two slain brothers. Soon, Tang Emperor Gaozu abdicated.

Once Li Shimin enthroned as Tang Emperor Taizong, he issued a general amnesty, including no taxation for two years for the capital area, imperial

bestowal of grain and cloth for elder people above age 80, and release of 3000 palace maids and concubines. Modest and economical Zhangsun-shi was made into the empress: she advised against his brother Zhangsun Wuji's taking up more imperial posts as well as abstained from interfering in politics.

Just twenty days after Taizong got enthroned, Eastern Turkic Khan Xieli attacked Tang under the instigations of Liang Shidu (i.e., Emperor Liang-di), and over 100,000 Turks attacked Jingzhou & Wugong area. Yuchi Jingde was dispatched to the front as "*xingjun [travelling column] zongguan [commander]*" for Jingzhou-dao Circuit. After a defeat in the hands of Yuchi Jingde, Khan Xieli circumvented to the Wei-shui River, just a dozen miles away from the Tang capital. Turkic official Zhi-shi-si-li entered Chang'an to see Tang Emperor Taizong for more Chinese tributes. Emperor Taizong then personally led garrison troops to Wei-shui bank and rebuked Khan Xieli for disrupting peace. Khan Xieli sent over an emissary for peace. Emperor Taizong (T'ai-tsong) sought peace with Eastern Turks by using the blood of a white horse for sworn testament on "*bian qiao*" (i.e., convenience bridge). Emperor Taizong explained to Xiao Yu that he had sought for peace by loosening the guard of the Turks. Khan Xieli later sent in 3000 horses and 10000 sheep, but Taizong declined the offer but requested for repatriation of Chinese taken captives by the Turks. Taizong also encouraged military exercises and training right inside of the palaces. Son Chengqian was made into Tang Dynasty crown prince.

On new year day of AD 627, Taizong ordered the music "King Qin Stampeding Enemy Positions". Days later, King Yanjun-wang Li Yi rebelled at Jingzhou with an attempt at grabbing Binzhou. On the way of fleeing to the Turks, Li Yi was killed by bodyguards. Li Yi's family was executed at the capital. Wang Junkuo, who had sold out his master before, was recalled to the capital; and on the road to the capital, he fled to the Turks and was also killed while on the road to the Turks.

Taizong often consulted with his counsellors for admonishing his behaviors. Aside from Wei Zheng, a justice official, i.e., *dali shaoqing*, Dai Zhou, was put in charge. Sun Fujia was made into admonition official. Li Qianyou was made into "waitering censor". Zu Xiaosun was empowered with ridding the court music of "lascivious tones". Wang Gui was conferred the post as "shi zhong" (i.e., imperial follower). Wang Gui advised against Taizong's taking over King Lujiang-wang's concubine because this woman was grabbed by King Lujiang-wang after

the killing of the woman's old man.

After rezoning the country into ten circuits, Taizong ordered that Cai Shao (i.e., husband of Tang Princess Pingyang) and Xue Wanjun campaign against Liang Shidu. Liang Shidu colluded with the Turks for defence against Tang army. Cai Shao, Xue Wanjun brothers, and Liu Lancheng thoroughly defeated Liang Shidu and Turks. After Turks retreated northward, Liang Shidu's brother killed Liang Shidu and surrendered to Tang. China was completely reunited with Liang Shidu's demise. This would be after Liang Shidu's first rebelling against Sui 12 years before. Shuofang city was renamed Xiazhou prefecture.

This year, Tiele Tribes, including Xueyantuo, Huihe and Bayegu, rebelled against the Turks. Khan Xieli accused Khan Tuli of failing to quell the Tiele rebellion. Being attacked by Khan Xieli, Khan Tuli requested for help with Tang Emperor Taizong in AD 628. The next year, Xueyantuo proclaimed themselves as a khan and sought alliance with Tang. In Nov of AD 629, Li Ling was empowered with campaigns against Turks with over 100,000 soldiers. Khan Tuli came to the court to see Emperor Taizong prior to the campaign. Taizong said that his father (Emperor Gaozu) had sought help and vassalage with the Turks because Tang was weak earlier after emerging victorious from a rebellion against Sui Dynasty and civil wars with contenders. A barbarian chieftan Xie-yuan-shen etc came to see the emperor with tributes. Yan Shigu proposed to make a drawing of "emperor receiving chieftans". In the winter, a census was made, and China was added an addition of 1.2 million people as a result of Chinese returnees from outside of the borders as well as barbarians seeking vassalage.

In the spring of fourth year of Taizong' reign, AD 630, Tang Taizong received victory news from Ling Jing: General Li Jing on a full campaign against Khan Xieli with six columns of armies, and captured Khan Xieli by taking advantage of Turk strife. General Li Jing, departing from Mayi, led 3000 cavalry into the Turk camp at Dingxiang and defeated Khan Xieli's army via a surprise strategy, and then led 10,000 soldiers all the way to Yinshan Mountains (located in today's Inner Mongolia) in pursuit of Khan Xieli. A Turkic chieftan called Kang Sumi surrendered with Sui Empress Xiaohou and Sui descendant (Yang Zhengdao). General Li Jing retrieved ex-empress of Sui and gave her to emperor Taizong who later took in as his mistress, and General Li Jing killed princess Yicheng for her 4-time-marriage without knowing 'shame'. Khan Xieli, after being defeated again, sought peace with Tang. Li Jing, thinking that Turks

might not be on alert while Tang emissary was in their camp, attacked Khan Xieli again. Xieli alone fled to another chieftan called Shabolue-she, but he was arrested and surrendered to Tang army by his own cousin. Hence, the Chinese occupied Mongolia (Eastern Turkic Khanate).

Remnant eastern Turks either fled to Western Khanate or northward to the Tiele Tribe of Xueyantuo (Mandarin spelling, Turkic name unknown). Emperor Taizong, rebutting the advice of his minister Wei Zheng (who cited the Hunnic ravaging of China during the late Jinn Dynasty as a result of their dwelling south of the Yellow River, Hetao area), relocated over 100,000 eastern Turks to the border areas, all the way from Shaanxi-Shanxi to today's Beijing city. Taizong did accept the advice of Yan Shigu, Du Chuke and Li Baiyao in having the Turks settle down north of the Yellow River line. Taizong set up four more prefectures, Shunzhou, Youzhou, Huazhou, Changzhou, along the Great Wall, and made Khan Tuli governor-general in charge of Shunzhou Prefecture. Tuli Khan was conferred the title of King of Beipingjun. Tuli died at the age of 29, and his son, Heluohu, succeeded with the same title. During the attacks on the Eastern Turks, Emperor Taizong won over the support of eleven Tiele tribes including the Uygurs (Huihe), Bayegu, Tongluo and Pugu. The Huihe clan ranked second to Xueyantuo tribe among the eleven tribes who had helped Tang in defeating Eastern Turkic Khanate in AD 630-640. Under the sponsorship of Huihe, the tribal leaders devised a name called "Tian Ke-han" (Heavenly Khan) for Emperor Taizong.

Taizong subdivided the Eastern Khanate into altogether 10 "zhou" (an administrative unit larger than prefectures). He also allowed Khan Xieli and his officials to live in Chang'an the Tang capital, and altogether close to 10,000 Turk families moved in. A Turkic chieftan called Sijie-sijin surrendered to Tang with 40,000 people. (Sijin, a title having origin in Xianbei and Ruruan eras, was a Turkic title equivalent to governorship. Among ten Turkic families, for example, Nushibi khan possessed five sijin. Turks also conferred sijin post on Tiele Tribes and the Khitans.) One brother of Khan Xieli, who first fled to Tuyuhun, came to submit to Tang, too. The Turkic chieftan at Yiwu surrendered his 7 cities to Tang, and Tang made it into Western Yizhou Prefecture. Shabolue-she, with 50,000 people, was conferred the title of King Huaide (possessing virtues), and Shabolue-she relocated to north of Ningzhou Prefecture by vacating the land south of the desert.

Tang Emperor further exchanged money and silk for 80,000 Sui Chinese refugees who had earlier fled to Turkic chieftans for asylum. Tang allowed those Chinese to come back to China as civilians.

Tang's General Li Jing (a military strategist who once fled with a mistress of Sui prime minister Yang Su while being invited as a guest at the home of Yang) was later sent on another expedition to Qinhai-Gansu and the Tarim Basin to quell rebellion of the Tuyuhun, a group of Qiangic people mixed with the Xianbei nomads. Tang married princess over to Tuyuhun king to pacify them. With the help of the Uygurs and other Tiele Tribes, Tang Chinese subdued the Tarim Basin in 630-40.

During this time, AD 629-645, famous Tang Monk, Chen Hui, travelled to India and returned to Chang'an in 16 years, passing dozens of countries and nomadic tribal states in between, which include the so-called Gaochang State (near east of today's Turpan) where he was received by king Qu Wentai. Also in year AD 640, Tibetan King Songtsen Gampo, learning of Tuyuhun's intermarriage with Tang, initiated a war against Tang and requested intermarriage with Tang princess. Tibetan Prime Minister Ludongzan was sent to Chang'an and passed imperial inquiries and tests. Princess Wencheng arrived in Tibet one year later.

King of Gaochang State, Qu Wentai, colluded with Western Turkic Khanate in subjugating small tribal states in today's Xinjiang (New Dominion) area and rebelled against Tang. In AD 639, with the help of Xueyantuo or Sheyanto tribe (one component of the Tiele Tribes), Tang army of 100,000 travelled 7,000 li distance to fight Gaochang State, scaring Qu Wentai to death. Qu Wentai's son surrendered after learning that the relief army of Western Khanate Turks had fled home half way. Emperor Taizong renamed Gaochang to Xizhou, and made it the locality for the governor-general office in charge of Yutian, Suiye, Shule and Chouci. (Later, Xizhou or Anxi Protector-General Office was relocated to Chouci in AD 659.) In AD 702, Tang would set up Beiting 'Protector-General (Marshal Presidio)' office in Tingwai or Tingzhou (present-day Jimsar), a place located to the east of Suiye (Tokmok), to the south of Xizhou (Turpan), and to the west of Yizhou (Hami).

By AD 648, Tang subdued the remnants of eastern Turks north of the Gobi. Meantime, Tang defeated the Khitans in Manchuria, and controlled central and eastern Mongolia, thus stretching 9,510 li east to west and 10,918 li south to

north in its territories. The Xueyantuo tribe, differentiated in Chinese chronicle as a separate tribe from the Uygur tribe, was in charge of north Mongolia. Non-Chinese historical accounts, including US Library of Congress website, however, stated that the Uygur vassal controlled west and north Mongolia, from Lake Altai to Lake Balkash. The Uygurs would gain control of north Mongolia at a later time.

Tuli Khan's son, Heluohu, was targeted by his Turkic tribesmen for abduction back to the Turkic land. They fled to north of China and disturbed the border areas. Taizong defeated the rebellion and exiled Heluohu to southern China. Emperor Taizong decided to send Simo (the cousin? of ex-khan Xieli) back to the land of Eastern Khanate as a ruler, thus making Simo into a rival of the Tiele Tribe (Xueyantuo). Xueyantuo tribe, an ex-ally, now rebelled against Tang for Tang's dispatchment of Simo. Simo was commented to have looked like a 'Hu' versus the Turkic Ashina family. Hence, he was previously not employed for high posts. He once served as a khan north of the desert when Khan Qimin fled to Sui Dynasty. When Qimin returned, Simo relinquished the khan title. Simo was frequently sent to Tang as a peace emissary. Simo was caught together with Khan Xieli. Simo was conferred the title of King Hedexun and governor-general of Huazhou Prefecture.

Hearing that Simo led the Turks (100 thousand people, 40 thousand army and 90 thousand horses) in crossing the Yellow River in AD 641, the Xueyantuo Tribe tried to fight the Turks. Xueyantuo wrote to Tang saying that the Turks did not know to keep promise or peace. Tang said to Xueyantuo that Turks would control south of the desert while Xueyantuo was to control north of the desert. Three years later, Simo, unable to harness his people, returned to Tang court, later followed Taizong in the Korean campaign (on which occasion Taizong sucked the blood from the arrow wound that Simo suffered), and at last stage died in the Tang capital. Simo's Youxianwang (rightside virtuous king), son of the late Sunishi, would have tears everytime Tang emissary arrived at north of the desert, and he would be allowed to return to Tang court. Some of Simo's people relocated south of the Yellow River and settled in Shengzhou and Xiazhou Prefectures.

Replacing Simo would be the Turkic Khan called Chebi. Chebi at first fled to Xueyantuo. When being threatened by Xueyantuo, he fled from Xueyantuo. Xueyantuo chased him all the way westward. Chebi would soon amass 30

thousand people and he would assert control over Karlaks in the west and Qigu in the north. Chebi often harassed Xueyantuo tribe thereafter.

In late 630s, Tang intervened in the civil wars of Korea. The son of the khan of Xueyantuo took advantage of emperor Taizong's first Korean expedition in attacking Tang south of the Yellow River. Xueyantuo tribe fled when they heard of Taizong's return from Manchuria. But, at this moment, tribes of the Huihe (Uygur), who were appointed to the Hanhai prefecture, came to the aid of Tang and attacked Xueyantuo tribe together with Tang army consisting of several columns of various nomads from Liang and Dai prefectures. Around AD 640, the Huihe (Uygurs) helped Tang army in successfully quelling the rebellion of Xueyantuo. Tribes of the Uygur killed the khan of Xueyantuo tribe and hence controlled north Mongolia where Xueyantuo once held control. Emperor Taizong re-zoned the northwestern territories into six fu (prefecture or province) and seven zhou (prefecture).

After the north was settled, in AD 639, Tang Emperor Taizong attacked the Chouci State in the west, which wavered in its loyalty between Tang Dynasty and the Western Khanate. In AD 641-648, Tang defeated Western Khante and controlled today's New Dominion Province and areas west of the Pamir Mountains. However, in the north, there arose, after the defeat of the Xueyantuo, a remnant eastern Turkic khan.

In AD 649, Emperor Taizong, again with help from Uygurs, campaigned against the north. In the same year, Emperor Taizong (T'ai-tsong) died. Altogether images of 14 khans had been inscribed on the stones and stood beside Taizong's tomb after one khan's request to be funerary object buried alive was rejected by succeeding emperor, Gaozong.

Tang Emperor Gaozong

After Taizong's death, General Gao Kan, under Emperor Gaozong, would soon capture the last remnant eastern khan and the Eastern Khanate was put to rest for the time being.

Eastern and western Turks would rebel against Tang several times thereafter. For almost a hundred years, the Uygurs would assert control over north Mongolia in competition with the remaining Turks who re-established Eastern Khanate in AD 682/683 in Mongolia. Tang's civil minister Fei Xingjian would

be responsible for quelling the Eastern Turkic rebellion in AD 680 and in AD 681 via strategies like 'hiding soldiers inside the grain carts' and 'offering 10,000 liang (a unit of weight similar to ounce) gold for the head of the khan'. Fei, earlier, escorted Persian Prince on his way Persia and captured the western Turkic khan who sought suzerainty from the Tibetans. Persian Prince, however, was afraid of going further to Persia. He stayed around Suiye, failed to organize any army, and then returned to Chang'an where he spent the rest of his life. Remnant Western Turks, under Tibetan suzerainty, would set up Turkic Khanate in the Tarim Basin in AD 691, to be defeated in AD 692 by Governor-General Tang Xiuqing of Xizhou prefecture who re-took the four cities of Chouci (Kuqa), Yutian (Hotan), Shule (Kashi) and Suiye (today's Tokmok in Kyrgyzstan).

The eastern Turks would ally with the Khitans in attacking Tang. Khitans were given royla family name of Li by Emperor Taizong in early times and once followed Taizong in his Korean campaigns. Khitans first rebelled against Tang in AD 656-661 and again in AD 696. The eastern Turks (namely, Orkhon Turks) would ally with the Khitans in attacking Tang. Certainly, the Turks and Khitans were adversaries as well. Orkhon Turks, under Khan Muchuo, would attack the Khitans as well. Tang mobilized an army of hundreds of thousands and defeated the Khitans. Hence, the Khitans fled to the Turks for protection.

Empress Wu Zetian & Zhou Era

In AD 697, the Eastern Turks obtained from Empress Wu Zetian the old Turkic territories of six Tang prefectures: Pingzhou, Shenzhou, Lingzhou, Xiazhou, Suozhou and Dai (Daizhou), and moreover, sought for his daughter the marriage with Chinese royal family. When Empress Wu Zetian sent her family's prince to the Turks, Khan Muchuo got angry after learning that his daughter was not to marry the Tang royal family of Li. Khan Muchuo held Prince Wu as a hostage and campaigned against Wu Zetian on behalf of Tang's emperors (two Li emperors, both Wu's sons, who were deprived of rights and placed in palace arrest). Khan Muchuo killed 80-90 thousand people in two prefectures of Dingzhou and Zhaozhou and retreated.

In AD 700, two Tang nomadic generals defeated the Khitans again. In AD 712, Khitans submitted to Tang and was conferred King of Songmuo Prefecture. Heads of eight Khitan tribes were conferred general posts as well. A Tang royal family princess, Princess Yongle, was sent to Khitan khan as wife.

The Turks and the Tang Chinese had seesaw warfare, till dethroned Emperor Zhongzong got restored in AD 705. Emperor Xuanzong, in AD 712, defeated the Eastern Turkic Khan Muchuo and won over the defection of Muchuo's brother-in-law. However, the glorious days under Emperor Taizong were gone.

Further details of Turkic history will be covered in Eastern Khnanate and Western Khnanate.

Near the end of Tang Dynasty (AD 618-907), Toba Sigong, a Dangxiang descendant carrying the Toba name of Toba and later the Toba last name of 'Yuan', would come to the aid of Tang Emperor during the Huang Chao rebellion, and hence was conferred the title of Duke Xia and the Tang family name of 'Li'. His descendant, Yuan Hao, would proclaim himself emperor of Xixia Dynasty (AD 1032-1227), namely, Western Xia, with an army of 500 thousand.

Tang Mercenary Armies

Second Forced Migration Of Chinese

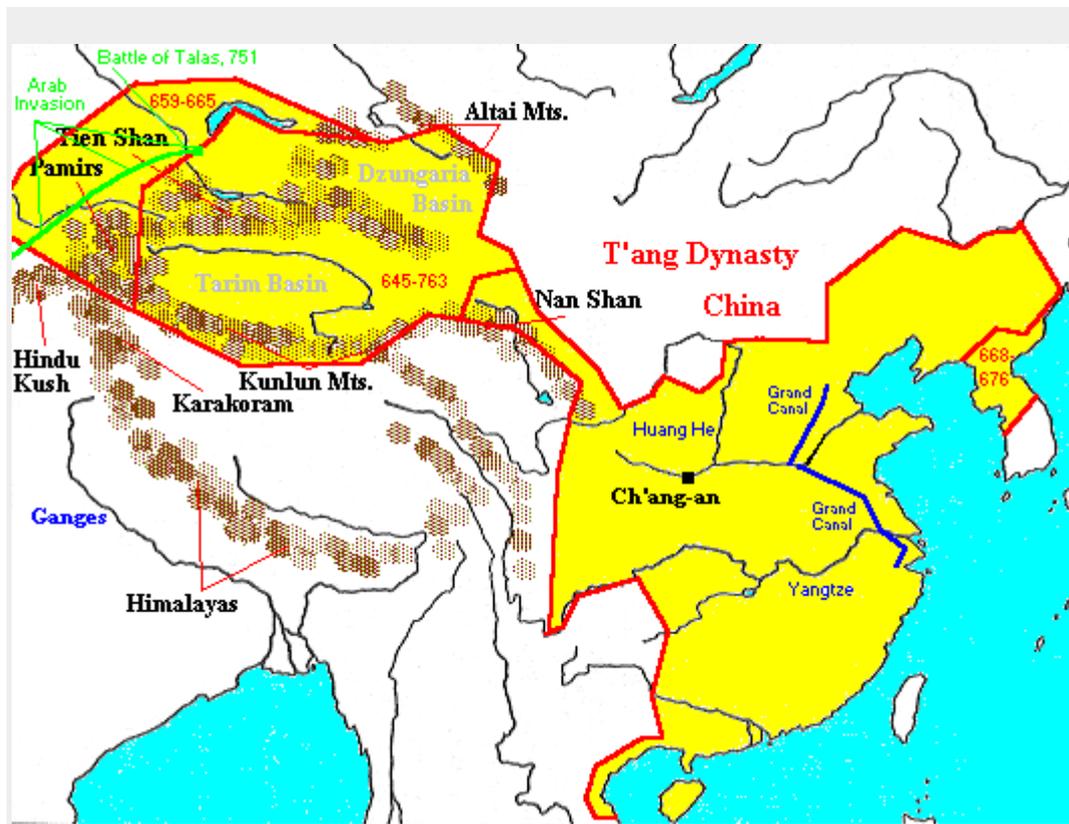
Like many historians, Scholar Luo Xianglin, in *History of Chinese Nationalities* (Chinese Culture Publishing Enterprise Co, Taipei, Taiwan, May 1953 edition), traced the cause of the Second Forced Migration Of Chinese to the invasion by Nan-zhao of Southwestern China. Nan-zhao, consisting of Hundred Yue family and Western Qiang descendants, began to encroach on Tang Dynasty after the era of Tang Emperor Taizong. Tang court stationed garrison troops in Yongning of Guilin [Guangxi Prov], and Ya'an & Songfan [Sichuan Prov] against Nan-zhao. During the Xiantong Era of Tang Emperor Yizong, a border general by the name of Pang Xun rebelled at Guilin garrison. Pang Xun rebels departed Guilin for Hunan Prov in the same way as later Taiping Heavenly Kingdom. The rebels further sacked and pillaged the areas of Yangtze River and Huai-shui River. After this rebellion, Tang societal weakness began to emerge.

Another rebellion by the name of Huang Chao assembled Pang Xun remnants for a new round of pillage. Huang Chao intruded into south of Huai-shui River from Henan Prov, attacked eastern Zhejiang Prov, changed direction to sack Jiangxi

Prov, swept into Fujian Prov, returned to Jiangxi Prov, further entered Hunan Prov, touched eastern Guangxi Prov, rerouted southward to Guangzhou [Canton] of Guangdong Prov, returned to Hunan Prov, went north to Hubei Prov, harassed Anhui Prov, crossed Huai-shui River to take over Luoyang of Henan Prov, and finally took over capital of Chang'an [Shenxi Prov]. Huang Chao Rebellion lasted a dozen years. Tang court had to rely upon nomadic mercenaries, including Shatuo and Tanguts, for quelling the rebellion. The end result of Huang Chao Rebellion would be the usurpation of Tang Dynasty by Zhu Wen who defected from Huang Chao camp. Zhu Wen's establishing Posterior Liang Dynasty would throw northern China into the turmoil time period called "Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms".

Scholar Luo Xianglin, stating that Chinese had been fleeing Huang Chao rebellion throughout the territories sacked by the rebels, summarized the following safe havens: refuges to Sichuan Prov where Wang Jian established Shu Regime; refuges to Hunan Prov where Ma Yin established Chu Regime; refuges to Guangdong & Guangxi provinces where Liu Yin established Southern Han Regime; refugees to Fujian Prov where Wang Shenzhi established Min Regime; refugees to Zhejiang Prov where Qian Mu established Wu-Yue Regime; and refuges to Anhui-Jiangsu provinces where Yang Xingmi & Li Zhigao established Yang-Wu and Southern Tang regimes.

Map linked from <http://www.friesian.com/>



5 DYNASTIES & 10 STATES

The demise of Tang Dynasty brought the so-called Five Dynasties (AD 907-960) in northern China and 10 Kingdoms (AD 902-979), with nine kingdoms in southern China and Northern Han (AD 951-979) in Taiyuan, Shanxi.

As recorded in history, the three dynasties in between Posterior Liang and Posterior Zhou were of alien nature and founded by generals who belonged to a group of nomads called Shatuo (Sha'to), a Turkic tribe. While Posterior Liang (AD 907-923) was set up by Zhu Wen (who first betrayed rebel leader Huang Chao and then usurped Tang Dynasty), the leader of later Posterior Tang (AD

923-936), Posterior Jinn (AD 936-946) and Posterior Han came from nomadic Shatuo (Sha'to) ancestry.

Origin of Shatuo

There is a section devoted to Shatuo in *New History of Tang Dynasty*. Shatuo had its origin from 'Chuyue' tribe, an alternative race of the Western Turks. *New History of Tang Dynasty* stated that Eastern Turks and Western Turks divided the ancient land of Wu'sun (today's Ili area). 'Chuyue' tribe and 'Chumi' tribe co-lived with the Turks in this area. In the 7th year reign of Zhen'guan Era, i.e., AD 633, Tang Emperor Taizong supported Duolu as the khan for Western Turks. A Turkic chieftan called Buzhen tried to absorb the people of his brother Mishe, causing Mishe and Chuyue Tribe to seek vassalage with Tang. Shortly thereafter, Buzhen sought vassalage with Tang, too. Khan Duolu erected Helu, the son of a 'tele' (prince), as the chief in charge of remaining Western Turks. Later, Western Turks had internal strife and split into two courts. Chuyue Tribe went with the northern court under arch-chieftan Khan Duolu, and they lived to the south of Jinsuoshan Mountain, to the east of which would be a desert called Shatuo; hence, Chuyue Tribe called themselves Shatuo (Sha'to) Turks.

In AD 639, with the help of Xueyantuo (Sheyanto) Turkic tribe (one component of the Tiele Tribes), Tang army of 100,000 travelled 7,000 li distance to fight Gaochang Statelet (Turpan area), scaring Gaochang King Qu Wentai to death. Qu Wentai's son surrendered after learning that the relief army of Western Khanate Turks had fled home half way. Emperor Taizong renamed Gaochang to Xizhou, and made it the locality for the governor-general office in charge of Yutian, Suiye (Tokmok), Shule and Chouci. Later, in AD 659, Xizhou or Anxi 'Protector-General (Marshal Presidio)' office was relocated to Chouci. In AD 702, Tang would set up Beiting 'Protector-General (Marshal Presidio)' office in Tingwai or Tingzhou (present-day Jimsar), a place located to the east of Suiye (Tokmok), to the south of Xizhou (Turpan), and to the west of Yizhou (Hami).

Turks of Beiting (Beiting meaning the original 'northern Turkic court'), under Khan Duolu, once attacked Yizhou (Hami) and surrounded the areas around the Tianshan Mountains with two columns of army. Tang Governor-General for An-xi, Guo Xiaoke, defeated the Turks and took over Chuyue's sijin (governor) city. Khan Duolu later was defeated and he fled southward to the 'Tu-huo-luo'

statelet. ('Tu-huo-luo', as area surrounded by Afghanistan, Tibet and Turkistan, was said to have mutated from Chinese characters of 'da [grand] xia', and some Central Asians, who claimed descent from Huns or Xia Chinese, even likened the sound of Avar to the Chinese characters of 'a hua'.) Helu surrendered to Tang. Tang erected Helu as the governor of Yaochi and relocated his tribe to Mohecheng city of Tingzhou Prefecture. A Chuyue sijin, Zhuye Que, sought vassalage with Tang. In AD 650, Helu rebelled against Tang. A Chuyue chieftan, Zhuye Guzhu, killed a Tang officer, *zhaowei-shi* (i.e., pacifying and consoling inspector) Lian Heh, and Zhuye Guzhu joined Helu in rebelling against Tang. Chuyue occupied Laoshan Mountain. Tang conferred Helu's title onto another Chuyue chieftan (Shatuo Nasu). In AD 651, Tang army, under the command of Lian Jianfang (*zong guan* or omnipotent magistrate of Gongyue-dao Circuit) and Qibi Heli (a Tang general of nomadic origin), defeated rebelling Chuyue chieftan by the name of 'Zhuye Guzhu', killed him, and captured 9000 Shatuo people. In AD 652, Tang revoked Yaochi governorship and made the Chuyue land into two prefectures of Jinman and Shatuo, to be under two governors, instead. After Helu fled, *an-hu da-shi* (pacifying ambassador) Ashina Mishe went for the Ili River area. Tang erected Kunling Protector-General Office for control of the Duolu tribe, with Ashina Mishe as *du-hu*, i.e., protector-general.

In AD 661, Chuyue chieftan, Shatuo Jinshan, assisted Tang General Xue Rengui in campaigning against Tiele Tribes. Shatuo Jinshan was conferred the title of *moli-jun taoji-shi*, i.e., the campaigning general for Moli-jun Garrison. Shatuo Jinshan was upgraded to the title of governor for Jinman-zhou prefecture and Duke Zhangye-jun-gong during the second year of Chang'an Era, i.e., AD 702.

After the death of Shatuo Jinshan, his son Zhuye Fuguo succeeded the post. Shatuo tribe relocated northward to Beiting office for sake of avoiding the Tibetans and led pilgrimage to the Tang court. During the 2nd year of Kaiyuan Era, i.e., AD 714, Shatuo was conferred the title of governor for Jinman-zhou prefecture again. Zhuye Fuguo's mother (Shu-ni-shi) was conferred the title of Shan'guo Furen or Lady Shan'guo. Zhuye Fuguo was later upgraded to the title of King Yongshou-jun. His son, Zhuye Guduozi, succeeded him.

When Huihe sought vassalage with Tang in early Tianbao Era, i.e., AD 714, Zhuye Guduozi was conferred the title of deputy protector-general for the Huihe tribe. In AD 740s, Chuyue followed Huihe (Uygurs) in aiding Tang Emperor Suzong during the An-Shi Rebellion. Chuyue chieftan, Zhuye

Gduozhi, was conferred the title of 'tejin' (governor) and *xiaowei shang-jiangjun* (i.e., colonel high general). After Zhuye Gduozhi would be son Zhuye Jinzhong. Zhuye Jinzhong succeeded the title and was further conferred the title of *jinwuwei da-jiangjun* and Duke of Jiuquanxian-gong (Jiuquan County).

During the eras of Zhide (AD 756) and Baoying (AD 762), China was undergoing turmoils, and Xizhou and Beiting were disconnected from China. Emissaries between west and China had to go through exploitations while travelling through Huihe territories. Shatuo people were oppressed by Huihe. In late AD 790s, 7000 Shatuo tents, under Shatuo Jinzhong (Zhuye Jinzhong), sought suzerainty with Tibetans. Together with Tibetans, they attacked the Beiting governor office. Tibetans later relocated the Shatuo to Ganzhou Prefecture. Tibetans used Shatuo Jinzhong (Zhuye Jinzhong) as front-runner armies against the Tang border. When Huihe took over Liangzhou of Gansu Province, Tibetans became wary of Shatuo's relationship with Huihe. Tibetans, suspicious of Shatuo's loyalty, intended to relocate Shatuo to some distant place. In AD 808, Shatuo Jinzhong (Zhuye Jinzhong) consulted with Zhuye Zhiyi and decided to lead 30,000 people on an exodus to the Xiaoguan Pass of Tang China. Tibetans chased them all the way, along the Wudejian-shan Mountain, fought major battles at Lintao and Shimen, and killed Shatuo Jinzhong (Zhuye Jinzhong). Zhuye Zhiyi led remnants to Lingzhou-sai border pass. Tang General Fan Xichao of Lingzhou Prefecture offered asylum to the Shatuo people, assigned them to Yanzhou Prefecture, and bought buffalo and sheep on behalf of Shatuo people. Shatuo elderlies and children, coming from Fengxiang-dao, Xingyuan-dao and Taiyuan-dao circuits, would find their way to Yanzhou to get a reunion. Shatuo Jinzhong's brother, Shatuo Ge-le-a-bo, led about 700 remnants to Zhenwu and was conferred the title of *leftside wuwei grand general* and governor for Yinshan-fu prefecture.

Zhuye Zhiyi came to Tang capital Chang'an and was granted silk clothing and horses and conferred the titles of 'tejin' and 'jinwuwei jiangjun'. When Fan Xichao was dispatched to Taiyuan of Shanxi Prov, Fan Xichao selected two thousand Shatuo cavalry and named it 'Shatuo Column'. Rest of Shatuo people were settled in Dingxiangchuan area. Zhuye Zhiyi was ordered to guard Huanghuadi of Shenwuchuan area and they renamed themselves the "Northern Shatuo of Yinshan".

Shatuo Serving Tang Dynasty

Quelling Wang Chengzong Rebellion: When Tang emperor personally led campaign against Zhenzhou prefecture, Zhuye Zhiyi led 700 Shatuo as forerunner column and fought against a rebel army in tens of thousands under Wang Chengzong. Zhuye Zhiyi, against the rain of arrows, defeated Wang Chengzong's ambush at Mudaogou Valley. Tang General Li Guangyan followed through by destroying over ten thousand rebels. Zhuye Zhiyi was conferred the title of *ci shi* (inspector) for weizhou prefecture. Tang court, at the suggestion of Wang Er (*jiedu-shi* or governor-general for Taiyuan), distributed Shatuo people among ten prefectures for sake of weakening their unity.

Fighting Huihe & Quelling Wu Yuanji Rebellion

Later, Huihe attacked Tang's Xicheng and Liugu areas by crossing the Gobi desert. Zhuye Zhiyi was ordered to guard Tiande. When Tang campaigned against rebel Wu Yuanji, Zhuye Zhiyi was called upon to serve under the command of Li Guangyan. Zhuye Zhiyi participated in the attacks at Shiqu and Lingyunshan Camp. Zhuye Zhiyi was conferred the post of *shang shu* for *jianxiao xingbu* (i.e., monitoring and censoring justice department) after cracking down on Wu Yuanji rebellion. During the Changqing Era (AD 821), Zhuye Zhiyi, still under command of Li Guangyan, was ordered to attack Zhenzhou. Shatuo army cooperated with Yiding-jun Garrison in sacking rebel city of Shenzhou prefecture. Zhuye Zhiyi was conferred the title of *jin wuwei jiangjun*. During Taihe Era (AD 827), Liu Gongchuo was in charge of *he dong*, i.e., east of the Yellow River. Citing the fact that Shatuo people were feared by Nine Tiele Name tribes and six northwestern prefecture peoples, Liu Gongchuo proposed that Shatuo Zhiyi be conferred the posts of governor (*dudu*) for Yinshan-fu and *zhaohu-shi* for Daibei Xingying (i.e., military camp for north of Dai prefecture).

Fighting Huihe & Quelling Wang Chengzong/Yang Bian Rebellions

After the death of Zhuye Zhiyi, his son, Zhuye Chixin, succeeded. During the 4th year of Kaicheng Era, i.e., AD 839, Huihe crossed the mouth of the desert and arrived at Yulin-sai border pass. Huihe prime minister, Jue-luo-wu, sent 300 good horses to Zhuye Chixin for sake of attacking Huihe Khan Zhuangxin. After the death of Khan Zhuangxin, *jiedu-shi* Liu Mian led Shatuo army against the Huihe at Sha-hu-shan Mountain (Hu nomad killing ridge). Later, Tang campaigned against rebel Liu Zhen at Lu (Zhuozhang River, Shanxi Prov) and

called upon Zhuye Chixin's 3000 cavalry to be under the command of Shi Xiong. Shato cavalry acted as forerunner column, sacked Shihui-guan Pass, and aided Wang Zai in taking over Tian1-jing3. Further, Shato cavalry converged with Taiyuan-jun Garrison, arrived at Yushe, cooperated with *jianjun-shi* Lü Yizhong in capturing rebel Yang Bian. After quelling Luzhou prefecture, Zhuye Chixin was conferred the post of *ci shi* for Shuo Zhou prefecture as well as retained *zhaohu-shi* for *Daibei Xingying*.

Fighting Tibetans

During the mid-Dazhong era (Dazhong starting from AD 859), Tubo (Tibet) combined Dangxiang (Tanguts)/Huihe (Uygur) forces and invaded *he xi*, i.e., west of the Yellow River. Wang Zai, Tang official in charge of Taiyuan of Shanxi Prov, led various armies from Daibei (north of Dai prefecture) against the Tibetans, with Shatuo cavalry as forerunner column. Tibetans were often defeated and they propagated a myth stating that they saw fire burning on the general riding red horse (i.e., Zhuye Chixin). Historians claim that Tibetan power began to eclipse after they lost the Shatuo people to Tang. Tang Emperor Xuan(1)-zong (r. 847-859) recovered three prefectures as well as seven passes west of the Yellow River. Zhuye Chixin were conferred the post of *ci shi* for Weizhou (Yuzhou?) prefecture and *shouzhuo shi* (guard and capture) for Yunzhou prefecture.

Quelling Pang Xun Rebellion

When Pang Xun Rebellion erupted, Tang court made Kang Chengxun into *xingying zhaotao-shi*, with Zhuye Chixin in charge of 3000 cavalry. At one time, Kang Chengxun was encircled at Huan-sui River; Zhuye Chixin led 500 cavalry to Kang's rescue. Pang Xun, with 80000 strong army, intended to have a fast duel. Zhuye Chixin led cavalry on a charge at the enemy camp and defeated Pang Xun in cooperation with Tang army; Zhuye Chixin's brother, Zhuye Chishuai, chased Pang Xun to a place called Bo-dong (east of Bo, i.e., Shangqiu of Henan Prov). After quelling Pang Xun Rebellion, Zhuye Chixin was conferred the post of *jiedu-shi* for Datong-jun Garrison, and Tang royal family name of 'Li' and first name of 'Guochang' (prospering the country).

Fighting Huihe

When Huihe attacked Yulin of Shenxi Prov and harassed Lingzhou / Yanzhou, Tang conferred Li Guochang (Zhuye Chixin) the post of *jiedu shi* for Fuyan (today's Fuxian county, Shenxi Prov). When Huihe attacked Tiande, Li Guochang

was moved to Zhenwu.

Quelling Wang Xianzhi Rebellion

When rebel Wang Xianzhi sacked Jing-Xiang areas of Hubei Prov, Tang court called upon various prefectures for aiding the crackdown on the rebellion. Li Guochang dispatched Liu Qian's cavalry to Hubei Prov and defeated rebels several times.

In AD 876, a Tang official in charge of Daibei and Yunzhong, Duan Wenchu, was hated by his subordinate officials. Those officials went to see the son of Li Guochang, *shouzhuo shi* for Yunzhong Li Keyong, for getting rid of Duan Wenchu. Li Keyong agreed with it and led over 10000 army to Yunzhou prefecture, attacked Doujitai, and killed Duan Wenchu. Tang court sent armies to crack down on Li Keyong. When Rebel Huang Chao crossed the Yangtze River, Tang court called off the campaign against Li Keyong, granted amnesty, conferred the post of *fangyu shi* for Datong-jun Garrison onto Li Guochang. When Li Guochang refused the conferrals, Tang court called upon Cui Yanzhao (*jiedu shi* for *He Dong*) and Zhang Gongsu of Youzhou prefecture to crack down on Li Guochang, but Tang armies failed to fight Li Guochang.

Tanguts came to fight Li Guochang, but to no vain. A Tuhun (previously Tuyuhun) chieftan from Datong-chuan area, by the name of Helian Duo attacked the city of Zhenwu and took over Li Guochang's equipment and grain supply. Li Guochang fled to Yunzhou prefecture with 500 cavalry, but Yunzhou city refused to take in Li Guochang. Helian Duo took over Yunzhou. Li Keyong, meantime, fought between Weizhou (Yuzhou?) and Shuozhou with 3000 soldiers. When Li Keyong stationed at Xincheng city, Helian Duo came to attack him with over ten thousand soldiers. Helian Duo dug tunnels underneath the city wall, but three days later, Helian Duo still failed to take the city, while incurring heavy casualties. Li Guochang led relief army to Xincheng from Weizhou. Helian Duo withdrew. Helian Duo was conferred the post of *jiedu-shi* for Datong by Tang Emperor Xizong. In AD 879, Tang court conferred the post of *beimian (northside) zhaotao-shi* onto Li Jun, in charge of Luzhou and Taiyuan armies. Li Jun stationed at Daizhou prefecture. Li Keju of Youzhou prefecture combined forces with Helian Duo in attacking Weizhou. Li Guochang faced off with opponents with one column, while Li Keyong led a column on an attack at Zhelucheng city. At the time, heavy snows fell, and Li Jun's army collapsed and Li Jun died from his erratic retreating soldiers. In AD 880, Tang court conferred

the post of *zhaotao* (*campaigning*) *dutong* (*governing general*) for Weizhou and Shuozhou onto Li Zhuo. Li Zhuo stationed dozens of thousands of soldiers in Daizhou. Li Keyong dispatched Fu Wenda to Weizhou (Yuzhou) for relief, but Gao Wenxi (<> for Shuozhou) arrested Fu and handed him over to Li Zhuo. Li Zhou then went on to attack Weizhou and defeated Li Guochang. Li Guochang/Li Keyong, with the whole family, fled northward to Dadan nomads for asylum. Helian Duo secretly contacted Dadan chieftan for having the Li rebels delivered back to Tang. Li Keyong, hearing of the scheme, deliberately showed the Dadan chieftans his shooting skills by aiming at the leaves hundred steps away during a gathering; Li Keyong further claimed that Tang court would for sure grant him amnesty soon after rebel Huang Chao came northward to the central plains and that he would lead his folks back to the south to establish feats rather than dying away in the deserts. Dadan chiefatns, hearing Li Keyong had no plan for staying among the nomads, would feel relaxed and declined Helian Duo's proposal.

Quelling Huang Chao Rebellion

When Huang Chao sacked Tongguan Pass and entered Chang'an the capital, Tang court ordered that *hedong* (*east of Yellow River*) *jianjun* (*monitoring general*) Chen Jingsi assemble armies in Daibei (north of Daizhou prefecture). At the time, a Shatuo *dudu* (*governor general*) by the name of Li Youjin was in charge of Xingtang-jun Garrison, and a Sa'ge chieftan (Mi Haiwan) and *dudu* for Anqing (Shi Jingchun) were in charge of Ganyi-jun Garrison. Hearing that Emperor fled to west, Chen Jingsi and Li Youjin led 5000 cavalry to the city of Jiang⁴ (Shanxi Prov). Undisciplined soldiers stole government money. Upon returning to Daizhou, Chen Jingsi recruited 30,000 more soldiers. When soldiers disturbed peace, Li Youjin said to Chen that his brother (*situ* father and son, i.e., Li Guochang and Li Keyong) etc, being talented warriors feared by the soldier ranks, would be able to rally heroic soldiers north of Daizhou area for defeating the rebels. Chen Jingsi petitioned with Tang emperor to have Li Guochang spared. Tang court hence conferred the post of *ci shi* for Daizhou onto Li Keyong. Li Keyong hired over 10,000 Dadan nomads as mercenaries and brought them back to Daizhou. When on route southward to Yaiyuan, Li Keyong was refused entry by *jiedu-shi* Zheng Congdang at Shiling-guan Pass. Li Keyong circumvented around to Taiyuan and stationed outside of the city wall for five days. When refused grain supply by Zheng Congdang, Li Keyong retreated back to Daizhou.

In AD 882, Su You (*ci shi* for Weizhou) combined forces with Helian Duo for sake of attacking Li Keyong at Daizhou. Li Keyong led 500 cavalry on a surprise attack at Weizhou (Yuzhou) and took over the city. When Li Keyong stationed at Meinü-gu Valley (beauty valley) outside of Weizhou, Helian Duo and Li Keju of Youzhou led 70,000 army against Weizhou. Li Keyong broke through the camps of Helian Duo and Li Keju, entered the city of Weizhou, burnt the supplies and departed for Yanmen area. At this time, Li Guochang led relief army from Dadan. The two Li disturbed the Shanxi Prov areas of Fen, Bing and Loufan without releasing armours. Tang emperor decreed that Li Keyong could return to Shuozhou, and Wang Chuchun (*jiedu-shi* for Yiwu) and Wang Chongrong (*jiedu-shi* for Hezhong, i.e., middle Yellow River) passed on imperial order to have Li Keyong campaign against rebel Huang Chao in return for amnesty. Li Keyong, excited upon receiving the decree, would assemble 30,000 army comprising of soldiers from Xin-Dai-Wei-Shuo prefectures and Dadan nomads, in addition to 5000 cavalry. Li Guochang was left at Daizhou for garrison while Li Keyong led the army southward. Again, Zheng Congdang refused to lend the path. Li Keyong camped near Taiyuan, offered horses/money to Zheng Congdang and shouted that he was going west and wished to have a talk with Zheng. Thereafter, Zheng Congdang went to comfort Li Keyong and returned money to Li. Li Keyong then went to Hezhong area. Tang emperor conferred Li Keyong the posts of *jiedu* for Yanmen, *zhen'er* (i.e., quelling) for *Shen-ce* (*devine tactics*) *Tianning-jun Garrison*, and *guan'cha-shi* (i.e., observer general) for Xin-Dai areas.

Pang Xun Rebellion & Huang Chao Rebellion

Like many historians, Scholar Luo Xianglin, in *History of Chinese Nationalities* (Chinese Culture Publishing Enterprise Co, Taipei, Taiwan, May 1953 edition), traced the cause of the Second Forced Migration Of Chinese to the invasion by Nan-zhao of Southwestern China. Nan-zhao, consisting of Hundred Yue family and Western Qiang descendants, began to encroach on Tang Dynasty after the era of Tang Emperor Taizong. Tang court stationed garrison troops in Yongning of Guilin [Guangxi Prov], and Ya'an & Songfan [Sichuan Prov] against Nan-zhao. During the Xiantong Era of Tang Emperor Yizong, a border general by the name of Pang Xun rebelled at Guilin garrison. Pang Xun rebels departed Guilin for Hunan Prov in the same way as later Taiping Heavenly Kingdom. The rebels further sacked and pillaged the areas of Yangtze River and Huai-shui River.

After this rebellion, Tang societal weakness began to emerge.

Another rebellion by the name of Huang Chao assembled Pang Xun remnants for a new round of pillage. Huang Chao intruded into south of Huai-shui River from Henan Prov, attacked eastern Zhejiang Prov, changed direction to sack Jiangxi Prov, swept into Fujian Prov, returned to Jiangxi Prov, further entered Hunan Prov, touched eastern Guangxi Prov, rerouted southward to Guangzhou [Canton] of Guangdong Prov, returned to Hunan Prov, went north to Hubei Prov, harassed Anhui Prov, crossed Huai-shui River to take over Luoyang of Henan Prov, and finally took over capital of Chang'an [Shenxi Prov]. Huang Chao Rebellion lasted a dozen years. Tang court had to rely upon nomadic mercenaries, including Shatuo and Tanguts, for quelling the rebellion. The end result of Huang Chao Rebellion would be the usurpation of Tang Dynasty by Zhu Wen who defected from Huang Chao camp. Zhu Wen's establishing Posterior Liang Dynasty would throw northern China into the turmoil time period called "Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms".

Five Dynasties

During Five Dynasties time period, Tangut's Tuoba-Li family expressed loyalty to all five succeeding courts as well as the Northern Han Dynasty to the east of the Yellow River. Only Posterior Tang had launched one campaign against Tuoba-Li's Tangut regime. In AD 895, Toba Sigong (i.e., Li Sigong) passed away. Brother Li Sijian assumed the post of "ding-na-jun jie-du-shi" (i.e., Governor-general for Quelling-turmoil Garrison). When Posterior Liang was founded by Zhu Wen, Li Sijian expressed loyalty and received extra titles of "jianxiao taiwei" [monitoring captain] and "shi zhong" [imperial attache]. In 908, Li Sigong's grandson, Li Yichang, took over Li Sijian's post. Three months later, Li Yichang was killed by his general Gao Zongyi. An uncle, by the name of Li Renfu, was supported as the new Governor-general for Quelling-turmoil Garrison. Li Renfu was attacked by Li Chunxu (i.e., King Jinn-wang) at one time by encircling Xiazhou; but Posterior Liang Emperor Taizu (i.e., Zhu Wen) came to the relief of Li Renfu.

Posterior Tang leader had once gone into exile in another nomadic group of people called Dadan (to be mixed up with Tartar later) till he was recalled by Tang emperor for quelling the Huang Chao rebellion. When Zhu Wen usurped Tang, General Li Keyong and his son Li Chunxu set up the so-called Posterior

Tang. To combat Posterior Liang, he would strike an agreement with the Khitans (a branch of earlier Xianbei nomads) against Posterior Liang.

But the Khitans, under Yelu Ahbaoji (Yeh-lu A-pao-chi) and his Uyghur wife, would collude with Posterior Liang. The Khitans obtained a Chinese minister called Han Yanwei and conquered, in AD 926, tribes like Dangxiang (Tanguts) in the west and the Tungusic P'o-hai (Bohai) and north Korea in the east. Khitan became a much larger northern power.

After Li Chunxu overthrew Posterior Liang, Tangut's Li Renfu expressed loyalty to Posterior Tang. In AD 933, Tangut's Li Yichao assumed the post of his father Li Renfu. Posterior Tang Emperor Mingzong [Li Siyuan or Li Dan, reign 926-933] had campaigned against Li Yichao for his refusal to relocate to Yanzhou. After laying siege of Xiazhou in vain for over hundred days, Posterior Tang Emperor Mingzong withdrew the siege and re-confirmed Li Yichao's post. After Li Yichao's death in AD 936, brother Li Yiyin assumed the Tangut post.

Posterior Jinn (AD 936-946) was led by a Posterior Tang general called Shi Jingtang, also a Shatuo (Sha'to) nomad. Shi, in order to fight Posterior Tang, would secede 16 *zhou* (a unit larger than prefecture but smaller than province) to the Khitans, including today's Beijing city which was never recovered from the nomads till Ming Dynasty (AD 1368-1644) overthrown the Mongol Yuan Dynasty. Yelu Ahbaoji's son, Yelu Deguang, would assist Posterior Jinn in destroying Posterior Tang and hence take over 16 northern Chinese prefectures as a ransom. With the help of Khitans, Posterior Jinn took over Luoyang and destroyed Posterior Tang.

When Shi Jingtang, i.e., Posterior Tang Emperor Mingzong's son-in-law, colluded with Khitans in overthrowing Posterior Tang and establishing Posterior Jinn, Tangut's Li Yiyin continued to receive the old conferrals. Posterior Jinn further caught Tangut rebels in AD 943 on behalf of Li Yiyin. When Khitans attacked Posterior Jinn in AD 944, Li Yiyin led a combined force of 40,000 Tibetans, Qiangs and Han Chinese in attacking the west of Khitans by crossing the Yellow River at Linzhou.

However, rifts between Khitan Liao and Posterior Jinn ensued, and Khitans destroyed Posterior Jinn. When Posterior Jinn Emperor Chudi refused to acknowledge vassalage to Khitans, Yelu Deguang attacked Posterior Jinn and

destroyed Posterior Jinn in AD 946. Khitans renamed their dynasty to Liao Dynasty in AD 947 in the attempt of ruling northern China. Liu Zhiyuan of Shatuo origin established Posterior Han Dynasty. Posterior Han Dynasty continued the pacification policy as to the Tanguts, and further seceded Jingzhou (Mizhi county of Shenxi) to Tangut's Li Yiyin in AD 949 and conferred the title of "zhong shu ling" (minister for central secretariat).

At this time, Southern Tang (AD 937-975) in Nanking, south of the Yantze River, had contacted Khitans expressing a desire to go to the ex-Tang capital of Chang'an to maintain the imperial tombs.

When weather got hot and Chinese under Liu Zhiyuan rebelled against them, Yelu Deguang retreated to the north and died on route home at a place called Fox-killing Ridge. A Posterior Jinn general of Shatuo tribe origin, Liu Zhiyuan, would be responsible for rallying an army and pressured Khitans into retreat, and hence Liu founded the Posterior Han Dynasty (AD 947-950), citing the same family name as Han Empire's founder. Yelu Deguang's nephew (Wuyue Yelu Ruan), would succeed the Khitan post in AD 947. Five years later, in AD 951, he was assassinated.

Guo Wei, a general of Posterior Han Dynasty responsible for the defeating Posterior Jinn, rebelled after his family were slaughtered in the capital; Guo later staged a change of dynasty by having his soldiers propose that he be the emperor of Posterior Zhou (AD 951-960). The uncle of Posterior Han emperor declared Northern Han (AD 951-979) in today's Shanxi and allied with Khitans. After Guo Wei, i.e., "liu shou" (governing magistrate) for Yedu (Yecheng of Shanxi), killed Posterior Han Dynasty Emperor Yindi (r 948-950), Guo Wei upgraded Tangut's Li Yiyin to the title of King Longxi-jun-wang in AD 951.

Yelu Deguang's son, Wulu (Yelu Jing), would now succeed in AD 951. Note that the Yelu family had adopted Chinese first names here, and they had sinicized by adopting Chinese language, rituals and governmental structure. Guo Wei, i.e., Posterior Zhou Dynasty Emperor Taizu (r 951-954), conferred the title of King Xiping-wang onto Li Yiyin in AD 954. Li Yiyin did not sever relations with Northern Han Dynasty till AD 957.

Guo Wei's Posterior Zhou will pass on to his foster son, Cai Rong, to be eventually replaced by his general called Zhao Kuangying who founded the

Northern Song Dynasty (AD 960-1127).

When Northern Han (Liu Chong) and Khitan Liao attacked Posterior Zhou by taking advantage of the death of Guo Wei, Cai Rong led imperial bodyguard troops to Gaoping to counter Northern Han and Khitans. A general, *zhi hui* Fan Aineng fled the scene. When Cai Rong was targeted by enemy arrow shooters, Zhao Kuangyin led a dozen brave soldiers on a charge against the enemies and rescued Cai Rong. Posterior Zhou army chased Liu Chong to He-dong city, and Zhao Kuangyin personally led a fire attack at the city. Cai Rong retreated after Zhao suffered an arrow wound in the left arm. When Posterior Zhou retreated to Biandu (Kaifeng) the capital, Zhao Kuangyin was conferred Marquis Duyu-hou and *ci shi* of Yanzhou prefecture.

During the third year reign of Zhou Shizong, i.e., AD 956, Posterior Zhou campaigned against the Huainan territories of Southern Tang. Both Zhao Kuangyin and Zhao Hongyin joined the campaigns. Posterior Zhou defeated a over 10000 Tang army at Wokou and killed *bingma (soldier & horse) du-jian (monitoring general)* He Yanxi. Southern Tang army, claiming 150000, led by <JIEDU-SHI< i>Huangfu Hui and Yao Feng, overflowed the Qingliu-guan Pass. When Zhao Kuangyin chased the Tang army to the city, Huangfu Hui requested for stationing his troops outside of the citywall for a duel. Huangfu Hui was personally decapitated by Zhao, and Yao Feng captured. When Zhao Kuangyin entered the city, he ordered that the city gates be closed at night; Zhao Hongyin was dissuaded from entering the city at night. When Han Lingkun took over Yangzhou, Southern Tang came to the relief. Han Lingkun proposed to retreat, but Emperor Shizong ordered that Zhao Kuangyin lead 2000 relief soldiers to Liuhe to counter Tang relief. Zhao issued an order stating that should Han Lingkun's soldiers retreat to Liuhe, they would be cut off the feet. Han Lingkun hence solidified his defence at Yangzhou. Thereafter, Zhao defeated King Qi Jingda of Southern Tang east of Liuhe and killed over 10000 enemies. Upon return to the capital, Zhao was conferred the post of *dianqian (front of imperial seat) du-zhi-hui-shi (directing general)* and *jiedu-shi* for Dingguo-jun Garrison.

During the fourth year reign of Zhou Shizong, i.e., AD 957, Zhao Kuangyin participated in the campaign against Shouchun. Posterior Zhou took over Zhuzhai Garrison and Shouzhou city. Upon return, Zhao was conferred the post of *jianxiao (censoring and inspecting) taibao (gestapo)* and *jiedu (governor-*

general) for Yicheng-jun Garrison. In the winter, Posterior Zhou campaigned against Hao-Si areas of Anhui Province. Southern Tang stationed its army on the beach of Shibali-tan (eighteen Chinese mile beach). Zhou Emperor Shizong intended to cross the river via camels, but Zhao Kuangyin jumped into the river to lead the way for his soldiers. Zhao defeated Southern Tang army, and then flowed down to take over Sizhou city. Tang army then stationed at Dunqing-kou mouth. Zhao followed Zhou Emperor Shizong in marching along the east of Huai River and chased the enemy to Shanyang. Zhao captured Tang *jiedu-shi* Chen Chengzhao and took over Chuzhou city. Zhao went on to defeat Tang army at another river mouth, burnt the Tang camps south of the river, and defeated Tang at Guabu. After quelling Huainan (south of Huai River) areas, Southern Tang tried to sow a dissension between Zhao Kuangyin and Zhou Shizong by sending 3000 Chinese ounces of 'baijing' (white gold). Zhao submitted the gold to the imperial coffer. The next year, Zhao was conferred the post of *jiedu-shi* for Zhongwu-jun Garrison.

In AD 959, Zhou Shizong led a northern campaign at Canzhou. Zhao was conferred the post of *sui-lu du bushu* ('land-water governing general in charge'). Zhou Shizong personally went to Qianning-jun Garrison to lead the attack at Ningzhou, and Ningzhou *ci shi* Wang Hong surrendered. Then, Han Tong was assigned the charge of land army and Zhao in charge of boats. Zhou army attacked Yijin-guan Pass. When Wang Hong called upon the guarding general Zhong Tinghui for surrender, Zhong agreed. Zhong Tinghui was retained at the pass. When reaching Mozhou area, Zhao deserted boats and attacked Waqiao-guan Pass. Zhao defeated guarding general Yao Neibing at Waqiao-guan Pass. When Zhou armies, led by *du zhihui-shi* Li Chongjing, by Han Tong (who pacified Mozhou and Yingzhou) and by emperor, converged under Waqiao-guan Pass, Yao Neibing surrendered and he was assigned the post of *ci shi* for Nuzhou. Zhou quelled the area south of the pass.

Zhou Shizong then ordered a campaign against Khitans at Youzhou and Yizhou. Li Chongjing was ordered to attack northward. Li took over Gu'an city. North of the city was An'yang-sui River. Khitans dismantled the bridge and hid the boats. Zhou Shizong, seeing the river was wide, ordered the building of the bridge and then left for Waqiao-guan Pass. Zhou Shizong later fell ill. Meantime, Sun Xingyou was ordered to attack Yizhou and he took over the city and captured *ci shi* Li Zaiqin. Li Zaiqin refused to surrender and was ordered executed by Zhou Shizong. When Zhou Shizong's illness got worse, Zhao

Kuangyin persuaded him into a return to the capital. Waqiao-guan was renamed Xiongzhou and Chen Sirang was to guard it; Yijin-guan was renamed Bazhou and Han Lingkun was to guard it. Zhou Shizong accidentally read about a 3-foot wood document stating that 'jianjian would be the new emperor'. Upon return to the capital, Zhou Shizong deprived *dian jian* Zhang De of his post and re-assigned it onto Zhao Kuangyin, plus the title of *jianxiao taifu*. When Posterior Zhou Emperor Gongdi was enthroned, Zhao was conferred the post of *jiedu* for Guide-jun Garrison and *jianxiao tai-wei* (grand captain).

The next year, i.e., AD 960, Northern Han and Khitans invaded Zhou territories. Zhao lead an army to counter the attack. While stopping at Chenqiao-yi station, Zhao's follower, Miao Xun, pointed to the sky for a second sun under the sun. At deep night, Zhao's generals had an assembly and proposed that Zhao Kuangyin be the new emperor and they put a yellow gown onto Zhao. The next day, Zhao led his troops back to the capital and usurped Posterior Zhou Dynasty.

This is Zhao Kuangyin's Chenqiao Coup by which he took over the reign from Posteriore Zhou and established Song Dynasty as Emperor Taizu (r 960-976). Tangut's Li Yiyin promptly dispatched emissary to Song court for expressing loyalty, and changed his name to Li Yixing for avoiding the conflict with the last character of the given name of Zhao Kuangyin's father. Li Yiyin surrendered 300 stallions to Song court in AD 962 and received jade-belt as imperial bestowal in return. When Li Yiyin died in AD 967, Song Emperor Taizu ordered a mourning for three days and conferred Li Yiyin the title of King Xia-wang posthumously. Tangut's Li Guangrui assumed his father's post.

Ten Nations

Scholar Luo Xianglin, stating that Chinese had been fleeing Huang Chao rebellion throughout the territories sacked by the rebels, summarized the following safe havens: refugees to Sichuan Prov where Wang Jian established Shu Regime; refugess to Hunan Prov where Ma Yin established Chu Regime; refugess to Guangdong & Guangxi provinces where Liu Yin established Southern Han Regime; refugees to Fujian Prov where Wang Shenzhi established Min Regime; refugees to Zhejiang Prov where Qian Mu established Wu-Yue Regime;

and refuges to Anhui-Jiangsu provinces where Yang Xingmi & Li Zhigao established Yang-Wu and Southern Tang regimes.

Northern China was inevitably mingled with nomads from Manchuria and Mongolia. The city of Beijing would remain in the hands of the Khitans (AD 907-1125), and then passed into the Jurchens (AD 1115-1234) after a short interim under Song administration, Mongol Yuan (AD 1279-1368) till Ming Dynasty overthrew the Mongolian yoke in AD 1368. For hundreds of years, the Song Dynasty, built on top of Northern Zhou (AD 951-960) of the Cai(1) family, would be engaged in the games of 'three kingdom' kind of warfare. Northern Song (AD 960-1127) would face off with the Western Xia (AD 1032-1227) and Khitan Liao in a triangle, and then played the card of allying with the Jurchens in destroying the Khitan Liao. With Northern Song defeated by the Jurchens thereafter, Southern Song (AD 1127-1279) would be engaged in another triangle game, with the other players being Western Xia and the Jurchen Jin. Southern Song would then play the card of allying with the Mongolians in destroying Jurchen Jin, and it even sent tens of thousands of carts of grain to the Mongol army in the besieging of the last Jurchen stronghold. Soon after that, the Southern Song generals broke the agreement with the Mongols and they shortly took over the so-called three old capitals of Kaifeng, Luoyang and Chang'an. But they could not hold on to any of the three because what they had occupied had been empty cities after years of warfare between the Jurchens and Mongols. Similar to the times of the Western Jin (AD 265-316) and Eastern Jin (AD 317-420), the northern Chinese would have fled to the south during these conflicts. While Eastern Jin re-established their capital in Nanking, the Southern Song, driven away from Nanking by the Jurchens, chose today's Hangzhou as the new capital. Hangzhou, however, had been the capital of Warring Kingdoms in Zhou times.

SONG DYNASTY

For hundreds of years, the Song Dynasty, built on top of Northern Zhou (AD 951-960) of the Cai(1) family, would be engaged in the games of 'three kingdom' kind of warfares. Northern Song (AD 960-1127) would face off with the Western Xia (AD 1032-1227) and Khitan Liao in a triangle. After a defeat by the Khitans, Song Dynasty never tried to retake Beijing again. (Posterior Tang general Shi Jingtang, a Shatuo, in order to fight Posterior Tang, had seceded 16 *zhou* or prefectures to the Khitans, including today's Beijing city. It would be Ming Dynasty that would overthrow the Mongol Yuan Dynasty and retake Beijing.) Song later played the card of allying with the Jurchens in destroying the Khitan Liao. With Northern Song defeated by the Jurchens thereafter, Southern Song (AD 1127-1279) would be engaged in another triangle game, with the other players being Western Xia and the Jurchen Jin. Southern Song would then play the card of allying with the Mongols in destroying Jurchen Jin, and it even sent tens of thousands of carts of grain to the Mongol army in the besieging of the last Jurchen stronghold. Soon after that, the Southern Song generals broke the agreement with the Mongols and shortly took over the so-called three old capitals of Kaifeng, Luoyang and Chang'an. But they could not hold on to any of the three because what they had occupied had been empty cities after years of warfare between the Jurchens and Mongols. Similar to the times of the Western Jinn (AD 265-316) and Eastern Jinn (AD 317-420), the northern Chinese would have fled to the south during these conflicts. (Another repeat of history would be later Manch attack of Ming Dynasty.) While Eastern Jinn re-established their capital in Nanking, the Southern Song, driven away from Nanking by the Jurchens, chose Lin'an (today's Hangzhou) as the new capital. Historians had a good conclusion for Song Dynasty: Mongol General Bayan stated that Song Dynasty had obtained the throne from a kid and would lose it in the hands of a kid. Song obtained its kingdom from a child emperor of Northern Zhou and it officially ended when Prime Minister Lu Xiufu jumped off the cliffs of Mt Yashan with child emperor on his back.

Song Dynasty enjoyed the start of the so-called prosperous 'Silk Road' on the seas. Historians cited European historian's claim that southern Chinese developed overseas commerce as a compensation for the loss of the land route

after losing northern China to the Jurchens, with ships built in Canton & Quanzhou that could carry as many as 1000 people. Across Southeast Asian islands, wreckage of numerous Song Chinese merchant ships had been discovered, with typical Chinese products like potteries as well as Chinese coins. The adoption of compass in AD 1119, an invention first mentioned in 1st year of Xuanhe Era of Northern Song Emperor Huizong, would make seafaring trip less precarious. Yan Qinghuang also mentioned the imperial sanction of sea goddess, i.e., "Ma [mother] Zu [ancestress]", in AD 1156, 1158 & 1190, as a sign that sea commerce had prospered under Song emperors. In lieu of Tang system of using eunuchs, Song designated court officials to four coastal ports for dealing with foreign merchants. The "overseas trip permit" system, first adopted in AD 989, was enforced. Zhao Rushi's "*Zhu [various] Fan [foreign countries] Zhi [records]*" mentioned that murderer of Chinese merchant at Zhancheng [southern Vietnam?] was caught and that King of San-fo-qi wrote to China in Chinese language. Yan Qinghuang cited "*Song Shi*" [History of Song Dynasty] in pointing out that overseas Chinese had become leaders in alien lands, including Java [Mao Xu] and Japan [Zhu Rencong, Zhou Wende, Zhou Wenyi, Chen Wenyu, Sun Zhong & Li Chong]. Along the southeast coast of China would be settlement or ghettos of ethnic Arab, Muslim and Christian residents. Yan Qinghuang mentioned an AD 1225 book by port magistrate ("shi [trade] po [moor] si [magistrate]") Zhao Rushi of Quanzhou as a good example of management over foreigners. (Also see Mongol Yuan's extension of shi-po-si system to three additional cities.) Do note that foreigners had visited and dwelled in Guangzhou and Quanzhou much earlier than Song Dynasty. History recorded i) that Indian envoys arrived at the Han Court in AD 159/161 and Roman emissary in the Han Dynasty year of AD 166 and during the Wu Dynasty time period of the Three Kingdoms via a stop at Rinan (i.e., Champa); ii) that Lijian or Roman emissary, per "*History of Jinn Dynasties*" by Tang Dynasty's Fang Xuanling, came to Western Jinn court during the Taikang Era, AD 280-289, of Jinn Wudi (reign 265-290 AD); iii) that Indian and Arab merchant ships carried Fa Shien back to China during AD 399-414; iv) that Indian buddhists had come to Canton (Guangzhou) during the Liang Dynasty time period; and v) that at the end of Tang Dynasty, rebell leader Huang Chao had sacked Canton and killed numerous foreigners.

Song China possessed the most numerous and brilliant neo-Confucians. Those Confucians were so-called pillars and safeguards of the system, an elite class who obtained their officialdom via the civil services exam (open to almost all

classes of people, though not altogether). This system of emperor's men had its heyday in Song Dynasty when first emperor of Song forced all his generals into retirement and conferred even the military posts onto civil-service officials. (Cai Dongfan commented that Song Dynasty's weakness lied in its disparagement of the military since Song never had to experience the power corruptions of empresses, eunuchs, in-law families, governors and royal families as seen in previous dynasties.) Song Dynasty produced such righteous ministers as Fan Zhongyan who was famous for a motto that "one should worry before the populace do so and seek happiness only after the populace become happy". Song time period also saw a 'political correctness' in applying Confucianism. The most notorious would be the stringent requirements for the women's faithfulness to the marriage and their husbands. 'Feet Binding', said to have been developed by last ruler of Southern Tang Dynasty, would become a norm during the Song Dynasty. Various Song ministers would devise their family mottos. This is best illustrated by the familial motto guides such as *Zhu Family Mottos*. Zhu Xi was the neo-Confucian of Song Dynasty. Song Dynasty also produced numerous 'Si Yi' intellectuals, i.e., those Confucians who sacrificed their families and lives for the country. When chased by the Mongols, Prime Minister Lu Xiufu, with young emperor on his back, fled to southern tip of Mt Yashan. After driving his family into the sea, Lu jumped into the sea with emperor on his back. Wen Tianxiang, on the date of being executed, wrote a poem, stating that "*Confucius proposed that one should die for compassion (Ren) and Mencius suggested that one should die for righteousness (Yi). Only when righteousness is fully exerted will the compassion be derived. What should I endeavour after educating myself with so many books of the ancient saints? However, I am sure that I feel no guilty about myself from this death moment on.*" (Confucius wording for 'Ren' should mean a broader sense of human perfection, similar to nirvana in Buddhism. 'Ren' also meant nucleus in Chinese, as used for the nucleus of various fruits like apple.)

In AD 1223, i.e., 16th year of Song Emperor's Jiading Era, China boasted of a population of 76.81 million people, but in AD 1264, i.e., 5th year of Song Emperor Lizong's Jingding Era, China only had 13.03 million people. The conclusion is that China's brave men had fallen martyrdom in the resistance to invasion, something we should take pride in. Similarly, China endured another round of population drop during Manchu invasion. In AD 1620, i.e., 1st year of Ming Emperor Guangzong's Taichang Era, China boasted of a population of 51.66 million people, but in AD 1651, i.e., 8th year of Qing Emperor Shizu's Shunzhi

Era, China only had 10.63 million people.

Northern Song Dynasty

The demise of Tang Dynasty brought about the Five Dynasties (AD 907-960) in northern China and 10 Kingdoms (AD 902-979), with nine kingdoms in southern China and Northern Han (AD 951-979) in Shanxi. As recorded in history, the three dynasties in between Posterior Liang and Posterior Zhou were of alien nature, founded by generals who belonged to a group of nomads called Shatuo (Sha'to, a Turkic tribe). While Posterior Liang (AD 907-923) was set up by Zhu Wen (who first betrayed rebel leader Huang Chao and then usurped Tang Dynasty), the leader of later Posterior Tang (AD 923-936) and Posterior Jinn (AD 936-946) all came from nomadic Shatuo (Sha'to). This time period marks the penetration and influence of the Khitans on northern China.

When Zhu Wen usurped Tang, General Li Keyong and his son Li Chunxu set up Posterior Tang. History of Li Keyong family of Shatuo origin was covered in the section on Five Dynasties & Ten Kingdoms.



Around AD 907, the Khitans invaded northern Chinese post of Yunzhong. To combat Posterior Liang, Li Keyong would strike an agreement with the Khitans. But the Khitans, under Yelu A'baoji (Yeh-lu A-pao-chi AD 872-926), would collude with Posterior Liang. Yelu A'baoji sought suzerainty with Zhu Wen for sake of title conferring as well as marriage with Zhu Wen's daughter. Posterior Jinn (AD 936-946), led by called Shi Jingtang [a former general of Posterior Tang], in order to fight Posterior Tang, would secede 16 *zhou* to the Khitans. Yelu A'baoji's son, Yelu Deguang, would assist Posterior Jinn in destroying Posterior Tang. However, rifts between Khitan Liao and Posterior Jinn ensued, and Khitans destroyed Posterior Jinn in AD 946. Khitans renamed their dynasty to Liao Dynasty in AD 947 in the attempt of ruling northern China. When weather got hot and Chinese under Liu Zhiyuan rebelled against them, Yelu Deguang retreated to the north and died en route home at a place called Fox-killing Ridge. A Posterior Jinn general of Shatuo tribe origin, Liu Zhiyuan, would be responsible for rallying an army and pressured Khitans into retreat, and hence Liu founded the Posterior Han Dynasty (AD 947-950). Guo Wei, a general of Posterior Han Dynasty responsible for defeating Posterior Jinn, rebelled after his family were slaughtered in the capital; Guo later staged a change of dynasty by having his soldiers propose that he be the emperor of Posterior Zhou (AD 951-960). The uncle of Posterior Han emperor declared Northern Han (AD 951-979) in today's Shanxi and allied with Khitans. Guo Wei's Posterior Zhou will pass on to his foster son, Cai Rong, to be eventually replaced by his general called Zhao Kuangying who founded the Northern Song Dynasty (AD 960-1127).

Song Emperor Taizu (Zhao Kuangyin, reign AD 960-976)

Song Emperor Taizu, i.e., Zhao Kuangyin, had few legendary chivalry stories, including 'Escorting Miss Jingniang Home For Over Thousand Mile'. Emperor Taizu's father was Zhao Hongyin who was serving Posterior Zhou as '*si tu*', '*shang-jiangjun*' (highest general), and '*tai wei*' (grand captain) posthumously. Before Posterior Zhou, Zhao Hongyin at one time rescued Posterior Tang Emperor Zhuangzong and was conferred the post of '*dian jian*', i.e., monitoring general in charge of imperial bodyguard column. During Posterior Han time period, Zhao Hongyin had defeated Sichuan army at Chencang; during Posterior Zhou time period, in AD 953, Zhao Hongyin defeated Wu army from the Yangtz Delta and took over Yangzhou of Jiangsu and Shouchun of Anhui. Emperor Taizu's grandfather was a Tang Dynasty '*ci shi*' (circuit inspector) of Zhuozhou

Prefecture, and further up the lineage would be numerous ancestors serving under Tang Dynasty.

Zhao Kuangyin was born in Luoyang in AD 927, i.e., the 2nd year of Posterior Tang's Tiancheng Era. Zhao Kuangyin was called a 'fragrant baby' at birth, and his body carried golden glittering color. Zhao Kuangyin had two childhood friends, Han Lingkun and Murong Yanzhao. Zhao Kuangyin had high ambitions at young age and left home for the frontline by himself, without notifying his father. Zhao Kuangyin joined the army led by Guo Wei, *qumi fu shi* and *zhaowei anfu shi* of Posterior Han. (Guo Wei was ordered to fight Li Shouzhen rebellion.) Guo Wei quelled the rebellions of Hezhong, Yongxing and Fenxiang, and brought Zhao Kuangyin to Yecheng. When Guo Wei usurped Posterior Han and set up Posterior Zhou, Zhao Kuangyin was assigned the post of deputy head for Huazhou prefecture and *ma zhi jun shi* of Kaifeng-fu governor office. When Posterior Zhou Emperor Shizong (Cai Rong) enthroned in AD 954, Zhao Kuangyin and his father (Zhao Hongyin) were both in charge of Posterior Zhou Emperor Shizong's imperial bodyguard column. (Cai Rong was the son of Guo Wei's brother-in-law, Cai Shouli.)

When Northern Han (Liu Chong) and Khitan Liao attacked Posterior Zhou by taking advantage of the death of Guo Wei, Cai Rong led imperial bodyguard troops to Gaoping to counter Northern Han and Khitans. A general, *zhi hui* Fan Aineng fled the scene. When Cai Rong was targeted by enemy archers, Zhao Kuangyin led a dozen brave soldiers on a charge against the enemies and rescued Cai Rong. Posterior Zhou army chased Liu Chong to He-dong city, and Zhao Kuangyin personally led a fire attack at the city. Cai Rong retreated after Zhao suffered an arrow wound in the left arm. When Posterior Zhou retreated to Biandu (Kaifeng) the capital, Zhao Kuangyin was conferred Marquis Duyu-hou and *ci shi* or circuit inspector of Yanzhou prefecture.

During the third year reign of Zhou Shizong, i.e., AD 956, Posterior Zhou campaigned against the Huainan (south of Huai River) territories of Southern Tang Dynasty. Both Zhao Kuangyin and Zhao Hongyin joined the campaigns. Posterior Zhou defeated a Southern Tang army of over 10000 men at Wokou and killed *bingma (soldier & horse) du-jian (monitoring general)* He Yanxi. Southern Tang army, claiming 150000, led by *jiedu-shi* (satrap or governor) Huangfu Hui and Yao Feng, overflowed the Qingliu-guan Pass. When Zhao Kuangyin chased the Southern Tang army to the city, Huangfu Hui requested for stationing his

troops outside of the citywall for a duel. Huangfu Hui was personally decapitated by Zhao, and Yao Feng was captured. After Zhao Kuangyin entered the city, he ordered that the city gates be closed at night. Zhao Kuangyin's father, Zhao Hongyin, was dissuaded from entering the city at night as a show of discipline without regard for kinsmanship. When Han Lingkun took over Yangzhou, Southern Tang came to the relief. Han Lingkun proposed a retreat; however, Posterior Zhou Emperor Shizong ordered that Zhao Kuangyin lead 2000 relief soldiers to Liuhe to counter Southern Tang relief army. Zhao Kuangyin issued an order stating that should Han Lingkun's soldiers retreat to Liuhe, they would be cut off the feet. Han Lingkun hence solidified his defence at Yangzhou. Thereafter, Zhao Kuangyin defeated King Qi Jingda of Southern Tang to the east of Liuhe, and Zhao Kuangyin killed over 10000 enemies. Upon return to the capital, Zhao Kuangyin was conferred the post of *dianqian* (*front of imperial throne*) *du-zhi-hui-shi* (*directing general*) and *jiedu-shi* (satrap or commissioning general) for Dingguo-jun Garrison.

During the fourth year reign of Posterior Zhou Emperor Shizong, i.e., AD 957, Zhao Kuangyin participated in the campaign against Shouchun of today's Anhui Prov. Posterior Zhou took over Zhu-zhai Garrison and Shouzhou city. Upon return, Zhao was conferred the post of *jianxiao* (*censoring and inspecting*) *taibao* (*gestapo*) and *jiedu* (*commissioning general*) for Yicheng-jun Garrison. In the winter, Posterior Zhou campaigned against Hao-Si prefecture areas of Anhui Province. Southern Tang stationed its army on the beach of Shibali-tan (eighteen Chinese mile beach). Zhou Emperor Shizong intended to cross the river via camels, but Zhao Kuangyin simply jumped into the river to lead the way as an example for his soldiers. Zhao defeated Southern Tang army on the opposite bank, and then flowed down the river to take over Sizhou city. Tang army then stationed at Dunqing-kou river mouth. Zhao followed Zhou Emperor Shizong in marching along the east of Huai River and chased the enemy to Shanyang. Zhao captured Southern Tang *jiedu-shi* (satrap or governor) Chen Chengzhao and took over Chuzhou city. Zhao went on to defeat Tang army at another river mouth, burnt the Tang camps south of the river, and defeated Tang army at Guabu. After quelling Huainan (south of Huai River) areas, Southern Tang tried to sow a dissension between Zhao Kuangyin and Zhou Emperor Shizong by sending 3000 Chinese ounces of 'baijing' (white gold) as a bribe. Zhao submitted the gold to the imperial coffer. The next year, Zhao was conferred the post of *jiedu-shi* (satrap or commissioning general) for Zhongwu-jun Garrison.

In AD 959, Zhou Emperor Shizong led a northern campaign at Canzhou. Zhao Kuangyin was conferred the post of *sui-lu du bushu* ('land-water governing general in charge'). Zhou Shizong personally went to Qianning-jun Garrison to lead the attack at Ningzhou. Ningzhou *ci shi* (circuit inspector or governor) Wang Hong surrendered. Then, Han Tong was assigned the post in charge of land army while Zhao in charge of boats. Posterior Zhou army attacked Yijinguan Pass. Wang Hong called upon the guarding general Zhong Tinghui for surrender. Zhong Tinghui agreed. Zhong Tinghui was retained as a general at the pass. When reaching Mozhou area, Zhao Kuangyin deserted boats for the bank, and attacked Waqiao-guan Pass. Zhao defeated guarding general Yao Neibing at Waqiao-guan Pass. When Posterior Zhou armies, led by *du zhihui-shi* Li Chongjing, by Han Tong (who pacified Mozhou and Yingzhou) and by emperor himself, converged under Waqiao-guan Pass, Yao Neibing surrendered. Yao was assigned the post of *ci shi* for Nuzhou. Posterior Zhou quelled the area south of the pass. Zhou Emperor Shizong then ordered a campaign against Khitans in Youzhou and Yizhou. Li Chongjing was ordered to attack northward. Li took over Gu'an city. North of the city was An'yang-shui River. Khitans dismantled the bridge and hid away the boats. Zhou Shizong, seeing that the river was wide, ordered the building of the bridge and then left for Waqiao-guan Pass. Zhou Shizong later fell ill. Meantime, Sun Xingyou was ordered to attack Yizhou and he took over the city and captured *ci shi* Li Zaiqin. Li Zaiqin refused to surrender and was ordered executed by Zhou Shizong. When Zhou Shizong's illness got worse, Zhao Kuangyin persuaded him into a return to the capital. Waqiao-guan was renamed Xiongzhou and Chen Sirang was to guard it; Yijinguan was renamed Bazhou, and Han Lingkun was to guard it. Zhou Shizong accidentally read about a 3-foot wood document stating that '*dianjian* would be the new emperor'. Upon return to the capital, Zhou Shizong deprived *dianjian* Zhang De of his post and re-assigned it onto Zhao Kuangyin. Emperor Zhou Shizong also assigned Zhao Kuangyin the title of *jianxiao taifu*. Zhou Shizong died shortly. When Posterior Zhou Emperor Gongdi was enthroned, Zhao Kuangyin was conferred the post of *jiedu* for Gui'de-jun Garrison and *jianxiao taiwei* (grand captain). The next year, Northern Han and Khitans colluded in invading Zhou territories. Zhao lead an army to counter the attack. While stopping at Chenqiao-yi station, Zhao's follower, Miao Xun, pointed to the sky for another officer to see a second sun under the sun. At deep night, Zhao's generals had an assembly and proposed that Zhao Kuangyin be the new emperor. The generals put a yellow gown or robe onto Zhao Kuangyin. The next

day, Zhao Kuangyin led his troops back to the capital and usurped Posterior Zhou Dynasty.

Song Emperor Taizong (Zhao Jiong/Guangyi/Kuangyi, reign AD 976-997)
Khitan Emperor Muzong (Yelü Jing r 951-969) was assassinated in AD 969.
Wuyue's son, Yelü Xian, would be enthroned as Khitan Emperor Jingzong (r 969-982). Yelü Xian would appoint Xiao Shouxing as 'shangshu-ling' and take over Xiao's daughter as his empress.

Song Dynasty's second emperor, Song Taizong (r 976-997), tried to attack Beijing after quelling the remnant Posterior Han. Khitans dealt Song Chinese a thorough defeat.

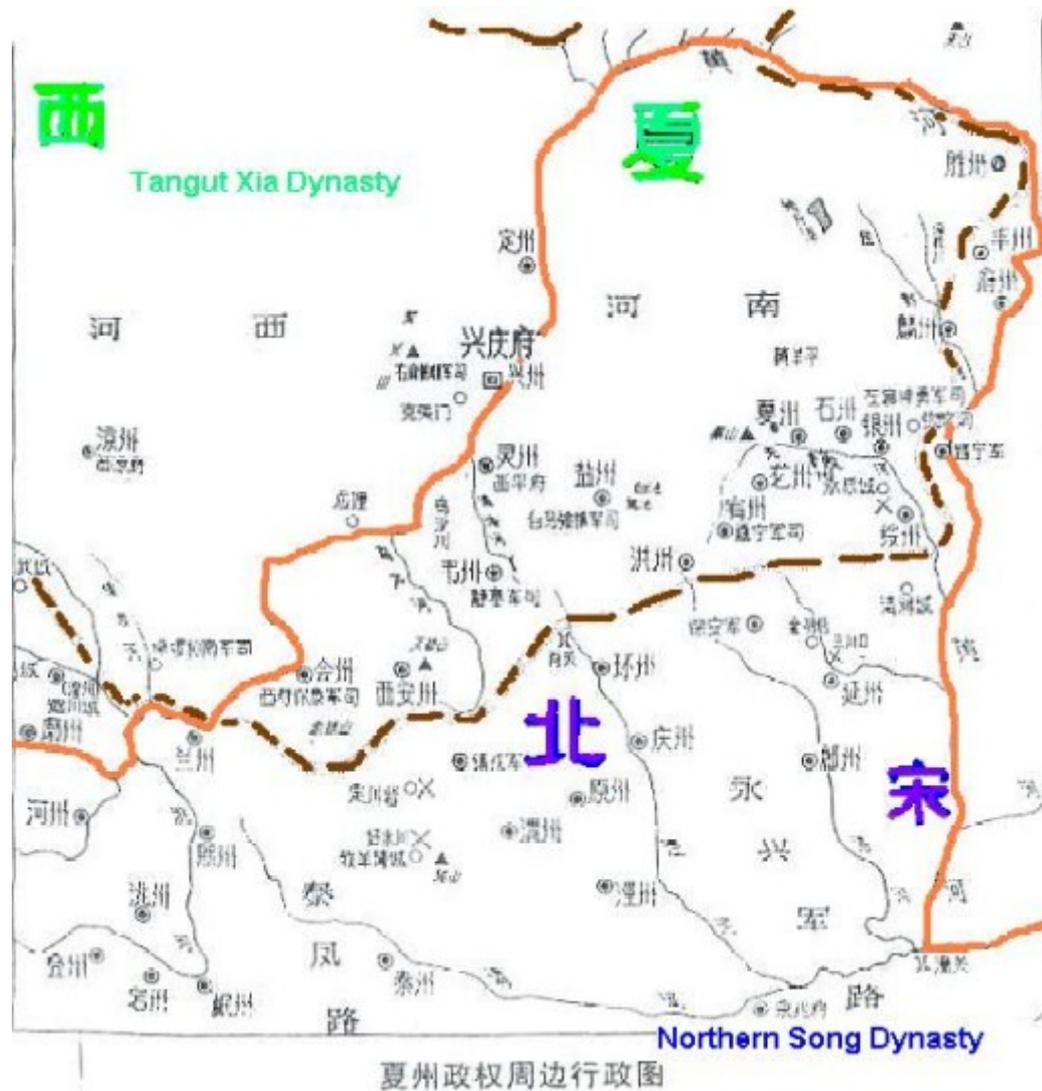
After Khitan Emperor Jingzong (Yelü Xian, r 969-982) died, Yelü Rongxu was enthroned as Khitan Emperor Shengzong (r 982-1031). Empress Yanyan (or Yeye), after the death of Yelü Xian, would assume Khitan regency as so-called Xiao-niangniang or Xiaotaihou. Empress Xiaotaihou changed the dynastic name back to Khitan. i.e., Da Qi Dan or the Great Khitan. Xiaotaihou held the actual power. Xiaotaihou appointed a Chinese, Han Derang (son of Han Kuangsi or Han Guosi) as so-called 'shumi-shi' in charge of secretariat, Yelü Boguzhe in charge of areas west of Beijing, Yelü Xiuge in charge of areas south of Beijing, and accepted the surrender of a Song Chinese general (Li Ji-qian).

Xiaotaihou later took in Han Derang as her lover and conferred onto him the post of prime minister and the title of King Jinn; Xiaotaihou gave Han Derang the Khitan name of Yelü Rongyun. When Xiaotaihou and Han Derang passed away, Yelü Rongxu ordered that Han Derang be buried next to the tomb of Xiaotaihou. Yelü Rongxu campaigned against Koryo for the killing of Koryo king by a minister.

Song Emperor Zhenzong (Zhao Heng, reign AD 998-1022)
During Song Dynasty, Toba Sigong descendant sought suzerainty with Song Chinese and changed their last name to Song royal family name of 'Zhao' from Tang family name of 'Li'. However, Xixia sought suzerainty with Khitans at the same time. When Song Emperor Zhenzong (Zhao Heng, reign AD 998-1022) was enthroned, Xixia ruler, Li Jiqian, sent congratulations. Song Emperor Zhenzong conferred the post of *ding nan jie-du-shi* (governor-general quelling rebellions) and the territories of Xia-Sui-Yin-You-Jing onto Li Jiqian. Zhenzong released a

Xixia official by the name of Zhang Pu. Li Jiqian sent his brother to Song court, and Song granted the name of Zhao Baoji to him.

Emperor Zhenzong dispatched a minister (Zhang Qixian) to Jing-Yuan areas as *jinglüe shi*, and Zhang proposed that the city of Lingwu on the west Yellow River Bend be abandoned. Heh Liang, a Song official in charge of *Yongxing Jun* army would propose to defend Lingwu so that Xixia and Western Territories could be segregated. Heh Liang adamantly proposed that Song build two castles of Fule and Yaode for sake of supplying Lingwu with grains. Heh Liang stated that the supply of good horses would be cut off should Lingwu be lost to the Tanguts. Song Zhenzong then ordered that Wang Chao lead 60,000 relief army to Lingzhou (Lingwu).



Li Jiqian attacked Song *Qingyuan Jun* column, and Duan Yi surrendered to the Tanguts. Li Jiqian then attacked Dingzhou and Huaiyuan; Song official Cao Can assembled nomads and defeated Li Jiqian. In AD 1002, Li Jiqian attacked Lingzhou. Song *zhi zhou shi* Fei Ji defended the city for over one month, cut his finger and wrote a letter for relief with Song court, and later died in street fightings. Wang Chao made an excuse for not going to Lingzhou on time. Li Jiqian renamed Lingzhou to Xiping-fu and made it the capital of Xixia.

One year later, Song *zhi zhenrong jun* Li Jihe wrote to Song court that a chieftan (Tibetan?) from Liugu (six valleys), by the name of Balaji (Panluozhi), intended to attack Tanguts on behalf of Song. Zhang Qixian proposed that Song

conferred the title of King of Liugu and the post of *zhao tao shi* onto Balaji. Song decided to offer Balaji the title of *suofang jie-du-shi* onto Balaji. Balaji claimed that he had assembled 60,000 strong army. Li Jiqian then attacked Linzhou but he was defeated by Song *zhi zhou* Wei Jubao. Li Jiqian re-routed towards Xiliang (Gansu Prov) and killed a Song official called Ding Weiqing. Balaji, previously a vassal under jurisdiction of Xiliang, would pretend to surrender to the Tanguts. When Balaji led his Liugu Tibetan army to Xiliang for Li Jiqian to inspect on, Balaji would suddenly launch an attack at the Tanguts. Balaji shot an arrow at the eye of Li Jiqian. When Li Jiqian fled back to Lingzhou, he died of the wound.

Li Jiqian's son, Li Deming, was enthroned next. Tanguts notified the Khitans of the succession, and Khitans conferred the title of King Xiping-wang onto Li Deming. Song Emperor Zhenzong sent a messenger to Li Deming for sake of pacifying him, and Li Deming dispatched general Wang Shen to Song for seeking suzerainty. Song *zhi zhenrong jun* Cao Wei proposed that Song exterminated Xixia by taking advantage of Li Jiqian's death. Song Zhenzong stated that Song could not attack Tanguts while the Tanguts were in mourning period. Song conferred the post of *dingnan jun jie-du-shi* onto Li Deming and then added King Xiping-wang by copying Khitan approach.

Balaji was killed by some alien tribe, and Liugu tribes erected Balaji's brother, Sibangduo (Siduodu), as the new chief. Song court continued the conferral of *suofang jie-du-shi* onto Sibangduo. Sibangduo failed to rein in his people, and Sibangduo people defeacted to the Tibetans. Tibetan chieftan proposed to Song court that they launch an allied attack at Li Deming. Song Zhenzong declined it. Tibetans, however, invaded Song's Qinzhou territories, and Song official at Qinzhou, Cao Wei, defeated the Tibetans. Song conferred the title of *ningyuan da jiangjun* and *tuan lian shi* of Aizhou onto Tibetan chieftan.

Song Emperor Renzong (Zhao Zhen, reign AD 1023-1063)

Khitans sent emissary to congratulate Song Emperor Renzong's enthronement. The second year, Khitans propogated the news that they would go for hunting at Youzhou. A Song minister by the name of Zhang Zhibai advised against amassing troops for guarding possible Khitan invasion, and Khitans failed to find any excuse to invade Song. Khitans quelled the rebellion in Liaodong areas.

In AD 1031, Khitan Emperor Shengzong (Yelü Rongxu) passed away, and son

Yelü Zongzhen was enthroned as Emperor Xingzong (r 1031-1055). Yelü Rongxu gave two wills to Yelü Zongzhen, i.e., i) treat Khitan empress as his own mother; ii) befriend Song as long as Song keep peace. Yelü Zongzhen sent emissary to Song to notify of his father's death, and Song sent *zhong cheng* (central prime minister) Kong Daofu to express condolences. In AD 1032, Yelü Zongzhen's birth mother took advantage of Yelü Zongzhen's hunting and ordered that Yelü Rongxu's dowager empress to commit suicide. Yelü Zongzhen's birth mother later tried to instigate an usurpation to have a junior son replace Yelü Zongzhen. The junior son (Yelü Chongyuan) notified his brother emperor. Yelü Zongzhen relocated his mother out of the capital and officially took over regency.

Song Emperor Renzong preferred two concubines over empress. Empress Guohou accidentally injured Renzong with two finger scratches in the neck while arguing with Concubine Shang. Renzong, against the objections of several ministers, deposed the empress. Among the admonition ministers, Fan Zhongyan and Kong Daofu were exiled to prefectures as magistrates, and Sun Zude was deprived half a year worth of salary. The ministers argued that the emperor was like a father and the empress was like a mother and that ministers should pacify father and mother instead of encouraging a divorce.

When Song Emperor Renzong's health deteriorated as a result of indulging in sex with two concubines, Dowager Empress Yang Taihou forcefully ordered that the two concubines be driven out of the palace. Yang Taihou selected the daughter of late *qu mi shi* Cao Bin as Empress Caohou. Because Renzong was weak physically and failed to bear offspring, Yang Taihou selected late Emperor Taizong's 4-year-old grandson as the adopted son, and this person would be the later Emperor Yingzong. When Renzong became reminiscent of deposed Empress Guohou, Yan Wenying, a minister who pushed for deposing of Guohou, would poison Guohou. At this time, Fan Zhongyan was recalled to Kaifeng-fu [i.e., capital] office. Fan Zhongyan impeached Yan Wenying; Yan was ordered to be exiled to Xiangzhou prefecture; and Yan died on route.

Tangut ruler Li Deming, aka Zhao Deming, had a son by the name of Li Yuanhao. Li Yuanhao, good at both Tibetan and Chinese languages, often proposed to Li Deming that the Tanguts defeat the Huihe (Uygur) and Tibetans first. Li Yuanhao led a surprise attack at Ganzhou and took over the city from Huihe. Li Deming made Li Yuanhao crown prince. Li Yuanhao often instigated

his father in rebelling against Song. After the death of Li Deming, Li Yuanhao got enthroned. Song dispatched *gongbu langzhong* Yang Ji to the Tanguts and continued the previous conferrals onto Li Yuanhao. Khitans conferred Li Yuanhao the title of King of Xia.

In AD 1034, Li Yuanhao attacked Huanqing territories, i.e., Rouyuanzhai of Qingzhou. Song General Wei Tong attacked the hind of the Tanguts. Tanguts then invaded Song territories again. Li Yuanhao captured Qi Zongju who led relief soldiers from Huanqing and defeated Wang Wen who led relief soldiers from Ningzhou. Then, Li Yuanhao released Qi Zongju for sake of peace with Song. After that, Li Yuanhao dispatched an army of 25,000 against the Tibetans. Tanguts were defeated and Tangut general Sunuer was taken prisoner. Li Yuanhao personally led a retaliatory expedition against the Tibetans, attacked Maoniucheng city, Zongge and Daixingling; while attacking Linhuang and crossing the river half way, Tibetan cavalry charged out, and Li Yuanhao was completely defeated by the Tibetans. Song conferred Tibetan chieftan the title of *bao shun jun liu-hou*.

Li Yuanhao then changed target and attacked the Huihe (Uyгур) people. Li Yuanhao took over Huihe territories of Guazhou, Shazhou and Suzhou (Wuwei, Zhangye, Jiuquan and Dunhuang of Gansu). At this moment, two Chinese intellectuals from Huazhou area went to Lingzhou to see Li Yuanhao. Li Yuanhao (Zhao Yuanhao) adopted the advices of the two guys in building Xixia kingdom, renamed Lingzhou to Xingzhou (where 'xing' means prospering) and xiping-fu into xingqing-fu, declared a dynastic title of "Da Xia" (Grand Xia), established 16 departments and ministries, instituted 12 army supervisors (i.e., *jian jun si*), recruited an official army of 500,000, and devised Tangut characters. In AD 1038, Li Yuanhao sent messenger to Song to notify his imperial entitlement. In his letter, Li Yuanhao claimed Toba heritage from Toba Wei Dynasty.

Because of Li Yuanhao's arrogant letter, Song Emperor Renzong, against the advice of admonition official Wu Yue, would decree that Li Yuanhao's previous conferrals be rescinded and that Song Chinese be forbidden from trading with the Tanguts. Song court further gave out a reward for the head of Li Yuanhao, i.e., rewarding as governor-general of *ding nan jie-du-shi*. Song court conferred the post of *an-hu-shi* onto Xia Song for the territories of Jing-Yuan-Qin-Feng, and the post of *an-hu-shi* onto Fan Yong for the territories of Fu-Yan-Huan-

Qing. Li Yuanhao invaded Song and attacked Song's *bao-an jun* column. At Anyuan-zhai, Li Yuanhao encountered a defeat in the hands of several Song Chinese armies led by Di Qing. Di Qing, originally from west of the Yellow River Bend, with the title of *xunjian zhi-hue-shi*, was recorded to have long dangling hair. During fights, Di Qing would wear bronze mask and impressed the enemy with a golden face. Li Yuanhao, with tens of thousands of army, retreated in face of Di Qing's ferociousness. Li Yuanhao then re-routed towards Yanzhou area.

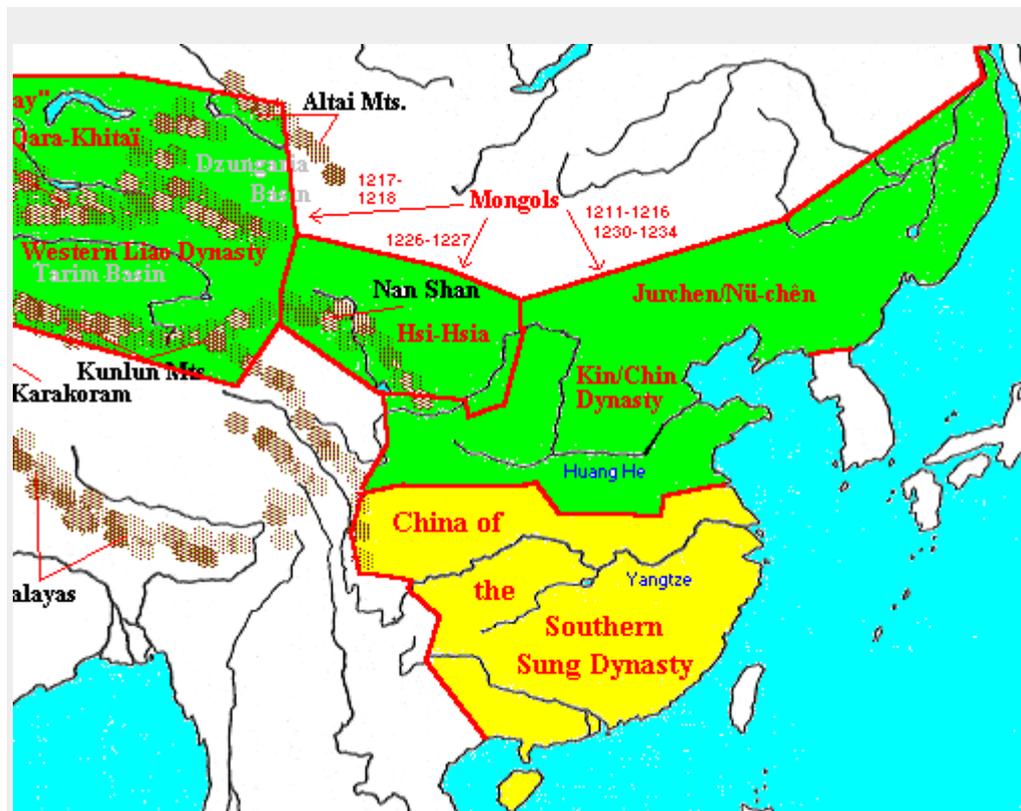
Khitans sent several messages to Song court in regards to their campaign against Tanguts. Khitans attacked Tanguts in the first year of Huangyou Era, i.e., AD 1049, and reported that they had succeeded in subjugating the Tanguts in 1054, i.e., first year of Zhihe Era.

Song-Xixia-Jin

When Song Chinese took over some lands west of 'shan-xi' (i.e., land to the west of Huashan Mountain) that was seceded to the Tanguts, Tangut Emperor (Li Qianshun) wrote to the Jurchens asking for intervention. Jurchens, as an appreciation of the alliance with Song Chinese against Khitans, had earlier seceded nine prefectures of 'shan-xi' ex-Khitans territories to Song, including Shenxi Prov and 'he-nan' land (south of the Yellow River). Jurchens, who had an earlier agreement to allow Song to retake Peking, would help Song in the siege of Peking when Song army failed to take over Peking from remnant Khitans. Hence, Jurchens, in exchange for surrendering Peking to Song per alliance agreement, would receive the tax revenues of Peking as a compensation. (Later, Jurchens retook the territories of 'he-nan' / 'shan-xi' and Peking after defeating Song Chinese and capturing two Song emperors, Song Huizong & Song Qinzong.)

Southern Song Dynasty

Map linked from <http://www.friesian.com/>



General Yue Fei

General Yue Fei was a national hero during the times of Jurchen invasion. Born in Tangyin, Henan, General Yue Fei was a filial son according to Confucian standards. At the time of his birth, Yellow River breaching destroyed his hometown. Yue Fei's mother put him in a clay cauldron and survived the flooding. When he grew up, his mother taught him Confucian principles, such as 'being loyal to the overlord and showing requital by serving the country'. When Jurchens invaded China, Yue Fei's mother encouraged him to get recruited in the royal army. Yue Fei's mother inscribed four characters on Yue Fei's back, i.e., 'jing zhong bao guo' (exerting full loyalty in serving the country). In AD 1140, Yue Fei defeated Jurchens at Yancheng, Henan Prov, and reached Zhuxianzhen. Song Emperor (Zhao Gou), fearing that Yue Fei might defeat the Jurchens and retrieve Emperors Huizong and Qinzong, would issue 12 decrees to have Yue Fei recalled. After returning to Lin'an, Yue Fei was arrested together

with his son (Yue Yun) and General Zhang Xian. Both royal family members and civilians petitioned with Song emperor for releasing Yue Fei, but Zhao Gou and Prime Minister Qin Hui instructed Moqi to collect various non-existing crimes for executing Yue Fei. Yue Fei died at the age of 39 in AD 1142. Yue Fei was restored fame only after Song Emperor Xiaozong enthroned. Yue Fei's body was secretly buried by a prison guard called Kui Shun.

Khubilai Khan Conquest Of Southern China

In August 1259, Mengke Khan died on Mount Diaoyushan of Hezhou Prefecture (Sichuan Province) after failing to take over a Song castle. Mongols hence called off the campaign. Before returning to Helin, Arik-Buka (Ariq-boeke), a junior brother of Khubilai, held an assembly in Helin and declared himself 'khan'. Khubilai stopped at Jinlianchuan (Kaiping, i.e., Duolun, Cha'haer, Inner Mongolia) and Khubilai declared himself Khan without an assembly. Yao Shu and Lian Xixian were ordered to make an announcement of Khubilai enthronement in the Chinese language. A Chinese era was declared, and the year would be First Year of Zhongtong Era, AD 1259. Liu Bingzhong and Xu Heng revised on Genghis Khan's governmental structure of 'Duanshi-guan' (criminal prosecutor), 'Wan-hu' (10,000 head military chief), and Jurchen-style titles of 'yuan-shuai' (marshal) and 'xuan-hu' (pacifier) for provinces. New structure will be i) '*zhongshu sheng*' (state affairs), ii) '*shumi yuan*' (military affairs), and iii) '*yushi tai*' (promotion and demotion of officials). Lower levels will include shi, jian, yuan, si, wei, and fu. Provincial affairs would be handled by 'xing-sheng', 'xing-tai', 'xuan-hu', 'lian-fang' and 'muming zhangguan', and levels included 'Lu' (comprising of several provinces), 'Fu' (province or prefecture), 'Zhou' (smaller prefectures) and 'Xian' (county). But discrimination against Chinese was rampant. Mongols would assume the primary posts while the Han Chinese the deputy posts. Tax administration could only be laid in the hands of Muslims - allies of the Mongols. A caste society was established, and four levels were differentiated: 1) Mongols, 2) Se Mu Ren or Semuren (color-eyed people), 3) Han-Ren (i.e., northern Chinese, Khitans etc), and 4) Nan-zi (southern Chinese-barbarians).

Arik-Buka (Ariq-boeke), a junior brother of Khubilai, held an assembly in Helin and declared himself 'khan'. Lian Xixian, on his own initiative, frustrated the attempts of Arik-Buka emissaries (Liu Taiping and Huo Luhuai) at Peking and defeated a general who answered Arik-Buka's order. Khubilai then attacked Arik-Buka and drove him off in AD 1261. At the advice of Liu Bingzhong, Khubilai Khan moved his capital to Peking in AD 1260, i.e., winter capital Dadu ("great capital") or Khanbalik in Marco Polo's Cambaluc. This is in addition to summer palace at Shangdu (the Xanadu of Coleridge). After being in reign for five years, Khubilai Khan declared the new era of Zhiyuan in AD 1263. (In AD 1271, the Mongols adopted the dynastic name Yuan.)

Khubilai Khan sent an embassy, comprising of scholar officials Hao Jing, He Yuan and Liu Renjie, to Southern Song. Southern Song Prime Minister, in order to hide his previous treachery acts from Emperor Lizong (Zhao Yun, reign AD 1224-1264), would imprison the Mongol emissaries. Khubilai Khan sent another emissary to Song border general Li Tingzhi. Li's report to Emperor Lizong was covered up by Jia Sidao. Khubilai Khan issued the war decree in the second year of Zhongtong Era (AD 1260). Mongol governor-general in charge of Huai River and Yangtze areas, Li Zhan (Li Tan?), defected to Song in the spring of third year of Zhongtong Era. Hearing of that, Khubilai Khan ordered that Shi Tianze to attack the defector general at Jinan, Shandong. After a few months siege, Mongols took over Jinan and killed Li Zhan via a cruel penalty of splitting the body.

Siege Of Xiangyang

Around AD 1264, during the fifth year of Zhongtong Era, Khubilai Khan changed to Zhiyuan Era. Arik-Buka was spared and came to surrender. At this time, a Song officer at Tongchuan, called Liu Zheng, being resented by Jia Sidao, would surrender his 15 prefectures to the Mongols and he was conferred the posts of 'xing(2)sheng(3)' and 'an-hu-shi' of Sichuan areas. Liu Zheng proposed to have Song Chinese grain supply cut off at Xiangyang. Song Chinese General in Sichuan, Lü Wende, did not pay attention to Liu Zheng's building up the castles and cutting off Xiangyang from Sichuan. Lü Wende said that Xiangyang had ten years of grain supply. General Lü Wenhuan at Xiangyang wrote to Lu Wende, but he was ignored. Then, Liu Zheng and A-zu led Mongols to Xiangyang and encircled it for four-five years. The new Song Emperor Duzong (Zhao Qi, reign AD 1264-1274) again conferred Jia Sidao important posts and added an extra title called 'Tai Shi', i.e., imperial tutor. Jia Sidao was extolled as

comparable to Archduke Zhou of Western Zhou Dynasty. Jia Sidao pretended to resign several times, but Emperor Duzong would not let him go. Jia Sizong continued to shield the Xiangyang siege from the emperor. When a concubine told Duzong that Xiangyang had been under siege for 3 years, Jia Sidao would order that the woman be killed. The notoriety of Jia Sidao was best illustrated by another story: When one concubine of Jia Sidao saw a young man on the bank of Xihu Lake (West Lake) and exclaimed about the beauty of the young man, Jia Sidao would order that the young man be killed in front of the concubine. In Sichuan, after Lü Wende died, his brother-in-law, Fan Wenhu, took over the post, but Fan, like his predecessor, refused to send relief army to Xiangyang. At one time, Jia Sidao ordered Li Tingzhi and Fan Wenhu to aid Xiangyang. Fan Wenhu and his 100,000 were defeated. Two generals under Li Tingzhi, Zhang Shun and Zhang Gui, sailed along the Han-shui River, Zhang Gui broke through Mongol siege lines, and Zhang Gui died on the Han-shui River. Zhang Shun barely entered Xiangyang alive. After finding out Xiangyang was in great urgency, Zhang Shun, hiring two brave men, departed Xiangyang for sake of appealing for aid with Fan Wenhu. But soon after Zhang Shun broke through Mongol siege lines, he encountered Mongol ships and was caught by Mongol, and Zhang died in Mongol hands. Then, the sister city of Fancheng was taken over by the Mongols, and two generals, Fan Tianshun and Niu Fu, died. Mongols deployed catapults (made by Persian engineers) against the outer wall of Xiangyang and destroyed it. Everytime Lü Wenhuan climbed up the citywall, he would have tears while facing the south. A Mongol general called on Lü Wenhuan to surrender, saying that Lü Wenhuan had done his job by guarding Xiangyang for five years. After they broke the arrows to swear forgiveness and sincerity, Lü Wenhuan surrendered and was conferred the post of 'Da-dudu' or governor-general of Xiangyang and Han-shui River areas.

Demise Of Song Dynasty

At this time, Emperor Duzong died, and his four year old son, Emperor Gongdi (Zhao Xian, reign 1274-1275), was made emperor in AD 1275. Mongols sent Shi Tianze and Boyan (Bayan, grandson of Subetei) on a full campaign against Song. Shi Tianze died on route. Bayan ordered that A-zu head the first column and depart for the Yangtze from Xiangyang, with Lu Wenhuan as fore-runner general; 2nd column was to be headed by Mang-wu departing from Yangzhou, with Liu Zheng as forerunner general. Bayan took over numerous cities on the way, slaughtered one town, and killed and captured numerous Song generals. Song Dowager Empress Xie-shi had no choice but to rely on Jia Sidao for

fighting the Mongols. More Song generals surrendered, including Fan Wenhui in Sichuan, Chen Yi in Huangzhou (Huanggang area, Hubei). Hearing Liu Zheng had passed away, Jia Sidao had a short ecstasy and led an army of about 130,000 against the Mongols, but he was defeated on the Yangtze River. Jiangsu areas, around the Yangtze, including Zhenjiang and Jiangying, were deserted in face of Mongol attacks. Jia Sidao sent an emissary to Bayan for peace, but met with declination. Jia Sidao requested with dowager empress for relocation of Song capital, but Empress Xie-shi refused to move.

Several ministers at Song court requested that Jia Sidao be deprived of his posts, and Song released former Mongol emissaries like Hao Jing as a good-will gesture. At this moment, Zhang Shijie of Er'zhou (Hubei Province), Wen Tianxiang of Jiangxi and Li Fei of Hunan came to the east to help the Song court. Jiankang (i.e., Nanking) was deserted by a Song general. Changzhou and Wuxi were next taken by the Mongols. Khubilai Khan then sent Lian Xixian and Yan Zhongfan to Song for talking about a ceasefire. Lian Xixian requested with Bayan for bodyguards, but Bayan advised that the more bodyguards Lian was to take with him, the more likely Song Chinese might harm him. Lian obtained 500 soldiers, but once Lian arrived at Dusong-guan Pass, Song General Zhang Ru killed Yan Zhongfan and captured Lian Xixian. (*History of Yuan Dynasty* stated that Lian was killed, too.) Bayan reprimanded Song's acts, and sent another emissary, Zhang Xu, to Song court together with Song emissary. Again, Zhang Xu was killed by a Song border general. Then, the Mongols stopped peace talks and attacked Yangzhou on the north bank of the Yangtze (Changjiang River). Mongols then attacked Yangzhou and defeated two generals under Li Tingzhi. Jiading city surrendered next. Zhang Shijie's navy was defeated on the Yangtze by Mongol fire attack. Wen Tianxiang arrived in Lin'an (Hangzhou) the capital, but Empress Dowager did not take his advice. Jia Sidao was expelled from the capital and he was killed by the escort official on route. Taizhou of Jiangsu was lost to the Mongols, and Changzhou city was slaughtered. In Hunan, Li Fei died, and both Hunan and Jiangxi Provinces were lost. After taking over Dusong-guan Pass, the Mongols were closing in onto Song capital. A Song minister called Liu Yue was sent to Mongol camp for peace, but Bayan declined it, saying Song Emperor obtained the throne from a kid and would lose it in the hands of a kid. Lu Xufu was sent to Mongols for expressing a wish to be Mongol nephew, but Mongols declined it. Song's new prime minister, Chen Yizhong, sent Liu Yue to Mongols in the attempt of expressing acknowledgement as a Mongol vassal, but Liu Yue was killed by a Song Chinese civilian on route, at Gaoyou of Jiangsu

Province. Mongols then sacked Jiaxing and An'jie of Zhejiang Province. Wen Tianxiang and Zhang Shijie advised that Song court relocated to the islands in the seas, but Prime Minister Chen Yizhong decided to send imperial seal to Mongols for a surrender. Bayan requested that Chen personally came to Mongols, and Chen fled to Wenzhou, a southern Zhejiang coastal city. Zhang Shijie led his people into the sea. Wen Tianxiang was made the rightside prime minister and was ordered to go to Mongols for peace. Wen was arrested by Bayan after he accused Bayan of invasion. On Feb 21st of AD 1276, Bayan took over Lin'an and forced downager empress issue the surrender order. Song royal family, including downager empress and Emperor Gongdi (Zhao Deyou), was sent to Peking.

Late Emperor Duzong had two more sons, 11 and 6 year old, respectively. They fled to Wenzhou before Lin'an was taken by Mongols. Chen Yizhong sailed them to Fuzhou of Fujian Province where a new Song court was set up. On June 14th, eleven year old Zhao Shi (King Yi-wang) was made Emperor Ruizong (reign AD 1275-1278). Zhang Shijie, Su Liuyi, and Lu Xiufu consecutively arrived in Fuzhou. Chen Yizhong was retained as leftside prime minister, while Wen Tianxiang, after fleeing from the Mongols, also arrived in Fuzhou and acted as rightside prime minister. Song court would last another three years before the final demise. Mongols continued to push south. Canton (Guangzhou) of Guangdong Province was taken, and Song General Huang Jun died. Yangzhou on the Yangtze Bank were taken, and General Li Tingzhi was captured and killed. Mongols then invaded Fujian Province. Song Court was frequently on the run, from one island to another, along the coast, and on May 8th of AD 1278, the new Song Emperor died of illness within two years of enthronement. The now eight-year-old brother, Zhao Bing (King Wei-wang), was made the new emperor Di-bing on June 28th of AD 1278. Note Di-bing had no posthumous imperial title at all. Chen Yizhong died in Hainan; Lu Xiufu was made leftside prime minister. When the Mongols attacked again, Song Court fled to Yashan, somewhere near Macao. Mongol General Zhang Hongfan led a surprise attack at Chaoyang (Chaoshan areas, Guangdong Province) and captured Wen Tianxiang who later wrote the famous poem entitled 'Ling Ding Yang' or 'Lingding Sea'. At Hainan, Zhang Shijie nailed together his fleet, trying to defend the straits. Zhang Shijie declined Zhang Hongfan's invitation for surrender. After a defeat, Zhang Shijie broke through the siege with 16 ships. When chased by the Mongols, Lu Xiufu, with young emperor on his back, jumped into the sea with emperor on his back after driving his family into the sea. On Feb 26th of AD

1279, after driving his family into the sea, Lu jumped into the sea with emperor on his back. Zhang Shijie met with a hurricane near Hailingshan Mountain, prayed that his ship sink should Heaven intend to capsize Song Dynasty, and died when his ship was sunken. Song Dynasty officially ended in AD 1279, after a total of 320 years, including 152 (153?) years in southern China. Song royal tombs would be dug up by a Central Asian monk for treasures. Khubilai Khan declared the dynasty of Yuan ("first" or "beginning") in this year.

Beginning of Yuan Dynasty

Khubilai Khan obtained his throne without a proper assembly, and hence he had lost the kind of mandate over ruling other Mongol khanates. By moving the capital to Peking from Karakorum (rebuilt by Ogedei in AD 1235), he had changed the old Mongol *yasaq*. In the very beginning, Jochi's son, Batu, ruled the region to the north and west of Lake Balkash (extending from Hungary to Kirghiz Plains, and from lower Danube to Caucasus); Chagadai was given the southwestern region to the east of River Amu-darya and to the southeast of River Syr-Darya, including Afghanistan, Turkestan, the former Naiman territories around the Altai, and central Siberia; Ogedei was awarded China and East Asia; Tului, the youngest of the four sons, was to have central Mongolia. Later, Tului sons exterminated the ruling of Ogedei descendants and diminished the domain of Ogedei descendants, and Chagadai domain was curtailed; Hulegu was given the territories beyond the Oxus River and the Hindu Kush. Nominally, Khubilai Khan was in charge of all khanates: 'Amu-darya Xingsheng' was in charge of Ilkhante and Kipchak Khanate; 'Lingbei (north ridge) Xingsheng' was in charge of Ogedei Khanate; and two 'yuan shuai (marshal)' offices were in charge of Chagadai Khanate. A separate 'Liaoyang Xingsheng' was in charge of Manchuria. After declaring his dynasty of Yuan (AD 1261-1368), Khubilai Khan could only be considered a ruler of China and Mongolia.

Before subjugating Southern Song, Kubilai sent a fleet of 150 boats against Japan in AD 1274. Marco Polo supposedly had travelled to and stayed in China during the period of AD 1275 - 1292. Two years after the 1279 conquest of Southern Song, Kubilai's empress, an Onggirat woman, passed away. Mongol khans had a custom of marrying Onggirat women, a convention passed down from Genghis Khan. A niece of the empress would become the new empress. But Khubilai, though getting older, chose to go to the capital of Shang-du (i.e., Kaiping) for sake of indulging himself in concubines there (i.e., concubines from past emperors). Kubilai hired a Muslim as his finance minister, and this

person, A-he-ma, had done his best to exploit the people in iron and salt trades. A-he-ma nepotism would include over 500 officials across the country. A-he-ma would later be killed by a 'qian hu' who issued an order in the name of crown prince. Khubilai then renovated politics a bit by ordering Guo Shoujing to recompile calendar, promoting overseas trading, and inviting Confucian descendant as academy official. Rebellions broke out in coastal China of Fujian and Guangdong. Owing to rumors about Song revival, Khubilai relocated late Song Emperor Gongdi (now Duke Yingguo-gong) to Shang-du and ordered ex-Song prime minister Wen Tianxiang be executed should he refuse to surrender. Wen Tianxiang was executed at the age of 47 in AD 1283. Wen was previously No. 1 scorer, i.e., *zhuang yuan*, during Song Emperor Lizong's imperial exam. Wen Tianxiang wrote a poem, stating that

"Confucius proposed that one should die for compassion (Ren) and Mencius suggested that one should die for righteousness (Yi). Only when righteousness is fully exhausted will the compassion be derived. What should I endeavour after educating myself with so many books of the ancient saints? However, I am sure that I feel no guilty about myself from this death moment on."

(Confucius wording for 'Ren' should mean a broader sense of human perfection, similar to nirvana in Buddhism. 'Ren' also meant nucleus in Chinese, as used for the nucleus of various fruits like apple.) Khubilai, impressed by this poem, would confer a title of Duke Lulingjun-gong on Wen Tianxiang posthumously.

LIAO DYNASTY

Before the Mongolians, there existed in Mongolia plains the Hsiongnu (Huns), Hsien-pi (Xianbei), Tavghach (Toba), Juan-juan (Ruruans), Tu-chueh (Turks), Uighurs (see Turk section), Kirghiz and Khitans. Tribal empires rose and fell, and the conquered and the conquerors mixed up, and ethnic and linguistic dividing lines blurred. Notable would be the fact that the so-called Indo-European nomads, Scythians and Yuezhi (Yüeh-chih), had migrated to Oxus and the Iranian world a long time ago, Huns and Turks followed the path of the former, the leftover Huns, Ruruans and Turks disappeared, Tobas sinicized in northern China, Uygurs (Uighurs) took refuge in Ganzhou and Xinjiang after being replaced by the Kirghiz and the Karluks. The Khitans would come to rule eastern Mongolia, most of Manchuria, and much of northern China by AD 925.

Origin Of Khitans

The Khitans are related to the Tungus. The Xianbei-Wuhuan nomads were said to be Tungunzic. They were driven to Xianbei and Wuhuan Mountains after they accused the first Hunnic king Modu of patricide, and they were later relocated to Liaoning Province by Han Emperor Wudi. Since the Khitans resided in the same land as the Donghu, they were called the same name as Donghu or Eastern Hu nomads. The important thing to be noted about the earlier Huns or Donghu (Xianbei-Wuhuan) will be that they were living alongside Chinese for hundreds of years and should be deemed semi-sinicized semi-civilized peoples. But the later Khitans or Jurchens or Mongols fared much worse, and those people ate raw meat and did not know how to count their ages.

After the Hunnic decline in late first century AD, the Xianbei moved back to the old territories, between Yinshan Mountains and Yanshan Mountains. There appeared a Xianbei chieftan called Tanshikui (reign AD 156-181) who established a Xianbei alliance by absorbing dozens of thousands of Huns. The Tanshikui alliance disintegrated after the death of Tanshikui. Warlord Yuan Shao campaigned against the Wuhuan and controlled three prefectures of Wuhuan nomads. After Ts'ao Ts'ao defeated Yuan Shao, Yuan's two sons, Yuan Shang and

Yuan Xi fled to seek refuge with the Wuhuans. Ts'ao Ts'ao campaigned against the Wuhuan, killed a chieftan called Tadu (with same last character as Hunnic Chanyu Modu or Modok), and took over the control of southern Manchuria. After Wuhuan, another Xianbei chieftan called Kebi'neng emerged. Shi Xiong, a general under Ts'ao Ts'ao, broke this new Xianbei alliance by sending an assassin to kill Kebi'neng. Xianbei could be classified into three groups, Eastern Xianbei, Western Xianbei, and Toba Xianbei. The Eastern Xianbei nomad, with major tribes of Murong, Yuwen, & Duan, would establish many short-lived successive states along the northeastern Chinese frontier, i.e., various Yan Statelets. Among Western Xianbei, Qifu would set up Western Qin (AD 385-431), and Tufa would set up Southern Liang (AD 397-414). Some of the Xianbei mixed up with the Huns. The Hunnic Xia Dynasty (AD 407-431), established by Helian Bobo, was said to be of a mingle nature, called 'Tie Fu'. The *Tie Fu* Huns were born of Xianbei mother and Hunnic Father. Ultimately, the Toba (T'o-pa in Wade-Giles) Xianbei, who migrated to modern China's Shanxi Province from Upper Khingan Ridge, united northern China.

After the Xianbei-Wuhuan-Toba disappeared into China's melting pot during the 16 Nations (AD 304-420), the newcomers from the northern hemisphere, together with the remaining Tunguzic peoples, would be occupying the eastern part of Mongolia and today's Manchuria. In AD 443, the barbarians who took over Toba's old territories, upper Heilongjiang River and northern Xing'an Ridge, came to see Toba Wei Emperor (Toba Tao) and told him that they found Toba ancestor's stone house, called 'Ga Xian Dong'. Toba Tao sent a minister called Li Chang to the stone house which was carved out of a natural cavern. In 1980s, this cavern was discovered as well as the inscriptions left by Li Chang.

The Khitans (Qi Dan or Qidan) first appeared on the stage. Khitans lived around the Liao River in today's Manchuria. To the east of the Khitans will be Koguryo, to the west the Xi Nomads (alternative race of the Huns), to the north Huji or Mohe (Malgal) and Shiwei Tribes, and to the south Yingzhou Prefecture of Toba Wei. Ancient Chinese records speculated that the Xi (or Kuzhen-xi) and the Khitan could be of same family. Shiwei statelets would be where we are to trace the Mongols for their origin. Huji or Mohe (Malgal) would be where the Jurchens came from.

Ouyang Xiu of Song Dynasty, in his book *New History Of Tang Dynasty*, said that Khitans were alternative race of the Eastern Hu nomads and that Ts'ao Wei

Dynasty (AD 220-265), under governor-general Wang Xiong of Youzhou, defeated the Xianbei chieftan, Bi Neng, around AD 230s. The Khitans were said to be descendants of Kebi'neng Xianbei. Cai Dongfan mentioned that Khitans had claimed descent from ancient Chinese lord called Shennong-shi (see pre-history).

Tang Dynasty vs Khitans

New History Of Tang Dynasty said that by the time of Toba's Northern Wei Dynasty (AD 386-534), the ancestors of Khitans adopted the name Khitan for themselves. *New History Of Tang Dynasty* said Khitans possessed eight tribes and they were subject to the Turks. The Khitan chieftan was conferred the title of 'Sijin' by the Turks. The Khitan chieftan's clan name would be 'Dahe-shi'. The Turks assigned Khan Tuli the post in charge of Khitan and Malgal Tribes, and the Khitan chieftan was conferred the title of 'Sijin' (governor or satrap) by the Turks. Around AD 620s, Khitan chieftan (Sun Aocao) paid pilgrimage to Tang's first Emperor, Gaozu, together with a Malgal chieftan (Tudiji). Two years later, Khitans sent over horses and leathers.

In AD 627, Tang Emperor Taizong got enthroned after staging "Xuan Wu Men Coup D'etat" during which he killed two brothers and forced Emperor Gaozu into abdication. This year, Tiele Tribes, including Xueyantuo, Huihe and Bayegu, rebelled against the Turks. Khan Xieli accused Khan Tuli of failing to quell the Tiele rebellion. Being attacked by Khan Xieli, Khan Tuli requested for help with Tang Emperor Taizong in AD 628.

Taking advantage of Tiele rebellions against Turks, in AD 628, Khitan chieftan Dahe Mohui defected to Tang from the Turks. Turks pleaded with Tang Emperor Taizong to have Khitans relocate back to the Turkic control in exchange for surrendering a Chinese rebel called Liang Shidu, but Taizong declined it. The next year, Xueyantuo proclaimed themselves as a khan and sought alliance with Tang. When Dahe Mohui came to Tang court in AD 629, Taizong bestowed drums, flags, umbrellas and other ritual instruments which the Khitans later treated as the token of power during their tribal power struggles. In AD 630, Tang ordered General Li Jing on a full campaign against Turkic Khan Xieli and captured Khan Xieli.

The Khitans, together with Xi nomads, followed Taizong in the Korean campaigns. Emperor Taizong, en route of return from campaign against Korguryo, would call on Khitan chieftan Kuge and other elderly people for a meeting at Yingzhou, west of Liao River. Emperor Taizong conferred the title of 'leftside wuwei (martial defender) general' onto Kuge.

Another Khitan chieftan, Luqizhu, submitted to Tang and was made '*ci shi*' (satrap or governor) of Quju and his land was made the prefecture of Xuanzhou, nominally under supervision of Yingzhou '*dudu-fu*' office. When Kuge led his people to Tang, a new '*dudu-fu*' (governor-general) office, Songmuo, was set up, and Kuge was conferred the post of Songmuo '*dudu*' (governor-general) in charge of ten prefectures in the area. Kuge was given royal family name of Li by Tang Emperor Taizong. Among the ten prefectures would be those converted from the original eight Khitan tribes; eight Khitan chieftans were conferred the post of nine '*ci shi*'. Luqizhu was retained as '*ci shi*' of Xuanzhou prefecture.

Khitans first rebelled against Tang in AD 656-661 and again in AD 696. At the times of Tang Empress Wuhou, with the death of Li Kuge, Khitans, in collusion with Xi nomads, began to rebel against Tang. Li Kuge had two grandsons: Li Kumuoli and Li Jingzhong. In AD 696, Li Jingzhong, together with Sun Wanrong (grandson of chieftan Sun Aocao), killed Tang '*dudu*' (governor-general) Zhao Wenhui for being insulted. Li Jingzhong declared himself 'Wushang Khan' (khan with nobody above him), employed '*ci shi*' Sun Wanrong as forerunner general, and attacked Tang's Chongzhou prefecture by claiming an army of 100,000. Empress Wuhou dispatched King of Liang (Wu Sansi) and 28 generals against the Khitans, but Tang was defeated by Khitans at Xi-xiashi. Khitans failed to take over Pingzhou prefecture. Wuhou then dispatched King of Jian'an (Wu Youyi) against Khitans. Sun Wanrong fled after Khitans failed to take over Tanzhou prefecture where Tang deputy *zong guan* Zhang Jiujie and hundreds of martyr soldiers had defended the city. Li Jinzhong died shortly afterward. Turkic Khan Muochuo helped Tang in attacking the rear of the Khitans. Sun Wanrong re-assembled his forces and dispatched his generals (Luo Wuzheng and He A'xiao) against Jizhou prefecture, killed '*ci shi*' Lu Baoji and abducted over thousand Chinese. Empress Wuhou dispatched '*shang shu*' Wang Xiaojie and 170,000 army against Khitans, but Tang was defeated at Dong-xiashi and Wang Xiaojie was killed. Sun Wanrong then slaughtered Youzhou prefecture. King of Jian'an failed to defeat Sun. Wuhou then ordered that King of Henei-jin (Wu Yizong), '*yu shi*' Lou Shide and '*You-wuwei-wei General* Shazha Zhongyi led an

army of 200,000 against the Khitans. Yang Xuanji, '*zong guan* (omnibus magistrate) of Shenbian-dao rallied Xi nomadic army and attacked the Khitans from the rear. Tang army killed He A'xiao and captured Luo Wuzheng and Li Kaigu. When Sun Wanrong re-assembled his army to fight Xi, Xi nomads encircled Sun and defeated Khitans. Sun fled to east of Lu-he river, and he was killed by his servant during rest. Zhang Jiujiu relayed Sun's head to the rest of Khitans, and Khitans hence collapsed. In AD 697, Wuhou gladly changed the era to the first year of Shengong (divine feats) and declared an amnesty across the nation. Hence, the Khitans fled to the Turks for protection.

In AD 700, two Tang nomadic generals, Li Kaigu and Luo Wuzheng, who were previously caught by Tang, defeated the Khitans again. In AD 714, Shihuo (Li Jinzhong's uncle) and *xielifa* Yi-jian-chuo, leading their clan, defected from Turkic Khan Muchuo to Tang. Tang Emperor Xuanzong bestowed 'iron certificate' (a document which would exempt the holder of the death penalty). Two years later, Shihuo came to Tang with Xi chieftan Li Dapu. Songmuo-fu Prefecture was re-established, and Shihuo was conferred the post of *du du*, king of Songmuo-jun and *leftside jinwu-wei grand general*. Heads of eight Khitan tribes were conferred posts as *ci si*. A Tang royal family princess, Princess Yongle (daughter of the grandson of King Dongping-wang), was sent to Khitan chieftan as a bribe. Turks would complain to Tang numerous times, saying that both Xi and Khitan had received Tang princesses but the Turks did not get this privilege. In 717 AD, Shihuo died, and a brother, called Suogu, inherited everything. The next year, Suogu and Prince Yongle came to Tang court. A Khitan general, called Ke-tu-yu, rebelled against Suogu. Suogu fled to Yingzhou prefecture and was given 500 soldiers by Tang *du du* Xu Qindan. Suogu then called on Xi chieftan Li Dapu to attack Ke-tu-yu, but both were killed by Ke-tu-yu. Xu Qindan, being afraid of Ke-tu-yu, relocated to Yuguan Pass. Ke-tu-yu then selected Suogu's brother (Yueyu) as Khitan king and requested pardon with Tang court. Tang conferred the king title onto Yueyu and pardoned Ke-tu-yu. When Yueyu came to Tang, he was given Princess Yanjun as a bride. When Yueyu died, a brother called Tuyusi was enthroned. Tuyusi, having rifts with Ke-tu-yu, fled to Tang with Prince Yanjun; Tuyusi was conferred the title of King of Liaoyang-jun. Ke-tu-yu then selected Li Jinzhong's brother (Shaogu) as the king. Tang sent over Princess Songhua to Shaogu, and Shaogu sent over his son as a hostage at Tang court. Ke-tu-yu came to Tang court for a second time and was mistreated by Tang prime minister. Three years later, Ke-tu-yu killed Shaogu, selected Qulie as new Khitan king, and compelled the Xi nomads into vassalage with the Turks.

Princess Donghua fled to Pinglu. Tang court ordered a huge campaign against the Khitans and defeated Ke-tu-yu. Xi nomads surrendered to Tang. The next year, Ke-tu-yu attacked the border areas. Tang *zhang shi* of Youzhou, Xue Chuyue, led over 10,000 cavalry and Xi nomads against Ke-tu-yu. Ke-tu-yu had Turks backing him, and Xi nomads changed loyalty. Two Tang generals were killed, and two were defeated, with a casualty of over 10,000 deaths. Tang made Zhang Shougui as the new *zhang shi* of Youzhou. Zhang Shougui secretly contacted a Khitan general (Li Guozhe) to have him lay siege of Ke-tu-yu. In AD 734, Li Guozhe killed Ke-tu-yu and Qulie. Tang conferred the title of King of Beiping-jun and *du du* of Songmuo onto Li Guozhe. In AD 735, Ke-tu-yu remnants slaughtered Li Guozhe and his family, with one Li son fleeing to An'dong. Khitans, under the leadership of Yali (Zuli, Nieli or Nili, the ancestor of Yelü Ahbaoji), selected, Zuli, as Khan Zuwu. Per Li Xihou, Khan Zuwu was a Yaonian-shi clan and he replaced Dahe-shi clan as Khitan leader. (Speculation about Dahe-shi clan would consider Shaogu as its last heir.)

In AD 737, Zhang Shougui defeated Khitans again. In AD 745, Khitan chieftan (Li Huaixiu) surrendered to Tang and was conferred *du du* of Songmuo and King of Chongshun-wang; Li Huaixiu was given Tang Prince Jingle as a bride. In the same year, Li Huaixiu killed Prince Jingle and fled home. An Lushan, *jie du shi* (governor-general) of Fanyang, defeated Li Huaixiu. (Per Li Xihou, Li Huaixiu could be the same person as Khan Zuwu.) A new chieftan, Li Kailuo, was made into King of Gongren and *du du* of Songmuo.

The Khitans would continue its developments in power, and by mid-750s, they defeated the Tang army led by An Lushan. An Lushan earlier had led an army in hundreds of thousands and tried to quell Khitan rebellion with a Xi nomad guide. An Lushan proposed to Tang Emperor Xuanzong in campaigning against Khitans; An Lushan assembled an army of over 100,000 from Youzhou, Yunzhong, Pinglu and Hedong; An Lushan, using Xi nomads as guide, had a fight with Khitans on the south bank of Huang-shui River; and An Lushan was defeated, with a casualty of thousand deaths. An Lushan would be engaged in zigzag war with Khitans till his rebellion in AD 755.

Tang nomadic general An Lushan's rebellion (An-Shi rebellion) broke out in Oct of AD 755. This will bring about Tang's decline. Before and after this time period, Khitans had paid visits to Tang court dozens of times. Always on a yearly basis, the Khitan chieftans came to Tang, and they stayed in special

guesthouses in hundreds. Khitans later submitted to Huihe (Uygurs). Tang did not confer them any more titles because of their submission to Huihe. It would be in AD 842 that Khitan chieftan Quxu came to submit to Tang again after the Uygurs were destroyed by the Kirghiz. Tang Emperor Wuzong dispatched several columns of army against Huihe by taking advantage of Kirghiz attacks. A Huihe chieftan, Wenmeisi, surrendered to Tang. Governor-general of Youzhou, Zhang Zhongwu, would replace Khitan's Uygur seal with a Tang seal. In AD 860s, Khitan king Xi-er-zhi sent emissary to Tang. After Xi-er-zhi would be Qinde. Beginning from AD 885, with the decline of Tang Dynasty (AD 618-907), Khitans began to conquer Dadan, Xi nomads and Shiwei statelets in late AD 880s. They began to raid into northern China again. Governor-general Liu Rengong counter-attacked the Khitans by going beyond Zhaixing-ling Ridge and burnt the grass to starve their herds. Khitans lost a lot of horses and requested for ceasefire. Khitans broke the peace treaty and invaded China with over ten thousand cavalry. Later, Liu Shouguang of Pingzhou prefecture defeated them again by capturing their generals during a peace banquet, and peace ensued for 10 years. Khitan King Qinde, in his late years, gradually lost his control over eight Khitan tribes. Per *History of Tang Dynasty*, Dahe-shi clan hence lost control of the power over Khitan tribes. Yelü Ahbaoji was selected because other Yaonian-shi chieftans failed to do the job. Yelü Ahbaoji was conferred the post of *yilijin* of Dielie tribe by Yaonian Khan Hengdejin in AD 901.

Yelü Ahbaoji (Yeh-lu A-pao-chi AD 872-926) took in a lot of Youzhou and Zhuozhou Chinese who fled from warlord Liu Shouguang's tyranny. Yelü Ahbaoji expanded his territories by sacking Chinese border cities and abducting civilians. The eight Khitan tribes used to have a system of rotating rule for selecting their chieftans every three years. Yelü Ahbaoji took over the reign for 9 years without rotating the seat after hearing Chinese saying that kings did not rotate. Under the pressure of the other tribal heads, Yelü Ahbaoji moved southward where he set up an independent city called 'Han Cheng', namely, Chinese city, near the bank of Luan-he River. Yelü Ahbaoji had the Chinese cultivate the lands and mine the ores. Later, in early years of Posterior Liang, around AD 907, he, using the trick of his Huihe wife (Shulü), cheated the tribal leaders into a party and killed them all. Hence, Yelü Ahbaoji, a Yaonian-shi clan member, controlled all Khitan tribes.

The Khitans would continue its developments in power, and by mid-750s, they defeated the Tang army led by An Lushan. An Lushan earlier had led an army of

hundreds of thousands and tried to quell Khitan rebellion with a Xi nomad guide. Tang nomadic general An Lushan's rebellion (An-Shi rebellion) broke out in Oct, AD 755. This will bring about Tang's decline. Khitans later submitted to Uygurs. It would be in AD 842 that Khitans came to submit to Tang again after the Uygurs were destroyed by the Kirghiz. Governor-general of Youzhou, Zhang Zhongwu, would replace Khitan's Uygur seal with a Tang seal. In AD 860s, Khitans came to pay pilgrimages. Khitans lived around the Liao River in today's Manchuria. To the east of the Khitans will be Koguryo, to the west the Xi Nomads (alternative race of the Huns), to the north Malgal and Shiwei Tribes, and to the south Yingzhou Prefecture of Toba Wei. With the demise of Tang Dynasty (AD 618-907), Khitans began to conquer Xi nomads and She Wei statelets. They began to raid into northern China again. Governor-general Liu Rengong counter-attacked them. Later, Liu Shouguang defeated them again, and peace ensued for 10 years.

Five Dynasties vs Khitan Liao Dynasty

Khitans were said to have been pressured into moving into northern China where they established the Khitan Dynasty in AD 907. The Naimans, first allied with the Kirghiz who defeated the Uigurs in AD 840, grew in strength and drove the Kirghiz to the River Yenesei and rooted the Keraites from their homeland on the Irtysh in the Altai and drove them towards Manchuria, hence indirectly causing the Khitans to move to northern China where they established the Khitan Dynasty in AD 907 and renamed it to Liao Dynasty in AD 938 (or AD 947 according to alternative claim). The Khitans ruled eastern Mongolia, most of Manchuria, and much of northern China by AD 925.

The demise of Tang Dynasty brought the so-called Five Dynasties (AD 907-960) in northern China and 10 Kingdoms (AD 902-979), with nine kingdoms in southern China and Northern Han (AD 951-979) in Shaanxi. As recorded in history, the three dynasties in between Posterior Liang and Posterior Zhou were of alien nature, founded by generals who belonged to a group of nomads called Shatuo (Sha'to, a Turkic tribe). While Posterior Liang (AD 907-923) was set up by Zhu Wen (who first betrayed rebel leader Huang Chao and then usurped Tang Dynasty), the leader of later Posterior Tang (AD 923-936), Posterior Jinn (AD 936-946) and Posterior Han all came from nomadic Shatuo (Sha'to). This time period marks the penetration and influence of the Khitans on northern China.

Posterior Tang leader had once gone into exile in another nomadic group of people called Dadan (to be mixed up with Tartar later) till he was recalled by Tang emperor for quelling the Huang Chao Rebellion. When Zhu Wen usurped Tang, General Li Keyong and his son Li Chunxu set up the so-called Posterior Tang. Around AD 907, the Khitans invaded northern Chinese post of Yunzhong. To combat Posterior Liang, Li Keyong would strike an agreement with the Khitans (a branch of earlier Xianbei nomads) against Posterior Liang. But the Khitans, under Yelü Ahbaoji (Yeh-lu A-pao-chi AD 872-926) and his Uygur wife, would collude with Posterior Liang. Yelü Ahbaoji had earlier led a 300 thousand army to an alliance meeting with Li Keyong and swore to be brothers. Yelü Ahbaoji gave a few thousand horses to Li Keyong. But, Yelü Ahbaoji would change mind soon, and he sought suzerainty with Zhu Wen for sake of title conferring as well as marriage with Zhu Wen's daughter. Li Xihou commented that Yelü Ahbaoji intended to be conferred kingship by a Chinese emperor for sake of solidifying his rule over eight tribes at home. Posterior Liang exchanged emissaries with Yelü Ahbaoji few times, and had Yelü Ahbaoji dispatch 300 Khitan cavalry to Posterior Liang as a show of submission. Li Keyong, hearing of the Khitan betrayal, got ill and passed away, leaving three arrows with his son (Li Chunxu, Posterior Tang Emperor Zhuangzong) as oaths to destroy Posterior Liang and the Khitans. However, Yelü Ahbaoji failed to go to Posterior Liang capital for the conferral, and Khitans altogether sent 4 missions to Posterior Liang.

The Khitans under Yelü Ahbaoji obtained a Chinese minister called Han Yanwei and quickly conquered, in AD 926, tribes like Dangxiang (Tanguts) in the west, and the Tungusic P'o-hai in the east and north Korea. (Khitans conquered Xi nomad and She Wei in the north earlier.) Khitan became a much larger northern power. The Khitans ruled eastern Mongolia, most of Manchuria, and northern China by AD 925.

After Li Chunxu overthrew Posterior Liang in AD 921, Tangut's Li Renfu expressed loyalty to Posterior Tang. In AD 933, Tangut's Li Yichao assumed the post of his father Li Renfu. Posterior Tang Emperor Mingzong [Li Siyuan or Li Dan, reign 926-933] had campaigned against Li Yichao for his refusal to relocate to Yanzhou. After laying siege of Xiazhou in vain for over hundred days, Posterior Tang Emperor Mingzong withdrew the siege and re-confirmed Li Yichao's post. After Li Yichao's death in AD 936, brother Li Yiyin assumed the

Tangut post.

Posterior Jinn (AD 936-946), led by a Posterior Tang general called Shi Jingtang, also a Shatuo (Sha'to) nomad, in order to fight Posterior Tang, would secede 16 *zhou* (a unit larger than prefecture but smaller than province) to the Khitans, including today's Beijing city which was never recovered from the nomads till Ming Dynasty (AD 1368-1644) overthrown the Mongolian Yuan Dynasty. Yelü Ahbaoji's son, Yelü Deguang, would assist Posterior Jinn in destroying Posterior Tang and hence take over 16 northern Chinese prefectures as a ransom. With the help of Khitans, Posterior Jinn took over Luoyang and destroyed Posterior Tang. After Shi Jingtang, i.e., Tang Emperor Mingzong's son-in-law, colluded with Khitans in overthrowing Posterior Tang and establishing Posterior Jinn, Tangut's Li Yiyin continued to receive the old conferrals. Posterior Jinn further caught Tangut rebels in AD 943 on behalf of Li Yiyin.

However, rifts between Khitans and Posterior Jinn ensued, and Khitans destroyed Posterior Jinn. When Posterior Jinn Emperor Chudi refused to acknowledge vassalage to Khitans, Yelü Deguang attacked Posterior Jinn. When Khitans attacked Posterior Jinn in AD 944, Tangut's Li Yiyin led a combined force of 40,000 Tibetans, Qiangs and Han Chinese in attacking the west of Khitans by crossing the Yellow River at Linzhou. Yelü Deguang destroyed Posterior Jinn in AD 946. Khitans renamed their dynasty to Liao Dynasty in AD 947 in the attempt of ruling northern China.

Khitan chieftain, Yelü Deguang, tried to establish himself as emperor of northern China and declared Liao Dynasty while he was occupying the capital of Posterior Jinn in AD 947. (Khitan Liao's dynasty lasted AD 916-1125, but the name of Liao was to do with AD 947 when Posterior Jinn was destroyed. Liao was meant for a dynasty in China, while Khitan was for their original northern dynastic title.) When weather got hot and Chinese under Posterior Han Dynasty's Liu Zhiyuan rebelled against them, Yelü Deguang retreated to the north and died on route home at a place called Fox-killing Ridge. Liu Zhiyuan of Shatuo origin established Posterior Han Dynasty. Posterior Han Dynasty continued the pacification policy as to the Tanguts, and further seceded Jingzhou (Mizhi county of Shenxi) to Tangut's Li Yiyin in AD 949 and conferred the title of "zhong shu ling" (minister for central secretariat).

Map linked from
<http://www.friesian.com/>



At this time, Southern Tang (AD 937-975) in Nanking, south of the Yantze River, had contacted Khitans expressing a desire to go to the ex-Tang capital of Chang'an to maintain the imperial tombs. When weather got hot and Chinese under Liu Zhiyuan rebelled against them, Yelü Deguang retreated to the north and died on route home at a place called Fox-killing Ridge. A Posterior Jinn general of Shatuo tribe origin, Liu Zhiyuan, would be responsible for rallying an army and pressured Khitans into retreat, and hence Liu founded the Posterior Han Dynasty (AD 947-950), citing the same family name as Han Empire's founder.

Yelü Deguang's nephew (Wuyue Yelü Ruan), would succeed the Khitan post in AD 947. Five years later, in AD 951, he was assassinated. Posterior Han Dynasty continued the pacification policy as to the Tanguts, and further seceded Jingzhou (Mizhi county of Shenxi) to Li Yiyin in AD 949 and conferred the title of "zhong shu ling" (minister for central secretariat).

Guo Wei, a general of Posterior Han Dynasty responsible for defeating Posterior Jinn, rebelled after his family were slaughtered in the capital; Guo later staged a change of dynasty by having his soldiers propose that he be the emperor of

Posterior Zhou (AD 951-960), while the uncle of Posterior Han emperor declared Northern Han (AD 951-979) in today's Shaanxi and allied with Khitans. Yelü Deguang's son, Wulu (Yelü Jing), would now succeed in AD 951. Note that the Yelü family had adopted Chinese first names here, and they had sinicized by adopting Chinese language, rituals and governmental structure.

After Guo Wei, i.e., "liu shou" (governing magistrate) for Yedu (Yecheng of Shanxi), killed Posterior Han Dynasty Emperor Yindi (r 948-950), Guo Wei upgraded Tangut's Li Yiyin to the title of King Longxi-jun-wang in AD 951. Yelü Deguang's son, Wulu (Yelü Jing), would now succeed in AD 951. Note that the Yelü family had adopted Chinese first names here, and they had sinicized by adopting Chinese language, rituals and governmental structure. The Khitans changed their dynastic names back and forth between Liao and Khitan, several times. First called Khitan in AD 907, they did not have chronicle year till AD 916. They renamed it to Liao in AD 947, renamed it to Khitan in AD 983, and renamed it back to Liao in AD 1066.

Guo Wei, i.e., Posterior Zhou Dynasty Emperor Taizu (r 951-954), conferred the title of King Xiping-wang onto Li Yiyin in AD 954. Li Yiyin did not sever relations with Northern Han Dynasty till AD 957. Guo Wei's Posterior Zhou will pass on to his foster son, Cai Rong, to be eventually replaced by his general called Zhao Kuangying who founded the Northern Song Dynasty (AD 960-1127). In AD 960, Zhao Kuangyin initiated Chenqiao Coup, took over the reign from Posterior Zhou and established Song Dynasty as Emperor Taizu (r 960-976). Tangut's Li Yiyin promptly dispatched emissary to Song court for expressing loyalty, and changed his name to Li Yixing for avoiding the conflict with the last character of the given name of Zhao Kuangyin's father. Li Yiyin surrendered 300 stallions to Song court in AD 962 and received jade-belt as imperial bestowal in return. When Li Yiyin died in AD 967, Song Emperor Taizu ordered a mourning for three days and conferred Li Yiyin the title of King Xia-wang posthumously. Tangut's Li Guangrui assumed his father's post.

The Khitan, Western Xia and Song China, during the remainder of 11th century and the early years of the twelfth century, were frequently at war with each other till the Jurchens came along. The Jurchens, ancestors of the later Manchu, would defeat the Khitans in a seven-year war (AD 1115-1122) by means of an alliance with Northern Song.

Song Dynasty vs Khitan Liao Dynasty

Khitan Emperor Muzong (Yelü Jing r 951-969) was assassinated in AD 969. Wuyue's son, Yelü Xian, would be enthroned as Khitan Emperor Jingzong (r 969-982). Yelü Xian would appoint Xiao Shouxing as 'shangshu-ling' and take over Xiao's daughter as his empress.

During Song Dynasty, Tangut's Toba Sigong descendant sought suzerainty with Song Chinese and changed their last name to Song royal family name of 'Zhao' from Tang family name of 'Li'. However, Xixia sought suzerainty with Khitans at the same time. Li Guangrui, in AD 975, declined Northern Han Emperor Liu Jiyuan's demand for a concerted attack at Song Dynasty. In May 975, Northern Han dispatched an army of 10,000 for crossing the Yellow River to attack Tangut Yinzhou city. In August, Song Emperor Taizu launched a five prong attack at Northern Han, and Tanguts assisted Song in attacking Northern Han from the west. In AD 976, Song Emperor Taizu passed away, and his brother Zhao Guangyi succeeded as Song Emperor Taizong (r 976-997). Li Guangrui changed his name to Li Kerui for conflict with the first character of the given name of Zhao Guangyi. Son Li Jiyun [Li Jijun] succeeded the post of Li Kerui in AD 978.

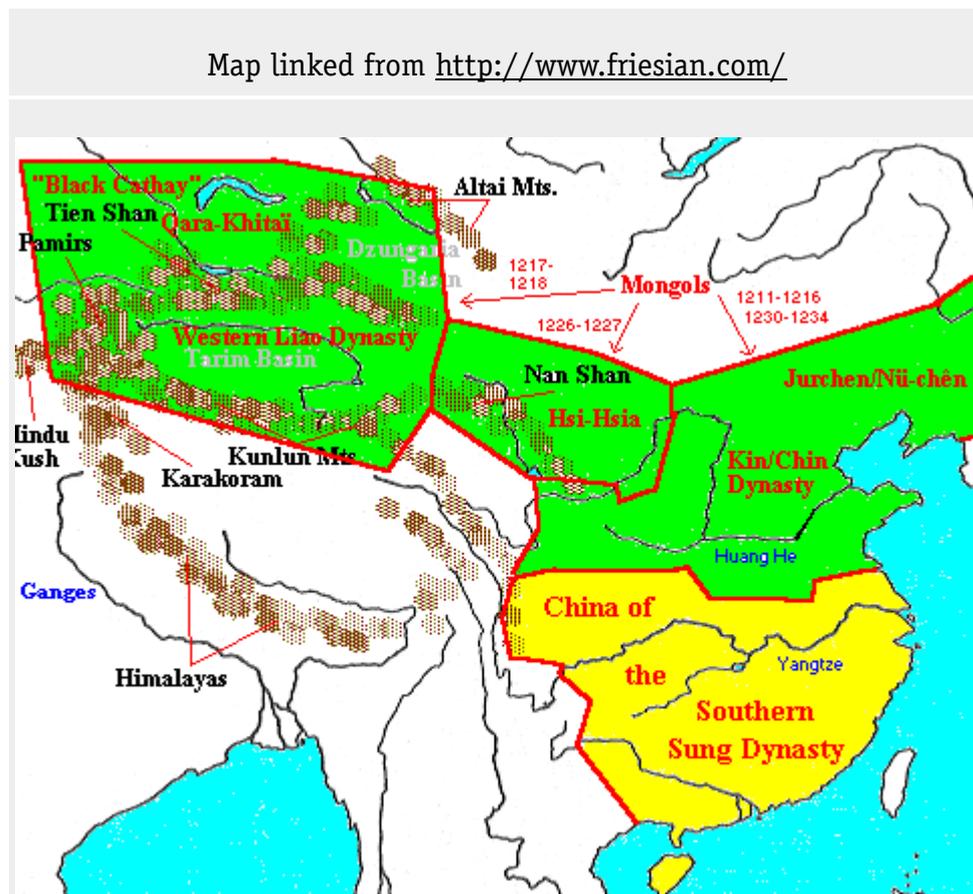
Empress Yanyan (or Yeye), after the death of Yelü Xian in AD 979, would assume Khitan regency as so-called Xiao-niangniang or Xiaotaihou. Empress Xiaotaihou changed the dynastic name back to Khitan. i.e., Da Qi Dan or the Great Khitan. Yelü Rongxu was enthroned in AD 982 and continued till AD 1031, but Xiaotaihou held the actual power. Xiaotaihou appointed a Chinese, Han Derang (son of Han Kuangsi or Han Guosi) as so-called 'shumi-shi' in charge of secretariat, Yelü Boguzhe in charge of areas west of Beijing, Yelü Xiuge in charge of areas south of Beijing, and accepted the surrender of a Song Chinese general (Li Jiqian). When Song Dynasty's second emperor, Song Taizong (r 976-997), tried to attack Beijing (after quelling the remnant Posterior Han), Khitans dealt Song Chinese a thorough defeat. Xiaotaihou later took in Han Derang as her lover and conferred onto him the post of prime minister and the title of King Jin; Xiaotaihou gave Han Derang the Khitan name of Yelü Rongyun. When Xiaotaihou and Han Derang passed away, Yelü Rongxu ordered that Han Derang be buried next to the tomb of Xiaotaihou. Yelü Rongxu campaigned against Koryo for the killing of Koryo king by a minister.

Khitans sent emissary to congratulate Song Emperor Renzong's enthronement. The second year, Khitans propagated the news that they would go for hunting at Youzhou. A Song minister by the name of Zhang Zhibai advised against amassing troops for guarding possible Khitan invasion, and Khitans failed to find any excuse to invade Song. Khitans quelled the rebellion in Liaodong areas. In AD 1031, Khitan Emperor Shengzong (Yelü Rongxu) passed away, and son Yelü Zongzhen was enthroned as Emperor Xingzong (r 1031-1055). Yelü Rongxu gave two wills to Yelü Zongzhen, i.e., i) treat Khitan empress as his own mother; ii) befriend Song as long as Song keep peace. Yelü Zongzhen sent emissary to Song to notify of his father's death, and Song sent *zhong cheng* (central prime minister) Kong Daofu to express condolences. In AD 1032, Yelü Zongzhen's birth mother took advantage of Yelü Zongzhen's hunting and ordered that Yelü Rongxu's dowager empress to commit suicide. Yelü Zongzhen's birth mother later tried to instigate an usurpation to have a junior son replace Yelü Zongzhen. Yelü Zongzhen relocated his mother out of the capital and officially took over regency.

Northern China was inevitably mingled with nomads from Manchuria and Mongolia. The city of Beijing would remain in the hands of the Khitans (AD 907-1125), and then passed into the Jurchens (AD 1115-1234) after a short interim under Song administration, Mongol Yuan (AD 1279-1368) till Ming Dynasty overthrew the Mongolian yoke in AD 1368. For hundreds of years, the Song Dynasty, built on top of Northern Zhou (AD 951-960) of the Cai(1) family, would be engaged in the games of 'three kingdom' kind of warfares. Northern Song (AD 960-1127) would face off with the Western Xia (AD 1032-1227) and Khitan Liao in a triangle, and then played the card of allying with the Jurchens in destroying the Khitan Liao. With Northern Song defeated by the Jurchens thereafter, Southern Song (AD 1127-1279) would be engaged in another triangle game, with the other players being Western Xia and the Jurchen Jin. Southern Song would then play the card of allying with the Mongolians in destroying Jurchen Jin, and it even sent tens of thousands of carts of grain to the Mongol army in the besieging of the last Jurchen stronghold. Soon after than, the Southern Song generals broke the agreement with the Mongols and they shortly took over the so-called three old capitals of Kaifeng, Luoyang and Chang'an. But they could not hold on to any of the three because what they had occupied had been empty cities after years of warfare between the Jurchens and Mongols. Similar to the times of the Western Jin (AD 265-316) and Eastern Jin (AD 317-420), the northern Chinese would have fled to the south during these conflicts.

While Eastern Jin re-established their capital in Nanking, the Southern Song, driven away from Nanking by the Jurchens, chose today's Hangzhou as the new capital. Hangzhou, however, had been the capital of Warring Kingdoms in Zhou times.

Western Liao Dynasty



WESTERN XIA DYNASTY

Xixia Dynasty, or Western Xia Dynasty, lasting hundreds of years, was the exception in Chinese history chronicles, namely, there was no separate volume for this dynasty. At most, it was treated as a section in the books such as *History of Song Dynasty*, *History of Liao Dynasty*, *History of Jurchen Gold Dynasty*, and *History of Yuan Dynasty*. However, Chinese history recorded that Western Xia was able to retain Tang China's court music and Confucian classics while Northern China's Five Dynasties failed to inherit the Tang legacy.



It would be during Manchu Qing Dynasty that scholars began to compile records about Tangut's Western Xia Dynasty, among whom would be Zhang Jian, Wu Guangcheng, Zhou Chun and Chen Kun. In early years of the Republic of China, scholar Dai Xizhang compiled a book entitled *Xi Xia Ji* (i.e., Records of Western Xia). Scholar Luo Zhenyue, one of the four renowned oracle bone experts, while staying in Japan, had published Tangut's dictionary *Yin Tong* (i.e., "Pronunciation Same"), and his sons Lu Fucheng and Luo Fuchang continued his father's workings from 1916 onward. In 1933, scholar Wang Jingru published three volume "Western Xia Research" and received an award from French Science Academy. The junior son of Luo Zhenyue, i.e., Luo Fuyi, continued the research in 1970s after Premier Zhou Enlai intervened during the turmoil years of the cultural revolution. In 1980, Professor Wu Tianxi published *Xi Xia Shi Gao* (i.e., Writings On History Of Western Xia Dynasty). Russians, Americans, Japanese, Hungarians, New Zealanders, French, British and Germans certainly had abnormally strong interests in dead people and language, and contributed significantly to the discovery of Tangut history and language.

Origins Of Tanguts

Out of Qiangic peoples would evolve the later Xixia Kingdom led by the

Dangxiang nomads or the Tanguts. The Dangxiang people, i.e., Tanguts, were remnants of the Western Qiang people. The Dangxiang people would be living to the south of the Tuhuhun people. This dwelling place of the Dangxiang people and the Tuyuhun people would be called Frontal Tibet or Outer Tibet in later times. By the time of South-North Dynasties, Dangxiang-qiang dwelled around Huanghe-qu [Yellow River winding, i.e., Xizhi in *Yu Gong* or Cizhi in *Hou Han Shu*] of Qinghai Prov. Dangxiang-qiang spread from Lintao [Lintan of Gansu Prov] and Xiping [Xining of Qinghai] in the east to Yehu [Shanshan and Turfan county in New Dominion Prov] in the west. Dangxiang-qiang legends claimed that they originated from Bai-he [white river, i.e., ancient Bailongjiang or Qiang-shui] and the cross-border areas of today's Qinhai-Gansu-Sichuan provinces. Their epics also inferred to their tradition of pasting red color onto their dark faces, building stone citadels, pointing to ancient Gao-yao-mi statelet as their origin, and eulogizing Tibetan girl as the wife of their ancestor.

Seng Ren interpreted Dangxiang-qiang legends by applying the Gao-yao-mi statelet as that belonging to the son born by the leader of seven brothers of Dangxiang-qiang and Tibetan girl. Seng Ren claimed that the seven brothers, together with Gao-yao-mi statelet, would comprise the eight clans of Tuoba-shi, Feiting-shi, Wangli-shi, Pochao-shi, Yeli-shi, Miqin-shi, Xifeng-shi and Mozang-shi. History recorded that there evolved eight Dangxiang tribes of Qiangic nature by the time of Five Dynasties (AD 907-960), with one tribal group carrying the old Toba name. By Sui Dynasty, about AD 584, thousand households of Dangxiang-qiang sought suzerainty with Chinese. In AD 585, Tuoba Ningcong led his tribe to Xu-zhou (Lintan of Gansu Prov). However, in AD 596, they attacked Huizhou [Maowen Qiang Autonom County of Sichuan Prov] prefecture of Sui Dynasty, but sought suzerainty with Chinese again after a defeat. In AD 629, Dangxiang-qiang leader Xifeng Bulai relocated to Guizhou (A'bei prefecture and Songpan county of Sichuan Prov) and received Tang conferral as "ci shi" (satrap or governor) for Guizhou Prefecture. Other clans came to Tang, too, and Tang Dynasty zoned Zhiju-zhou, Feng-zhou, Yan-zhou and Yuan-zhou in today's Sichuan Prov for settling the Qiangs. The Toba Tribe of the Dangxiang people had inter-marriage with the Tuyuhuns (i.e., Murong clan of Xianbei), and at one time made an alliance against the Tang army. In AD 634, Tuoba Chici assisted Tuyuhun King Youyun in fighting Tang at Langdaoxia valley. After a defeat, Tuoba Chici and his nephew Tuoba Sitou sought suzerainty with Chinese, and he was conferred the royal family name of 'Li' and assigned the territories of Xirong-zhou, i.e., to the northwest of ancient

Songzhou prefecture and at the cross-border area of today's Qinghai-Gansu-Sichuan Provinces. Tuoba Chici headed 32 so-called 'jimi-zhou', i.e., chained and harnessed prefectures, and reported to Tang Dynasty's Songzhou governor office.

Tangut minister, Luo Shichang, stated that the Toba (Tuoba) people who stayed in ancient Songzhou Prefecture [Songpan of Sichuan border area] had adopted their old name of Toba. When the Dangxiang relocated to Yinzhou and Xiazhou territories [Jingbian & Mizhi of Shenxi Prov], around the West Yellow River Bend, they renamed themselves 'Ping-xia Tribe'. From AD 635 to 678, Tibetans kept on assaulting the Qiangs. In 635, Tibetans defeated the Qiangs in Dangxiang and Bailan area. By AD 678, Qiangs lost the territories of Yangdong to the Tibetans. Tang Emperor Xuanzong (reign 712-756) allowed 25 Qiangic prefectures of the Qiang people to relocate to Qingzhou (Qingyang of Gansu Prov). Tuoba Sidai (speculated to be Tuoba Sitou) received the conferral from Tang Xuanzong. Tibetans termed the stranded Qiangs in the original habitation area as 'Miyao' and later applied the term to all Qiangs and consecutively the Tanguts. After An-Shi Rebellion in late Tang Dynasty, Tibetans occupied over a dozen prefectures in He-xi [west of Yellow River] and Long-you [rightside or western Gansu Prov] as well as the Western Territories [New Dominion Prov] by taking advantage of the vacuum left by Tang army's departure. Tuoba Shouji, i.e., son of Tuoba Sitou, received Tang Emperor Xuanzong's conferral as Duke Xiping-gong, and later the post of "ci shi" (satrap or inspector) of Rongzhou and consecutively "du du" (governor) of Lingzhou for contributions to quelling the An-Shi Rebellion. By the time of Tang Emperor Daizong (reign 760-779), Dangxiang-qiang in Lingzhou & Qingzhou areas colluded with Tibetans in harassing Tang border. General Guo Ziyi petitioned to have Dangxiang-qiang relocate to Yinzhou (Yulin of Shenxi Prov) and Xiazhou (Baichengzi of Inner Mongolia). Dangxiang-qiang also moved to Suizhou (Suide of Shenxi) & Yanzhou (Yan'an of Shenxi). Five Qiangic chieftans (i.e., "ci shi"), such as Tuoba Chaoguang and Tuoba Qimei, went to see Tang emperor in Chang'an. 'Ping-xia Tribe' would be Tuoba Chaoguang clan which took the name from 'ping' or leveled desert surface between Xiazhou and Yinzhou. Seng Ren claimed that some Qiangs had herded to Lishi of Shanxi in AD 765 but later crossed the Yellow River back to the west.

Toba Sigong, a Dangxiang nomad with a Toba clan name, was from 'Ping-xia Tribe' around the West Yellow River Bend. He was the grandson of Tuoba

Qianhui, while Tuoba Qianhui was the grandson of Tuoba Shouji. While Tuoba Qianhui was conferred the post of "ci shi" of You-zhou, Toba Sigong assumed the post by himself. Huang Chao Rebellion (874-884) would mark the rise of Tuoba clan. Toba Sigong had come to the aid of Tang Dynasty in AD 881 when rebel Huang Chao sacked Xi'an the Tang capital in AD 880. Tang Emperor Xizong conferred Toba Sigong the title of Duke Xia-guo-gong, 'jie-du-si' (satrap) of the prefectures of Xia-Sui-Yin-You [Xiazhou=Jingbian-xian; Suizhou=Suide; Yinzhou=Mizhi-xian; Youzhou=Jingbian-xian], and the Tang family name of Li. Toba Sigong brothers continued to enjoy Tang conferrals.

Tangut Language

The Tanguts devised their own indigenous ideogrammatic script in AD 1036 and developed a literary tradition of translated Buddhist texts and original secular works.

Seng Ren, in *Western Xia Kingdom & Oriental Pyramid*, claimed that Mongols continued to allow and encourage Tangut characters (termed 'He-xi' character) usage throughout 13th & 14th centuries, and Tangut script buddhism scripts were carried over to Japan in the same timeframe. In AD 1342, at Juyongguan Pass, to the northwest of Peking, Yuan Emperor Shundi erected a six-language monument, with one Tangut Na-lin participating in the project. In AD 1372 of Ming Emperor Hongwu's Era, a Tangut scripted buddhist article and drawing was authored. Tangut characters were still in use during Ming Emperor Hongzhi's Era (AD 1488-1505). Two Tangut script pogadas dating from 1502 were discovered in Hanzhuang area of Baoding city of Hebei Prov in 1962. Historian Chen Yinke discovered, in a Tibetan script in a German library, Tangut scripts dating from Ming Wanli Era [1573-1620] in 1931. Later, in AD 1810, some scholar by the name of Zhang Shu opened up a monument wall inside of Dayun-shi Monastery in Wuwei and discovered a 2.5x0.9 meter size monument with Tangut-Chinese inscriptions dating from Tangut Emperor Chongzong [Li Qianshu] Tianyou Era. In 1917, some Tangut buddhism manuscripts were discovered in Lingwu county. In 1952 & 1972, at Wuwei of Gansu Prov, Tanguts scripts were again discovered, while Tangut royal tombs were excavated on the outskirts of Yinchuan in the

same time period.

Tangut language, i.e., the dead Tibeto-Burman language of the Buddhist empire of Xixià, received its popularity as a result of intrusions and explorations by Russian, British Hungarian and French. In AD 1882, Frenchman Devieria rebutted Britishman A Wylia's 1870 comment in regards to 6-language monument at Juyongguan Pass, speculating that it could be the dead Tangut language. In this year, Britishman E C Baber claimed that Tanguts could be the same as Mi-yao-ren in Qinghai Prov. Britishman T W Bushell ascertained 40 Tangut characters on basis of Tang-gu-te [i.e., Tangut] coins on a British Royal Society magazine in 1890s. Devieria, after studying Zhang Shu's discovery, ascertained his viewpoint in 1898. In AD 1899, Frenchman M G Morisse found a Tangut script with Chinese interpretations in Peking and paraphrased about 100 Tangut characters. In May 1908, an expedition of the Imperial Russian Geographical Society, led by Peter Kuzmitsch Kozlov, discovered a library of Tangut manuscripts hidden inside a stupa amongst the ruins to the west of a lost Tangut city at Khara Khoto in Inner Mongolia. Kozlov, who was researching botany in Sichuan, was asked to go north to Khara Khoto (i.e., today's Heicheng [black city] or Heishui-cheng [black water city under E-ji-na Mongolian Banner that was sandwiched between Jiayuguan Pass of Gansu Prov to the southwest and Gobi-Altai Mountain of Outer Mongolia to the north] for detecting treasures buried by Tangut legendary 'Black' [black faced?] general. (Khara Khoto was where Tanguts stationed one of the 12 columns of armies, and it could also be the location where the Huns exiled Han Dynasty emissary Su Wu for shepherding sheep should it be the same as "bei hai' [north sea, i.e., commonly perceived to be Lake Baykal further to the north]. Mongols, after exterminating Tangut Xia Dynasty, established 'Yi-ji-nai' [mutation of E-ji-na, i.e., black water] garrison here. Seng Ren speculated that E-ji-na River ran dry after Ming Dynasty heavily utilized water resource around He-xi Corridor for agriculture. At one time during Tang Dynasty, Lake Juyan, where E-ji-na River flew to, possessed 300 square kilometers in size.)

Kozlov, after shipping over some treasures to St Petersburg in March, left for Sichuan Prov again. Kozlov revisited Khara Khoto in May and located the manuscripts hidden inside a stupa on the rightside bank of a dry bed river, i.e., ancient E-ji-na River. British and Americans followed Kozlov's path thereafter. In 1914, A Stein came to Khara Khoto and scavenged remaining manuscripts that were discerned to be Tibetan, Tangut, Turkic, Chinese and Uygur scripts. In

1914, Luo Fucheng & Luo Fuchang brothers obtained from Russian [Yi-feng-ge] a Tangut dictionary (i.e., "Pearls In A Palm") authored by Gu-le-mao-cai in AD 1190. Scholar Luo Zhenyue interpreted another batch of Tangut dictionaries entitled "Pronunciation Same" and "Literature Sea" on basis of Russian excavations. In 1916, American B Laufer claimed that Tangut language belonged to the same branch as Yi-zu & Naxi-zu minority in Southwestern Yunnan Province. A dozen years later, an American, by the name of Warner, discovered a few wall drawings, three potteries and a few dozens of coins. In 1931, British S N Wolfenden and American G T Bowles claimed that people in Muya area could be descendants of Tanguts relocated there by the Mongols. Throughout 20th century, Chinese, Russians, Americans, Japanese, Hungarians, New Zealanders, French, British and Germans had conducted tenuous research into Tangut language. Russians, with first hand evidence, had produced the most scholars, some of whom had suffered death in Stalin's Purge.

Tanguts vs Five Dynasties

During Five Dynasties time period, Tuoba-Li family expressed loyalty to all five succeeding courts as well as the Northern Han Dynasty to the east of the Yellow River. Only Posterior Tang had launched one campaign against Tuoba-Li's Tangut regime. In AD 895, Toba Sigong (i.e., Li Sigong) passed away. Brother Li Sijian assumed the post of "ding-na-jun jie-du-shi" (i.e., Governor-general for Quelling-turmoil Garrison). When Posterior Liang was founded by Zhu Wen, Li Sijian expressed loyalty and received extra titles of "jianxiao taiwei" [monitoring captain] and "shi zhong" [imperial attache]. In 908, Li Sigong's grandson, Li Yichang, took over Li Sijian's post. Three months later, Li Yichang was killed by his general Gao Zongyi. An uncle, by the name of Li Renfu, was supported as the new Governor-general for Quelling-turmoil Garrison. At one time, Li Renfu was attacked by Li Chunxu (i.e., King Jinn-wang) who encircled Xiazhou. Posterior Liang Emperor Taizu (i.e., Zhu Wen) came to the relief of Li Renfu.

After Li Chunxu overthrew Posterior Liang, Li Renfu expressed loyalty to Posterior Tang. In AD 933, son Li Yichao assumed the post of Li Renfu. Posterior Tang Emperor Mingzong [Li Siyuan or Li Dan, reign 926-933] had campaigned against Li Yichao for his refusal to relocate to Yanzhou. After laying siege of Xiazhou in vain for over hundred days, Posterior Tang Emperor Mingzong

withdrew the siege and re-confirmed Li Yichao's post. After Li Yichao's death in AD 936, brother Li Yiyin assumed the post.

When Shi Jingtang, i.e., Tang Emperor Mingzong's son-in-law, colluded with Khitans in overthrowing Posterior Tang and establishing Posterior Jinn, Li Yiyin continued to receive the old conferrals. Posterior Jinn further caught Tangut rebels in AD 943 on behalf of Li Yiyin. When Khitans attacked Posterior Jinn in AD 944, Li Yiyin led a combined force of 40,000 Tibetans, Qiangs and Han Chinese in attacking the west of Khitans by crossing the Yellow River at Linzhou.

Posterior Jinn was destroyed by Khitans in AD 946. The second year, Liu Zhiyuan of Shatuo origin established Posterior Han Dynasty. Posterior Han Dynasty continued the pacification policy as to the Tanguts, and further seceded Jingzhou (Mizhi county of Shenxi) to Li Yiyin in AD 949 and conferred the title of "zhong shu ling" (minister for central secretariat).

After Guo Wei, i.e., "liu shou" (governing magistrate) for Yedu (Yecheng of Shanxi), killed Posterior Han Dynasty Emperor Yindi (r 948-950), Guo Wei upgraded Li Yiyin to the title of King Longxi-jun-wang in AD 951. Guo Wei, i.e., Posterior Zhou Dynasty Emperor Taizu (r 951-954), conferred the title of King Xiping-wang onto Li Yiyin in AD 954. Li Yiyin did not sever relations with Northern Han Dynasty till AD 957.

In AD 960, Zhao Kuangyin initiated Chenqiao Coup, took over the reign from Posterior Zhou and established Song Dynasty as Emperor Taizu (r 960-976). Li Yiyin promptly dispatched emissary to Song court for expressing loyalty, and changed his name to Li Yixing for avoiding the conflict with the last character of the given name of Zhao Kuangyin's father. Li Yiyin surrendered 300 stallions to Song court in AD 962 and received jade-belt as imperial bestowal in return. When Li Yiyin died in AD 967, Song Emperor Taizu ordered a mourning for three days and conferred Li Yiyin the title of King Xia-wang posthumously. Son Li Guangrui assumed his father's post.

Tanguts vs Song Dynasty

During Song Dynasty, Toba Sigong descendant sought suzerainty with Song

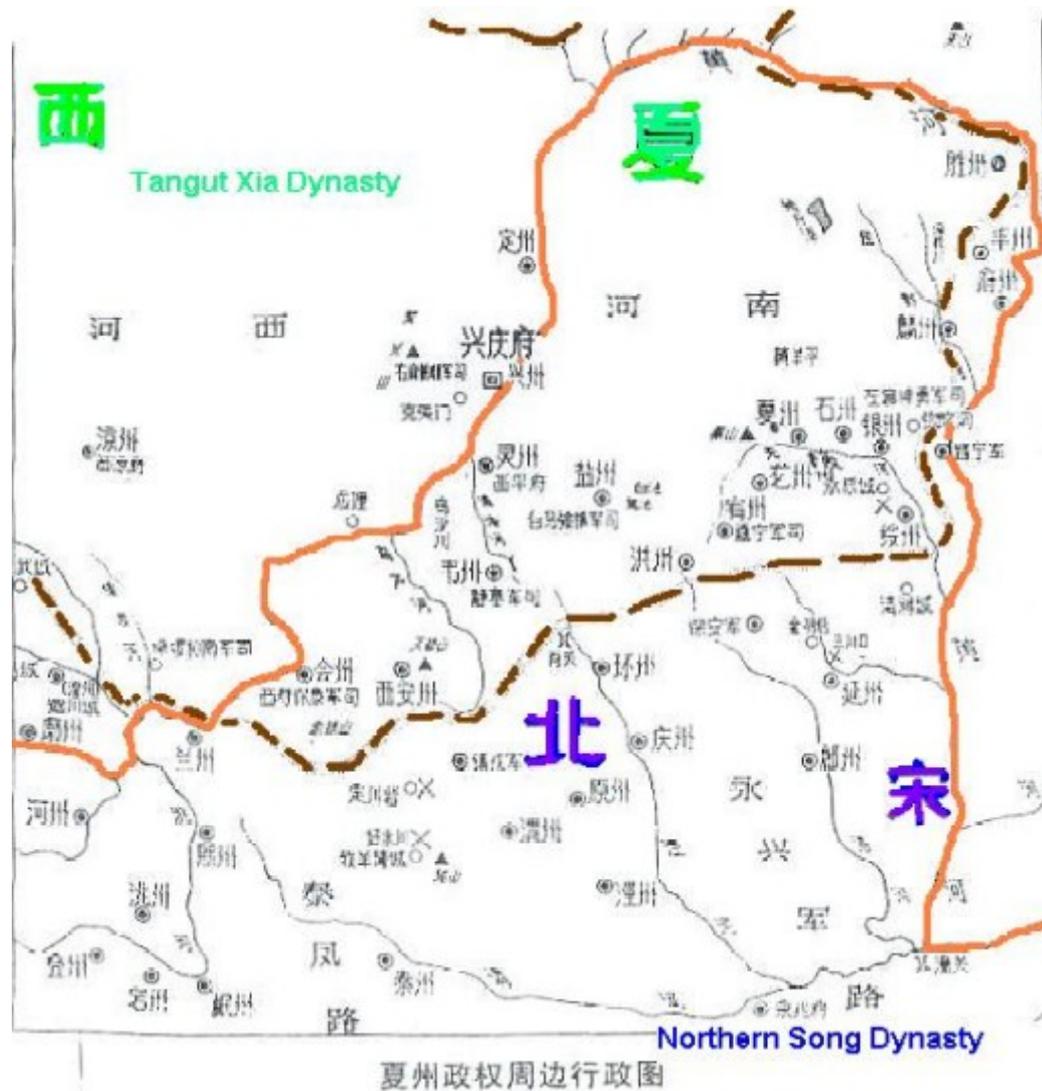
Chinese and changed their last name to Song royal family name of 'Zhao' from Tang family name of 'Li'. However, Xixia sought suzerainty with Khitans at the same time. Li Guangrui, in AD 975, declined Northern Han Emperor Liu Jiyuan's demand for a concerted attack at Song Dynasty. In May 975, Northern Han dispatched an army of 10,000 for crossing the Yellow River to attack Tangut Yinzhou city. In August, Song Emperor Taizu launched a five prong attack at Northern Han, and Tanguts assisted Song in attacking Northern Han from the west. IN AD 976, Song Emperor Taizu passed away, and his brother Zhao Guangyi succeeded as Song Emperor Taizong (r 976-997). Li Guangrui changed his name to Li Kerui for conflict with the first character of the given name of Zhao Guangyi. Son Li Jiyun [Li Jijun] succeeded the post of Li Kerui in AD 978.

When Song Emperor Taizong attacked Northern Han in March 980, Li Jiyun ordered than Li Keyuan and Li Kexian lead Yinzhou and Yanzhou armies for an attack at Northern Han across the Yellow River. Brother Li Jipeng succeeded the post of Li Jiyun in AD 980. Li Keyuan and Li Kexian opposed Li Jipeng's ascension. Li Jipeng quelled Li Keyuan and Li Kexian. Li Kewen of Suizhou, however, petitioned with Song court in removing Li Jipeng. Song Emperor Taizong took advantage of Tangut internal strife in ordering that Li Jipeng report to Song capital while Li Kewen of Suizhou assume the Tangut post. In May 982, Li Jipeng reported to Song capital. Thereafter, Song Emperor Taizong recalled all Tangut Li brothers from the four prefectures.

However, two cousins of Li Jipeng, i.e., Li Jiqian & Li Jichong, fled to Dijingze Lake area with weapons hiding in his nany's mourning cart and rebelled against Song Dynasty. Li Jipeng had voluntarily submitted to Song Dynasty by surrendering four prefectures of Yin-Xia-Sui-You and served Song Dynasty at the capital of Kaifeng. His cousin, Li Jiqian, opposed submission policy and declared himself the ruler of the Tanguts by adopting the advice of his Han ethnic counsel Zhang Pu. In AD 984, Li Jiqian lost his wife and mother to the Song army during a surprise night attack by Song's Xiashou official Yi Xian. Li Jixian then sought alliance with Yeli-shi clan and re-strengthened his forces. In AD 985, Li Jiqian & Li Jichong took over Yinzhou. Song Emperor Taizong, at the advice of Zhao Pu, released Li Jipeng for controlling Tangut territories, and moreover tried to pacify Li Jiqian as well. But Li Jiqian refused Song conferrals and already sought suzerainty with Khitans. In May 997, Li Jiqian attacked Lingzhou with 10,000 army. Lingzhou was guarded by Song General Dou Shenbao. Song dispatched five columns against Li Jiqian.

When Song Emperor Zhenzong (Zhao Heng, reign AD 998-1022) was enthroned, Xixia ruler, Li Jiqian, sent congratulations. Song Emperor Zhenzong conferred the post of *ding nan jie-du-shi* (governor-general quelling rebellions) and the territories of Xia-Sui-Yin-You-Jing onto Li Jiqian. Emperor Zhenzong released a Xixia official by the name of Zhang Pu. Li Jiqian sent his brother to Song court, and Song granted the name of Zhao Baoji onto him. Song Emperor Zhenzong dispatched a minister (Zhang Qixian) to Jing-Yuan areas as *jinglüe shi*, and Zhang Qixian proposed that the city of Lingwu on the west Yellow River bend be abandoned.

In 1001, Li Jiqian attacked the surrounding cities of Lingzhou, and took over Qingyuan-jun Garrison and Huaiyuan-zhen town. The next year, Li Jiqian attacked Lingzhou. Heh Liang, a Song official in charge of *Yongxing Jun* army, would propose to defend Lingwu so that Xixia and Western Territories [New Dominion Prov] could be segregated from each other. Heh Liang adamantly proposed that Song build two castles of Fule and Yaode for sake of supplying Lingwu with grains. Heh Liang stated that the supply of good horses would be cut off should Lingwu be lost to the Tanguts. Song emperor Zhenzong then ordered that Wang Chao lead 60,000 relief army to Lingzhou (Lingwu).



Li Jiqian attacked Song *Qingyuan Jun* Garrison, and Duan Yi surrendered to the Tanguts. Li Jiqian then attacked Dingzhou and Huaiyuan; Song official Cao Can assembled nomadic people as mercenaries and defeated Li Jiqian. In AD 1002, Li Jiqian attacked Lingzhou. Song *zhi zhou shi* (magistrate equivalent) Fei Ji defended the city for over one month, cut his finger and wrote a blood letter for requesting relief with Song court, and later died in street fightings. Wang Chao made an excuse for not going to Lingzhou on time. After taking over Lingzhou, Li Jiqian renamed Lingzhou [Yinchuan area of Ningxia] to Xiping-fu and made it the capital of Xixia.

One year later, Li Jihe of Song *Zhi-Zhenrong-Jun* Garrison wrote to Song court

that a chieftan (Tibetan) from Liugu (six valleys), by the name of Balaji (Panluozhi), intended to attack Tanguts on behalf of Song. Zhang Qixian proposed that Song conferred the title of 'King of Liugu' and the post of *zhao tao shi* (campaigning emissary) onto Balaji. Song decided to offer Balaji the title of *suofang jie-du-shi* (satrap or governor for northern territories) onto Balaji. Balaji claimed that he had assembled 60,000 strong army for fighting Tanguts.

To the east, Li Jiqian then attacked Linzhou [Shenmu-xian of Shenxi, seceded by Song in 1226] but he was defeated by Song *zhi zhou* (prefecture chief) Wei Jubao. Changing his direction to the west, Li Jiqian re-routed towards Xiliang (Western Liang or Gansu Prov) and killed a Song official called Ding Weiqing in Nov 1004. Li Jiqian took over Liangzhou by pretending an attack at Huanzhou & Qingzhou. Balaji, previously a vassal under jurisdiction of Xiliang district, would pretend to surrender to the Tanguts. When Balaji led his Liugu army to Xiliang for Li Jiqian to inspect on, Balaji would suddenly launch an attack at the Tanguts. Balaji shot an arrow at the eye of Li Jiqian. When Li Jiqian fled back to Lingzhou, he died of the wound in Jan 1004 at age 42 and was conferred the title of Emperor Taizu posthumously.

Li Jiqian's son, Li Deming, was enthroned next. Tanguts notified the Khitans of the succession, and Khitans conferred the title of King Xiping-wang onto Li Deming. In 1005, Song Emperor Zhenzong sent a messenger to Li Deming for sake of pacifying him, and Li Deming dispatched general Wang Shen to Song for seeking suzerainty. Cao Wei of Song *Zhi-zhenrong-jun* Garrison proposed that Song exterminated Xixia by taking advantage of Li Jiqian's death. Song Emperor Zhenzong stated that Song could not attack Tanguts while the Tanguts were in mourning status. Song conferred the post of *Dingnan-jun jie-du-shi* (satrap or governor for Quelling Turmoils Garrison) onto Li Deming and then added King Xiping-wang by copying the Khitan approach. A peace treaty was reached by Sept 1006. In AD 1007, Li Deming obtained Song court's approval to open up border trade post at *Bao'an-jun* Garrison (today's Zhidan county of Shenxi Prov).

Tibetan chieftan Balaji was killed by some alien tribe, and Liugu tribes erected Balaji's brother, Sibangduo (Siduodu), as the new chieftan. Song court continued the conferral of *suofang jie-du-shi* onto Sibangduo. Sibangduo failed to rein in his people, and Sibangduo people defected to the Tibetans. Tibetan chieftan proposed to Song court that they launch a coordinated attack at Li Deming. Song Zhenzong declined it. Tibetans, however, invaded Song's Qinzhou

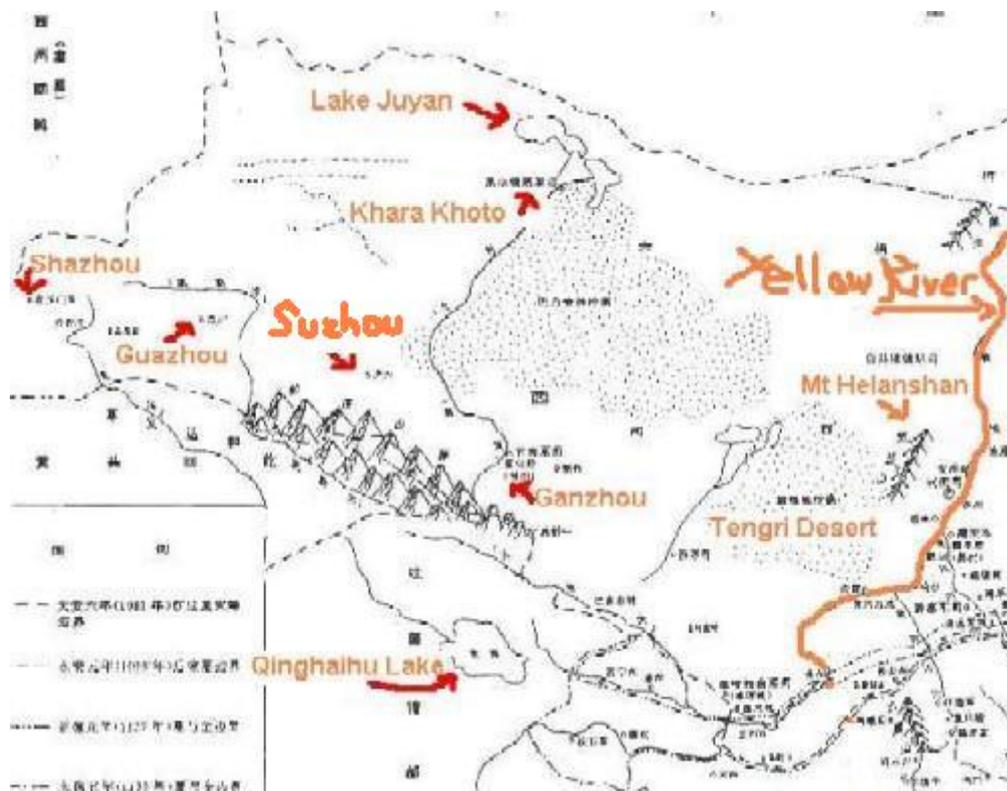
territories, and Song official at Qinzhou, Cao Wei, defeated the Tibetans. Song conferred the title of *ningyuan da jiangjun* (grand general for Ningyuan area) and *tuan lian shi* (militia emissary) of Aizhou onto Tibetan chieftan.

Declaration of Grand Xia Dynasty

Tangut ruler Li Deming, aka Zhao Deming, had a son by the name of Li Yuanhao. Li Yuanhao often proposed to Li Deming that the Tanguts defeat the Huihe (Uygur) and Tibetans first. Li Yuanhao led a surprise attack at Ganzhou [Zhangye of Gansu Prov], and took over the city from Huihe. Li Deming made Li Yuanhao into the crown prince. Li Yuanhao often instigated his father in rebelling against Song. After the death of Li Deming, Li Yuanhao got enthroned. Song dispatched *gongbu langzhong* (minister for engineering department) Yang Ji to the Tanguts and continued the previous conferrals onto Li Yuanhao. Khitans conferred Li Yuanhao the title of 'King of Xia'.

In AD 1034, Li Yuanhao attacked Huanqing territories. Song General Wei Tong attacked the hind of the Tanguts. Tanguts then invaded Song territories again. Li Yuanhao i) captured Qi Zongju who led relief soldiers from Huanqing and ii) defeated Wang Wen who led relief soldiers from Ningzhou. Then, Li Yuanhao released Qi Zongju for sake of peace with Song. After that, Li Yuanhao dispatched an army of 25,000 against the Tibetans. Tanguts were defeated and Tangut general Sunuer was taken as prisoner of war. Li Yuanhao personally led an expedition against the Tibetans, but he was defeated by the Tibetans, too.

Li Yuanhao then changed target to the Huihe (Uygur) people. In AD 1036, Li Yuanhao took over Huihe territories of Guazhou (Gansu-xian and Anxi-xian of Gansu), Shazhou (Tunhuang-xian of Gansu) and Suzhou (Jiuquan of Gansu Prov), and hence Tanguts controlled the He-xi Corridor for 191 years.



At this moment, two Chinese intellectuals from Huazhou area went to Lingzhou (Lingwu-xian of Ningxia) to see Li Yuanhao. Li Yuanhao (Zhao Yuanhao) adopted the advices of the two guys in building Xixia kingdom, renamed Lingzhou to Xingzhou (where 'xing' means prospering) and xiping-fu into xingqing-fu (i.e., today's Yinchuan area of Ningxia), declared a dynastic title of "Da Xia" (Grand Xia), established 16 departments and ministries, instituted 12 army supervisors (i.e., *jian jun si*), recruited an official army of 500,000, and devised the written Tangut characters.

Tangut records claimed that a minister, by the name of Ye-li-ren-rong, spent years on a high storey building in devising the scripts, for which Li Yuanhao conferred him Marquis Fuping-hou posthumously and Tangut Emperor Renzong conferred him King Guanghui-wang posthumously in AD 1162. In AD 1038, Li Yuanhao sent messenger to Song court to notify his imperial entitlement as Xia

Emperor Jingzong. In his letter, Li Yuanhao claimed Toba (i.e., Xianbei) ancestry and heritage dating from Toba Wei Dynasty. Among Western Xia territories would be: Xiazhou [Jingbian-xian], Suizhou [Suide of Shenxi], Yinzhou [Mizhi-xian of Shenxi], Youzhou [east of Jingbian-xian of Shenxi], Jingzhou [Mizhi-xian of Shenxi], Lingzhou [Lingwu], Ganzhou [Zhangye of Gansu], Xingzhou [Yinchuan], Liangzhou [Wuwei of Gansu], Guazhou [east of Gansu-xian/Anxi-xian of Gansu], Shazhou [Dunhuang of Gansu], Suzhou [Jiuquan of Gansu], Lanzhou [Lanzhou, surrendered by Tibetans in AD 1126], Linzhou [Shenmu-xian of Shenxi, seceded by Song in 1126], Fuzhou [Fugu-xian of Shenxi], and Fengzhou [east of Hetao in Inner Mongolia] and etc.

Tangut rulers (from AD 873 to 1038) and emperors (from AD 1038 to 1227), would include:

Toba Sigong (Li Sigong)

...

Emperor Jingzong (Li Yuanhao, reign 1032-1038, 1038-1049 ?)

Emperor Yizong (reign 1049-1068?)

Emperor Huizong (reign 1068-1086?)

Emperor Chongzong (Li Qianshun, reign 1086-1139)

Emperor Renzong (Li Renxiao, 1140-1193)

Emperor Huanzong (Li Chunyou, reign 1194-1206)

Emperor Xiangzong (Li An'quan, reign 1206-1211)

Emperor Shenzong (reign 1211-1223)

Emperor Xianzong (Li Dewang, reign 1223-1226)

The Last Ruler (reign 1226-1227)

Khitans-Jurchens-Tanguts-Song

The Khitans had married over their princess to the Tangut emperor, and had good diplomatic relationships with the Tanguts. In AD 1122, the Jurchens defeated the Khitans in Manchuria, and the Khitans fled to the Yinshan Mountains of Inner Mongolia.

Map linked from
<http://www.friesian.com>

Tangut General Li Liangfu came to the Khitan's aid with 30,000 soldiers. The Tanguts were defeated by the Jurchens, and most of the Tangut soldiers drowned themselves in a mountain torrent in a valley called 'Yegu' (wild valley). Jurchen General Zongwang wrote to the Tanguts asking them to pay tributes the same way as the Tanguts did to the Khitans. In AD 1124, the Tanguts accepted suzerainty with the Jurchens, and Jurchen Emperor Taizong (reign AD 1123-1135) seceded to the Tanguts the territories south of the Yinshan Mountains.



When Song Chinese took over some lands west of 'shan-xi' (i.e., land to the west of Huashan Mountain) that was seceded to the Tanguts, Tangut Emperor (Li Qianshun) wrote to the Jurchens asking for intervention. Jurchens, as an appreciation of the alliance with Song Chinese against Khitans, had earlier seceded nine prefectures of 'shan-xi' ex-Khitan territories to Song, including Shenxi Prov and 'he-nan' land (south of the Yellow River). Jurchens, who had an earlier agreement to allow Song to retake Peking from Khitans, had helped Song in the siege of Peking when Song army failed to take over Peking. Hence, Jurchens, in exchange for surrendering Peking to Song per alliance agreement, would receive the tax revenues of Peking as a compensation. (Later, Jurchens retook the territories of 'he-nan' / 'shan-xi' lands and Peking after defeating Song Chinese and capturing two Song emperors, Song Huizong & Song Qinzong.)

Tangut Emperor Chongzong (Li Qianshun) died in the year of AD 1139 (1140?). Li Qianshun's son, Li Renxiao, was enthroned as Tangut Emperor Renzong (AD 1140-1194 ?). Tanguts, originally father-in-law of the Khitans, had once disputed with Jurchens about the diplomatic etiquette when Jurchen emissary insisted that Tangut emperor used the minister protocol to receive Jurchen imperial emissary (Wang A'hai). When Jurchen Emperor Xizong (Wanyan Dan)

was killed by Hailingwang (King of Hailing, i.e., Wanyan Liang, reign AD 1149-1161), the Tanguts would reprimand Jurchen emissary as to the killing. Tanguts would come to pay respect to Jurchens' Hailingwang one year later, i.e., in AD 1150.

Around AD 1161, Jurchens attacked Song Chinese, Song invaded Gansu Prov, and Tanguts took over some cities from Jurchens as well as invaded Song territories. Jurchen Emperor Shizong (Wayan Yong) enthroned in AD 1161. Tanguts offered some cities to Jurchens and requested for Jurchen assistance in attacking Song Chinese.

In AD 1164, Tanguts sent an official, 'da fu', to Jurchens. Tangut prime minister, Ren Dejing, had been assisting Tangut emperor for over 20 years, and Ren Dejing executed many Tangut royal family members in preparation for an eventual usurpation. In AD 1170, Ren Dejing obtained southwestern Tangut territories (including Lingzhou Prefecture) as his fief. Ren Dejing forced Tangut emperor into petitioning for 'conferral' by Jurchen emperor. Jurchen Emperor Shizong took advice from 'shang shu' Li Shi and refused to approve Tangut emperor's petition. Hence, Ren Dejing contacted Song Chinese for assistance. Tangut Emperor (Li Renxiao) intercepted the Song messenger's letter to Ren Dejing and managed to have Ren Dejing and his cronies captured and executed.

Tangut Emperor (Li Renxiao) continued to surrender tributes and gifts to Jurchens in AD 1172 and AD 1177. Tanguts and Jurchens set up trading posts around the border areas of Shenxi Prov and had disputes over trader's pillaging. In AD 1191, some Tangut border generals killed a Jurchen general, and Tanguts apologized to Jurchen Emperor Zhuangzong (Wanyan Jing, reign 1190-1208) by executing the perpetrators.

Tangut Emperor (Li Renxiao) died in AD 1193. Li Renxiao's son, Li Chunyou, would be Tangut Emperor Huanzong (1194-1206 ?). In AD 1197, trading posts were re-established. In AD 1200, Li Chunyou's mother got ill, and Jurchens dispatched imperial doctors (Shi Deyuan and Wang Lizhen) to the Tanguts. In AD 1206, Li Renxiao's brother, Li An'quan, deposed Tangut Emperor Huanzong. Li An'quan enthroned as Emperor Xiangzong (1206-1211 ?). Huanzong died a few months later while under the house arrest. Li An'quan forced Li Chunyou's mother into petitioning with Jurchens for conferral of the emperor title. Jurchens approved the request.

Mongols-Tanguts-Jurchens

The Mongols attacked the Tanguts in AD 1205, 1207, 1208 and in AD 1209. In AD 1205, Genghis Khan (Timuchin) invaded Tangut territories and took over the city of Luo-si. In AD 1207, Genghis Khan attacked Tanguts again and took over the city of Ke-wo-luo-hai. In Jan of AD 1210, the siege of Tangut capital was released when the waters, breached by the Mongols for flooding the Xia capital, flowed to the Mongol camp instead. Peace was secured only when Tangut emperor (Li An'quan) delivered his youngest daughter to Genghis Khan as a bribe. After Mongols left, Tanguts, angry that the Jurchens did not come to their aid, broke the peace treaty with the Jurchens.

In AD 1211, Li An'quan died. A royal member was selected as Tangut Emperor Shenzong (1211-1223 ?). Taking advantage of Jurchen's defeat at Huihebao, Tanguts raided into the Jurchen territories. In AD 1212 and 1213, Tanguts attacked Jurchens four times. In AD 1213, Jurchens reprimanded the Tanguts, but Tanguts continued to infringe on the Jurchen territories, including Yan'qing area of Shenxi Prov. Jurchens fought back in AD 1215. In AD 1216, Jurchens captured a Tangut spy who disclosed that the Tanguts had colluded with Song Chinese in attacking Jurchens. In AD 1217, Jurchen general at Qingyang, General Qingshannu, defeated a Tangut army of 30,000. After more rounds of fightings, Jurchens intended to have peace talk with the Tanguts. In AD 1218, Qingshannu passed on Tanguts' wish to have peace talk, but Jurchen court ignored it. Wars continued till AD 1223. Tangut emperor's son, Deren, requested that Tanguts have peace with Jurchens; Deren stated that he would rather be a monk than continuing wars with Jurchens; and Deren was exiled to Lingzhou Prefecture. This year, the Mongols attacked the Tanguts. Jurchen generals requested for a campaign against the Tanguts by taking advantage of Mongols' entanglement with the Tanguts. But Jurchen governor in Shenxi advised against this proposal. Tanguts continued to raid into Jurchen territories. Jurchens and Tanguts had ten years of border wars since AD 1213.

Tangut Emperor Shenzong passed away in this year. His son, Li Dewang, was enthroned as Tangut Emperor Xianzong (1223-1226 ?). In AD 1224, Jurchens and Tanguts reached a peace agreement and promised to be brothers. Since Western Xia had refused to provide troops in the war against the Khwarizm, and

more over, signed another alliance treaty with Jurchen Jin, Genghis Khan led a force of 180,000 troops for a new campaign against the Tanguts in AD 1225. In AD 1226, Shenzong and Xianzong died consecutively. The last Tangut ruler ruled for only one year, and Tangut Xixia Dynasty ended in AD 1227 under Mongol attacks. A Tangut minister, Wang Lizhi, was dispatched to Jurchens for intermarriage, and hence Wang Lizhi stayed on in Jurchen territories, responsible for settling Tangut refugees.

Mongol Attack on Tanguts

Tanguts were never isolated from the nomads on the steppe. Earlier, Toghrul (Kerait chieftan) was resented by his tribesmen for killing his brothers. When Toghrul was defeated by his uncle and fled with few hundreds of horsemen, Yisugei (Genghis Khan's father) would come to his aid and drive Toghrul's uncle to Tanguts' Western Xia. Later, Toghrul's brother rebelled as well, and Toghrul had to flee to the three statelets of 'Hexi', 'Huihu' and 'Huihui', and Kara Khitai for asylum, consecutively. After Timuchin defeated Toghrul's Keraites, Toghrul fled towards the Naimans and was killed by the Naiman soldier. Toghrul's son fled to Tanguts and pillaged Xixia people. When attacked by the Tanguts, Toghrul's son fled to Chouci {Qiuci} in Chinese Turkistan and was killed by the chieftan there.

From AD 1205 onward, Mongols attacked Tanguts six times. Genghis Khan first accused Xixia of giving asylum to Toghrul's people, i.e., King Toghrul Wanghan's son Yi-la-he-sang-kun. In 1209, 1217, and 1226-1227, Mongols reached Mt Helanshan three times and laid siege of Xingqing-fu city.

The Tanguts were attacked by the Mongols in AD 1205, 1207 and 1208 before they were defeated again in AD 1209. In AD 1205, Mongols sacked two border garrisons, Li-ji-li-zai and Luo-si-cheng, pillaged people and camels, and retreated within one month. Xia Emperor Huanzong repaired castles thereafter, declared amnesty, and renamed capital of Xingqing-fu into Zhongxing-fu. Tanguts intruded into Mongol plains in late 1205, only to withdraw after hearing of Jurchen defeat. After the grand assembly of 1206, Timuchin, now titled Genghis Khan, conferred kingship onto his brothers. He conferred 'wan hu' (10,000 households) on Muhuali and Borjie as well as 95 'qian hu' (1,000 households). Both 'wan hu' and 'qian hu' are military titular names. (Mongols

initially had simple titular posts, and Khubilai would have his counsellor, Liu Bingzhong, work on governmental structure later.) Muhuali, i.e., Muqali or Mukali, proposed to Genghis Khan that they should first defeat the Tanguts, then the Jurchens and finally the Song Chinese. Since the Chinese chronicle counts the full first year as the No. 1 year, AD 1206 would be the so-called first year of Mongol Dynasty. The official dynastic epoch of 'Yuan' would not come till Khubilai declared it in AD 1271. (Southern Song ended eight years later, in AD 1279.)

In the autumn of 1207, campaigns against the Tanguts began on the pretext that Tanguts did not surrender tributes. Genghis Khan attacked the citadel Wo-luo-hai-cheng, to the north of Hetao and near the northern pass of Lang-shan Mountain. Mongols slaughtered the city after 40 days of fightings. Five months later, Mongols retreated after Tangut Emperor Xiangzong dispatched relief armies. In the spring of AD 1209, Wei-wu-er (Uygur) came to show respect. In the spring of 1209, Genghis Khan personally led the 650 mile march on the Tanguts in the south. This was after the Huihe people in Gaochang killed the governor ["shao jian"] of Western Liao and surrendered to Mongols as a vassal. Mongols, utilizing the northwestern exposure, attacked Tangut's Wo-luo-hai Pass again. Tangut Emperor Xiangzong [Li An'quan] dispatched son Cheng-zhen to the front, and Tangut Deputy Marshal Gao Yi was killed after being caught by the Mongols. Alternatively speaking, Mongols captured Tangut deputy marshal Gao Linggong and the city of Ke-wu-la [Wo-luo-hai?]. In April, Mongols sacked Wo-luo-hai after a Chinese [Xie Muhuan] persuaded a ex-Song Chinese defender into surrendering the city. Tangut's "tai fu" [imperial tutor] Xi-bi-e-da was caught by Mongols. Mongols then intruded southward towards Ke-yi-men Pass. Tangut General Weimingling-gomng, with 50000 relief army, ambushed Mongols in a valley and drove Mongols out of the mountain pass. Two months later, Mongols seduced Tanguts into a trap, defeated them, sacked Ke-yi-men, and intruded to Zhongxing-fu capital. By Sept, Mongols flooded the city with water from the Yellow River. Water as deep as several feet destroyed houses in the city and drowned numerous people. Tangut's request with Jurchens was declined. By Dec, however, flood destroyed the Mongol dike and flooded the Mongol camps instead.

In the winter, Genghis Khan turned to Kuchlug and Tuotuo in the northwest, causing Kuchlug to flee to Kara Khitai while Tuotuo was killed by a stray arrow. In Jan of AD 1210, the siege of Tangut capital was released when the waters,

breached by the Mongols for flooding the Xia capital, fled to the Mongol camp instead. Mongols released the Tangut 'tai fu' for a peace talk. Peace was secured only when Tangut emperor (Li An'quan) delivered his youngest daughter (rumored to be later responsible for poisoning Genghis when he re-attacked Xixia) to Genghis Khan as a bribe, but the Tanguts refused to supply troops to the Mongols as auxiliary. Tanguts would pay for this later.

After Mongols left, Tanguts, angry that the Jurchens did not come to their aid, broke the peace treaty with the Jurchens which had been effective as of AD 1165, and a new treaty would not be signed till AD 1225 when they faced new waves of Mongol attacks. Tanguts attacked Jurchen's border town but were defeated, and hence they asked Genghis Khan to attack the Jurchens. Tanguts would be engaged in ten years' border wars with Jurchens. In AD 1211, Li An'quan died. A royal member was selected as Tangut Emperor Shenzong (1211-1223 ?). In AD 1212 and 1213, Tanguts attacked Jurchens four times. Jurchens fought back in AD 1215. In AD 1217, Jurchen general at Qingyang, General Qingshannu, defeated a Tangut army of 30,000. Tanguts continued to raid into Jurchen territories. Jurchens and Tanguts had ten years of border wars since AD 1213. Wars continued till AD 1223.

In autumn of AD 1216, Mongols came to Shenxi from their early campaigns against Tanguts in the west. In AD 1217, Mongols attacked Tanguts for the fourth time on the pretext that Tanguts did not obey appropriation. Mongols laid siege of Xingqing-fu. Tangut Emperor Zunzong fled to "xi-jing" [western capital], and assigned son De-ren for city defence. De-ren requested for peace with Mongols.

In AD 1218, Mongols departed from Zijinguan Pass and captured Jurchen 'yuanshuai xingshi' Zhang Rou. Muhuali departed 'xi-jing' for 'he-dong' (east of Yellow River) and captured Taiyuan, Dai, Feng, Lu, Huo-zhou and Pingyang of Shanxi Province. Jurchen General Wu Xian attacked Man-zhou, and Zhang Rou defeated Wu Xian. Tanguts were attacked in this year [?], and Tangut Emperor fled to 'xi-liang' (west of Gansu Province). A Khitan, by the name of Liuge, took over 'Jiangdong' (east of the river) of Koryo. Mongols dispatched Ha-zhen and Zhao-la against Liu-ge, and Koryo king requested for vassalage. In June of AD 1219, Xi-yu (western territories) of Chinese Turkistan killed Mongol emissaries, and Genghis Khan personally campaigned against 'Xi-yu' and captured chieftan Ha-zhi-er-zhi-lan-tu. (In AD 1218, the governor of Oyrat, an eastern province of

Khwarizm, robbed and killed several Mongol merchants.)

Since Western Xia had refused to provide troops in the war against the Khwarizm, and more over, signed another alliance treaty with Jurchen Jin, Genghis Khan led a force of 180,000 troops for a new campaign against the Tanguts in AD 1225. One year earlier, in AD 1224, Mongol omnipotent magistrate for Northern China, i.e., Bei-lu, already attacked Tanguts' Yinzhou city where tens of thousands of Tanguts died and defender Ta-hai was caught alive. Genghis Khan, en route of return, first attacked Tanguts' Shazhou and laid the siege for half a year. At Shazhou, Tanguts burnt dead the Mongols digging through a tunnel, and Mongols withdrew the siege for a retreat to Mongolia after Tangut Emperor De-wang agreed to send in hostage. In AD 1225, Jochi died in the camp north of the Caspian Sea.

In the spring of 1226, Genghis Khan, after zoning the fiefdoms for his four sons, attacked Tanguts on the pretext that no hostage was sent in yet. Two columns of armies were arranged, with one prong attacking Shazhou from the west, and another prong striking southward against Xixia. In Feb, Genghis Khan took over Heisui city [Khara Khoto], reached Mt Helanshan, caught Tangut General A-sha-gan-bu, and waited for a conversion with "western route". (A-sha-gan-bu had insulted Genghis Khan's emissary on the matter of attacking Jurchens together with Mongols.) Mongol "western route" first attacked Shazhou by utilizing a defector Tangut general Li Qianbu. Li Qianbu and Mongol General Hudu-timur barely escaped a banquet set up by Shazhou defenders who faked a surrender. With pleading from Li Qianbu, Genghis Khan spared the city after sacking it. Mongol "western route" then attacked Suzhou with a Tangut called Cha-han who grew up among Mongols since childhood. Suzhou defenders killed the general who was the brother of Li Qianbu. Mongols slaughtered the city, only sparing 106 households who were relatives of Li Qianbu. After Suzhou would be Ganzhou whose defender was the father of Cha-han. Tangut deputy defender killed the whole family of Cha-han's father. Mongols failed to sack Ganzhou after six attacks. At this time, Genghis Khan led his forces to Ganzhou, and combined for an attack at Ganzhou. Ganzhou was spared slaughter with the pleading from Cha-han. In autumn, Mongols took over Xiliang-fu when defender surrendered. Hence, the whole "Western Corridor" fell to Mongols.

In Sept, Li Quan captured Zhang Bin. Genghis Khan then trepassed the Tengri Desert for the region called "Yellow River Nine Winding". Mongols took over

Yingli, and then dispatched a contingent against Xiazhou. Mongols, with two columns, swept through the Tangut territory on the east bank of the Western Bend. By Nov, two columns pinched Tangut Xiping-fu city. A Xixia general, by the name of Weimingling-gong, led 100000 relief army from Zhongxing-fu, and challenged the Mongols for a battle near Helanshan Mountain. (Helan means great horse in northern dialect.) Mongols crossed the frozen Yellow River and fought Tanguts on the two banks. Xixia armies were defeated at Helanshan. Weimingling-gong retreated into Lingzhou city with remnants and converged with deposed Tangut Prince De-ren. In Nov, Genghis Khan lay siege of Tanguts' Ling-zhou. Mongols then sacked Lingzhou, and De-ren was killed.

Mongol armies then took over various cities including Lingzhou Prefecture, Shizhou Prefecture, and then Lintao governor office including Taohe and Xining prefectures. Five stars, in a row, were noted in the skies. In Dec, Li Quan surrendered. Zhang Rou was conferred marshal and 'qian hu'. Ogodai lay siege of Jurchen 'nan-jing', i.e., southern capital, and dispatched Tang Qing for extracting tributes from the Jurchens.

After the Battle of Lingzhou, Mongols pushed at Zhongxing-fu the capital from Yanzhou. In AD 1227, Genghis Khan attacked Tanguts' capital, and in Feb, took over Lintiao-fu. In Mar, took over Xining prefecture and Xindu-fu. In April, took over Deshun prefecture and killed 'jie-du-shi' Ai Shen and 'jin shi' Ma Jianlong. At Deshun, Xixia General Ma Jianlong resisted the Mongols for days and personally led charges against the Mongols outside of the city gate. Ma Jianlong later died of arrow shots. Genghis Khan, after taking over Deshun, went to Liupanshan Mountain for shelter from the severe summer.

In May, Mongols dispatched Tang Qing to Jurchens again. In Jun, Jurchens sent Wanyan Hezhou for peace. Genghis Khan stated that he had said one year ago, when five stars converged onto one line, that Mongols should not kill people at random, and Genghis Khan made it an decree not to kill at random.

At Tangut capital of Zhongxing-fu [Yinchuan of today's Ningxia], rightside prime minister Gao Lianghai defended the citywall for half a year, day in and day out, and died of illness. An earthquake struck the capital. Epidemic erupted and more than half of the citizens and soldiers caught illness. The new Xixia emperor, i.e., Xia Modi [Zhao Ri], being attacked by the Mongols, surrendered to the Mongols by requesting for one month grace period. Genghis Khan, deeply ill

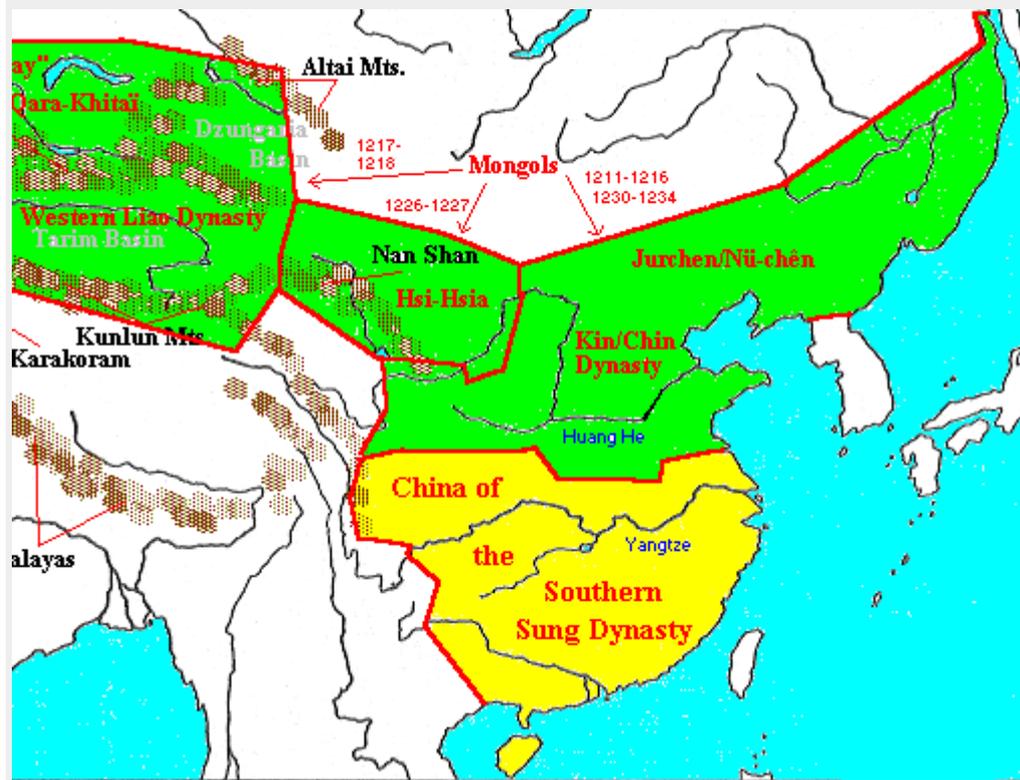
himself, nominally agreed to the surrender request but secretly ordered the slaughter of the city before his death. On Aug 25th [?], Genghis Khan died but possibly instructed that his death not be divulged before the Tanguts were to surrender. In August, Xia Modei left the capital for the Mongol camp where Tulei killed him on the spot. The Mongols killed the Tangut emperor and his royal family members. Pillaging erupted throughout the capital. At the pleading of Cha-han, Mongol stopped killing, with possibly one or two out of ten inhabitants left. The Tanguts officially surrendered in AD 1227, after being in existence for 190 years, from AD 1038 to AD 1227. (Five stars in a row were interpreted as some omen as to rise and fall of an emperor or dynasty. *History of Yuan Dynasty* mentioned that Genghis Khan, before his death, had ordered that Mongols should not kill people at random. This certainly is a glorification since the Tangut massacre contradicted what Genghis Khan had decreed.)

Meanwhile, Genghis Khan sent Ogedei eastward against Jurchens. They crossed the great bend of the Yellow River and began to attack the Jurchen Jin forces. In July, Genghis Khan died at age 66 somewhere near today's Liupanshan Mountain, Gansu Province, rumored to have been poisoned by his Tangut wife. He was buried in Qinian Valley [?] and was titled Taizu posthumously. (Alternative account stated that the corpse was shipped to the origin of Kerulen River, and along the road, Mongol soldiers killed numerous people for preserving the secrecy of the burial site.) Genghis Khan was also titled Emepror Shengwu, having a reign of 22 years and having conquered 40 countries. Tolui was made regent. Genghis Khan, at death-bed, outlined to his youngest son, Tului, the plan for attacking the Jurchens, i.e., circumventing southward near the Song-Jurchen border areas of Sichuan Province. Genghis Khan said the Song Chinese would for sure acquiesce because the Jurchens were the feuds of Song Chinese.

Tangut remnants, per Seng Ren's *Western Xia Kingdom & Oriental Pyramid* (Sichuan People's Publishing House, edition Jan 2002), fled to Muya area of today's Ganzi Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture in Sichuan Prov) and established a regime called Xi-wu-jia-er-bu. They later assisted Ming Emperor Zhu Yuanzhang in campaigning against Ming Yuezhen rivalry and received the conferral as Ming Dynasty's *xuan-wei-shi si* (i.e., minority 'tu si' or satrap). Tanguts continued their minority 'tu si' heritage till Manchu Qing Emperor Kangxi's 39th Year, i.e., AD 1700. In 1994, Tangut's family lineage book was surrendered to the Chinese government by Li Peiye, i.e., 23rd generation grandson of Tangut Emperor Di-

jian (?). Li Peiye claimed that Tangut descendants still live in Huang-shui River area of Qinghai Prov.

Map linked from <http://www.friesian.com>

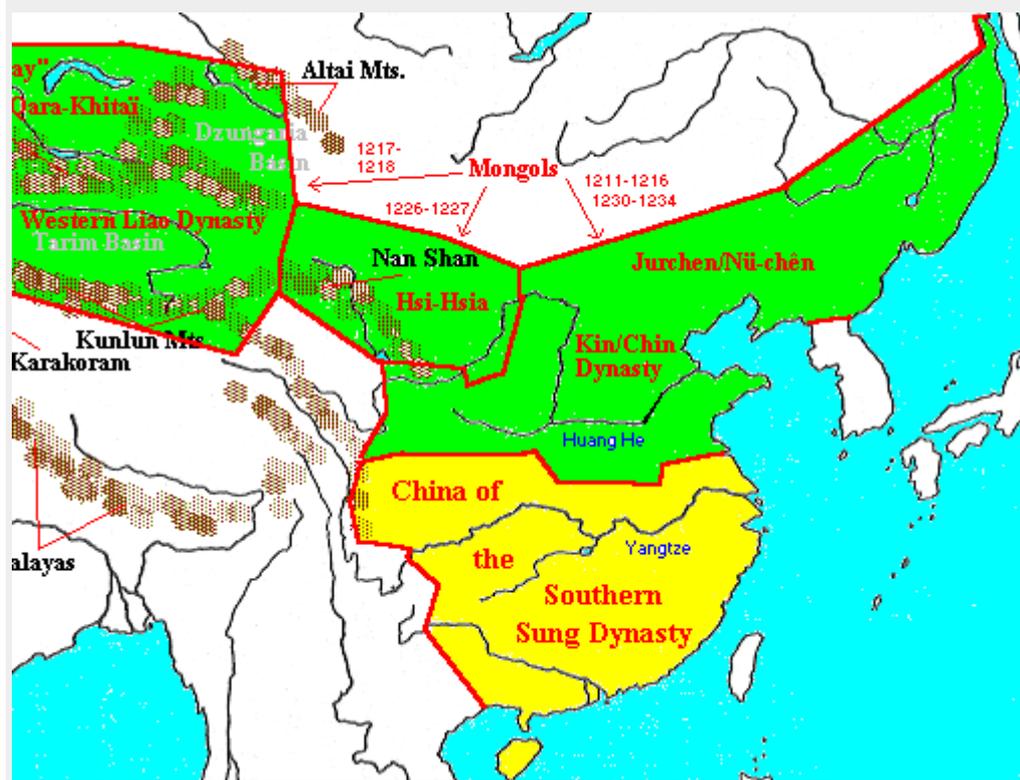


JURCHEN JIN DYNASTY

Matters related to Jurchens & Manchus would be covered in three sections: Jurchens & Manchurians section, this section on Jurchen Jin Dynasty, and Manchu Qing Dynasty section. In the Jurchens & Manchurians section, we had traced the history of both early Jurchens and later Manchus. The "Anterior Jurchens" would be those who defeated the Khitans' Liao Dynasty (AD 907-

1125), and set up the Jin or Gold Dynasty (AD 1115-1234) that lasted 119-120 years in northern China. We used the same ethnic designation of 'Jurchen' here because Nurhachu would proclaim the founding of 'Da Jin', namely, Grand Gold Dynasty, in AD 1616, using the same dynastic name as 'Anterior Jurchens'. Later Jurchens renamed themselves Manchu and renamed their dynasty to 'Qing'. I coded the section name by jurchen.htm in order to avoid possible confusion in relation to Jin(4)character of Jinn Principality of Warring States time period or Jinn Dynasty.

Map linked from <http://www.friesian.com/>



Song China's Games Of Triangular Warfare

For hundreds of years, the Song Dynasty, built on top of Northern Zhou (AD 951-960) of the Cai(1) family, would be engaged in the games of 'three kingdom' kind of warfares. Northern Song (AD 960-1127) would face off with the Western Xia (AD 1032-1227) and Khitan Liao in a triangle, and then played the card of

allying with the Jurchens in destroying the Khitan Liao. With Northern Song defeated by the Jurchens thereafter, Southern Song (AD 1127-1279) would be engaged in another triangle game, with the other players being Western Xia and the Jurchen Jin. Southern Song would then play the card of allying with the Mongols in destroying Jurchen Jin, and it even sent tens of thousands of carts of grain to the Mongol army in the besieging of the last Jurchen stronghold. Soon after that, the Southern Song generals broke the agreement with the Mongols and they shortly took over the so-called three old capitals of Kaifeng, Luoyang and Chang'an. But they could not hold on to any of the three because what they had occupied had been empty cities after years of warfare between the Jurchens and Mongols. Thereafter, wars with Mongols ensue, ending in the demise of Southern Song Dynasty when last emperor was taken to the sea waves by Lu Xiufu.

Mongols Attacks On Jurchens

The Jurchens, ancestors of the later Manchu, had in early days defeated the Kkitans (Kitans) in a seven-year war (AD 1115-1122) by means of an alliance with Northern Song (AD 960-1127). The son of defeated Kitan Liao ruler fled with the small remnant of his army to the Tarim Basin where he allied himself with the Huihe (Uygurs or Uighurs) and established the Karakitai statelet (Western Liao Dynasty, AD 1124-1234). They subdued neighboring Koryo (Korea) in AD 1126 and invaded Song China. They founded the Jin or Gold Dynasty (AD 1115-1234). When Jurchens moved into northern China, the Shiwei and Mongolia territories were nominally controlled by the Jurchens via three major Jurchen vassals: the Naimans, the Keraites and the Tatars.

The Jurchens had fights with the early 'Mengwu' people (led by Kabul-khan) in 1139 and in 1147, and they nailed Ambaki and Kabul-khan's elder son to wooden donkeys and hence were feuds of Genghis Khan's Mongols. The Tatars had assisted the early Jurchens in defeating the Mongol (Meng-ku) rebellions, handed over Mongol leader Ambakai (disputed to have adopted tribal name of Tayichi'ut) and his son to the Jurchens for execution in AD 1150s, and dealt the remaining Meng-ku tribes a decisive defeat near Lake Buir in AD 1160s. Historical records quoted the Jurchen Jin Dynasty's history (compiled by Mongol Yuan's prime minister) as saying that the 'Mengwu' people had a rebellion led by Kabul-khan. It was said that after the migration of the

Jurchens to north China, the Borjigin people (who derived from Menwu Shiwei) had emerged in central Mongolia as the leading clan of a loose federation. Kabul Khan raided into Jurchen Jin in AD 1135 by taking advantage of Jurchen's southern campaign against Song Chinese. Jurchen emperor, hearing of Mongol disturbance, called on Kabul Khan to the Jurchen capital. Kabul Khan, being drunken, did not show respect for the Jurchen emperor. When Jurchens dispatched emissaries to Kabul Khan twice for recalling him to the Jurchen capital, Kabul Khan killed the Jurchen emissaries. Then, Jurchens dispatched General Hu Shahu on a campaign against Kabul Khan. Jurchens were defeated by Kabul Khan. When Jin Emperor Xizong died, his grandson colluded with Jurchen Jin General Wuzu in killing an uncle called Dalai, and Dalai's descendants fled to Kabul-khan's Mengwu people for assistance in avenging on the new Jurchen emperor. This caused the Jurchens to abort their southern campaigns against the Chinese of Southern Song Dynasty. Unable to fight the Mengku, the Jurchens negotiated a peace treaty with the Mengwu and moreover conferred Kabul-khan the title of king of the Mengwu people. After the death of Kabul-khan, the 'Mengwu' people were commented to have disintegrated. Kabul-khan decreed that his brother, Ambaki, be the leader. The Mongols then had wars with the Tatar tribe. The Tatar tribe tricked Ambaki into an arrest via a proposition for an inter-marriage, and then sent both Ambaki and Kabul-khan's elder son to the Jurchens for execution.

Kabul-khan's 4th son, Kaidu, would avenge on the Jurchens. Kaidu passed on the reign to the 3rd son of his brother, i.e., Yesugei. (Yesugei, Genghis Khan's father and Emperor Shenyuan posthumously, would be fifth generation of Kabul Khan, according to *History of Yuan Dynasty*.) Yesugei would avenge on the Tatar tribe and killed a chieftan by the name of Timuchin, a same name assigned to his son. Yesugei, who was chief of the Kiyat subclan of the Borjigin, was later poisoned by neighboring Tartars in AD 1175, when Genghis Khan (Timuchin or Temujin) was only twelve years old. Genghis Khan is like either 3 or 4 generations apart from Kabul-khan. The Kiyat people rejected Timuchin as their leader and chose one of Timuchin's kin, instead. Temujin and his immediate family were deserted even by Yesugei's brothers who went to Tayichi'ut clan. By the early 13th century, Genghis Khan would unite all Turko-Mongol tribes, including Kiyats, Tartars, Merkits, Keraites and Naimans.

In AD 1211, Jurchens conspired to attack the Mongols by building the castle of Wu-sa-bao, according to *History of Yuan Dynasty*. Genghis Khan ordered Chepe

on an attack. Genghis Khan used to pay tributes to the Jurchens. When Jurchen Emperor Weishaowang (i.e., King of Weishao, Wanyan Yongji) enthroned in AD 1209, Genghis Khan refused to take Jurchen imperial decree by spitting in front of Jurchen emissary.

In AD 1211, Genghis Khan held another *khuriltai* (assembly) at the River Kerulen. Arslan-khan of the Karluks came to surrender to the Mongols, and Weiwu-er (Uygur) chieftan came to show respect, too. In Feb 1211, Genghis Khan defeated Jurchen General Ding Xue at Yehuling Ridge (wild fox ridge), and in July, Chepe took over the castle of Wu-sa-bao. In August, Mongols defeated Jurchens at Xuanping. Wanyan Yongji was the nephew of late Jurchen Emperor Xizong. (Between Xizong and Wanyan Yongji, there had elapsed three Jurchen emperors, Feidi, Shizong and Zhuangzong, and one usurper, Hailingwang.) Genghis Khan led three sons and Jebe on a campaign against northwestern territories of Jurchen Jin and defeated a Jurchen General Hu Shahu. Jurchen Emperor Wanyan Yongji then sent Wanyan Jiujian and 400,000 strong relief to counter the Mongols. One Jurchen general, by the name of Ming'an, proposed that Jurchen army should take defensive action, but he was rebutted. When Ming'an was asked to reprimand the Mongols as an emissary, Ming'an surrendered to Genghis Khan and disclosed the military information. On the ensuing night, Genghis Khan raided the Jurchen camp and defeated them.

Siege of Zhongdu (Beijing)

In Sept, Dexing governor office was taken, and Juyongguan Pass was deserted. Jebe (Chepe or Zhebie), with aid from the Khitans and Chinese who served in Jurchen armies, took over Juyongguan Pass of the Great Wall (near Beijing). Chepe went on to lay siege of Peking (Zhongdu). In the winter times, Mongols attacked Jurchen's ranch, and Yelu A'mei surrendered. Jochi, Chagatai and Ogodai took over numerous prefectures of northern China.

Mongols, after attacking Peking for 24 hours, failed to enter the city. Genghis Khan retreated back to Juyongguan Pass. In AD 1211, Genghis rested at the northern Jurchen territories.

In AD 1212, a Khitan who served as a Jurchen general, Yelu Liuge, took over east Liaoning Province and sent an emissary to Genghis Khan, expressing wish to be a vassal. Genghis Khan took over more Jurchen cities in southern Manchuria. Genghis Khan defeated a Jurchen relief army of 300,000 led by

Heshilieqiujin. In autumn of AD 1212, Genghis Khan laid a siege of Jurchen's Xijing (west capital) and destroyed Jurchen relief army at Migukou. While attacking Jurchen's Xijing (west capital) city, Genghis Khan was wounded by an erratic arrow. Hence, Genghis Khan retreated. But in Sept and Dec, Mongols continued their attacks in Manchuria.

In AD 1213, Yelu Liuge declared himself King of Liao and the Era of Yuantong. In July, Mongols took over Xuande governor office, and Tolui took over Dexing governor office. At Huailai, near Peking, Genghis Khan defeated Jurchen governor ('xing sheng') Wanyan Gang and marshal Gao Qi. Jurchens retreated to Juyongguan Pass. Genghis Khan then attacked Zhuolu of Hebei Prov, and Jurchen General Hu Shahu deserted so-called Xijing (west capital). Genghis Khan, marching out of Zijingguan Pass, would take over Zhuozhou Prefecture. When a Khitan general surrendered the Beikou city, Chepe would capture Juyongguan Pass thereafter.

In August of this year, Jurchen Emperor (Wanyan Yongji) was usurped and killed by Jurchen General Hu Shahu. Wanyan Xun (King of Feng) was selected as Emperor Xuanzong. Genghis Khan led three columns against Jurchens again, with Jochi, Chagatai and Ogodai attacking Shanxi Prov along the Taihang Mountains in the west, and a brother (Ha-sa-er) attacking Liaoning Prov in the east. Genghis Khan and Tolui attacked Hebei Prov in the middle. Genghis Khan ordered Muhuali to attack Mizhou Prefecture whose people were slaughtered. Many Khitans and Chinese joined the Mongolians to avenge on the Jurchens. This will include famous generals like Chinese brothers: Shi Tianni, Shi Tianxiang, Shi Tian'an and Shi Tianze etc. The Shi brothers were employed by Muhuali. Shi Tianni was conferred the title of 'wan hu' (10000 households).

In March of AD 1214, Genghis Khan stationed his armies north of Peking. An emissary was sent to Jurchen emperor for a ceasefire, and Jurchen emperor surrendered Wanyan Yongji's daughter (Princess Qiguo), 500 boys and girls, and 3000 horses to Genghis Khan. Jurchen emperor ordered that his prime minister Wanyan Fuxing accompany Genghis Khan out of Juyong Pass. In May, Jurchen emperor, however, made a strategic mistake by relocating his capital to Bianliang (today's Kaifeng), which essentially enraged Genghis Khan as well as cut themselves from the Jurchen base in Manchuria. Wanyan Fuxing was ordered to assist Prince Wanyan Shouzhong at Beijing.

Fall of Zhongdu (Beijing)

In AD 1213, Genghis Khan resumed warfare against the Jurchens. Using Jurchen's relocation as an excuse, Genghis Khan sent Muhuali against Jurchens. Muhuali attacked Jurchen's northern capital in west Liaoning Province at the advice of Shi Tianni. Shi Tianxiang was responsible for defeating 200,000 Jurchen army at the northern capital of 'Bei-jing'. When Mongols returned to attack Beijing, Prince Wanyan Shouzhong fled to Bianliang in July. In Oct, Muhuali attacked Liaodong (east Liaoning Prov). A Jurchen general (Zhang Jing) at Jinzhou killed Jurchen 'jie-du-shi' (satrap or governor), declared himself King of Linghai, and then surrendered to the Mongols.

Siege of Zhongdu (Beijing) began in AD 1214. Siege weaponry like mangonels and battering-rams would be utilized. Meantime, the Mongol armies devastated northern China, sacking numerous cities in Hebei/Shandong provinces, reducing them into ruins. In AD 1215, Jurchen general at Tongzhou surrendered to the Mongols. When Muhuali attacked Bei-jing (north capital) in Feb, Jurchen generals Yin-da-hu and Wu-gu-lun surrendered. Jurchen marshal at 'xingzhong-fu' governor office also surrendered. In March, Jurchen relief army for Zhongdu (Beijing) was defeated at Ba-zhou Prefecture. In April, Qing-zhou and Shun-zhou were taken. Zhang Jing rebelled when being called upon, and rebellion was quelled. Zhang Jing's brother claimed to be Emperor Hanxing (reviving Han) at Jinzhou and declared the Xinglong Era.

In May, Wanyan Fuxing took poison to commit suicide, and Beijing fell to the Mongols. By May of AD 1215, Beijing (known as Yanjing) fell, and history recorded the horrors of massacre and suicides. During the siege, the Mongol army, short of grain supply during the siege, would line their soldiers up, select soldiers via one out of every hundred or so, and kill them for food. As to the residents inside of Beijing, hunger led to cannibalism, too, and at the time when Beijing fell, innumerable number of women and girls jumped down from the city wall to commit suicide. Some western traveller recorded that the human oil from burning those dead bodies had been so thick that it did not disappear for a long time. After taking over Peking, Genghis Khan acquired his later prime minister, Yelu Chucai (Yeh-lu Chu'tsai). Ming'an was ordered to guard Beijing. Genghis Khan took a summer break to avoid the heat wave. In July, a bandit leader on Hongluoshan Mountain, Du Xiu, was pacified and conferred the post of 'jie-du-shi' for Jinzhou.

Jurchen Refusal To Be King of 'He-nan'

Genghis Khan wrote to Jurchen emperor, asking him to order all cities in Hebei and 'shan-dong' (east of Huashan Mountain or Taihang Mountain?) to surrender to the Mongols as well as downgrade the Jurchen title to King of He-nan (south of the Yellow River). Jin Emperor Xuanzong declined this request, and Genghis Khan ordered Shi Tianni on a southern campaign. In August, Shi Tianni took over Pingzhou. Shi Jindao under Muhuali would take over Guangning-fu governor office. Altogether 862 Jurchen cities were taken.

Jurchen 'xuanfu' Hupu Wannu took over Liaodong (east Liaoning Prov) and declared himself King of Tian (heaven), dynastic name of 'Da Zhen' and Tiantai Era. Yelu Liuge came to pay respect in Nov and left his son as a hostage. Shi Tianxiang captured Jurchen 'jie-du-shi' at Xingzhou (Zhao Shouyue). In AD 1216, Genghis Khan returned north, and Zhang Jing's brother (Zhang Zhi) took over Xingzhong-fu. Muhuali quelled Zhang Zhi.

In autumn of AD 1216, Mongols came to Shenxi after their campaigns against Tanguts in the west. Mongols then attacked Tongguan Pass in the west. Mongols were defeated by Jurchen army called 'Hua-Mao-jun Garrison' (flowery cap army). Mongols retreated after reaching Bian-jing (Kaifeng). In Oct, Hupu Wannu surrendered and sent his son to the Mongols as a hostage; Hupu Wannu rebelled thereafter and declared the dynastic name of Dong-xia (Eastern Xia Dynasty). In AD 1217, a monk took over Wuping, and Shi Tianxiang quelled it. Mongol General Cha-han defeated Jurchens at Ba-zhou, and Jurchens requested for peace.

Conferral of Kingship Onto Muhuali

Genghis Khan conferred Muhuali kingship of the Peking territory and the title of 'tai shi' in August. Muhuali went on to take over various cities on Shandong Peninsula. Tu-man tribe rebelled in Mongolia and was quelled. In AD 1218, Mongols departed from Zijinguan Pass and captured Jurchen 'yuanshuai xingshi' Zhang Rou. Muhuali departed 'xi-jing' for 'he-dong' (east of Yellow River) and captured Taiyuan, Dai, Feng, Lu, Huo-zhou and Pingyang of Shanxi Province. Jurchen General Wu Xian attacked Man-zhou, and Zhang Rou defeated Wu Xian. Tanguts were attacked in this year, and Tangut Emperor fled to 'xi-liang' (west of Gansu Province). A Khitan, by the name of Liuge, took over 'Jiangdong' (east of the river) of Koryo. Mongols dispatched Ha-zhen and Zhao-la against Liu-ge, and Koryo king requested for vassalage.

In AD 1219, Zhang Rou defeated Wu Xian again and took over Qiyang and Zhongshan. In June of AD 1219, Xi-yu (western territories) of Chinese Turkistan killed Mongol emissaries, and Genghis Khan personally campaigned against 'Xi-yu' and captured chieftan Ha-zhi-er-zhi-lan-tu. (In AD 1218, the governor of Oyrat, an eastern province of Khwarizm, robbed and killed several Mongol merchants.) In autumn, Muhuali captured Jie-zhou and slaughtered Jiang-zhou. In AD 1220, Genghis Khan took over Puhua, Xun-shi-gan and Wo-tuo-luo-er cities. Wu Xian who surrendered when Muhuali arrived at Zhending. Muhuali conferred Shi Tianni the post in charge of the western armies north of the Yellow River and assigned Wu Xian the deputy post. More Jurchen generals surrendered. Jurchen 'jie-du-shi' at Xing-zhou surrendered, too. In AD 1221, Genghis Khan attacked Puo-ha-er and Xie-mi-si-gan, i.e., Bukhara and Samarkand . Jochi attacked Yang-jie-gan and Ba-er-zhen. In April, when stationing in Tiemen'guan Pass, Jurchen emperor sent an emissary requesting for being a junior brother of the Mongols. Jurchen 'xingsheng' at Dongping deserted the city, and Yan Shi was ordered to guard it. Southern Song Chinese sent Gou Mengyue for peace with the Mongols. Song general Shi Gui in southern Shandong prov surrendered. In autumn, Genghis Khan attacked Ban-le-he, while Jochi-Chagatai-Ogodai attacked Yue-long-chi. In Oct, Tolui took over Ma-lu-ch-ye-ke, Ma-lu and Xi-la-si. Muhuali departed from 'He-xi' (west of the Yellow River) and attacked Suide, Bao'an and Yan'an of northern Shenxi Prov. In Nov, Song Chinese governor Zhang Lin surrendered.

In AD 1222, south of the Caspian Sea, Tuloi took over Tu-si and Ni-cha-wu-er and pillaged Mu-la-yi statelet (Munaixi, Hashasheen or Assassin or Arsacia?). Tolui and Genghis Khan converged on Talihan Castle and captured it. In northern China, Muhuali failed to take over Fengxiang. Jala ad-Din fled to combine forces with Mieli-khan and defeated Mongol general Hu-du-hu. Genghis Khan then defeated and captured Mieli-khan. Ba-la was ordered to pursue Jala ad-Din across the Indus River. In autumn, Jurchens dispatched Wusunzhongdun to the Mongol camp in Huihe territories for peace again. Genghis Khan ridiculed Jurchens for not taking his offer to have Jurchens be the King of 'He-nan'. When Wusunzhongdun requested for mercy, Genghis Khan stated that Jurchens surrender the cities in Guan-xi (west of Hanguguan pass). Jurchen Duke of Pingyang-gong surrendered Qinglong-bao castle. In Oct, Jurchen 'hezong-fu' governor office surrendered.

Jurchens would be defeated again later, but not until AD 1234. Many Jurchen generals surrendered to and then rebelled against the Mongols.

Muhali was busy attacking Jurchen Jin armies on both banks of Liao River, northeast of the Yellow River, Shanxi-Shenxi Provinces, and Shangdong Peninsula. In AD 1223, Muhali died of illness and was conferred King of Lu-guo Fief posthumously.

In Oct, Jurchen Emperor Xuanzong died, and his son, Wanyan Shouxu, got enthroned as Emperor Aizong. Song Chinese sent Gou Mengyue to Mongols again.

In AD 1224, Song General Peng Yibin at Daming invaded He-bei (north of Yellow River) and Shi Tianni defeated Peng. Genghis Khan returned from his campaigns in India. In Jan of AD 1235, Genghis Khan returned to Mongolia. In Feb of AD 1235, Wu Xian rebelled in Zhending and killed Shi Tianni. After the death of Muhali, ex-Jurchen general Wu Xian rebelled and killed Shi Tianni. Wu Xian cooperated with Song Dynasty's General Peng Yibin in fighting Shi Tianze. Shi Tianze requested aid from Muhali's son and killed Peng Yibin. Li Quan rebelled in Zhongshan. In March, Shi Tianze drove Wu Xian away. In June, Song General Peng Yibin answered Wu Xian's rebellion, but Shi Tianze captured and killed Peng.

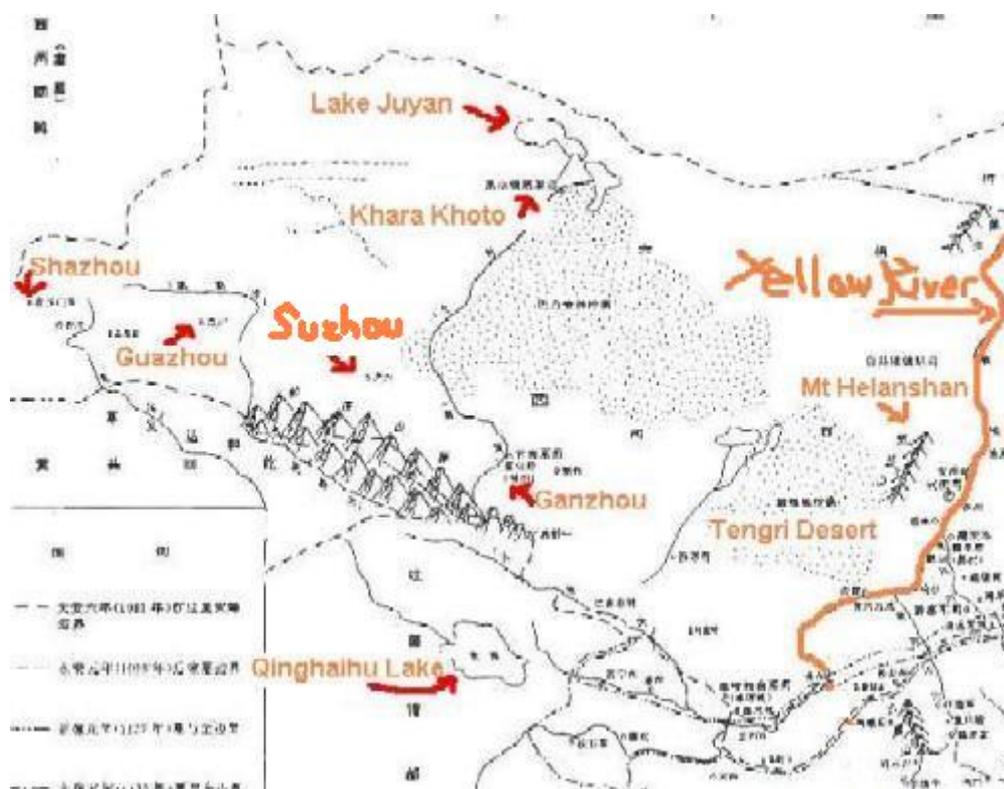
Attack On Tanguts

From AD 1205 onward, Mongols attacked Tanguts six times. Genghis Khan first accused Xixia of giving asylum to Toghrul's people, i.e., King Toghrul Wanghan's son Yi-la-he-sang-kun. In 1209, 1217, and 1226-1227, Mongols reached Mt Helanshan three times and laid siege of Xingqing-fu city.

Since Western Xia had refused to provide troops in the war against the Khwarizm, and more over, signed another alliance treaty with Jurchen Jin, Genghis Khan led a force of 180,000 troops for a new campaign against the Tanguts in AD 1225. One year earlier, in AD 1224, Mongol omnipotent magistrate for Northern China, i.e., Bei-lu, already attacked Tanguts' Yinzhou city where tens of thousands of Tanguts died and defender Ta-hai was caught alive. Genghis Khan, en route of return, first attacked Tanguts' Shazhou and laid the siege for half a year. At Shazhou, Tanguts burnt dead the Mongols digging through a tunnel, and Mongols withdraw the siege for a retreat to

Mongolia after Tangut Emperor De-wang agreed to send in hostage. In AD 1225, Jochi died in the camp north of the Caspian Sea.

In the spring of 1226, Genghis Khan, after zoning the fiefdoms for his four sons, attacked Tanguts on the pretext that no hostage was sent in yet. Two columns of armies were arranged, with one prong attacking Shazhou from the west, and another prong striking southward against Xixia.



In Feb, Genghis Khan took over Heisui city [Khara Khoto], reached Mt Helanshan, caught Tangut General A-sha-gan-bu, and waited for a conversion with "western route". (A-sha-gan-bu had insulted Genghis Khan's emissary on the matter of attacking Jurchens together with Mongols.) Mongol "western route" first attacked Shazhou by utilizing a defector Tangut general Li Qianbu. Li Qianbu and Mongol General Hudu-timur barely escaped a banquet set up by Shazhou defenders who faked a surrender. With pleading from Li Qianbu, Genghis Khan spared the city after sacking it. Mongol "western route" then attacked Suzhou with a Tangut called Cha-han who grew up among Mongols

since childhood. Suzhou defenders killed the general who was the brother of Li Qianbu. Mongols slaughtered the city, only sparing 106 households who were relatives of Li Qianbu. After Suzhou would be Ganzhou whose defender was the father of Cha-han. Tangut deputy defender killed the whole family of Cha-han's father. Mongols failed to sack Ganzhou after six attacks. At this time, Genghis Khan led his forces to Ganzhou, and combined for an attack at Ganzhou. Ganzhou was spared slaughter with the pleading from Cha-han. In autumn, Mongols took over Xiliang-fu when defender surrendered. Hence, the whole "Western Corridor" fell to Mongols.

In Sept, Li Quan captured Zhang Bin. Genghis Khan then trepassed the Tengri Desert for the region called "Yellow River Nine Winding". Mongols took over Yingli, and then dispatched a contingent against Xiashou. Mongols, with two columns, swept through the Tangut territory on the east bank of the Western Bend. By Nov, two columns pinched Tangut Xiping-fu city. A Xixia general, by the name of Weimingling-gong, led 100000 relief army from Zhongxing-fu, and challenged the Mongols for a battle near Helanshan Mountain. (Helan means great horse in northern dialect.) Mongols crossed the frozen Yellow River and fought Tanguts on the two banks. Xixia armies were defeated at Helanshan. Weimingling-gong retreated into Lingzhou city with remnants and converged with deposed Tangut Prince De-ren. In Nov, Genghis Khan lay siege of Tanguts' Ling-zhou. Mongols then sacked Lingzhou, and De-ren was killed.

Mongol armies then took over various cities including Lingzhou Prefecture, Shizhou Prefecture, and then Lintao governor office including Taohe and Xining prefectures. Five stars, in a row, were noted in the skies. In Dec, Li Quan surrendered. Zhang Rou was conferred marshal and 'qian hu'. Ogodai lay siege of Jurchen 'nan-jing', i.e., southern capital, and dispatched Tang Qing for extracting tributes from the Jurchens.

After the Battle of Lingzhou, Mongols pushed at Zhongxing-fu the capital from Yanzhou. In AD 1227, Genghis Khan attacked Tanguts' capital, and in Feb, took over Lintiao-fu. In Mar, took over Xining prefecture and Xindu-fu. In April, took over Deshun prefecture and killed 'jie-du-shi' Ai Shen and 'jin shi' Ma Jianlong.

At Deshun, Xixia General Ma Jianlong resisted the Mongols for days and personally led charges against the Mongols outside of the city gate. Ma Jianlong later died of arrow shots. Genghis Khan, after taking over Deshun, went to Liupanshan Mountain for shelter from the severe summer.

In May, Mongols dispatched Tang Qing to Jurchens again. In Jun, Jurchens sent Wanyan Hezhou for peace. Genghis Khan stated that he had said one year ago, when five stars converged onto one line, that Mongols should not kill people at random, and Genghis Khan made it an decree not to kill at random.

At Tangut capital of Zhongxing-fu, rightside prime minister Gao Lianghui defended the citywall for half a year, day in and day out, and died of illness. An earthquake struck the capital. Epidemic erupted and more than half of the citizens and soldiers caught illness. The new Xixia emperor, i.e., Xia Modi, being attacked by the Mongols, surrendered to the Mongols by requesting for one month grace period. Genghis Khan, deeply ill himself, nominally agreed to the surrender request but secretly ordered the slaughter of the city before his death. In August, Xia Modei left the capital for the Mongol camp where Tu-lei killed him on the spot. The Mongols killed the Tangut emperor and his royal family members. Pillaging erupted throughout the capital. At the pleading of Cha-han, Mongol stopped killing, with possily one or two out of ten inhabitants left. The Tanguts officially surrendered in AD 1227, after being in existence for 190 years, from AD 1038 to AD 1227.

Death of Genghis Khan

Genghis Khan died in AD 1227 during his campaigns against the Tanguts. Since Western Xia had refused to provide troops in the war against the Khwarizm, and more over, signed another alliance treaty with Jurchen Jin, Genghis Khan led a force of 180,000 troops for a new campaign against the Tanguts. The Tanguts officially surrendered in AD 1227, after being in existence for 190 years, from AD 1038 to AD 1227. Meanwhile, Genghis Khan sent Ogedei eastward to attack Jurchens. They crossed the great bend of the Yellow River and began to attack the Jurchen Jin forces. In July of this year, Genghis Khan died at age 66 somewhere near today's Liupanshan Mountain, Gansu Province, rumored to have been poisoned by his Tangut wife. He was buried in Qinian Valley and was titled Taizu posthumously. Genghis Khan was also titled Emepror Shengwu, having a reign of 22 years and having conquered 40 countries. Tolui was made regent.

Genghis Khan, at death-bed, outlined to his youngest son, Tului, the plan for attacking the Jurchens, i.e., circumventing southward near the Song-Jurchen border areas of Sichuan Province. Genghis Khan said the Song Chinese would for sure acquiesce because the Jurchens were the feuds of Song Chinese.

Ogedei's Campaigns

After the death of Genghis Khan, for the period of 1227/1229, Tolui acted as a regent. In AD 1228, a khuriltai was held on Kerulen River and Secret History was compiled. Kuriltai at Karakorum in 1228 selected Ogedei as khan. At the kuriltai, plans were made for campaigns against the Bulgars, Turks in the region of Kazan on the middle Volga River, and conquest of the Jurchens. By AD 1229, Batu Khan, son of Jochi and grandson of Genghis Khan, defeated most of the Bulghar posts. In AD 1229, Ogedei got enthroned according to Genghis Khan's wish. Yelu Chucai would persuade Ogedei into erecting rituals for officialdom and hiring civil officials for governance. Ogedei further devised tax laws and persuaded the Mongols into less killing for sake of more tax revenue collection from people conquered.

Ogedei declined Jurchen Jin's tributes for condoling Genghis Khan's death and declined again Jurchen Jin's tributes for congratulating Ogedei on the enthronement. In the spring of AD 1230, Ogedei (i.e., Yuan Emperor Taizong posthumously) ordered a campaign against Jurchen Jin. The Mongols crossed the Yellow River into Shanxi Province, took over more than 60 towns and castles, and attacked the city of Fengxiang (which Muhuali failed to take earlier). Jurchen Jin General Wanyan Hada, fearing the Mongol army, did not go to the relief of Fengxiang which fell after a siege of 2-3 months. Wanyan Dada hid himself in Tongguan Pass. Touli then went on to attack Tongguan Pass but failed to conquer it. In AD 1231, Ogedei sent an expedition to defeat remaining Khitans who invaded Korea.

Circumventing Through Han-zhong Area

A Jurchen defector general called Li Guochang proposed that Mongols march southeastward by circumventing the city of Baoji, Gansu Province, and flowed down the Han-sui River. The Mongols, passing Hanzhong, the border areas with both Song and Jurchen Jin in eastern Sichuan Province, would defeat the Jurchens in the Hanzhong areas. Then, Mongols defeated Jurchens in Tangdeng areas (today's Yuxian County, Henan Province).

When Mongol emissary arrived at Feizhou to borrow a path from Song governor Zhang Xuan, Zhang Xuan killed the emissary. Ogedei then ordered Touli to march out of Baoji to take over Da'sanguan Pass. Touli took over Fengzhou Prefecture and slaughtered Yang Prefecture. Touli further sent a column into

Sichuan Province by paving a road out of Guibieshan Mountain and crossing the Jialingjiang River. To avoid further confrontation with Song Chinese, the Mongols withdrew from Song territories and went to Han-sui River to attack the Jurchens. Wanyan Hada was recalled from Tongguan to defend the Henan Province, and Wu Xian came to reinforcement, too. A Jurchen general by the name of Fengdula advised against attacking Mongols when they crossed Han-sui River halfway. Mongols under Touli, though numbering 30,000, managed to trick the Jurchen armies into thinking that they had retreated.

Siege of Bianliang

The first Mongol column, under Ogedei, crossed the Yellow River at Baipo Town, Heqing County, and attacked the city of Zhengzhou. Subetei was ordered to attack Biancheng, i.e., today's Kaifeng and Jurchen's capital. Jurchens had about 40,000 men around the capital, but the city wall was 20 Chinese li in perimeter. Wanyan Hada and Fengdula were ordered to return north to guard the capital. Touli chased them with 3000 cavalry while Subetei also sent armies to attack the Jurchen relief column. At Sanfengshan Mountain, the two Mongol columns encircled the Jurchens and defeated them by intentionally tricking them into fleeing via a trap. Jurchens fled to Junzhou Prefecture. Ogedei sent over a third column and took over the city. Wanyan Hada was killed inside Junzhou, and another Jurchen general by the name of Shanhuashan came to the Mongols to die in front of Touli instead of dying among the soldiers. Fengdula was captured on the road and was killed for refusing to surrender. The Jurchen main general at Tongguan, Wanyan Chongxi fled the city after hearing of Wanyan Hada destruction, and his deputy general surrendered to the Mongols. Mongols went on to capture and kill Wanyan Chongxi and his families. Mongols then attacked Luoyang. Jurchen general at Luoyang committed suicide, but the soldiers and residents managed to defeat the Mongol after a siege of three months by the Mongols. At the capital of Kaifeng, Jurchen Emperor Shouxu sent an emissary to Subetei for peace but was refused by the Mongols. Mongols deployed hundreds of catapults ('stone cannons'). However, Kaifeng was fortified enough to withstand the canon balls. The city was built by Posterior Zhou Emperor Shizong during five dynasties time period. Jurchens sent a thousand men suicide mission to attack the Mongol cannon unit. After 16 days of siege, Subetei, under order of Ogedei, agreed to peace by having Jurchen prince sent to Mongols as a hostage. Subetei then withdrew from Kaifeng siege and deployed armies in between Yellow River and Luo-he River. However, about 30 Mongol emissaries for peace were killed by Jurchen's Feihu-jun (flying tiger)

Column. Mongols renewed attacks at Kaifeng. Wu Xian assembled about 100,000 soldiers and came to the relief. At this time, Ogedei got ill. According to Secret History, Touli preyed to die on behalf of Ogedei and in AD 1233, Touli died.

Subetei now took charge. Before Subetei arrived in Kaifeng, Jurchen Emperor fled the city. There were less than 30,000 units of grain left, and an epidemic had already taken away 100,000 lives. Being chased all the way, Jurchen emperor first retreated to Gui'de in the north, and then retreated southward to Caizhou Prefecture, Henan Province.

At Kaifeng (bianliang), a Jurchen marshal by the name of Cui Li killed two generals sent by Jurchen emperor for fetching the empress and imperial family. After raping the Jurchen empress and the royal family, Cui Li surrendered Jurchen royal family to Subetei. Subetei killed the Jurchen princes and took in the women. Yelu Chucai managed to stop Ogedei from slaughtering Kaifeng which still possessed about 400,000 people. Wanyan family did not get exemption. From beginning to end, Kaifeng had undergone continuous Mongol attacks for about one year.

Cooperation With Song Chinese In Destroying Jurchens

At this time, Mongols took over Luoyang. Ogedei sent an emissary to Song Emperor Lizong, promising the land south of Yellow River in exchange for the Song Chinese cooperation in attacking Jurchens together. Then, Ogedei ordered Tacha'erbuzhan (who took over Luoyang earlier) to attack the city of Xiangyang for sake of siege of the Jurchens at Caizhou. Jurchens, not knowing the Mongol-Chinese alliance, sent an emissary to Song for borrowing grains. Song declined the request. Further, Song sent a general with 20,000 army and 300,000 units of grains to the Mongol camp and joined the siege of Caizhou. The Mongols declined the Jurchen's request for surrender. In AD 1234, under the attacks of Mongols in the north and the Chinese in the south, last Jurchen emperor committed suicide after defending the city for two months, and Jurchen Jin Dynasty ended after 120 years in history, from AD 1115 to AD 1234. Mongols and Chinese divided the bones of last Jurchen emperor (Jin Aizong) into two halves. They reached an agreement to have the northwest of Cai Prefecture as the dividing line. But half a year later, Song Chinese went to take over Kaifeng etc, provoking Mongols into a war. An ex-Jurchen general killed Cui Li and surrendered to Song at Kaifeng. When Song armies, with five days of grain supply, went on to take over Luoyang, the city had only three hundred

households left. Under Mongol counter-attack, Song evacuated from Luoyang. When Mongols flooded Kaifeng with water from Yellow River, Song armies fled south.

YUAN DYNASTY

Khubilai Khan and Yuan Dynasty (AD 1261-1368)

In August 1259, Mengke Khan died on Mount Diaoyushan of Hezhou Prefecture (Sichuan Province) after failing to take over a Song castle. Mongols hence called off the campaign. Later in 1279, Mongols avenged the shame of Mengke Khan's possible bombardment death by killing 1.4 million residents of Chengdu city.

Before returning to Helin, Arik-Buka (Ariq-boeke), a junior brother of Khubilai, held an assembly in Helin and declared himself 'khan'. Khubilai stopped at Jinlianchuan (Kaiping, i.e., Duolun, Cha'haer, Inner Mongolia) and Khubilai declared himself Khan without an assembly. Yao Shu and Lian Xixian were ordered to make an announcement of Khubilai enthronement in the Chinese language. A Chinese era was declared, and the year would be First Year of Zhongtong Era, AD 1259. Liu Bingzhong and Xu Heng revised on Genghis Khan's governmental structure of 'Duanshi-guan' (criminal prosecutor), 'Wan-hu' (10,000 head military chief), and Jurchen-style titles of 'yuan-shuai' (marshal) and 'xuan-hu' (pacifier) for provinces. New structure will be i) '*zhongshu sheng*' (state affairs), ii) '*shumi yuan*' (military affairs), and iii) '*yushi tai*' (promotion and demotion of officials). Lower levels will include shi, jian, yuan, si, wei, and fu. Provincial affairs would be handled by 'xing-sheng', 'xing-tai', 'xuan-hu', 'lian-fang' and 'muming zhangguan', and levels included 'Lu' (comprising of several provinces), 'Fu' (province or prefecture), 'Zhou' (smaller prefectures) and 'Xian' (county). But discrimination against Chinese was rampant. Mongols would assume the primary posts while the Han Chinese the deputy posts. Tax administration were mostly laid in the hands of Muslims - allies of the Mongols. A caste society was established, and four levels were differentiated: 1) Mongols, 2) Se Mu Ren or Semuren (color-eyed people), 3) Han-Ren (i.e., northern Chinese, Khitans etc), and 4) Nan-zi (southern Chinese-barbarians).

Arik-Buka (Ariq-boeke), a junior brother of Khubilai, held an assembly in Helin and declared himself 'khan'. Lian Xixian, on his own initiative, frustrated the attempts of Arik-Buka emissaries (Liu Taiping and Huo Luhuai) at Peking and defeated a general who answered Arik-Buka's order. Khubilai then attacked Arik-Buka and drove him off in AD 1261. At the advice of Liu Bingzhong, Khubilai Khan moved his capital to Peking in AD 1260, i.e., winter capital Dadu ("great capital") or Khanbalik in Marco Polo's Cambaluc. This is in addition to summer palace at Shangdu (the Xanadu of Coleridge). After being in reign for five years, Khubilai Khan declared the new era of Zhiyuan in AD 1263. (In AD 1271, the Mongols adopted the dynastic name Yuan.)

Khubilai Khan sent an embassy, comprising of scholar officials Hao Jing, He Yuan and Liu Renjie, to Southern Song. Southern Song Prime Minister, in order to hide his previous treachery acts from Emperor Lizong (Zhao Yun, reign AD 1224-1264), would imprison the Mongol emissaries. Khubilai Khan sent another emissary to Song border general Li Tingzhi. Li's report to Emperor Lizong was covered up by Jia Sidao. Khubilai Khan issued the war decree in the second year of Zhongtong Era (AD 1260). Mongol governor-general in charge of Huai River and Yangtze areas, Li Zhan (Li Tan?), defected to Song in the spring of third year of Zhongtong Era. Hearing of that, Khubilai Khan ordered that Shi Tianze to attack the defector general at Jinan, Shandong. After a few months siege, Mongols took over Jinan and killed Li Zhan via a cruel penalty of splitting the body.

Siege Of Xiangyang

Around AD 1264, during the fifth year of Zhongtong Era, Khubilai Khan changed to Zhiyuan Era. Arik-Buka was spared and came to surrender. At this time, a Song officer at Tongchuan, called Liu Zheng, being resented by Jia Sidao, would surrender his 15 prefectures to the Mongols and he was conferred the posts of 'xing(2)sheng(3)' and 'an-hu-shi' of Sichuan areas. Liu Zheng proposed to have Song Chinese grain supply cut off at Xiangyang. Song Chinese General in Sichuan, Lü Wende, did not pay attention to Liu Zheng's building up the castles and cutting off Xiangyang from Sichuan. Lü Wende said that Xiangyang had ten years of grain supply. General Lü Wenhuan at Xiangyang wrote to Lu Wende, but he was ignored. Then, Liu Zheng and A-zu would lead Mongols to Xiangyang and encircle it for four-five years.

The new Song Emperor Duzong (Zhao Qi, reign AD 1264-1274) again conferred

Jia Sidao important posts and added an extra title called 'Tai Shi', i.e., imperial tutor. Jia Sidao was extolled as comparable to Archduke Zhou of Western Zhou Dynasty. Jia Sidao pretended to resign several times, but Emperor Duzong would not let him go. Jia Sizong continued to shield the Xiangyang siege from the emperor. When a concubine told Duzong that Xiangyang had been under siege for 3 years, Jia Sidao would order that the woman be killed. The notoriety of Jia Sidao was best illustrated by another story: When one concubine of Jia Sidao saw a young man on the bank of Xihu Lake (West Lake) and exclaimed about the beauty of the young man, Jia Sidao would order that the young man be killed in front of the concubine. In Sichuan, after Lü Wende died, his brother-in-law, Fan Wenhui, took over the post, but Fan, like his predecessor, refused to send relief army to Xiangyang. At one time, Jia Sidao ordered Li Tingzhi and Fan Wenhui to aid Xiangyang. Fan Wenhui and his 100,000 were defeated. Two generals under Li Tingzhi, i.e., Zhang Shun and Zhang Gui, sailed along the Han-shui River; Zhang Gui broke through Mongol siege lines; and Zhang Gui died on the Han-shui River. Zhang Shun barely entered Xiangyang alive. After finding out that Xiangyang was in great danger, Zhang Shun, hiring two brave men, departed Xiangyang for sake of appealing for aid with Fan Wenhui in Sichuan Prov. But soon after Zhang Shun broke through Mongol siege lines, he encountered Mongol ships and was caught by Mongol, and Zhang died in Mongol hands. Then, the sister city of Fancheng was taken over by the Mongols, and two generals, Fan Tianshun and Niu Fu, died. Mongols deployed catapults (made by Persian engineers) against the outer wall of Xiangyang and destroyed it. Everytime Lü Wenhuan climbed up the citywall, he would have tears in his eyes while facing the south where the Song court was located. A Mongol general called on Lü Wenhuan to surrender, saying that Lü Wenhuan had done his job by guarding Xiangyang for five years. After they broke the arrows to swear forgiveness and sincerity, Lü Wenhuan surrendered and was conferred the post of 'Da-dudu' or governor-general of Xiangyang and Han-shui River areas.

Demise Of Song Dynasty

At this time, Emperor Duzong died, and his four year old son, Emperor Gongdi (Zhao Xian, reign 1274-1275), was made into emperor in AD 1275. Mongols sent Shi Tianze and Boyan (Bayan, grandson of Subetei) on a full campaign against Song. Shi Tianze died on route. Bayan ordered that A-zu head the first column and depart for the Yangtze from Xiangyang, with Lu Wenhuan as fore-runner general; 2nd column was to be headed by Mang-wu departing from Yangzhou, with Liu Zheng as forerunner general. Bayan took over numerous cities on the

way, slaughtered one town, and killed and captured numerous Song generals. Song Dowager Empress Xie-shi had no choice but to rely on Jia Sidao for fighting the Mongols. More Song generals surrendered, including Fan Wenhui in Sichuan, Chen Yi in Huangzhou (Huanggang area, Hubei). Hearing Liu Zheng had passed away, Jia Sidao had a short ecstasy and led an army of about 130,000 against the Mongols, but he was defeated on the Yangtze River. Jiangsu areas, around the Yangtze, including Zhenjiang and Jiangyin, were deserted in face of Mongol attacks. Jia Sidao sent an emissary to Bayan for peace, but met with declination. Jia Sidao requested with dowager empress for relocation of Song capital, but Empress Xie-shi refused to move.

Several ministers at Song court requested that Jia Sidao be deprived of his posts, and Song released former Mongol emissaries like Hao Jing as a good-will gesture. At this moment, Zhang Shijie of E'zhou (Hubei Province), Wen Tianxiang of Jiangxi and Li Fei of Hunan came to the east to help the Song court. Jiankang (i.e., Nanking) was deserted by a Song general. Changzhou and Wuxi were next taken by the Mongols. Khubilai Khan then sent Lian Xixian and Yan Zhongfan to Song for talking about ceasefire. Lian Xixian requested with Bayan for bodyguards, but Bayan advised that the more bodyguards Lian was to take with him, the more likely Song Chinese might harm him. Lian obtained 500 soldiers, but once Lian arrived at Dusong-guan Pass, Song General Zhang Ru killed Yan Zhongfan and captured Lian Xixian. (*History of Yuan Dynasty* stated that Lian was killed, too.) Bayan reprimanded Song's acts, and sent another emissary, Zhang Xu, to Song court together with Song emissary. Again, Zhang Xu was killed by a Song border general. Then, the Mongols stopped peace talks and attacked Yangzhou on the north bank of the Yangtze (Changjiang River). Mongols then attacked Yangzhou and defeated two generals under Li Tingzhi. Jiading surrendered next. Zhang Shijie's navy was defeated on the Yangtze by Mongol fire attack. Wen Tianxiang arrived in Lin'an (Hangzhou) the capital, but Empress Dowager did not take his advice. Jia Sidao was expelled from the capital and he was killed by the escort official on route. Taizhou of Jiangsu was lost to the Mongols, and Changzhou was slaughtered. In Hunan, Li Fei died, and both Hunan and Jiangxi Provinces were lost. After taking over Dusong-guan Pass, the Mongols were closing in onto Song capital. A Song minister called Liu Yue was sent to Mongol camp for peace, but Bayan declined it, saying Song Emperor obtained the throne from a kid and would lose it in the hands of a kid. Lu Xufu was sent to Mongols for expressing a wish to be Mongol nephew, but Mongols declined it. Song's new prime minister, Chen Yizhong, sent Liu Yue to

Mongols in the attempt of expressing acknowledgement as a Mongol vassal, but Liu Yue was killed by a Song Chinese civilian on route, at Gaoyou of Jiangsu Province. Mongols then sacked Jiaxing and An'jie of Zhejiang Province. Wen Tianxiang and Zhang Shijie advised that Song court relocated to the islands in the seas, but Prime Minister Chen Yizhong decided to send imperial seal to Mongols for a surrender. Bayan requested that Chen personally came to Mongols, and Chen fled to Wenzhou, a southern Zhejiang coastal city. Zhang Shijie led his people into the sea. Wen Tianxiang was made the rightside prime minister and was ordered to go to Mongols for peace. Wen was arrested by Bayan after he accused Bayan of invasion. In AD 1276, Bayan took over Lin'an and forced downager empress issue the surrender order. Song royal family, including downager empress and Emperor Gongdi, was sent to Peking.

Late Emperor Duzong had two more sons, 11 and 6 year old, respectively. They fled to Wenzhou before Lin'an was taken by Mongols. Chen Yizhong sailed them to Fuzhou of Fujian Province where a new Song court was set up. Eleven year old Zhao Shi was made into Emperor Ruizong (reign AD 1275-1278). Zhang Shijie, Su Liuyi, and Lu Xiufu consecutively arrived in Fuzhou. Chen Yizhong was retained as leftside prime minister, while Wen Tianxiang, after fleeing from the Mongols, also arrived in Fuzhou and acted as rightside prime minister. Song court would last another three years before the final demise. Mongols continued to push south. Canton (Guangzhou) of Guangdong Province was taken, and Song General Huang Jun died. Yangzhou on the Yangtze Bank were taken, and General Li Tingzhi was captured and killed. Mongols then invaded Fujian Province. Song Court was frequently on the run, from one island to another, along the coast, and the new Song Emperor died of illness within two years. The now eight-year-old brother, Zhao Bing, was made the new emperor Di-bing in AD 1278. Note Di-bing had no posthumous imperial title at all. Chen Yizhong died in Hainan, Lu Xiufu was made leftside prime minister. When the Mongols attacked again, Song Court fled to Yashan, somewhere near Macao. Mongol General Zhang Hongfan led a surprise attack at Chaoyang (Chaoshan areas, Guangdong Province) and captured Wen Tianxiang who later wrote the famous poem entitled 'Ling Ding Yang' or 'Lingding Sea'. At Hainan, Zhang Shijie nailed together his fleet, trying to defend the straits. Zhang Shijie declined Zhang Hongfan's invitation for surrender. After a defeat, Zhang Shijie broke through the siege with 16 ships. When chased by the Mongols, Lu Xiufu, with young emperor on his back, jumped into the sea with emperor on his back after driving his family into the sea. Zhang Shijie met with a hurricane near

Hailingshan Mountain, prayed that his ship sink should Heaven intend to capsize Song Dynasty, and died when his ship was sunken. Song Dynasty officially ended in AD 1279, after a total of 320 years, including 152 years in southern China. Song royal tombs would be dug up by a Central Asian monk for treasures. Khubilai Khan declared the dynasty of Yuan ("first" or "beginning") in this year.

In Sichuan Prov, as said by Liu-sha-he, Mongols sacked Chengdu city for a second time and left 1.4 million skeletons. Liu-sha-he cited Yuan Dynasty's Heh Qingquan in stating that Mongol army killed Chengdu people in batches of 50 and repeatedly pierced the dead bodies to make sure victims had been actually killed. (Liu-sha-he also had comments on Di[1] barbarians' massacring Chengdu in 301 AD as well as rebel Zhang Xianzhong's slaughter in AD 1644.)

The Yuan Dynasty (AD 1261-1368)

Khubilai Khan obtained his throne without a proper assembly, and hence he had lost the kind of mandate over ruling other Mongol khanates. By moving the capital to Peking from Karakorum (rebuilt by Ogedei in AD 1235), he had changed the old Mongol *yasag*. In the very beginning, Jochi's son, Batu, ruled the region to the north and west of Lake Balkash (extending from Hungary to Kirghiz Plains, and from lower Danube to Caucasus); Chagadai was given the southwestern region to the east of River Amu-darya and to the southeast of River Syr-Darya, including Afghanistan, Turkestan, the former Naiman territories around the Altai, and central Siberia; Ogedei was awarded China and East Asia; Tului, the youngest of the four sons, was to have central Mongolia. Later, Tului sons exterminated the ruling of Ogedei descendants and diminished the domain of Ogedei descendants, and Chagadai domain was curtailed; Hulegu was given the territories beyond the Oxus River and the Hindu Kush. Nominally, Khubilai Khan was in charge of all khanates: 'Amu-darya Xingsheng' was in charge of Ilkhante and Kipchak Khanate; 'Lingbei (north ridge) Xingsheng' was in charge of Ogedei Khanate; and two 'yuan shuai (marshal)' offices were in charge of Chagadai Khanate. A separate 'Liaoyang Xingsheng' was in charge of Manchuria. After declaring his dynasty of Yuan, Khubilai Khan could only be considered a ruler of China and Mongolia.

Before subjugating Southern Song, Kubilai sent a fleet of 150 boats against Japan in AD 1274. Marco Polo supposedly had travelled to and stayed in China during the period of AD 1275 - 1292. Two years after the 1279 conquest of

Southern Song, Kubilai's empress, an Onggirat woman, passed away. Mongol khans had a custom of marrying Onggirat women, a convention passed down from Genghis Khan. A niece of the empress would become the new empress. But Khubilai, though getting older, chose to go to the capital of Shang-du (i.e., Kaiping) for sake of indulging himself in concubines there (i.e., concubines from past emperors). Kubilai hired a Muslim as his finance minister, and this person, A-he-ma, had done his best to exploit the people in iron and salt trades. A-he-ma nepotism would include over 500 officials across the country. A-he-ma would later be killed by a 'qian hu' who issued an order in the name of crown prince. Khubilai then renovated politics a bit by ordering Guo Shoujing to recompile calendar, promoting overseas trading, and inviting Confucian descendant as academy official. Rebellions broke out in coastal China of Fujian and Guangdong. Owing to rumors about Song revival, Khubilai relocated late Song Emperor Gongdi (now Duke Yingguo-gong) to Shang-du and ordered ex-Song prime minister Wen Tianxiang be executed should he refuse to surrender. Wen Tianxiang wrote a poem, stating that *"Confucius proposed that one should die for compassion (Ren) and Mencius suggested that one should die for righteousness (Yi). Only when righteousness is fully exerted will the compassion be derived. What should I endeavour after educating myself with so many books of the ancient saints? However, I am sure that I feel no guilty about myself from this death moment on."* (Confucius wording for 'Ren' should mean a broader sense of human perfection, similar to nirvana in Buddhism. 'Ren' also meant nucleus in Chinese, as used for the nucleus of various fruits like apple.) Khubilai, impressed by this poem, would confer a title of Duke Lulingjun-gong on Wen Tianxiang posthumously.

Invasion of Japan

In AD 1281, Kubilai sent another expedition, with more than 160 000 soldiers, to Japan, but a typhoon would destroy the fleet, with those soldiers already on Japanese shore mostly killed by Japanese. Japanese only spared the Southern Chinese and made them into slaves. Later, three Chinese fled to the continent.

The idea to have contact with Japan started in AD 1265 when Koryo emissary, Zhao Yi, told Khubilai that Japan could be reached. The second year, Khubilai sent He De and Yin Hong to Japan via Koryo where King Wang Zhi ordered his people accompany them on the sea trip. He De and Yin Hong failed to get in touch with any Japanese official and returned home. Khubilai then sent Pan Hu to Japan where Pan Hu stayed for 6 months; but Pan did not get to see any

Japanese official. In AD 1269, Koryo minister Lin Yan usurped the kingdom, and Khubilai sent over 10,000 army for sake of accompanying Koryo King back to the throne. Then, Khubilai sent Zhao Liangbi to Japan where Zhao met a Japanese governor; Zhao was told that the Japanese refused to meet the prior Mongol emissaries because the Koreans had repeatedly said that the Mongols intended to invade Japan. The Japanese governor then suggested that Zhao Liangbi return to China since Japanese capital was too far away. Zhao ordered that his follower and Japanese emissaries return to China first. Yao Shu and Xu Heng advised Khubilai that the Japanese emissary had come to China for sake of detecting the military might of the Mongols and recommended to Khubilai that he treat the Japanese the same way the Japanese treated the Mongol emissary. Japanese emissary returned to Japan without seeing Khubilai. Zhao Liangbi returned to China then, but was ordered to make one more trip to Japan. Japan was ruled by the shogunate at that time, and the national policy was to close off the seashore. In AD 1274, Koryo King passed away. Khubilai married over his daughter to the new Koryo king and then ordered that Koryo send an auxiliary force of 5,000 on a campaign against Japan. Khubilai altogether assembled 900 ships and an army of 20,000 for invading Japan. Tsushima and Iki islands were taken. Mongols landed onto shoreline. However, the Japanese refused to fight the Mongols face to face and retreated inland; the Mongol army retreated after running out of arrows and capturing a few Japanese. The next year, Khubilai sent Du Shizhong and He Wenzhu to Japan, but the Japanese again refused to receive them. In AD 1280, Du Shizhong was dispatched to Japan again, but the Japanese minister killed Du Shizhong after being enraged by the letter from Khubilai. Khubilai, then in AD 1281, ordered rightside prime minister A-lou-han and Fan Wenhui lead an army of over 100,000 on a campaign against Japan. A-lou-han died on route in Koryo. Khubilai then ordered leftside prime minister An-ta-ha to substitute for the position of dead A-lou-han. However, Fan Wenhui had already started his wars on his own initiative. Before arriving at an outer island near the Japanese coast by July, 30-40% of the ships, under the command of 'wan hu' Li Debiao, had already fled towards Koryo as a result of huge sea winds (called "divine wind" or kamikaze in Japanese). When the hurricane blew again, Fan Wenhui also fled to Koryo on August 1st. A lower level official, 'bai hu' (officer in charge of 100 soldiers), would be in charge of the remaining Mongol army. When this 'bai hu' ordered that the Mongols landed on the island to cut trees for repairing the ships, the Japanese made an assault on them. One third of the Mongol army were killed, one third drowned in the seas, and one third taken prisoners. Out of the 20-

30,000 prisoners, only 10,000 Southern Chinese were spared. One Southern Chinese, by the name of Yu Chang, fled home to report the defeat. Two more Chinese, Muo Qing and Wu Wanwu, fled to the continent, too. Fan Wenhui later blamed the defeat on 'wan hu' (officer in charge of 10,000 soldiers) Li Debiao, and Khubilai could not locate Li Debiao since Li had dispersed his soldiers and hid himself in Koryo as a civilian. Then, Khubilai ordered a new campaign against Japan, and this was only halted when he shifted his priority to the campaign against Champa.

Champa & Annam

Champa, located to the south of Annam, refused to acknowledge being a vassal of the Mongols. Mongols, under Suodu, departed Canton with over thousand ships. Champa boasted an army of 200,000. After being defeated by the Mongols, Champa prince fled to the mountains and sent a minister to the Mongol camp for surrender. Unguarded, Suodu was later defeated by a Champa ambush. Suodu requested for relief army. Khubilai ordered that his ninth son, Duohuan, i.e., King of Zhennan (i.e., quelling the south), lead an army southward via Annam. Annam King agreed to supply grains, but refused to lend the path to the Mongols. The brother of Annam King, Chen Jun, took charge in fighting the Mongols. Annam King sent over one thousand ships to aid his brother. After several rounds of fighting, Annam King requested again that Mongols leave Annam per the treaty signed with Mengke Khan before. Mongols attacked the Annam camp and took over the capital. Annam King fled, and one brother by the name of Chen Yiji surrendered. Mongols met with shortage of grain and pestilence in Annam capital and hence called off the campaign. When fleeing northward, Annam army attacked them with poisonous arrows at a river crossing. Duohuan barely escaped alive. Suodu, not knowing the retreat of Tuohuan, was ambushed at another river crossing, and Suodu committed suicide by jumping into the river. Having incurred heavy losses, Khubilai was advised not to attack Annam for now. In AD 1284, Khubilai conferred Annam kingship onto Chen Yiji and ordered King of Zhennan Tuohuan to lead a campaign against Annam. Mongols took over Annam capital again, and Annam king fled to the island. By the spring of AD 1288, pestilence erupted again. When Mongols retreated, Annam King assembled a land/sea army of 300,000 and circumvented to the hind of the Mongols. Tuohuan barely escaped alive, and he was reprimanded by Khubilai with a prohibition to return to Peking. Annam king, Tran Nhon-ton (Chen Ri-xuan), however, sent over a gold statute and requested for pardon. Khubilai hence sufficed with the status of Annam. Burma,

however, was invaded by another Mongol king. About 12 tribes of so-called 'Xi-nan Man' or Southwestern barbarians were conquered, and Burma acknowledged vassalage. Thailand, India, Southeast Asian statelets, hearing of the Mongol conquest of Burma, sent in tributes. Khubilai intended to invade Japan and Annam again, and one minister, Lu Shirong, who raised money via over-circulation of paper currency, was executed. Crown Prince Zhenjin passed away.

Mongol Internal Strife

Khubilai exercised only nominal ruling over the rest of khanates. The khanates, however, had already engaged themselves in disputes and wars. In AD 1265, Mamluk Baybars made an alliance with Berke Khan (Batu's brother and successor) against Hulegu. Berke withdrew when Khubilai sent 30,000 troops to aid the Ilkhans. Arik-Buka (Ariq-boeke), the junior brother of Khubilai, had received covert aid from Khan Haidu (grandson of Ogedei, i.e. Mongol Emperor Taizong posthumously). Arik-Buka later surrendered to Khubilai.

The grandson of Chagatai, Ya-er-gu, allied himself with Haidu. When Khubilai intended to oust Ya-er-gu, he called on the grandson of Batu (Mengke-timur) and the great grandson of Chagatai Ba-la for sake of an alliance against Haidu of Ogedei Khanate. But Ba-la of Chagatai Khanate colluded with Haidu in attacking Mengke-timur of Kipchak Khanate. When Haidu was defeated by Mengke-timur, Ba-la encroached on the territories of Haidu. Haidu sought reconciliation with Mengke-timur, and Mengke-timur defeated Ba-la. Ba-la then threatened Haidu that he would ask Khubilai to attack him. Haidu sought reconciliation with Ba-la, too. The three khans held an khurital on the bank of the Talas River, and Haidu was proclaimed as the Grand Khan of the Mongols. Haidu then decreed to the Ilkhanate that they unite against Khubilai. The Ilkhanate khan, A-ba-ha, son of Hulegu, refused to follow Haidu; Haidu and Ba-la invaded eastern Ilkhanate and called upon Mengke-timur to invade Ilkhanate from the northwest. A-ba-ha defeated Haidu and Ba-la, but he failed to beat back Mengke-timur. After A-ba-ha died, his brother would compete with A-ba-ha's son for the throne. Hence, Haidu gained an upper hand in the wars and moreover threatened to invade Khubilai's territories.

Khubilai dispatched Prince Ye-mu-han, Mengke's son Xi-li-jie and Muhuali's grandson An-tong against Haidu. Xi-li-jie defected to Haidu and arrested Ye-mu-han and An-tong. Khubilai then ordered prime minister Bayan to counter Haidu who was closing in on Helin. Bayan defeated Xi-li-jie and rescued Ye-mu-

han and An-tong. Bayan was recalled by Khubilai when Nai-yan (the great grandson of the brother of Genghis Khan) was reported to have planned rebellion in the areas between the Onon and Kerulen rivers of Mongolia. Bayan went to meet Nai-yan and failed to persuade him. Bayan fled back to the Mongol capital. A Mongol minister recommended to Khubilai that once the khanates in the west are pacified, Nai-yan would succumb. This minister hence was ordered to go west and he claimed that Nai-yan had already succumbed to Khubilai. Hence the khanates all succumbed to Khubilai. After that, Khubilai led an army northward against Nai-yan. Seeing that his Mongol soldiers treated Nai-yan soldiers with intimacy, Khubilai adopted the advice of a Chinese in having the Chinese army act as the forerunner column. General Li Ting tricked Nai-yan into a retreat and then defeated Nai-yan's army of 100,000 via a night attack with cannons. Nai-yan was captured and executed. Remnant Nai-yan people then fled to Manchuria and attacked eastern Liaoning Province. Mongol 'Xuanwei-shi of Liaodong' Ta-chu requested for aid, and Khubilai sent his son over. Ta-chu defeated the Nai-yan remnants and chased them westward to the Altai. Ta-chu was conferred the title of 'wan hu'. Nai-yan remnants, however, still remained for some time. Bayan was ordered to counter Haidu who harassed Helin in the west, and Prince Timur (grandson of Khubilai) was ordered to guard the Liao River area in the east. When a Mongol official defected to Haidu and attacked Khubilai's grandson (Gemala) near Hang'aishan Mountain, Khubilai would lead a column to the north. Haidu retreated thereafter. Bayan would continue warfare with Haidu for sometime before he left the post at Helin.

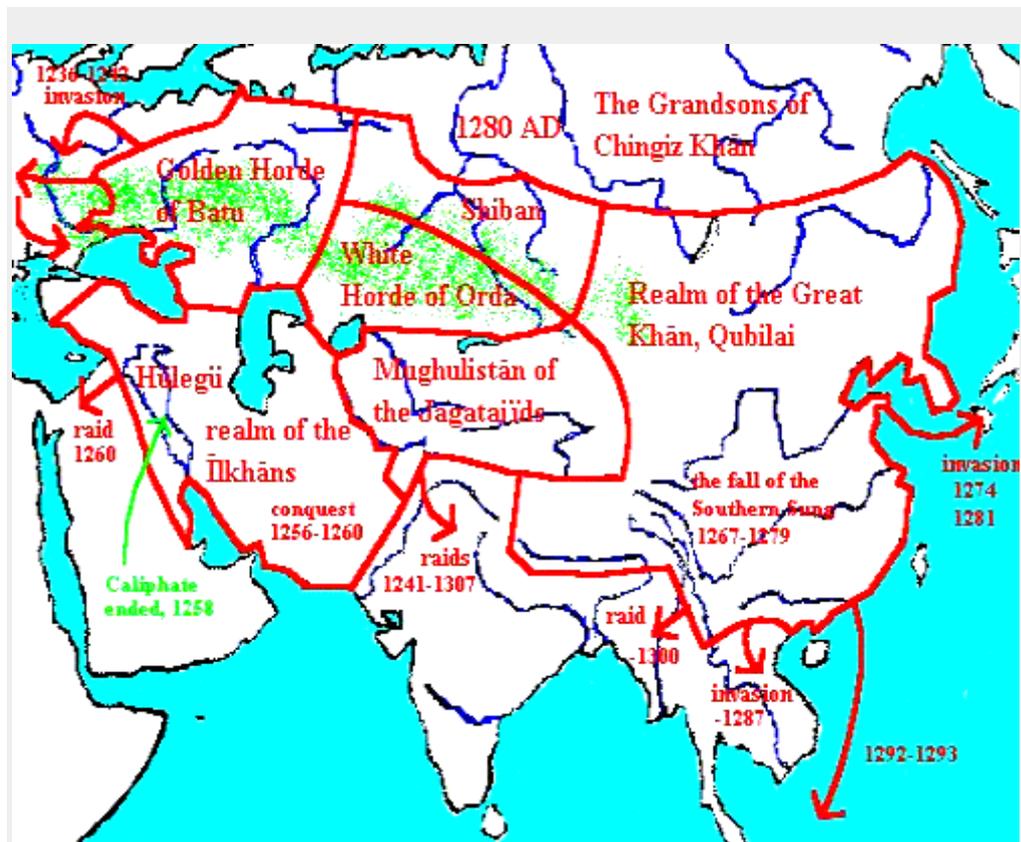
Khubilai Seeking For Confucians

In AD 1286, Khubilai ordered that *yu-shi* or Censor Cheng Wenhai go to Southern China and seek ex-Song Confucians. Altogether twenty Confucians, including a Song royal family member (Zhao Meng), were located and delivered to Yuan court. Cheng Wenhai and an ex-Song prime minister Liu Mengyan had both recommended an ex-Song minister, by the name of Xie Fangde, for the Yuan court. Xie refused to eat food on the road to the capital, and he died in Peking after paying respect at the tombs of ex-Song empress and Duke Yingguogong (ex-Song emperor). Another Confucian, by the name of Liu Mingyin who was an expert on Daoism and Neo-Confucianism, surrendered salaries to the Yuan court and left for his hometown. Yuan's official in charge of the academy, 'Guo Zi Jian', *ji-jiu* (Wine Surrenderer) Xu Heng, had recommended another Confucian, Yang Gongyi, for the job of validating calendar and endorsing the 'Civil Services Exam' system. Yang Gongyi resigned after finishing his work, and

he died in the same year as Liu Mingyin, in AD 1293. Xu Heng was guilty of his serving the Mongols and asked his family not to erect a tombstone for him. Khubilai conferred Xu Heng the title of 'si-tu' and Duke Weiguo-gong posthumously for his contributions in reviving Confucianism and the spirits of Archduke of Zhou Dynasty.

Invading Java, Declaring Amnesty, and Khubilai Death Khubilai replaced a prime minister (Sangge) when he found out about the corruption. Khubilai quelled numerous rebellions in southern Chinese provinces. In January of AD 1293, Kubilai sent an army of 30,000 to Java and defeated the local ruler, only to be driven off by a Javanese ally. Khubilai thought about invading Annam again in AD 1293 because the new Annam king had bullied Mongol emissary in AD 1291 and refused to come to Yuan court to pay respect. When a meteorite was spotted in the sky, Khubilai inquired with his minister (Buwusu) about how to revert the Heaven's Omen as to his possible death. Buwusu cited Han Emperor Wendi's seeking repentance when 29 mountain quakes occurred in the same day and sun eclipse occurred in the year. Khubilai recited Wendi's 'Decree In Regards To Sun Eclipse', opened royal grain barns for aiding hunger-stricken people, and declared a general amnesty. When Khubilai fell ill again, Prime Minister Bayan was recalled to the capital from Datong. On February 18, 1294, Kubilai died at the age of eighty, after a reign of 35 years. Khubilai was given the posthumous title of Shizu.

Map linked from <http://www.friesian.com/>



Emperor Chengzong (Borjigin Timur, reign AD 1294-1307)

With the help of Bayan, Khubilai's grandson, Timur, was proclaimed the successor, i.e., Emperor Chengzong after the Mongol court went through a power vacuum for a few months. Timur gave his father (Zhenjin) the posthumous title of Emperor Yuzong. Timur released Annam emissary to show his goodwill. Timur conferred the title of 'tai shi' on Yuexi-timur, 'tai fu' on Bayan, and 'tai bao' on Yue-chi-cha-er. Bayan, who previously commanded 200,000 troops against Song, passed away in this year at the age of 59. In AD 1296, rebellion erupted in Jiangxi. The next year, Buddhist monastery on Wutaishan Mountain was completed at a cost of over 10,000 human lives.

Phagsba's disciple was responsible for pushing this project. At the times of Khubilai, Phagsba was made imperial tutor, and Tibetan buddhism was made the national religion. Phagsba was responsible for devising the new Mongol script, with 41 letters. Phagsba was conferred the title of 'Da Bao Fa Wang', i.e., grand

treasure king for enforcing laws. Empress Onggirat led a huge column onto the Wutaishan Mountain. A Chinese official rebuked the rampant behaviors of buddhist monks who came from the West.

Expulsion of the Mongols

Mongol's discrimination against Chinese should be the top cause for the ending of its rule in China. The other causes would be collusion with Tibetan lamas in depriving Chinese of their lands. Still one more cause would be the Yellow River flooding as a result of Mongols' abandoning the irrigation projects. In Mongol times, the Chinese agriculture lands were very much in wastage. When once hundreds of thousands of Chinese civilians were called upon to work on the Yellow River, the time was ripe for a great rebellion.

Religion was used by the Chinese in rebelling against the Mongols. The secret societies rebelling against Mongol rule would combine Taoism with Buddhist elements in the hope that the Maitreya Buddha would descend from Heaven and save the mankind. The White Lotus Society ("*Bailian Jiao*"), and the White Cloud Society ("*Baiyun*") of Kong Qingjiao, recruited the followers among the saltern workers and the miners. (Mao Ziyuan of Southern Song Dynasty founded the "White Lotus Society" as a Mahayanist sect of Buddhism with adoration for bodhisattva Amitabha; however, the sect had transferred adoration to a different buddha by Yuan Dyansty. By 16th century, "White Lotus Society" developed into hundreds of sub-sects, with occurence of major uprising up against the Manchu rule in AD 1796.) A third sect, the Red Turbans, "*Hongjin Jun*", would overthrow the Mongol rule.

Mongol's discrimination against Chinese should be the top cause for the ending of its rule in China. The other causes would be collusion with Tibetan lamas in depriving Chinese of their lands. Paper currency over-circulation, which caused inflation to go up ten folds during Yuan Emperor Shundi's reign, should also be an important cause for its loss of power. Yuan's Prime Minnister Toktoghan (Tuo Tuo), against an objection by a Chinese official (Lu Sicheng) in charge of *Guo Zi Jian* (i.e., Confucian Academy), would print over five versions of paper currency. Still one more cause would be the Yellow River flooding as a result of Mongols'

abandoning the irrigation projects. In Mongol times, the Chinese agriculture lands were very much in wastage. Once hundreds of thousands of Chinese civilians were called upon to work on the Yellow River, the time was ripe for a great rebellion. Religion was used by the Chinese in rebelling against the Mongols. The secret societies rebelling against Mongol rule would combine Taoism with Buddhist elements in the hope that the Maitreya Buddha would descend from Heaven and save the mankind. The White Lotus Society (*Bailian Jiao*) of Mao Ziyuan, and the White Cloud Society (*Baiyun*) of Kong Qingjiao, recruited the followers among the saltern workers and the miners. A third sect, the Red Turbans, *Hongjin Jun*, would overthrow the Mongol rule.

Yellow River flooding caused massive damages to people in Jinan area of Shandong Prov. The Yellow River was first worked on by Lord Yu, and eight hundred years after, the Shang people began to experience the flooding again. Major river course changes had occurred for over half a dozen times in past 3500 years. During the 25th year reign of Yuan Emperor Shizu (Khubilai), i.e. AD 1288, the River changed course. During the 1st year reign of Yuan Emperor Shundi, i.e., AD 1335, bank was breached at Kaifeng, Henan Prov; in AD 1344, breached at Caozhou Prefecture and Kaifeng; in AD 1345, breached near Jinan, Shandong Prov. A Chinese official, by the name of Jia Lu, proposed to have the river course changed to the Huai-shui River in the south. Toktoghan dispatched an official, Cheng Zun, on an inspection trip, and Cheng Zun proposed an alternative scheme by citing the fact that there were no royal savings for a huge project like Jia Lu's and that any mobilization of 200,000 laborers might cause social instability. Toktoghan, angry with Cheng Zun for the suggestion that people might rebel, would petition with Emperor Shundi to have Jia Lu take charge of 170,000 soldiers and laborers and work on revamping the Yellow River course. Jia Lu started work in April of AD 1351 and finished work in July of the same year. However, White Lotus Society, led by Han Shantong and Liu Futong, had secretly implanted an one-eye stone statute in Huanglinggang area and then spread the rumor stating that rebellion would erupt should a stone man with one eye be dug up from the Yellow River bed. Jia Lu did not pay attention to the stone man and ordered that it be destroyed. Liu Futong, after the Yuan Dynasty arrested and executed Han Shantong, would rally an army called the 'Red Turbans' and supported Han Shantong's son (Han Lin'er) as the leader. Cai Dongfan commented that the Mongols should have hired the displaced Shandong people as labor for repairing the Yellow River rather than mobilizing 170,000 people for the project.

Answering the 'Red Turbans' rebellion would be several more bands, including Li Er (Sesame Lee) in Xuzhou of Shandong Prov, Xu Shouhui (a cloth vendor) in Qi-shui of Hubei Prov. Guo Zixing rebelled against Yuan in Dingyuan in AD 1352. Zhang Shicheng (salt merchant) rebelled against Yuan in Taizhou of Jiangsu Prov in AD 1353. Before that, in AD 1348, Fang Guozhen (a salt worker and later a pirate) in Taizhou of Zhejiang had rebelled against the Mongols.

Toktoghan advised Emperor Shundi to put down the rebellion in Henan Prov first. Since Shundi did not want Toktoghan leave the court, Toktoghan's brother, Yexian-temur, was ordered to quell rebellion with an army of over 100,000. Yexian-temur first attacked the city of Shangcai and captured a Red Turban leader called Han Yao'er.

MING DYNASTY

<p><u>Expulsion of the Mongols</u> Ming Emperor Hongwu (Ming Taizu, Zhu Yuanzhang, r. 1368-1398) Ming Emperor Jianwen (Ming Huidi, Zhu Yunwen, r. 1399-1402) Ming Emperor Yongle (Ming Chengzu, Zhu Di, r. 1403-1424) Ming Emperor Hongxi (Ming Renzong, Zhu Gaochi, r. 1425-1425) Ming Emperor Xuande (Ming Xuanzong, Zhu Zhanji, r. 1426-1435) Ming Emperor Zhengtong (Ming Yingzong, Zhu Qizhen, r. 1436-1449)</p>	<p><u>Zheng He's 7 Naval Expeditions</u> <u>Prof Wei Chu-Hsien & "China and America" Japanese Piracy, Shogunate Tallies, Korea & Taiwan Island Jesuit</u></p>
---	--

Visits To
Ming China
Ming
China's War
With
Portuguese
Ming
China's War
With Dutch

Zheng He's 7 Naval Expeditions

Between 1405 and 1433, Yongle or Yung-Lo Emperor (Ming Chengzu, i.e., Zhu Di) and Ming Emperor Xuande (Ming Xuanzong, i.e., Zhu Zhanji) dispatched seven great naval expeditions into the Indian Ocean. Chinese history recorded that the largest ships, the 'bao chuan' or "treasure ships", were 440 feet long and possessed nine masts, bigger than the British warships that invaded China later. Recent revelations speculate that Zheng He might have already visited the Cape of Good Hope, Australia and the New World before the Europeans did and that the later Europeans had conducted seafaring trips on basis of world maps drawn by Chinese in the first place. Zheng He's voyage was earlier than Columbus's America sailing by 87 years, earlier than Vasco da Gama's sailing to India by 93 years, and earlier than Fernando Magellan's sailing to Philippines by 116 years. Gavin Menzies, a retired British submarine commander, said that "Zheng He was the first man completing the first circumnavigation of the globe one century earlier than Ferdinand Magellan during 1519-1522" and that "many academics not just in China but also on the West Coast of the US believe he found North America and Australia during a two-year odyssey which began in 1421." Mr Menzies told BBC News Online: "It's virtually impossible to still argue that Columbus discovered America, that Cook found Australia or that Magellan was the first to circumnavigate the world. You have to be a crank nowadays to believe that." Mr Menzies published his book *1421: The Year China Discovered The World* on Nov 4th 2002. (See <http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/science/nature/2349929.stm>.)

However, the sea routes between Europe and India never needed to be re-

discovered. The Arabians had sailed along the eastern coast of Africa for hundreds of years, and they had visited India, Malacca, Vietnam, and China all along. In the time of Han Emperor Huandi (reign AD 147-167), there were recorded visits from the west, arriving by sea, via the coasts of Rinan Commandary (today's central Vietnam). Indian envoys were received at the Han Court in AD 159 and in AD 161, and an emissary from Daqin (Da Qin), i.e., Rome, arrived in AD 166. During China's Three Kingdoms time period, another Roman envoy arrived in Wu Dynasty, and when he left China, he requested with Sun Quan for a dozen pigmy people to be sent to Roman Emperor as a gift. (Sun Quan caught pigmy people somewhere south of the Huai River.) "*History of Jinn Dynasties*", by Tang Dynasty's Fang Xuanling, recorded that Lijian or Roman emissary came to Western Jinn court during the Taikang Era (AD 280-289) of Jinn Wudi (reign 265-290 AD). During AD 399-414, one Chinese monk, Fa Shien, had returned to China via sea route, after spending years studying Buddhism in India. Tang Dynasty had recorded that East Roman emissary had visited China via the sea route. The "overseas trip permit" system, first adopted by Song Emperor Taizong in AD 989, was enforced throughout the dynastic reign. Zhao Rushi's AD 1225 book "*Zhu [various] Fan [foreign countries] Zhi [records]*" mentioned that Chinese had travelled overseas often and established colonies overseas; that murderer of some Chinese merchant at Zhancheng [southern Vietnam?] was caught & executed; and that King of San-fo-qi wrote to China in Chinese language. Yan Qinghuang cited "*Song Shi*" [History of Song Dynasty] in pointing out that overseas Chinese had become leaders in alien lands, including Java [Mao Xu] and Japan [Zhu Rencong, Zhou Wende, Zhou Wenyi, Chen Wenyong, Sun Zhong & Li Chong]. Chinese fled the coast in hordes after Mongol invasion. Shen Jingzhi, per Yan Qinghuang's citation of Chen Zhutong writing, fled to Zhancheng to seek relief with the king for fighting the Mongols. Mongols, after subjugating southern China, expanded ("shi [trade] po [moor] si [magistrate]") system to have three additional ports opened, i.e., Shanghai, Qingyuan & Ganpu [Haiyan of Zhejiang]. Marco Polo certainly returned to Europe via the merchants' fleet. When Ming Emperor Zhu Yuanzhuang captured Peking from the Mongols, there was a Roman emissary stranded there. Emperor Zhu Yuanzhuang made special arrangement for the Roman to return to his country via merchant fleet. During Mongol reign, Zhou Dagan was sent to Zhenla [Chang-la] to subdue the king and observed numerous overseas Chinese who interbred with locals. In AD 1349, Wang[1] Dayuan wrote a book ["*dao yi zhi luue*"] about his visits to various southeastern Asian ports, with descriptions of Chinese settlements which were later confirmed by Ma Huan in AD 1413. Ma

Huan stated in "*ying ya sheng lan*" that at Duban of Java, there were 1000 households who were originally from Guangdong Prov.

Most of the records of the expeditions were destroyed by Ming Dynasty. There is no definite explanation as to why Ming Dynasty started these explorations and why it suddenly stopped it. There had been a saying that Yongle Emperor decided to send expeditions to the South Seas in search of his nephew emperor because he heard a rumor that the deposed emperor, whose body was never found in Nanking's palace, might have fled to Southeast Asia as a monk. In my opinion, the rumor factor could be one of the factors, while the other factor would be Ming China's new policy of vassalage, which was best exemplified in its attempts to have Japan acknowledge the suzerainty in AD 1371. Taiwan scholars, using the Ming Dynasty court portrait of African giraffe, speculated that Ming emperor ordered that Zheng He dispatched a contingent to Africa in AD 1414 in search of an ancient noble animal called 'qi lin' (i.e., Giraffe). Scholar Luo Xianglin provided a splendid explanation as to the cause of Ming China launching seafaring trips to "Western Seas": Ming Emperor Chengzu, after hearing of the threat of invasion from Central Asia, intended to contain Timurlane by seeking alliance with Arab nations under the pretext of searching for the rumored Emperor Huidi in Southeast Asia. Ming Emperor Taizu's emissary to Timur, i.e., Fu An, was detained in Central Asia. Timur was recorded to have made arrangement for Chinese emissary to inspect his domain so that China would be daunted by his military might. Upon hearing of the war between Ming Emperor Huidi and Ming Emperor Chengzu, Timur organized an army of 200000 for an attempt at invading China. Ming Emperor Chengzu ordered that garrison general Song Sheng prepare for a defence while Zheng He be dispatched to Persian Gulf, Red Sea and Indian Ocean.

Scholar Yan Qinghuang, however, in pointing out the conflicts between Ming China's sea ban policy and its overseas expedition, stated that Ming China's ultimate aim in both actions was the same, i.e., state monopoly of foreign trade. Hence, economic stimulus was the ultimate driving force behind Zheng He's seven voyages, with the essence exhibiting itself by the very character "treasure" that was inscribed in the ship names. Emperor Yongle had merely attempted to expand on trade without breaking the "sea ban" policy.

The sudden ending of the expeditions could be related to the loss of dozens of ships during the last voyage. It was said that only a dozen ships, out of a total of 50-60, had survived a hurricane. The ending of voyages was attributed to the power struggles between eunuchs and Confucians as well as the newly emerging threats from remnant Mongol tribes on the Gobi. Once Chinese fleet left the seas, the Japanese pirates began to sail along the coasts of China and Korea.

Who Is Zheng⁴ He²

While still a boy of ten years old, Zheng Heh (Zheng He), originally surnamed 'Ma' (a popular Muslim name in northwest China that was thought to have been appropriated from the first syllable of Mohammed), was taken over by Ming armies which campaigned against Mongol remnants in Yunnan Province. While 'Ma' surname had long existed in China before the spread of Islam, Scholar Luo Xianglin did cite the records of the name 'Ma-ha-zi' among Zheng Heh's father and grandfather as a proof that their ancestors were devout Muslims. Ming General Fu Youde, Lan Yue and Mu Ying led the expedition to Southwestern China in AD 1381. They delivered Zheng Heh to King of Yan, Zhu Di. After Zhu Di deposed his nephew emperor, Zheng Heh was conferred the post of "*nei guan jian*" eunuch in AD 1404. Zhu Di changed Zheng Heh's last name to Zheng from Ma.

Zheng⁴ He²'s Trip To Western Seas

Under the nodding approval of a minister by the name of Yuan Zhongche, Emperor Chengzu (Zhu Di) ordered that Zheng Heh lead a fleet to the so-called 'Xi Yang', i.e., Western Seas or the Indian Sea, beyond Sumatra of Indonesia. On July 11th [June per lunar calendar] of AD 1405, Zheng Heh departed the port of Liujiaxiang of Suzhou-fu (Liuhekou, Taicang County, Jiangsu Prov) with a fleet of 208 ships. Per Luo Xianglin, ships, with 62 largest having a length of 44 Chinese yards and a width of 18 yards and the rest 37 by 15 Chinese yards, were built at Liujiache area. The destinations included Zhancheng [Saigon of Vietnam], Zhenla [Changla, i.e., Cambodia], Thailand, Java [Jakarta], Bo-ni [Boluozhou], Malacca, Jiu-gang [Peleambang of Sumatra], Bang-ge-la [Bengal], Ke-zhi [southeast India], Gu-li [Bombay], Xi-lan [Ceylon], Zu-fa-er [south Arabian coast], A-dan [Aden], Hu-lu-mo-si [Orimuz], Tian-fang [Mecca], and Mu-gu-du-xu [Mogadishu]. Details about Zheng Heh could be seen at oceansonline.com/zheng.htm.

Bi Quanzhong's Citation Of Ancient Texts

Bi Quanzhong wrote about his speculations at

epochtimes.com/gb/2/4/17/n231865.htm What Bi Quanzhong did was to dig through corroborating sources for explanations as to termination of Zheng He's expeditions. As stated by Bi Quanzhong, Ming novelist, Feng Menglong (1574-1646), in his book *Zhi Rang* (i.e., brains), wrote that Ming Emperor Yingzong (Zhu Qizhen, r. 1436-1449 & r. 1457-1464) had a hobby for treasures. Eunuchs suggested to Yingzong that Emperor Xuanzong (Zhu Zhanji, r. 1426-1435), in AD 1430, dispatched Zheng He to the Western Seas and obtained innumerable treasures. Emperor Yingzong asked eunuchs to go to the ministry of *bing bu* (i.e., defence or army) in search of the sea maps. A minister at *bing bu*, *bingbu shilang* Liu Daxia, hearing of eunuchs' search, deliberately hid the maps from the eunuchs. When *bingbu shangshu* Xiang Zhong asked about those navigation maps, Liu Daxia told Xiang Zhong that the expeditions to the Western Seas had costed hundreds of thousands Chinese ounces of silver and a civilian/navy loss of lives in dozens of thousands. Xiang Zhong agreed with Liu Daxia and burnt the sea maps.

Bi Quanzhong also cited Zhu Yunming's book *Qian Wen Ji* in regards to the last trip by Zheng He. Bi Quanzhong claimed that civilian/navy loss of lives in dozens of thousands in AD 1430 might not be correct and that some of those stray ships could have arrived in American Continent. Bi Quanzhong cited *Ying (ocean) Ya (edge) Sheng (beautiful) Lan (view) & Xing (star) Cha (raft) Sheng (beautiful) Lan (view)* (two books written by Zheng He's officers, Ma Huan / Fei Xin) in stating that it was Ming navy's policy to dispatch sub-contingent fleets to different countries during their sea voyages.

(humanities.ualberta.ca/history111/weeksept22/Starraft.html translated 'Xing Cha Sheng Lan' into Triumphant Tour of the Star Raft where the character 'sheng' did not follow ancient Chinese interpretation as meaning "the most beautiful sight".)

Ba-la-xi Story in Official Chronicle, "*Ming Shi*"

There is a record of Ba-la-xi story in official chronicle, "*Ming Shi*". Bi Quanzhong also cited the same account in another book, *Ye Ji* (i.e., records of wild stories) by Zhu Yunming (1461-1527). The story goes like this: AD 1511, Sha-di-bai, an emissary from the country of Ba-la-xi, arrived in Canton for paying pilgrimage to Chinese emperor. Sha-di-bai brought along a royal letter with gold-leaf. Sha-di-bai said that he was from the South Seas; he had travelled on the seas for

four and a half years before he suffered a shipwreck after being blown to the Xilan (west Lan or mutation of Ceylon) sea; he stayed on a life-boat for eight days and arrived at the country of Jiling-guo where he stayed for 11 months; he then continued on to another country where he stayed for 8 months; he then travelled via land to ancient Thailand within 26 days where the Thai king offered him supplies and four women; he then stayed in Thailand for 4 years; and then he rode on a foreigner's ship to Canton in May of 1511.

Bi Quanzhong speculated that Sha-di-bai's Ba-la-xi must be situated in South America, somewhere near Brazil, that Zheng He's navy officers might have visited South America and propagated the news about China and that Ba-la-xi king had sent emissary to China as an exchange of good-will. My opinion is that Bi Quanzhong just did a convenient speculation by linking Ba-la-xi to Ba-xi [Brazil], a country that would not obtain its current name till after the Latin American independence wars. Ba-la-xi could be somewhere in Polynesian Islands or territories near Australia.

Prof Wei Chu-Hsien & "China and America"

Dao-yi (Island Alien) Designation

Dao-yi (Island Alien) Designation

Japanese Piracy, Shogunate Tallies, Korea & Taiwan Island

In the eyes of Scholar Hu Qiuyuan, Japanese pirates were equivalent to "Chinese merchants". Claiming that 'Wo-kou' (Wa Japan pirates) raided the coasts of Fujian Province during late Jiajing Era (1522-1566), Hu Qiuyuan's pointing to AD 1523 for answer to the problem of Japanese piracy has some merits. Hu Qiuyuan stated that Japanese pirates consisted of merchants and navigators from coastal Guangdong-Fujian-Zhejiang provinces and Yangtze River course of Anhui Province. The exemplary of famous Japanese pirates would be an Anhui Prov merchant called Wang1 Zhi. Most well-known Japanese pirate would be the father of Zheng Chenggong who, as so-called Koxinga (i.e., the grandpa [lord]

who was conferred the royal family name of the Ming nation), recovered Taiwan Island from the Dutch in AD 1662. (Zheng Chenggong's mother, by the way, was a Japanese, a manifestation of the affinity of Chinese and Japanese merchants or bandits.)

For one hundred years, Ming China engaged in campaigns against "Japanese pirates". Ming China, by granting access to Macau and Quanzhou, had resorted to Portuguese and Spanish in quelling the pirates. Successive Emperors Rongqing [Ming Muzong] & Wanli [Ming Shenzong] loosened a bit on "sea ban" at the advice of Tang Shun, which, per Hu Qiuyuan, had resulted in overseas Chinese settlements in Southeast Asia. Beginning from Emperor Jiajing's 2nd year, i.e., AD 1523, Ming China completely banned seafaring activities. Hence, Japanese pirates, i.e., "Chinese merchants", popped up in rampage. Japanese piracy ended only when Zheng Zhilong accepted Ming court's pacification. Having ascribed the division point of Opium War to communist school of thoughts, Hu Qiuyuan examined the context of "Japanese piracy" and concluded that it was Ming China's first emperor Zhu Yuanzhang who devised two restraining tactics of i) "eight-part essay" [i.e., stereotyped essay] and ii) sea ban. Hu Qiuyuan stated that though Emperor Jianwen & Emperor Yongle had loosened the sea ban, the emergence of "eunuch politics" at the times of Emperor Yongle would push China into the abyss of "sea ban" after Zheng He's completion of seven voyages. Hu Qiuyuan, calling it a trinity by lumping together i) "eight-part essay", ii) sea ban and iii) eunuch politics, blamed Ming Dynasty for the down-sloping of China at a time when Portuguese still acknowledged China's wealth as something Europe never could match. Zheng He's seven voyages had already destroyed ethnic-Chinese kingdoms in Southeast Asia. The arrival of Portuguese would further wipe out any remnants of such "colonialist" or "capitalist" buds that China ever possessed. (Hu Qiuyuan claimed that European powers could have converged upon China much earlier than 1839-1842 Opium War should there be absent the British-French War and Napoleonic War.)

However, Hu Qiuyuan was not 100% correct in emphasizing the piracy in Jiajing Era (1522-1566). As we would detail below, "*Ming Shi*" clearly recorded that piracy was rampant during the reign of first Ming Emperor Taizu. Some historians said that the Japanese pirates began to raid into China as a result of the unsuccessful Mongol invasions. "*Ming Shi*", in the section on Japan, claimed that after first Ming Emperor Taizu quelled Fang Guozhen & Zhang Shicheng

factions, remnant rebels fled to the islands in the sea and then harassed the coastal Shandong Prov. (There was no differentiation of Chinese rebels from Korean or Japanese pirates here. "*Ming Shi*", in lumping Lin Daoqian's banditry under Japanese pirates in Taiwan, pointed to the collusion between Chinese and Japanese. Merchant Wang[1] Zhi's piracy is further proof of Chinese nativity. Chinese, after the demise of Ming Dynasty, did flock to Japan conspicuously: revoltionary-monk Su Manshu, in 1912 biographical novel "Stories of Stranded Swan" [i.e., "duan hong ling yan ji"], claimed that his maternal ancestors received a vault of books from Chinese exile Zhu Shunshui, i.e., a Ming Dynasty royal member who sailed to Nagasaki in 1644 and attempted to mimick Shen Baoxu's crying seven days and nights for sake of borrowing an army. Zhu Shunshui was later responsible for preaching Wang Yangming thoughts to shogunate.)

Ming Emperor Taizu's Attempt At Reining In Japan

In March of 2nd Year of Hongwu Era [1368-1398], i.e., AD 1369, Ming Emperor Taizu dispatched Yang Zai to Japan for rebuking piracy and threatening Japan with invasion. "*Ming Shi*" said that Japanese King Lianghuai (i.e., Shogunate Zuli [Ashikaga] Lianghuai) ignored the message, invaded Shandong again, and moreover pillaged Wen-Tai-Ming prefectures of Zhenjiang Prov and consecutively Fujian Prov. In March of 1370, Ming Emperor Taizu dispatched Zhang Yang [a magistrate of Laizhou prefecture of Shandong] to Japan. At first, Japanese guards refused to allow in the emissary; however, Japanese king did receive Zhao Yang after reading the official document. Japanese king provided an excuse by likening Zhao Yang to possibly a descendant of Kubilai Khan's emissary Zhao Liangbi. After failing to scare Zhao Yang, Japanese king granted a welcome, dispatched monks to China, offered horses and treasures, and returned 70 Chinese abducted from Mingzhou-Taizhou area. Japanese delegation arrived in Peking in October of 1371. Ming Emperor Taizu, thinking that Indian buddhism might be a good incentive for reining in Japan, would dispatch eight monks to Japan, bestowed "da tong li [grand unification calendar]" to Japanese King, and offered silk and fine cloth. Chinese historians treated Japan's return visit in 1371 as acknowledgment of vassalage. Year 1371 was taken as the start of imperial "sea ban" decree as to private sea commerce, to be reinforced by two decrees in AD 1381 & 1397, respectively.

But, Japanese pirates continued to harass China. In 1371, pirates raided Wenzhou of Zhejiang Prov. Next year, raided Haiyian & Ganpu of Zhejiang as well as Fujian. In 1373, Yu Xian was conferred the post of "zong bing" for patrolling the coast. Pirates raided Lai-Deng of Shandong Prov. Chinese monk Zuchan did not get released till May of 1374. Pirates raided Jiaozhou of Shandong. Japan had internal turmoils in this year. A minister dispatched emissary and tributes to China in July 1374. For lacking Japanese royal stamp, Ming Emperor Taizu declined to receive the emissary. Soon, another island chieftan of Japan came to see Ming Emperor Taizu. Ming Emperor Taizu, after declining both visitations, sent a rebuke to Japanese king. In April of 1376, Japan dispatched monk Gui-ting to China and expressed remorse over piracy. Japan came again in 1379, 1380 (no royal stamp but a letter from prime minister), and 1381 (refused by Taizu). Japanese King Lianghuai hence replied, "Everything under the Heaven being everything under the Heaven, not under one person, minister [me, i.e., King Lianghuai] knows being content though I possess merely 60 cities and 3000 li distance territory... Hearing that Heaven Dynasty was preparing war against [Japan], small country, however, did have strategy for defence: regarding literary skills, Japan had morality articles of Confucius-Mencius creeds, and regarding martial arts, Japan had the military knowledge of Sun-zi & Wu-zi..."

Ming Emperor Taizu, though deeply unhappy over Japan, would refrain from attacking Japan after reflecting on Mongol defeat. Pirates raided Jinxiang & Pingyang in AD 1383. Three years later, Ming Dynasty declined Japan's emissary. In 1387, Zhou Dexing was sent to Fujian coast for fortification inspection. 16 castles were built, 45 patrolling officers were installed, and 15000 soldiers were recruited. Tang He, i.e., Duke Xinguo-gong and emperor's childhood pal, was sent to Zhejiang Prov where 59 castles were built. In Fujian, over hundred ships were built. Guangdong Prov also built ships for later-cancelled campaign in Zhejiang Prov.

Per "*Ming Shi*", rebel minister Hu Weiyong deliberately exiled Lin Xian [a commander in charge of Ningbo-wei garrison of Zhejiang coast] to Japan for collusion and liaison with Japanese. When Hu Weiyong restored Lin Xian's post, the Japanese entourage of 400, in the name of tributes, had hidden powder and swords in huge candles. "*Ming Shi*" claimed that Hu Weiyong aborted the attempt of rebellion using the Japanese entourage. Years later, Emperor Taizu found out about the plot, exterminated Lin Xian's family, hated Japan and

fortified coastal defence. Though, Emperor Taizu still treated Japanese prince Teng-you-shou in a good way and retained him as "guan cai shi" [i.e., observer commissioner] in the capital [Nanking] in May of AD 1382. Emperor Taizu later left a will stating that Japan was among 15 countries not to be campaigned against. In AD 1394, per Yan Qinghuang, foreign commodities were forbidden from circulation in China.

Ming Emperor Chengzu's Stipulating Tally System

In AD 1404, per Yan Qinghuang, fishermen on coastal areas were ordered to cut off the high-rise prow for sake of preventing them from making deep sea trips. Back at the time of Emperor Chengzu enthronement in 1st year of Yongle Era [1403-1424], Zhao Juren & Zhang Hong & monk Dao-cheng, as emissaries of enthronement notification, encountered Japanese delegation at Ningbo port. After Chengzu pardoned Japanese for carrying weapons, Japanese emissary entered capital in Oct. Emperor Chengzu first established a "tally" regulation, with following stipulations: that Japan needed to send in tributes every ten years, that two ships were bestowed onto Japan for tribute trip, that a maximum of 200 entourage be allowed for making the trip, and that any violators would be treated as bandits. In Japan, shogunate made special document to prove to China the real identity of emissaries.

Nov of next year, Japan came to congratulate on Ming crown prince. In Nov of 1406, Japanese King Yuan[1] Daoyi quelled some pirate banditry and surrendered twenty bandit ringleaders to China. Emperor Chengzu returned the captives to Japan for punishment. Japanese emissary, however, steamed to death the captives at Ningbo. In Jan 1407, Emperor Chengzu dispatched emissary to Japan, and Japan returned visit in June. Also in 1407, Zheng He's fleet routed an overseas Chinese base at Jugang Port, i.e., an independent ethnic-Chinese nation headed by Chen Zuyi who possessed a fleet with as many as 28000 soldiers. Altogether 5000 so-called pirates were killed by Zheng He in southeast Asia, and another "pirate" Liang Daoming was pardoned.

In 1407 & 1408, Japan sent in pirate captives. In Nov & Dec, Japan sent in tributes. China dispatched Zhou Quan to Japan for condoling prince Yuan Yichi on the death of Japanese king. In April 1410, Japanese King Yuan[1] Yichi surrendered pirates to China again. In Feb 1410, Emperor Chengzu dispatched Wang Jing to Japan. Wang Jing slipped back from a possible retention. Pirates raided Panshi area. Japan stopped tributes hence. (Note that Chinese records,

from here, consistently claimed that Japanese King's last name was Yuan[1], which would be either "Minamoto" from Minamoto no Yoritomo [r. 1192-1199 ?] or "Gen" from the novel "*Gen-ji [Gen family] Monongadari [story]*". Japanese claimed that Chinese systematically mistook the shogunate as "*Tenno*" the Japanese emperor. <http://sfun.nease.net/mi/wokou.htm> correctly traced the historical events to point to Emperor Chengzu as the start of conferring the shogunate of Minamoto as a king without a slight knowledge of the existence of puppet tenno. Note that the Kamakura shogunate of "Minamoto" family, from late 12th century, overshadowed tenno who was under control by Fujiwara house. In late 13th century, Ashikaga replaced Minamoto Bakufu as the dominant clan till the Onin Wars [1467-1477].)

In 1417, pirates raided Songmen, Jinxiang and Pingyang. Emperor ordered that Luu Yuan released pirates as a show of mercy. In April of 1418, Japanese King dispatched emissary to escort Luu Yuan back to China. In 1419, pirates raided Wangjiashan Island of Liaodong Peninsula. Liu Rong fought against twenty boats of pirates, killed 742 and caught alive 857. Pirates dared not invade Liaodong Peninsula since. In 1422, pirates raided Xiangshan.

Tributes, Payout, Trade & Piracy

In Jan of 1st year of Xuande Era [1426-1435], Emperor Xuanzong dispatched Cai Shan to Ryukyu for relaying a message to Japan. Emperor Xuande changed Chengzu's "tally" regulation, allowing three ships and a maximum of 300 entourage to make the tribute trip. In the summer and autumn of 1427, Japanese King Yuan[1] Yijiao dispatched emissaries. In Oct of 1435, Japan came to congratulate on Emperor Yingzong succession. In Feb 1436, i.e., 1st year of Zhengtong Era [1436-1439], Japanese emissary returned home. In May of 1439, 40 pirate ships raided Taizhou-Ningbo area and pillaged Changguo-wei coastal garrison. In May of 1443, raided Haining of Zhejiang Prov. Two Chinese traitor-guides, i.e., Zhou Laibao [from Huangyan] & Zhong Pufu [from Longyan], were caught and executed. (Zhou Laibao & Zhong Pufu fled to Japan during Emperor Renzong's Hongxi Era, i.e., Zhu Gaochi's only year of reign 1425.) "*Ming Shi*" claimed that Japanese pirates pretended to be diplomatic delegation at time of seeing Chinese defence and acted as pirates at time of seeing no Chinese defence. More, Japanese emissaries brought along ten times the necessary "tribute goodies" in exchange for imperial betowals. When Chinese protocol minister cut down the payout, Japanese were unhappy. During early year of Tianshun Era [1457-1464], as a result of Japanese emissary's offending China on

the matter of payout, Japan King Yuan Yizheng asked Korean King relay a message for pardon. Emperor Yingzong, who obtained throne back from Daizong, would ask Korea relay a message as to dispatchment of a senior good-behavior Japanese emissary for visiting China.

Japan would not dispatch emissary with horses till the summer of 1468, i.e., Emperor Xianzong's Chenghua Era [1465-1487]. Three entourage, who claimed to be Ningbo villagers abducted by Japanese during childhood, asked for homage to ancestral home. Court approved the request but advised them against inviting villagers for sailing to the seas. In Nov, Japanese emissary Qingqi Fu came to visit China but injured Chinese on market. When emperor pardoned him, later Japanese began to behave more audaciously. In Sept of 1477, Japanese asked for buddhist textbooks as well as extra bestowal of 50000 unit ['guan'] of currency. Japan came again in Nov of 1484. In March of 1496, i.e., Emperor Xiaozong's Hongzhi Era [1488-1505], Japan King Yuan Yigao dispatched emissary to China. En route of return, Japanese emissary killed Chinese in Jining. Emperor decreed that 50 Japanese would be allowed to come to capital while the rest stay on boat. In the winter of 1505, at the time of Wuzong enthronement, Japanese came again. Japanese came again during winter of 1509, i.e., Emperor Wuzong's Zhengde Era [1506-1521]. Protocol official made an allocation for Japanese emissary to sit at the 7th row to the west of palace during Jan 1510 banquet. Protocol official further cut the bestowal for Japanese sailing only one boat of tribute to China. In spring of 1510, King Yuan Yicheng dispatched Song Suqing to China. Japanese emissary bribed grand eunuch Liu Jing with 1000 tales of gold as well as "flying fish" clothes. (Song Suqing was originally a Chinese sold to Japanese emissary by a uncle for owing money. Yan Qinghuang mentioned several other names of Chinese serving foreign countries, i.e., Chen Ziren representing Thai delegation in AD 1381, Zeng Shouxian in 1405 & 1410, Huang Zishun in 1427, and Xie Wenbin in AD 1477; Xiao Mingju representing Malacca kingdom delegation in AD 1508.) When Japanese came again in 1512, Ming China's coastal official asked them store tributes in Zhejiang Prov's coffer because banditry were rampant in Shandong Prov. Protocol official instructed that Nanking official receive Japanese emissary with banquet and betowals instead of sending them along to Peking.

Emperor Jiajing [Ming Shizong] Punishing Japanese Rivalry Emissaries
In May of 1523, i.e., Emperor Shizong's Jiajing Era [1522-1566], Japanese

emissary Zong-she came to Ningbo. Shortly afterward, Song Suqing & Rui-zuo's delegation came to Ningbo too. The two Japanese parties fought each other for the real identity as Japan's tribute emissary. Song Suqing bribed eunuch Lai En. Because Song Suqing sat ahead of Zong-she, Zong-she became angry, killed Rui-zuo, burnt ship, and chased Song Suqing to Shaoxing city. Zong-she then pillaged his way back to Ningbo, abducted Ming officials, and fled to seas on captured boats. Ming official Liu Jing died in chasing Japanese on the seas. Ming "xun an shi" [patrol & pacify emissary] Ou Zhu reported to emperor what Song Suqing disclosed, stating that he Song Suqing had come to China with Japan's Hongzhi-era tally via "south Japan sea" because Japan's Zhengde-era tally was robbed by Duoluo Yixig family when passing through "west Japan sea". Protocol department doubted Song Suqing's account. Ming "yu shi" [inspector] Xiong Lan advised emperor in shutting down customs and declining Japanese tributes. At this time, partial of the Zong-she gang was blown to Korea where 30 members were killed and two were caught alive for surrender to China. Both Song Suqing and surviving members of Zong-she gang were placed in custody in Zhejiang Prov prison where they died.

Meanwhile, emperor asked Ryukyu emissary Zheng Mian relay a message to Japan that they send in Zong-she and return abducted Chinese before China re-opened customs or received Japanese tributes. In 1530, Ryukyu emissary Cai Han passed through Japan and picked up a letter from Japan King Yuan Yijing explaining why Song Suqing had taken Hongzhi-era tally to China and requesting for the new Jiajing-era tally. Protocol official declined the request on basis of the fact that Japan king did not affix royal seal. Japan King Yuan Yijing did not send in emissary till July of 1539, after an elapse of 17 years. Emperor decreed that protocol official examine the sincerity and authenticity of the delegation, with an order to ban exchange and trade between two countries should there be lack of such sincerity and authenticity.

In Feb of 1540, new Japanese emissary came to the capital for Jiajing-era tally and requested for the return of Song Suqing. Protocol suggested to emperor that new tallies should not be issued till old tallies were cancelled and that Xuande-era regulation as to 3 boats and ten year interval should be enforced. When Japanese came in July of 1544, China refused them for lack of royal document as well as the regulation as to ten year interval. However, Japanese loitered on the coast. Gao Jie ("xun an shi" [patrol & pacify emissary]) petitioned for a stringent ban of commerce between Japan and China. "*Ming*

Shi" stated that Chinese cunning merchants opted to trade with Japanese secretly. In June of 1547, Yang Jiuze ("xun an shi" [patrol & pacify emissary]) requested for a united command in Fujian-Zhejiang provinces for dealing with piracy. Zhu Wan was sent to the coast for the job. Soon, Japanese King Yuan [Minamoto - mistaken as Tenno the Japanese emperor] Yijing dispatched Zhou Liang, 4 ships and 600 people to the coast where they waited for the next year to get ashore in accordance with 10 year interval ruling [since last trip in 1539]. When emperor declined the tribute for Japanese exceeding the ship number, Japanese raided Ningbo and Taizhou prefectures in Dec. Zhou Liang came again in June of next year but was arrested by Chinese. Zhu Wan persuade emperor into pardoning Zhou Liang for the long distance trip through perilous seas and agreed to allow 100 Japanese come to the capital. Zhou Liang stated that Japan had added one more ship to the delegation because they had to fight against Chinese merchant pirates in the seas and on the islands. Zhou Liang surrendered 15 expired Hongzhi-era tallies and 40 Zhengde-era tallies, claiming that the rest Hongzhi-era tallies had been stolen by Song Suqing.

Rich Chinese Of Fujian-Zhejiang Provinces Hating "Sea Ban" Policy

Ming Shi" stated that though Japanese king continued the tributes, the rest of Japanese island lords had resorted to piracy in collusion with Chinese outlaws. Pirates, known as Wo-k'ou, had been plundering the Chinese coast for hundreds of years, and they used Taiwan as a base or hideout. When chased by the Ming forces, these pirates would flee to Penghu Islands (Pescadores), and then to Taiwan. Zhu Wan often decapitated whoever trafficked with Wo-k'ou, no matter Japanese or Chinese "outlaws". Further, *Ming Shi*" claimed that wealthy people on the coast, who treasured the Japanese as big clients, often complained about Ming China's sea ban policy. Hence, Zhu Wan was hated by Fujian-Zhejiang people. Zhou Liang of Fujian Prov managed to lodge accusations against Zhu Wan by means of acquaintances in the court, forcing Zhu Wan into a suicide. For the next four years, Ming China did not fill in the "xun hu" [pacifier, i.e., governor-equivalent] post causing vacated by Zhu Wan.

Further, Ming Dynasty revoked its "customs officer" and closed down market at Ningbo during Ming Shizong's reign. Cunning Chinese merchants took over the job of evaluation and often treated Japanese traders bad in compensation. As a result of sea ban, major merchants such as Wang1 Zhi, Xu Hai, Chen Dong & Ma Ye fled to islands to engage in trading. Japanese often obeyed their command. Wang1 Zhi, Xu Hai, Chen Dong & Ma Ye adopted Japanese clothing and banners

for pillaging the coast as a better alternative to trading. By July of 1552, Ming China restored the "xun hu" [pacifier, i.e., governor-equivalent] post, which was too late.

Pirates Rampaging Coastline

"*Ming Shi*" claimed that ancestral garrison had been replaced with fishermen as watchtower guards, which was a no match for pirates. In March of 1553, Wang1 Zhi invaded China with hundreds of ships along the Jiangsu-Zhejiang coast. Changguo-wei garrison was sacked. In April, pirates attacked Taichang and then Shanghai, Jiangyin and Zhapu. In Aug, raided Jinshanwei, and then Chongming, Changshu & Jiading.

Yan Qinghuang pointed out that sea ban had loosened in AD 1567 as a result of petitioning by To Zemin the Governor of Fujian Prov. The abortion of "sea ban" could be attributed to many factors, including the arrival of Europeans. Back in AD 1553, Portuguese, claiming that their merchandise was wet due to a storm, requested with Deputy Coastal Magistrate Wang Bo for landing at Macao to dry their goods. Once they landed, they refused to leave, and moreover built houses and castles by bribing Wang Bo by means of a secret treaty, with clauses such as i) surrendering 1000 taels of silver to Wang Bo per year (500 taels of silver per Deng Kaisong), and ii) changing the name to Pu-tao-li-a (Portugal) from Folangji (Falangji), and etc.

Pirates, Toyotomi Hideyoshi , & Korea

Pirates & Taiwan

When 'Wo-kou' (Wa Japan pirates) raided the coasts of Fujian Province during late Jiajing Era (1522-1566), General Qi Jiguang was assigned the post of "*da jiangjun*" [grand general]. Qi Jiguang drove off the pirates, and Wo-kou fled to seek refuge on Taiwan Island. A Chinese follower of Wo-kou pirates, called Lin Daoqian, being unhappy over Wo-kou's controlling him, sailed to a different place of Taiwan and cultivated the land into Daoqian-gang Port. Taiwan aboriginals, under the pillaging by the Wo-kou pirates, vacated the beach lands for the high mountains. Later, Chinese merchant ships sailed to Taiwan and had exchanges with those aboriginals.

'Wo-kou' (Wa Japan pirates) continued to raid China. In the autumn of 1584, a Japanese pirate, by the name of Duo-yan-chang-ang, led 3000 cavalry on an attack at Liujiakou. A Ming captain, Shen Yourong, led 29 brave soldiers against the pirates at night and defeated them. After that, Fujian Governor (*zhong cheng*) ordered Shen Yourong, who was *pian jiangjun* (para-general) at Xiamen (Amoy), campaign against the Japanese pirates on Taiwan. In early 1603, Shen Yourong led 21 ships against Taiwan. On a snowy night, Shen lost 7 ships to typhoon near Penghu Islands. But Shen managed to continue on his sailing. Upon the arrival of Ming army, Japanese pirates sailed their ships out of the port for a confrontation. Shen Yourong burnt 3 Japanese ships, retrieved 370 Chinese taken captives by the pirates, and drove the Japanese pirates off the Taiwan Island.

Lin Daoqian later fled to Bei-da-nian of Thailand, while pirate Lin Feng fled to the Philipines where he fought a war against the Spanish. Since Chinese court treated those who fled the country as "defectors" or traitors, Chinese government rendered no protection for those who suffered massacre or persecutions overseas. In AD 1603, Spanish colluded with Japanese and natives in attacking Chinese and eradicated the Chinatown which once boasted of 25000 Chinese. Fujian governor Xu Xueju stated to the emperor that overseas Chinese cared only about money, that relatives had no love for them who did not care to come home for Spring Festival, and that Chinese government should not pity them...

By the end of Wanli Era (1573-1620), 'hong (red) mao (hair) fan (barbarians)', i.e., the Dutch, reached island, and island came to be know as Taiwan.

Beginning from Ming Dynasty, records about Taiwan began to show up in details. "*Ming Shi*" (History of Ming Dynasty) stated that Zheng Heh, who conducted seven expeditions between 1405 and 1433, disliked Taiwan for its not catching up in submission of tributes to the emperor as the rest of the world did. Zheng Heh should know that Taiwan people, with no statelet or king, had no way to send in tributes or have relations with mainland China. Ming government treated Penghu Islands (Pescadores) as its territories, but not Taiwan. It is said that the Mongolian Yuan Dynasty had established a post on the Penghu Islands (Pescadores). But in AD 1388, the Ming government abolished the garrison station.

Jesuit Visits To Ming China

It would be in Ming Dynasty's history book that we found descriptions of Europe and modern Europeans, namely, 'cat-eyed', 'eagle-mouthed', and 'red-haired'. Interestingly, Ming Chinese did not talk too much about the Portuguese who were known as 'Fulangji' (a word mutated from 'Frank' and also meant for cannons that Arabs mimicked on basis of European inventions), while the Dutch was nicknamed 'Hongmaogui', namely, red-haired devils. In this sense, the Portuguese could appear much more different than the Dutch, and it made sense if the Portuguese sailors were mostly Italians who enjoyed relatively darker hair and skin than northern Europeans.

The idea of 'revolution' (a word cited by Confucius for Cheng-Tang Revolution) was directly responsible for the later French Revolution in Europe. Professor Lock Hoe had commented that China's dynastic changes and revolutions (as seen in the saying 'Every 50 Years, A Cycle In Cathay') had served as an illuminating guide for the Jesuits who visited China in the 16-17th centuries, and it was due to the Jesuits who propagated the egalitarian and revolutionary ideas that led to the conclusion that French or British royal houses could be overthrown by a 'revolution'. Confucius first described the Shang Tang replacement of the first Chinese dynasty of Xia as a 'revolution'. Dr. Sun Ya-tsen cited the 'revolution' concept in calling for an overthrown of Manchu rule in late 19th century.

During Ming Emperor Shenzong's Wanli Era (AD 1573-1620), Europeans began to come into China in flocks. First Portuguese ship arrived at Guangdong Prov coastline in AD 1514. There were a group of people called Da-xi-yang-ren (i.e., Atlantis people or Atlantic people) visiting China, and they claimed that Jesus Christ was born in Lu-de-ya (i.e., Palestine). At the same timeframe, an Italian by the name of Li-ma-dou (Mattco Ricci) arrived at Xiangshan-ao of Canton and then went on to the Chinese capital of Peking in approx AD 1581 and presented a map with five continents. Mattco Ricci stated that Jesus Christ was born in the second year of Han Emperor Aidi, i.e., 1 BC, and that it would be 1581 years till the then current year 1581 or the 9th year of Wanli Era. By the 29th year, i.e., AD 1601, Ricci's Christianity spread to Peking by presenting 'tributes' to Emperor Shenzong, and the missionaries claimed to be Atlantic people.

Protocol Ministry cited classics "*Hui Dian*" in saying that there was only Suo-li-guo, no Da-xi-yang-guo, that the Italians did not present tributes till 20 years later, and that the pictures of Jesus Christ and St Mary did not sound a reasonable religion. Protocol Ministry suggested that Ming Dynasty sent the Italians back to their country with some imperial bestowals, but emperor did not make any decree; Protocol Ministry then suggested that Italians be relocated to the mountains of Jiangxi Prov instead of allowing them to stay on in the capital, but the emperor still refused to issue any decree. Later, Emperor Shenzong, for appreciating Ricci's long distance travel to China, offered guesthouse, special privileges and kind treatment. Ricci hence settled down in China till his death in April of 1609 and was buried to the west of Peking. After Ricci would be Pang-di-wo (?) and Xiong-san-ba (P. Sabbathinus de Urisis) who brought solar calendar to China. Another two missionaries, Wang-feng-su () and Yang-ma-ruo (), settled down in Nanking and converted tens of thousands Chinese. A protocol ministry official, Xu Ruke, unhappy over the missionary's bragging about Italy, would propose to have the missionaries expelled. In AD 1616, another official, Yu Maoci, likened Christianity to White Lotus Society. Emperor Shenzong decreed to have Wang-feng-su and Pang-di-wo expelled to Guangdong Prov for sailing back to Italy. But Emperor Shenzong's order was not enforced. Two years later, Pang-di-wo wrote a letter to the emperor stating that he had come with Ricci on this 90,000 li sea trip in the wish to see the glory of China, that they had been eating on Chinese stipends for 17 years, and that they were willing to leave for their home country once the wind changed direction. "*Ming Shi*" stated that Pang-di-wo's letter was not submitted to the emperor, and he changed his name and entered Nanking again for preaching Christianity.

During Emperor Chongzhen's reign, i.e., AD 1628-1644, Ming officials often called upon the Italians in Macao for teaching the skills of making and firing the cannons. In AD 1628, Protocol Ministry's "*shang shu*" [secretary] Xu Guangqi asked Luo-ya-gu (P. Jacobus Pho) and Tang-ruo-wang (Schall von Beu Jean Adam [original name Johan Adom Shall von Bell]) edit a Chinese version of solar calendar called "*Emperor Chongzhen Calendar*". Tang-ruo-wang was a German who had come to China around AD 1621 at the request of Ricci with the Roman Catholic Church. With the help of Xu Guangqi (who had earlier translated geometry into Chinese with the help of Ricci) and Li Zizao, Christianity spread among the Chinese. "*Ming Shi*" stated that the missionaries

were often scholars who were keen on preaching religion, only, and they were not after material gains or sexual exploitation of Chinese women. Famous among them would include Italians like Long-hua-min (P.Nicolao Longobardi), Bi-fang-ji, and Ai-ru-luue (Jules Aleni). Deng-yue-han (P.Joannes Terrenz) was from Ri-er-ma-ni-ya, Pang-di-wo was from Yi-xi-ba-ni-ya, and Yang-ma-ruo was from Bo-er-du-wa-er. This time period also marked an introduction of Chinese history, literature and philosophy to the West as a result of cooperation between learned Chinese classics scholars and learned Jesuits. (The next wave of cross-translation would be led by scholar Yan Fu in late Manchu Qing Dynasty and Su Manshu in early Republican years.)

Tang-ruo-wang would be responsible for making several hundreds of cannons for defending Peking against Li Zicheng's peasant rebellion. However, Ming court collapsed after generals fled the capital and eunuchs surrendered the city. After Manchu takeover, Tang-ruo-wang made a new calendar for regent Duo-er-gun in AD 1645, and later he was conferred a post as "shao qing" [junior imperial minister] at Tai-chang-shi [a government ministry]. For his efforts at disuading the regent from attempt at Manchu throne, Tang-ruo-wang was taken as "grandpa" by Manchu Emperor Shunzhi. From AD 1651 to 1664, converted Chinese christians numbered around 100000. Tang-ruo-wang was said to have persuaded dowager empress Xiaozhuang-taihou into selecting Emperor Kangxi for the reason that Kangxi, after already going through chickenpox, would be immune to the disease all life long. Tang-ruo-wang would later be persecuted by the four Manchu ministers who overpowered Emperor Kangxi till his gaining regency at adulthood.

During Manchu time period, Nan-huai-ren (Ferdinandus Verbiest), a Belgian, continued Tang-ruo-wang's work in China. In AD 1668, Nan-huai-ren gained an upper hand over a Manchu Qing official Wu Mingxuan. Emperor Kangxi, however, prohibited Catholics by imprisoning Charles Thomas Maillard de Tournon who arrived in China in AD 1705 with a pope order as to exclusion of Heaven, ancestors and Confucius among Christian converts. American Robert Morrison arrived in China in AD 1807.

Ming China's War With Portuguese

Christopher Columbus discovered the New World in AD 1492, Portuguese

navigator Diaz reached the Cape of Good Hope in 1486, and Portuguese navigator, Vasco da Gama, opened the sea route between Europe and India by way of the Cape of Good Hope in AD 1497. Portugal was the first European power to invade Asia. Vasco da Gama reached Calcutta in 1497. Portuguese established two castles in India in 1501 and 1502. In AD 1510, they captured Goa of India; in AD 1511, they destroyed the kingdom of Malacca; and in AD 1514, they arrived in China, ultimately swindling Macao in AD 1553. Portuguese, however, still had confusion about the identity of China as reported by the Jesuits throughout 16th century. Aly Mazaheri, an ethnic Iranian and a French sinologist, in *La Route De La Soie* (1983), claimed stated that Portuguese governor in India dispatched Benoit Goez on an overland trip via Silk Road to verify that the Khitay was the same as China, which culminated in Benoit Goez's arrival in Suzhou [Gansu Prov] in AD 1604.

In AD 1514, i.e., 9th Year of Ming Emperor Wuzong's Zhengde Era, the first Portuguese ship arrived at Guangdong Prov coastline. This is disputable since 1514 was only the year when Pi-lei-si authorized the book *Suma Oriental* in which he described a port called Oquen (i.e., Haojing or Macao in English, subject to Xiangshan-xian county which was first established in AD 1386) and possibly derived his knowledge from Chinese merchants in Malacca. Deng Kaisong's *Land-Sea Ebb Of Macao* stated that Portuguese merchant Jorge Alvares came to Dunmen (i.e., HK) of Dongguan-xian county for trading in spices in AD 1513. Jorge Alvares was forbidden from landing ashore; however, he managed to erect a stone slate bearing his name, and years later, he was buried besides this slate when he made a second visit and died of illness.

More ships came to China thereafter. In August of AD 1517, Fernas Peresd Andrade and Thomas Pirez, under a purported king's order, led eight warships to the Pearl River Mouth after two month voyage. Andrade's three ships sailed along the river to Canton where the two guys requested for a meeting with Ming Dynasty's governor-general in the name of Falangji [Fulangji] Statelet. Local officials, unable to find the name of 'Fulangji' in the list of alien statelets, requested with the emperor for disposal of Portuguese 'tributes'. Andrade was recorded to have inspected the city defence of Canton and then returned to Dunmen (today's HK), while Pirez stayed on in Canton.

An Arab who worked for the Portuguese as an interpreter would bribe Ming official Wu Tingju for approval to go to Peking. Deng Kaisong stated that this

interpreter, named "Huo-zhe-a-san", claimed that he was a representative of Malacca king who was asked to escort the Portuguese to China; however, Deng Kaisong pointed out that the dethroned Malacca king later dispatched an emissary to China, exposed the interpreter as a fake, and caused the guy into confessing that he was a Chinese in origin.

Ming Dynasty ordered that Fernas Peresd Andrade return to Malacca while Thomas Pirez, i.e., Portuguese emissary, was retained in Canton for three years. Ming Emperor Wuzong (Zhu Houzhao, r. 1506-1521) made a southern tour. The same interpreter bribed an eunuch by the name of Jiang Bin to have Thomas Pirez meet with the emperor. In Jan 1520, Pirez departed Canton for the north, and in May, arrived in Nanking where he met Ming emperor. Thomas Pirez was said to have taught Emperor Wuzong the language of Portuguese. They returned to Peking together.

In AD 1520, Ming Dynasty verified that Fulangji (i.e., Portugal) had incorporated the land of Malacca that was considered a Ming vassal. Two Ming *yu shi* (censor) officials, Qiu Daorong and He Ao, submitted proposal for expelling the Portuguese from the coast for Portuguese's bombarding Canton in prior year and disturbing markets of Canton. By 1521, Emperor Shizong (Zhu Houcong, r 1522-1566) issued the decree of expulsion right after enthronement. The interpreter was executed after confessing that he was a Chinese in origin, while Thomas Pirez was driven to Guangdong coast from Peking. Thomas Pirez, who was retained as a hostage for Portuguese restoration of Malacca kingdom, later died in prison in Guangdong Prov.

Around this timeframe, Fernas Peresd Andrade's brother, Simao Addrade, led 4 ships to the river mouth where he erected fences, built houses, set up barracks, and lay a stone monument. Records from Xin'an-xian County stated that the Portuguese encircled the land of Dunmen, manufactured weapons, occupied islands, robbed ships, and killed Chinese. Some descriptions claimed that Portuguese, being cannibals, even ate little children for food. Further, Simao Addrade intercepted merchant ships sailing in and out of the Perl River and abducted young people and children. Simao Addrade slipped away after Chinese resisted him. Meantime, in AD 1521, Portugal Governor for Malacca dispatched Diego Calvo to Canton for replacing Simao Addrade, with shiploads of sandalwood and pepper. However, Ming official Wang[1] Hong led an attack at Diego Calvo. Calvo fled during a night. Portuguese then sent a fleet of 5 ships

and 1000 men for another landing at Dunmen, and moreover built garrisons on Dayushan Island. Hence, the Sino-Portuguese War of 1521-1522 broke out. Wang[1] Hong, with 50 ships, attacked Portuguese with fire in August.

During Sino-Portuguese War, Wang Hong took advantage of Portuguese ships' difficulty in manoeuvring the change of direction and attacked the Portuguese with fire materials fully loaded in small Chinese ships. Deng Kaisong stated that on the early morning of Sept 8th 1521, Portuguese concentrated their staff onto three big ships for breaking through the encirclement. Portuguese slipped away by taking advantage of a big storm. In July 1522, Portuguese fleet came to China again and encountered Chinese fleet at Xicaowan Bay of Xinhui county, stating that they only intended for trade. But the Chinese refused them and hence engaged in another navy battle. Chinese fleet captured ten Portuguese ships, killed 35... Records from "*Ming Emperor Shizong's Factual Chronicles*", per scholars Yuan Bangjian and Yuan Guixiu, stated that Ke Rong (Ming general against Japanese pirates), Wang Yingsi (hundred household official), and Panding (a so-called 'cultivated or converted person of alien origin) climbed up two Portuguese ships, killed about 35 Portuguese, captured 43 (42?) Portuguese alive (including Bie-du-lu and Shu-shi-li), caught about 10 men and women (captives of the Portuguese?), and caused numerous others fall off the ships and get drowned in the seas. Some confusion as to the punctuation of the wording: *Ming Emperor Shizong's Factual Chronicles* stated that 3 other Portuguese ships came to the relief; ? burnt the two ships caught earlier; Wang Yingsi sacrificed his life; and the Portuguese fled.

In AD 1522, Ming China re-asserted the old policy of 'sea ban'. Scholar Gu Yanwu recorded that tributes lessened as a result of sea ban; however, the order of Canton improved drastically. Inside of Ming Dynasty appeared two factions, the con and pro as to 'sea ban' (with variant forms like 'seafaring ban' for the Chinese as well as 'iron export ban' for the Chinese merchants). Deng Kaisong stated that in AD 1529, Governor Lin Fu for Guangdong-Guangxi provinces petitioned Ming court for re-opening Canton port. Ming court decreed: 1) that the ports of Quanzhou of Fujian and Ningbo of Zhejiang be closed down, 2) that only Canton port be allowed to operate, 3) that foreign merchants must present the proof of their government's submission of tribute before they could trade, 4) that foreign merchants of each country could only sail to China at pre-designated interval of years, on one ship only, with maximum personnel capped at 100. Over a dozen wharfs outside of Pearl River, including Haojing (i.e.,

Macao), were utilized for customs inspection, with tariff set at 10%. On those wharfs, foreign merchants built temporary residences that were sold to later-coming merchants in lieu of dismantling per Ming China's policy.

By AD 1535, Ming court loosened the ban, with a coastal official by the name of Huang Qing taking bribes from foreigners and moving the 'trading & ships governing office' to Haojingao (i.e., Macao) from Dianbai-xian county. Ming China's "trading & ships governing office" was originally located at Canton, moved to Dianbai county during Zhengde Era, and finally relocated to Macao by Huang Qing in 1535. Historians speculated that among Huang Qing's annual surrender of 20,000 units of gold as taxes could be Portuguese bribery.

After the defeat in Pearl River Mouth, the Portuguese sailed towards Fujian-Zhejiang coasts and colluded with Japanese pirates in engaging in "simoultaneous commerce and piracy", killing coastal Chinese near Zhuangzhou of Fujian and Ningbo of Zhejiang. From 1547 to 1549, Ming Governor Zhu Wan, also the imperial commissioner for coastal defence of Fujian and Zhejiang provinces, launched three attacks at the Portuguese, wiping out Portuguese strongholds at Shuangyu (Ningbo, Zhejiang), and killed and captured over 239 Portuguese at Wuyu (Zhuangzhou, Fujian) and Zoumaxi (Shaoan, Fujian). Portuguese records stated that as many as 800 Portuguese might have died and 37 ships burnt during the war with Governor Zhu Wan for Zhejiang Prov.

Portuguese, who were driven off from Zhejiang and Fujian coasts, returned to Guangdong coastline. Portuguese, taking advantage of the new policy, returned to Shangchuan Island of Xinhui (i.e., today's Taishan county) and Langbai of Xiangshan county. Portuguese were able to trade by disguising in the names of other countries. They bribed local officials for rights to trading, and dwelled on Langbaiao Island as temporary residency. In AD 1553, Portuguese, claiming that their merchandise was wet due to a storm, requested with Deputy Coastal Magistrate Wang Bo for landing at Macao to dry their goods. (Deputy Coastal Magistrate had 1000 soldiers under him.) Once they landed, they refused to leave, and moreover built houses and castles. Yuan Jianbang and Yuan Guixiu, in their book *Brief History of Macao* (Zhongliu Publishing House, HK, 1988 edition), cited Huang Wenkuan's research that Portuguese had bribed Wang Bo by means of a secret treaty, with clauses such as i) surrendering 1000 taels of silver to Wang Bo per year (500 taels of silver per Deng Kaisong), and ii) changing the name to Pu-tao-li-a (Portugal) from Fo-lang-ji (Falangji), and etc.

Deng Kaisong affirmed the bribe by listing Portuguese commander Souza's 1556 letter to King Louis. Souza claimed that he had deliberately prohibited Portuguese from going ashore to transact business in AD 1552 and thereafter reached a peace deal with "Hai [sea] Tau [magistrate]" (i.e., Ming China's coast magistrate). By 1557, Portuguese built permanent houses in Macao. Though, Portuguese did not get to trade in lands other than the coast. In AD 1563, Macau possessed 4100 Chinese, 900 Portuguese and Malaysian/Blacks. Ming Court did not check out the fake name of Portugal till AD 1565, by which time Ming court once again declined Portugal's "tributes". Deng Kaisong stated that Ming China did not check out the bribe till deputy coastal magistrate succeeded Wang Bo in AD 1571 and thereafter surrendered 500 taels of silver to the imperial coffer. Deng Kaisong further cited Montalto de Jesus's AD 1573 account in describing the formality of Portuguese surrendering 500 taels as well as the deputy coastal magistrate acknowledgement of taking in the silver on behalf of the emperor. In Macau, Portuguese men first interbred with women they brought over from Africa, India and Malaysia, and then found the supply of Chinese women.

Portuguese Lease Of Macau

In AD 1574, Ming China built a customs gate, i.e., "guan zha", a pass that was dismantled by the Portuguese in AD 1874. Portuguese were controlled by Ming China by means of opening up the gate once every five days for supply of fresh water, vegetables and food. By 1582, Ming China signed an official treaty with Portugal in regards to lease of Macao, stipulating that Portuguese surrender 500 taels of silver to Xiangshan County per year. (Portuguese additionally might have surrendered 20,000? taels of silver in taxation.) 500 taels continued till AD 1849 when Governor A-ma-le declared a discontinuation of rent payment by taking advantage of China's defeat in the British opium war.

Though Portugal fell under Spanish rule in AD 1581, Portuguese, for securing the monopolization of the trade route between Manila and China, deliberately arrested and expelled Spanish in 1590, and in 1598-1599, respectively. Around 1599, a Spanish warship from Manila shipwrecked near Macao, with 120 survivors. Spanish commander dispatched two columns of soldiers for relief with Canton and Macau. Two soldiers were taken into custody by the Portuguese in Macao. Chinese sold the Spanish a ship. Spanish, while going to Macao for fetching the two soldiers, were driven away by the Portuguese governor.

On Sept 27th 1601, two Dutch warships, after a defeat in Indonesia, intruded into Macao. Portuguese, whose ally Spain had suffered defeat in the alliance of Britain and Neatherlands, forcefully arrested and executed 17 Dutch who came ashore via a landing vessel. Only a Dutch merchant and two juniors were set free in Malacca later. In retaliation, Dutch raided Portuguese merchant ships in the Straits of Malacca, and in March 1603, abducted Portuguese Ship Ka-te-li-na (Katalina?) and auctioned off Chinese silk products at a worth of 3,4000,000 Dutch dollars in Amsterdam. Dutch, later in the year, near Macao, raided a Portuguese ship destined for Japan and burnt the ship after removing commodities valued at 1,400,000 Dutch dollars. Piracy continued till a peace treaty between Neatherlands and Spain was signed in 1609.

Some officials inside Ming China still objected to Portugal's leasing Macao, especially after the Portuguese built a church on Qingzhoushan Mountain across the waters in 1606. Ming China, at Macao, instituted officials in charge of customs inspection, pirate defence, coastline patrolling, imperial decree office and etc. In 1608, Xiangshan County magistrate Cai Shanji stipulated ten rules for managing Macao and in 1611 submitted the ten rule regulation to Governor Zhang Minggang. In AD 1613, Guo Shangbin rebuked Portuguese in front of the emperor. Xiangshan County magistrate Zhang Dayou petitioned for destructing the church. In AD 1613, Governor Zhang Minggang dispatched deputy coastal magistrate Yu Anxing to Macao where Yu Anxing and Xiangshan county magistrate Dan Qiyuan forced the Portuguese into surrendering 123 Japanese for deportation to Japan. Yu Anxing and Dan Qiyuan stipulated the "sea ban regulations" in the areas of i) Portuguese custody of Japanese, ii) human smuggling of Chinese, iii) prohibition of adopting Chinese children, iv) no loitering of foreign ships outside of Macao port, v) no under-table trading, and vi) hold on building new residencies in Macao. The "sea ban regulations" were carved on a stone monument.

In AD 1614, Ming China established a garrison ("can jiang fu") at Yongbo with 1000 soldiers. Later in 1621, official Feng Conglong dispatched people for destroying the church with no resistancce from Portuguese. Ming China moved the garrison closer to Macao, from Yongbo to Qianshan, i.e., Qianshan-zai Garrison, and increased staff to 700 field soldiers and 1200 navy soldiers as well as allocated altogether 50 patrolling ships across all wharfs of Macao. In AD 1618, Coastal Magistrate Yu Anxing stipulated 5 rules for managing Portuguese under the system of 'bao jia' (i.e., collective household supervision and

punishment), and inscribed the rules on stone monument. By AD 1621, Macau population reached 25,000.

On April 10th 1622, 15 Dutch warships, with a total of 2000 soldiers, departed Batavia for attacking Macao. On May 29th, two herald Dutch ships and two herald British ships began attacking ships near Macao as well as bombarded Macao. In Macao, only 50 musketeers and 100 civilians were available for defence while another 30 soldiers were invited to Ming China's capital of Peking 5 months ago for exhibiting Macao-made heavy cannons. On June 21st, Dutch main fleet arrived. On the night of 22nd, three Dutch soldiers stealthily got ashore for checking out the geography. On the afternoon of 23rd, Dutch commander bombarded Macao and shouted that "by tomorrow all those Portuguese above age 20 would be headless". On 24th, Macao battery, i.e., Citadel of Sao Paulo do Monte, destroyed one Dutch warship. At about 7:00 am, 800 Dutch soldiers landed on the beach via 37 small vessels. After Dutch commander was shot in the stomach, a colonel was in charge of beachhead landing. With 40 dead, Dutch landed on the shore. However, Portuguese cannons soon hit the Dutch powder bins. Portuguese defeated Dutch on all fronts, and then together with Black slaves, charged into Dutch, killed the Dutch interim commander, and drove remnants into the sea. More than half of 600 Dutch column were killed or drowned. Portuguese records stated that they had killed about 600 Dutch with a casualty of 10 deaths. June 24th would become Macao's city holiday.

In AD 1623, Portuguese, on the pretext of defending against the Dutch, built a highrise city wall with batteries on it, with a perimeter extending 1380 'zhang' (equiv to 10 Chinese feet). Though Deputy Coastal Magistrate Xu Ruke destroyed the wall in AD 1624-1625, the remaining base had become a dividing line between Macao and Xiangshan County, till AD 1849. During the first half of 19th century, Portuguese traded heavily with Japan as well as interbred with Japanese women. When Japan persecuted Catholics, they kicked out Japanese women who lived with Portuguese men. Batches of Japanese women as well as Japanese Catholics fled to asylum in Macau. Portuguese found supply of Chinese women again when Manchu took over control of China and drove lots of refugees into Macau. By AD 1640, population reached 40,000, among whom Chinese numbered 20,000 and Portuguese numbered 6000.

In AD 1635, British, who had assisted Portuguese in shipping copper and metals

to Goa one year ago but were refused entry into Macao, would dispatch 6 warships to Macao for trading with China. When British moored near Macao on June 25th 1637, Portuguese refused entry to the British. British, however, sailed along Pearl River towards Canton, bombarded Humen Battery when Chinese tried to stop them, and did not retreat till Chinese allowed some of their goods transferred to Canton. Thereafter, British, by pretending to provide cover to Portuguese in passage through Dutch-blockaded Malacca Strait, gained access to Macao. Only after Chinese intervention did the British leave Macao. British would not return to Macao till AD March 18th 1802, about 160 years later, after Britain grabbed Goa from Portugal in 1801 by taking advantage of the Portuguese defeat in Portuguese-Franco War.

Portuguese & Manchu Qing Dynasty

Manchu China at first adopted the "beachland clearance" policy, forcing Chinese off the coastal areas of Guangdong, Fujian and Zhejiang for sake of cutting off Zheng Chenggong's anti-Manchu forces. Portuguese, together with Chinese, were relocated away from Macau and Qianshan. Deng Kaisong stated that Portuguese were spared this "beachland clearance" relocation. In AD 1664, Manchu China reinforced Qianshan-zai Garrison with 2000 soldiers and dispatched two minister-level officials to Macao for an inspection. Du Zhen (*gongbu shangshu*) and Shi Zhu (*neige xueshi*), under the escort of Guangdong Prov's governor-general and governor, toured Macao for two days, enjoying Portuguese reception of salvo of cannon blasting from two batteries.

In AD 1668, Manchu Qing Emperor Kangxi decreed that Portuguese could retain Macau as their dwelling place. Emperor Kangxi did not revoke the "sea ban" till AD 1684, and coastal people returned to their home villages by then. Emperor Kangxi, in AD 1685, opened four coastal cities for international trade, which included Macau, Zhuangzhou, Ningbo and Yuntaishan. In AD 1695, Manchu China established Guangdong Provincial Customs Office for supervising the Macao tariff office. The locally-born mingle Portuguese, who possessed relatively less rights and prestige versus Lisbon-dispatched Portuguese, at one time joined the 1688-1704 Timor War, which caused a big population drop due to war-related deaths.

Manchu China inherited the old management system. Manchu Governor-general Fa Hai inspected Macao in AD 1717. Governor Ye Yuxun inspected Macao in 1724 and proposed that Manchu prohibited non-Portuguese foreigners from dwelling

in Macau. Guangzhou, i.e., Canton, was where the customs office was. Hence, foreigners must go to Canton to transact business and then return to Macau for the night stay. Macau became merely a residential quarter for the Chinese merchants and Portuguese who worked in Canton [i.e., Guangzhou]. In AD 1725, Manchu prohibited non-Portuguese foreigners from dwelling in Macau.

In AD 1731, Xiangshan County established panels for managing Macao and moved the deputy county magistrate office to Qianshanzhai. In 1743, Xiangshan County moved the office southward to Wangxiachun, next to Macao. Wangxiachun, located to the south of the "Guan Zha Men" Pass, would be the place where the Americans compelled Manchu into signing the "Wangxia Treaty" in the aftermath of the British Opium War. In 1743, Portuguese had killed some Chinese merchant. Also in this year, Manchu China elevated the office by relocating Zhaoqing-fu to Qianshan-zai Garrison, to be in charge of Xiangshan-xian deputy county magistrate but directly under the supervision of Canton provincial governor office. County magistrate for Dongguan, i.e., Yin Guangren, boarded two British warships that were blown to Siziyang Sea near Humen Battery and discovered that 299 Spanish were taken as prisoners by British. Yin Guangren forced the British into releasing the Spanish to Portuguese before providing logistical supply to the British. In AD 1743, Macau population recovered to 5,500, among whom 3,500 were Portuguese.

In AD 1744, Manchu China reinforced control over Macao by stipulating seven regulations, with a prohibition of Chinese from entering Macao. In AD 1746, Portuguese King issued a decree that non-Portuguese westerners could not stay or do business in Macau, causing those westerners relocate to Canton. Xiangshan county magistrate reported this event to provincial official, and Manchu court notified Macau authority that those Westerners who received Manchu approval could dwell in Macau. In 1747, new Portuguese governor, Antony, tried to provoke conflicts with China for his dissatisfaction over the seven regulations. Antony was recalled to Goa for his bad relations with China. In 1748, Portuguese had killed two Chinese, Li Tingfu & Jian Yaer. Under the pressure of Manchu magistrate for Macao (i.e., *Tong Zhi*) Zhang Rulin, Portuguese culprit was punished via an exile to Timor. However, Zhang Rulin was revoked his post for not extraditing the Portuguese for punishment. In 1749, 12 new rules in regards to transfer of criminals, exile of criminals, human smuggling, Black slaves, Christianity preaching and overseas voyage etc, were made and inscribed on the stone by Macao magistrate Zhang Rulin and

Xiangshan-xian county magistrate Bao Yu. Deng Kaisong stated that the Portuguese deliberately omitted the clause in regards to Christianity preaching in the Portuguese version. In 1751, Yin Guangren and Zhang Rulin published a book entitled *Short Introduction To Macao*.

In AD 1784, Zhang Daoyuan, i.e., Manchu magistrate for Canton prefecture, inspected Macao for intervention over the matter of Chinese injuries in the hands of Portuguese. Beginning from Sept 1802, British laid their eyes on Macao. In 1807, Governor-general Wu Xiongguang inspected Macao as to opium trade. In July 1808, six British warships, under admiral Drury, forcefully entered Macao. On Aug 2nd, British took over several batteries. Manchu Governor-general for Guangdong-Guangxi, Wu Xiongguang, demanded that British withdraw from Macao. When British refused, Governor-general Wu Xiongguang ordered a cessation of trade with Britain. Admiral Drury led soldiers to Thirteen Foreign Firms Guesthouse and demanded a talk with Wu Xiongguang. British compromised by exiting in Dec, while Wu Xiongguang was deprived of his post by Manchu court. Replacing Wu Xiongguang would be Bai-ling who inspected Macao with Governor for Guangdong Prov.

Scholar Yan Qinghuang [Yen Ching-hwang] of HK University stated that among Macau's population of 4049 in AD 1810, White men counted 1172 while White women counted 1846. Governor-general Song-yun visited Macao in 1811. Governor-general Ruan Yuan visited Macao in 1818. In AD 1821, Ruan Yuan arrested Macao opium vendor Ye Hengshu. By AD 1830, Macao possessed 4,049 Portuguese (White men 1202 and White women 2149) and 30,000 Chinese. Yen Ching-hwang concluded that the abnormally high number of White women in Macau exemplified the fact of prostitution in Macau.

Portuguese, Dutch, Spanish, & British Entanglements Over Macao

Though Portugal fell under Spanish rule in AD 1581, Portuguese, for securing the monopolization of the trade route between Manila and China, deliberately arrested and expelled Spanish in 1590, and in 1598-1599, respectively. Around 1599, a Spanish warship from Manila shipwrecked near Macao, with 120 survivors. Spanish commander dispatched two columns of soldiers for relief with Canton and Macao. Two Spanish soldiers were taken into custody by the Portuguese in Macao. Chinese sold the Spanish a ship. Spanish, while going to Macao for fetching the two soldiers, were driven away by the Portuguese governor.

On Sept 27th 1601, two Dutch warships, after a defeat in Indonesia, intruded into Macao. Portuguese, whose ally Spain had suffered defeat in the alliance of Britain and Neatherlands, forcefully arrested 17 Dutch who came ashore via a landing vessel. Portuguese executed 17 Dutch by claiming they were pirates. Only a Dutch merchant and two juniors were set free in Malacca later. In retaliation, Dutch raided Portuguese merchant ships in the Straits of Malacca, and in March 1603, abducted Portuguese Ship Ka-te-li-na (Katalina?) and auctioned off Chinese silk products at a worth of 3,4000,000 Dutch dollars in Amsterdam. Dutch, later in the year, near Macao, raided a Portuguese ship destined for Japan and burnt the ship after removing commodities valued at 1,400,000 Dutch dollars. Piracy continued till a peace treaty between Neatherlands and Spain was signed in 1609.

On April 10th 1622, 15 Dutch warships, with a total of 2000 soldiers, departed Batavia for attacking Macao. On May 29th, two herald Dutch ships and two herald British ships began attacking ships near Macao as well as bombarded Macao. In Macao, only 50 musketeers and 100 civilians were available for defence while another 30 soliders were invited to Ming China's capital of Peking 5 months ago for exhibiting Macao-made heavy cannons. On June 21st, Dutch main fleet arrived. On the night of 22nd, three Dutch soldiers stealthily got ashore for checking out the geography. On the afternoon of 23rd, Dutch commander bombarded Macao and shouted that by tommorrow all those Portuguese above age 20 would be headless. On 24th, Macao battery destroyed one Dutch warship. At about 7:00 am, 800 Ducth soldiers landed on the beach via 37 small vessels. After Dutch commander was shot in the stomach, a colonel was in charge of beachhead landing. With 40 dead, Dutch landed on the shore. However, Portuguese cannons soon hit the Dutch powder bins. Portuguese defeated Dutch on all fronts, and then together with Black slaves, charged into Dutch, killed the Dutch interim commander, and drove remnants into the sea. More than half of 600 Dutch column were killed or drowned. Portuguese recorded stated that they had killed about 600 Dutch with a casualty of 10 deaths. June 24th would become Macao's city holiday.

In AD 1635, British, who had assisted Portuguese in shipping copper and metals to Goa one year ago but were refused entry into Macao, would dispatch 6 warships to Macao for trading with China. When British moored near Macao on June 25th 1637, Portuguese refused the British entry. British, however, sailed

along Perl River towards Canton, bombarded Humen Battery when Chinese tried to stop them, and did not retreat till Chinese allowed some of their goods transferred to Canton. Thereafter, British, by pretending to provide cover to Portuguese in passage through Dutch-blockaded Malacca Strait, gained access to Macao. Only after Chinese intervention did the British leave Macao. British would not return to Macao till AD March 18th 1802, about 160 years later, after Britain grabbed Goa from Portugal by taking advantage of the Portuguese defeat in Portuguese-Franco War.

1644-1684

1685-1840

Portuguese & Trafficking Of Coolies & Sex Slaves

Macau already became a spot of crime syndicates with prostitution, human trafficking, opium, and etc. Macau was to replace Amoy as the next launching pad for trafficking Chinese coolie.

Prof Yen Ching-hwang had authored a book entitled *Chinese Coolies Overseas & Manchu Officials* [i.e., Coolies and Mandarins] and pointed out that British Opium War of 1839-1842 had coincided with the propriety of slave-nature trafficking of Chinese coolies overseas, a trade that was first started by the Dutch in 17th century. Yen Ching-hwang stated that Xiamen (Amoy), a port which had replaced historical Quanzhou, would become the first port to see Chinese coolie sold overseas. (Departing from Amoy would be: French shipment of Chinese coolie to Liu-ni-wang Island in 1845 and Spanish shipment of 800 Chinese coolie to Cuba in 1847. At Amoy, 5 British firms and 1 German firm, often with governmental consuls acting as company executives, had sold 8281 coolie from 1847 to 1853, and as much as 50000 could have been abducted each year from the port of Amoy. In 1847, British governor claimed that British revenues from Amoy was 72,000 pounds, about 3 times the combined value from all other ports, a manifestation of slave trade in trafficking Chinese coolie to British Guana, Trinidad and Jamaica. Peru passed its law for importing Chinese coolie in Nov 1849, and Australia imported 2666 Chinese coolie from

1848 to 1852. French controlled islands and Spaniard-controlled Philippines all imported Chinese coolie from Amoy. Peru, Pacific Islands, West Indies, North Africa, South Africa, and Australia had all engaged in Chinese coolie slave trade. Chinese coolies built the Panama Railway. America was no exception. Chinese coolies built the US railroads and highways across Western US territories. (<http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/award99/cubhtml/cicTitles12.html> contained a dossier of files on "The Chinese in California, 1850-1925". See cpr.org/Museum/Fusang.html for Chinese Railroad Men working as coolie in America under ferocious White men's racial discrimination. Also see SAN LUIS OBISPO'S CHINESE for the context of the 1882 Chinese Exclusion Act. US government, after acquiring Hawaii in summer of 1898 and Philippines in Dec 1898, applied "Chinese Exclusion Act" to Chinese on the two islands, and further, President Theodore Roosevelt signed into law to have "Chinese Exclusion Act" applied throughout US-controlled islands and territories over the world, making the Chinese the lowest caste, a fundamental cause in Chinese suffering in ethnic cleansing which occurred in Philippines, Indonesia and Malaysia etc. In 1943, CHINESE EXCLUSION ACT was repealed by the American Congress, with China awarded a yearly immigration quota of 102 persons.)

Rioting in Amoy first began in 1847 against the British and by Nov 24th, British marines shot dead 10-12 Chinese. British stationed warships near Gulangyu for protecting its interests extracted from the 1842 Nanking Treaty.) Yen Ching-hwang stated that Macau would take the place of Amoy beginning from Nov 1852 when riots broke out as a result of Chinese attacking a British smuggler for protecting a henchman. British and American merchants then turned to Shantou for trafficking coolie. In 1855, angry Chinese took custody of an American captain for his trafficking activity. As a result of British authority's desire for maintaining a good face in HK, smugglers flocked to Macau instead.

More, In Macau, Portuguese specialized in selling Chinese women and Chinese girls throughout the latter half of 19th century. (One Jesuit's 1563 account stated that he had taught Christianity to two batches of 450 and 200 Chinese women slaves before they were sold to Portuguese merchants and officials in Goa as sex slaves; Archbishop at Goa, Dom Ignacis De Sama Terez, stated in 1725 that Chinese women slaves were often cruelly killed by the wives of Portuguese merchants and officials; and in 1855, A British ship, Englewood, carried over 40 Chinese girls around age 7-8 [abducted from Ningbo area] for transfer to a Portuguese called Martinez in Amoy port. Note that some White

males have a sick & clanstine opinion even today that small Chinese women are good for sex ! (The prosperity of sex slave trafficking could perhaps been vindicated by the huge population of Chinese-looking Indians in Goa of India. One would have to pity the men and women of Chinese, both ancestral and posterior, whom the creator Jewish & Christian God had decided to deliberately left out as the "non-chosen".)

Portuguese did not get their greedy ambition realized till after Manchu China lost the 1839-1842 Sino-British Opium War. In AD 1838, British Navy Commander Frederick Maitland sailed two warships to Macau for protecting opium trade. When Manchu officials refused to see him, Frederick Maitland demonstrated his warships at Cuanbiyang Sea. Frederick Maitland sailed away when Manchu official deployed defence army. In AD 1839, imperial commissioner Lin Zexu toured Macau for banning opium trading and made a census check which showed that Macau had 727 households or 5612 Portuguese as well as 1772 households or 7033 Chinese. Lin Zexu was accorded the 19 gun salutes by Portuguese batteries when he visited Macao with Governor-general Deng Tingzhen on Sept 3rd 1839. After China lost the Opium War, Macau became a lawless portal for illegal human & drug trafficking. In AD 1846, newcomer Portuguese Governor F de Amarabl began to encroach on Chinese territories. Beginning from 1849, Portugal no longer paid China rent for Macau. From 1847 to 1875, 99,149 out of 150,000 Chinese coolies sold to Cuba departed from Macau. Human trafficking firms increased to 300 in AD 1872 from 5 in 1856. Yen Ching-hwang estimated that about 15000 to 20000 coolie were sold overseas each year from 1856 to 1964, till the trade was banned in 1874.

Zheng Guanying (1842-1922), a reformist, once blasted over 200 coolie trafficking firms of Macau, accusing Portuguese government of making one dollar for tax and giving two dollars for bribery with each Chinese coolie abducted and sold overseas. Zheng Guanying pointed out that numerous coolie had died of illness and bad treatment and that some coolie had deliberately burned the ship in the attempt of dying with the ship rather than be sold to remote lands. Zheng Guanying authored 14 volumes of admonition book entitled *Sheng Shi Wei Yan* (i.e., precarious talks in a prosperous world), in which he advocated parliament, military apparatus and industry-commerce development for China.

Later in the century, both British in HK and Manchu government interfered in

Macau's coolie trafficking. Though coolie trading stopped, Macau population remained at about 70,000 to 80,000 by 1920. In AD 1887, Portuguese obtained the right of permanent residency in Macau from Manchu government. Macau did not get to return to China till Dec 20th 1999.

The 1924 Canton Foreign Merchant Corps Rebellion would lead to an influx of people to Macau to as much as 200,000. When Canton and HK were sacked by Japanese in 1939 and 1941 consecutively, Macau population reached 400,000. Further details would be seen at [macau.htm](#)

Ming China's War With Dutch

Li Ao, a critic of the KMT government on Taiwan, echoed Li Hongzhang's comments that Manchu China's confrontation with red-hair ghosts (i.e., British) was an extraordinary event not foreseen by China for 3000 years and that Britain, with its military might and fire-power, was an enemy China could not match during the course of past 1000 years. Wrong ! The cousins of red-hair ghosts, i.e., the Dutch, had arrived at Java in 1595 and the Chinese coast in AD 1602. From AD 1603 to 1624, Ming China exerted hundreds of ships and thousands of soldiers to repelling the Dutch from Chinese coasts and the Pescadores Islands. Often, numerous small Ming ships encircled big Dutch warships for sake of winning the fight. Ming China mobilized a huge field army for landing on the Penghu Islands (i.e., Pescadores) and after fierce fighting, forced the Dutch into withdrawal. Dozens of years later, Zheng Chenggong, son of pirate-turned Ming General Zheng Zhilong, would first adopt the approach of "defeating the aliens by means of aliens' weapons". Zheng Chenggong, whose merchant fleet had sailed to the four corners of the seas, actively purchased weapons, firearms and cannons from the Dutch. In February 1662, Zheng Chenggong successfully expelled from Taiwan Island the Dutch who, having colonized the island from 1624 to 1662, had latinized the aboriginals' language to the extent that the aboriginals no longer remembered their own native language. In the ensuing hundreds of years, Manchu Qing China had been mostly occupied with "pleasure-seeking and literature-decoration", a 1916 comment by Japanese Prime Minister in regards to Yuan Shi-kai's death and its influence on the rise and fall of the Republic Of China. (The worst thing is that today's decadent Communist China is not any better than the Manchurian rulers. Red alerts !!)

In AD 1595, the Dutch, under command of Cornelius Houtman, arrived at Java. In AD 1602, Dutch ships appeared near the Chinese coasts and met resistance by the Portuguese. Portuguese vilified the Dutch in front of the Chinese and hence the Dutch failed to get ashore. In AD 1602, the Dutch, for competing with the Portuguese, formed the "Dutch East India Company", a company chartered for monopolized trade as well as managing newly acquired colonies. In AD 1603, the Dutch first attacked the Portuguese in Macau, but got repelled after sinking several Portuguese ships. The Dutch tried to wrestle Macao from the Portuguese, but were defeated by a joint Chinese-Portuguese army. In AD 1604, the Dutch fleet, under Captain Van Warwijk, planned to attack Macau for a second time. Having encountered a hurricane, Van Warwijk led three ships to Penghu (Pescadores) in August of the year. Penghu was abandoned by Ming army already. Dutch built a castle on the island. Van Warwijk dispatched an interpreter (Lin Yue) to Fujian Province, requesting for exchange of commerce, but Lin Yue was arrested by the Chinese. Further, Ming Dynasty dispatched Shen Yourong for quelling the Dutch disturbance.

Shen Yourong first ordered a ban of trade with Dutch, making the Dutch feel difficult to advance or to retreat. Shen Yourong led 20 ships and the Dutch interpreter (Lin Yue) to Penghu for expelling the Dutch. Shen Yourong personally went to see Van Warwijk, explained the system of Ming China, rebuked Van Warwijk for his bribes of 30,000 gold nuggets, and stated that he had no authorization to commence trading with Dutch. Shen Yourong released the interpreter and exchanged gifts with Van Warwijk. Shen Yourong also informed Van Warwijk that a Chinese traitor, Pan Xiu, who guided Dutch to Penghu, would be penalized by execution. On Dec 15th of 1604, Van Warwijk left Penghu Island.

In AD 1619, Dutch took over Jakarta of Indonesia and named it "Batavia". By the end of 1620, Dutch intercepted ships between Macau and Malacca, acquiring information that Spanish government intended to occupy a Taiwan port to counter the alliance of Netherlands and Britain. Dutch Governor at Batavia, Jan Pierszoon Coen, decided to attack Macau again and take over Penghu and Taiwan ahead of Spain.

On April 10th, 1624, the Dutch, under commander Cornelis Reyeresen, sailed in 8 ships to attack Macau. On June 24th, Dutch arrived at Macau, bombarded Fort

Saint Francois for five days, and landed 800 sailors ashore. But the Dutch were defeated, with a loss of 136 men in addition to 126 men wounded. Withdrawing from Macau, on July 11th 1622, Dutch landed on Penghu Islands which had altogether 100-200 people. Using a Chinese fisherman as a guide, Dutch commander Cornelis Reyeresn led two ships to Anping Harbor of Taiwan Island on July 26th for detecting the quality of Anping harbor as a port; they returned to Penghu on July 30th. Anping Harbor of Taiwan had been frequented by Japanese and Chinese merchant ships several times a year, with Japanese buying deer skin from the aboriginals and the Chinese selling silk products to Japanese.

Dutch thought Anping Harbor was difficult to defend against outsider attacks and decided to build castle on Makung of Penghu Islands on August 2nd. On Aug 7th, a Dutch, by the name of Van Meldert, led three ships to Fujian and asked a seaside or garrison official (*shou bei*) Wang Mengxiong relay a letter to Fujian Governor (*hu tai*) Shang Zhouzuo for exchange of commerce. On Sept 29th, Wang Mengxiong sailed to Penghu and gave Shang Zhouzuo's reply to Dutch commander, asking the Dutch vacate the Penghu Island and informing the Dutch of Ming China's refusal to trade with the Neatherlands. On Oct 17th of 1622, Van Nieuweroode led 422 soldiers and 8 ships against the Amoy coastline for sake of forcing a trade. Five ships arrived at Amoy area and Dutch destroyed 26 Ming navy ships and 80 merchant and fishing vessels. One Dutch ship, with 18 men, was captured by Chinese. On Oct 26th, Dutch fleet attacked 6 Ming ships around Amoy's Gulang-yu Island and burnt merchant houses on the island. On Dec 7th, Van Nieuweroode, leaving four ships at Amoy, left for the Penghu Island with Chinese captives and lootings.

The Dutch built a fortress in Makung and harassed Portuguese vessels on the Taiwan Strait. On the the Penghu Island, the Dutch castle had a square side of 56.5 meters and it was equipped with over 20 cannons. Dutch had about 10 warships around the island. On Feb 23rd of 1623, Ming Chinese official stationed at Batavia proposed to the Dutch that Ming China would be willing to commence trading with the Neatherlands should the Dutch vacate the Penghu Island (Pescadores). Ming China softened its stance by informing the Dutch that they could retreat to Taiwan from Pescadores.

From June 5th to June 13th of 1623, typhoon destroyed some walls of the fort. Dutch raided the Fujian coast and abducted 1150 Chinese labor for rebuilding

the fort. Among 1150 Chinese, 571 died of hard labor and bad nutrition, and another 486 died of illness on board the ship for Batavia. "*Ming Shi*" recorded that Dutch captured 600 Chinese fishing vessels during the time period. Penghu-xian County records recorded that altogether 1300 people were abducted by the Dutch;

On July 23rd, 1623, Commandeur Christiaan Francx's relief fleet of one big ship and four small ships arrived at the Penghu Island. On Oct 28th, Christiaan Francx led 4 ships to Amoy for trade talk. On Nov 18th, Ming official tricked Christiaan Francx onto the shore and captured some of the Dutch. "*Ming Shi*" recorded that 60 Dutch, including Christiaan Francx, were decapitated. At night, *shou bei* Wang Mengxiong led 10 ships, disguised as fishing vessels, for a fire attack at two Dutch ships, and burnt one ship. The second Dutch ship fled to the two other ships in the outer sea, and they left for Penghu Island on Dec 7th.

The Ming government issued a decree in September 1623 banning all Dutch ships from approaching southeast coast of China. In January 1624, Ming forces, under Fujian Governor (*xun hu*) Nan Juyi, attacked the Dutch on Penghu Island, and after eight months, the Dutch agreed to withdrawing from Pescadores in exchange for retreat to the Taiwan Island. Nan Juyi recruited soldiers from Quanzhou area and purchased ships. On Feb 20th of 1624 (Jan 2nd per lunar calendar), Nan Juyi ordered that Wang Mengxiong attacked the Dutch on Pescadores. Wang Mengxiong intruded into Zhenhai-gang port of the Pescadores, and fought the Dutch and built the stone wall defence side by side, with casualties on both sides. Wang Mengxiong forced the Dutch into Fengkui-cheng castle. Nan Juyi also ordered that *du si* (colonel equivalent) Gu Sizhong lead an army on an attack at Penghu-zhen town on the Pescadores. From late May to early June, Nan Juyi personally sailed to the island and supervised two Ming circuit district governors in launching a third attack at the Dutch. On July 13th, Nan Juyi ordered that navy general Sun Guozhen lead Liu Yinglong and Hong Jiyuan for an attack at the Dutch fleet near the Chinese sea goddess monastery. On July 29th, Nan Juyi landed on the island and arranged for both land and sea offensives. On the island, Ming army cut off the water supply to the Dutch. On August 3rd of 1624, Dutch commander Marten Sonk arrived at the island with relief army. 850 Dutch soliders were retrieved from Taiwan. Meanwhile, Ming army swelled to 10,000 and 200 ships from the original force of 4000 men and 150 ships. Dutch dispatched a negotiator for peace talk with *zong bing* Yu Zigao

(i.e., son of Yu Dayou). Dutch was informed that Ming China intended to evict the Dutch from the Pescadores only and that Dutch could go to Taiwan at will. On August 18th, Ming armies launched a three-prong attack. On Aug 24th, the Dutch raised the white flag to show surrender. Beginning from Aug 26th, the Dutch began to dismantle the castle in accordance with Ming China's demands and finished demolition by Sept 10th. Thereafter, the Dutch sailed to Taiwan.

Ming China's war with the Dutch was extraordinary in that Ming Chinese exerted great sacrifice in fighting a rising European power with unprecedented fire power. Nan Juyi stated in his report that the Dutch ships were extremely big and could bombard the small Chinese ships to powder over 10 li distance.

In AD 1635, a Ming Dynasty minister, Heh Kai, submitted to Emperor Chongzhen a tactic for quelling the sea upheavals. Heh Kai mentioned the turmoils of Yuan Jin, Li Zhong, Yang Lu, Yang Ce, Zheng Zhilong, Li Kuiqi, Zhong Bin and Liu Xiang and recommended the destruction of the piracy base in Taiwan. Heh Kai stated that Taiwan, beyond Penghu Islands, could be reached within two days by sea travel if departing from Zhuangzhou and Quanzhou ports; that coastal people went to Taiwan for taking advantage of the benefits of fishing and salts; that some people, taking advantage of Ming's lack of military influence there, had gathered to be rebels and bandits; that the Dutch, now having built castles on the island, had colluded with the disobedient Chinese and made Taiwan into a big tribal country. Heh Kai proposed a 'sea ban' (blockade of the coastal areas) to cause the Dutch nowhere to trade or profit and the disobedient Chinese nowhere to make a living. Heh Kai stated that Ming could then launch a campaign against the Dutch on Taiwan after achieving successes from the blockade of the coastal areas.

QING DYNASTY

Founding Of 'Da

The Opium War (1939-1842)

<u>Jin' (Grand Gold Dynasty)</u> <u>Eight Banner System</u> <u>Twenty Five Years Of War Against China</u> <u>Battle Of Mountain & Sea Pass</u> <u>Entering China Proper</u> <u>Infamous Queue-Related Slaughters</u> <u>Solidifying Rule Over China</u> Qing Emperor Shunzhi (Qing Shizu, Aixinjueluo Fulin, r. 1644-1661): Qing Emperor Kangxi (Qing Shengzu, Aixinjueluo Xuan-ye, r. 1662-1722): 1689 Treaty of Nerchinsk & Pereira Thomas Recovering Taiwan: Qing Emperor Yongzheng (Qing Shizong, Aixinjueluo Yin-	<u>"Wangxia Treaty" [US] & Whampoa Treaty [France]</u> <u>Second Opium Wars (1856-60) & Arson of Summer Palace</u> <u>Taiping (Grand Peace) Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion</u> <u>Foreign Enterprises Movement (Self-Strengthening, 1874-1895)</u> <u>Manchu Military System: Brave-Camp Army & New Army</u> <u>Russian Encroachments</u> <u>1876 Anglo-Chinese Yantai Treaty</u> <u>1884-1885 Franco-Chinese War</u> <u>Imperialist Encroachments On Korea</u> <u>1894 Sino-Japanese War</u> <u>Russo-Japanese War Over Manchuria</u> <u>Rise of Yuan Shi-kai</u> <u>Start Of Water-Melon Partitioning</u> <u>Hundred Day Reformation</u> <u>The Boxers & Invasion of Eight Allied Nations</u> <u>Rise of Yuan Shi-kai (Continued)</u> <u>Assasinations & Uprisings</u> <u>'Retaining Railroad' Movement</u> <u>Wuchang Uprising & Xin Hai Revolution</u>
---	--

zhen, r. 1723-1735): Qing Emperor Qianlong (Qing Gaozong, Aixinjueluo Hong-li, r. 1736-1795): Qing Emperor Jiaqing (Qing Renzong, Aixinjueluo Yong-yan, r. 1796-1820):	
[this page: manchu.htm]	[next page: qing.htm]

The Manchus were both a blessing and a disaster for China. The blessing would be its early territorial expansionism which somehow prepared China proper for buffering the Czarist eastward expansion that would inevitably come in last couple hundreds of years. (Manchu's territorial gain was at the expense of China's population drop from 51.66 million in 1620 to 10.63 million in 1651, a tragic loss from the Manchu invasion, which had also exhibited the fact that China was not a country that could be easily conquered and that China's brave men were always willing to fall martyrdom in the resistance to foreign invasion.) The disaster would be its policy of 'closing off the seashore' for segregation of Ming remnants in Taiwan and Southeast Asia from mainland Chinese.

Li Ao, a critic of the KMT on Taiwan, echoed Li Hongzhang's comments that Manchu China's confrontation with red-hair devils (i.e., British) was an extraordinary event not foreseen by China for 3000 years and that Britain, with its military might and fire-power, was an enemy China could not match during the course of past 1000 years. Wrong ! The cousins of red-hair devils, i.e., the Dutch, had arrived at Java in 1595 and the Chinese coast in AD 1602. From AD

1603 to 1624, Ming China exerted hundreds of ships and thousands of soldiers to repelling the Dutch from Chinese coasts and the Pescadores Islands. Often, numerous small Ming ships encircled big Dutch warships for sake of winning the fight. Ming China mobilized a huge field army for landing on the Penghu Islands (i.e., Pescadores) and after fierce fighting, forced the Dutch into withdrawal. Dozens of years later, Zheng Chenggong, son of pirate-turned Ming General Zheng Zhilong, would first adopt the approach of "defeating the aliens by means of aliens' weapons". Zheng Chenggong, whose merchant fleets had sailed to the four corners of the seas, actively purchased weapons, firearms and cannons from the Dutch. In February 1662, Zheng Chenggong successfully expelled from Taiwan Island the Dutch who, having colonized the island from 1624 to 1662, already latinized the aboriginals' language to the extent that the aboriginals no longer remembered their own native language. Before the Dutch, Ming China waged two wars against Portuguese during time periods of 1521-1522 and 1547-1549 for securing territorial integrity.

Manchu Qing China, in the ensuing hundreds of years, had been mostly occupied with "pleasure-seeking and literature-decoration", a 1916 comment by Japanese Prime Minister in regards to Yuan Shi-kai's death and its influence on the rise and fall of the Republic Of China. (The worst thing is that today's decadent Communist China is not any better than the Manchu rulers. Note that "1957 Anti-Rightists Movement" had doomed China's fate for 20 years after finishing off China's half century worth of elites and conscience, and June 4th 1989 Masacre had routed China's elites & conscience once again and doomed China for the past 15 years. China, in addition to losing to the Europeans and Japanese tons of gold, silver & wealth accumulated over the span of 5000 years, would lose almost one century worth of good souls for nothing. Red alerts !!!)

Founding Of 'Da Jin' (Grand Gold Dynasty)

The later Manchus could be just a kinsmen tribe of the original Jurchens, and at most descendants of the Jurchens who remained in the homeland throughout the Jurchen expansion in northern China during the period of 1115-1234 AD. Similar to the legends about the Jurchen founders, the ancestor of the Manchu founders, Bu-ku-li-yong-shun, had wandered into a village where he was taken in as a distinguished guest and given a woman for marriage. Bu-ku-li-yong-shun was said to have been born after his mother swallowed a red fruit dropped

by a sparrow. Bu-ku-li grew up under the foot of Changbaishan Mountain. When he asked who his father was, his mother told him the 'red fruit' story and gave him the last name of 'Ai-xin-jue-luo' which was translated into Chinese as the 'jin' or gold for Ai-xin and 'surname' for Jue-luo. Bu-ku-li-yong-shun, similar to Jurchen founders, would somehow pacify the generations of fights between this village where he took as home and two other neighboring villages. He was supported by all three villages as chieftan, called 'bei-le'. Hence the 'Ai-xin-jue-luo' tribe came into existence.

Bu-ku-li-yong-shun descendants would relocate to a place called He-tu-a-la (i.e., later Xingjing). Jue-chang-an, the grandfather of later Nurhachi or Nurhachu (1559-1626), would gradually grow in strength. A Ming Dynasty general (Li Chengliang) at Liaoxi, in order to suppress the Jurchen growth, would attack the grandson-in-law of Jue-chang-an. Jue-chang-an and his son died as a result of a conspiracy between the Huron Chieftan Ni-kan-wai-lan and Ming Dynasty General Li Chengliang. Nurhachi and his brother were among the soldiers captured by Ming army. Nurhachi, for his extraordinary outlook, was set free by the wife of Li Chengliang per "*Qing Shi Gao*". "*Qing Shi Gao*" stated that Nurhachi acquired his strength after winning over the support from chieftans of Saerhu city, Jiamuhu city and Zhanhe city in AD 1583. Nurhachi, around the age of 25 at that time, would attack Huron Chieftan Ni-kan-wai-lan to avenge the death of his father/grandfather. Ni-kan-wai-lan fled to Ming territories, and Nurhachi wrote a letter to Ming court asking for handover of Ni-kan-wai-lan. Ming court, however, only condoled Nurhachi with 30 horses, two coffins, the post of '*dudu*' (i.e., governor-general) of Jianzhou-wei, and the title of General 'long-hu' (dragon and tiger). Nurhachi hence set up four banners of armies, and trained his soldiers. The original four banners were of yellow, red, white and black, and later blue replaced the color of black.

(<http://www.secretchina.com/news/articles/4/7/2/67823.html> pointed out that banner system was first set up in AD 1601.) Nurhachi attacked the Ming border castle to have Ni-kan-wai-lan captured and executed.

By late Ming Dynasty, three Jurchen tribes were known, Jianzhou or Chien-chou (Jianzhou Prefecture), Haixi or Hai-hsi (east of the sea or Huron Lake), & Yeren or Yeh-jen (uncivilized people). The territories of Huron Lake area was named Haixi-wei [West-of-lake Garrison] by Ming Dynasty, and Ye-he tribe was the biggest of the four sub-tribes in that area. Nurhachi united various tribes of Manchuria, pacified neighboring Mongol tribes, and expanded their territory.

Nurhachi first defeated the Ye-he Statelet at Huron Lake. Ye-he married over a woman to Narhaci, and Huangtaiji was born by this Ye-he woman. Ye-he tribe chieftan, considered a vassal of Ming, was jealous of Nurhachi expansion, and he called upon an army of 30,000, including some Mongols, for an attack on Nurhachi. "*Qing Shi Gao*" stated that Ye-he assembled three Huron tribes of Qula, Hada and Huifa, three Mongol tribes of Ke'erxin, Xibo and Gua'ercha, and three Changbai [Mt Forever White] tribes of Ne'ying and Zhusheli. Nurhachi thoroughly defeated Ye-he tribe. Ye-he tribe promised to send in their daughter for inter-marriage with Nurhachi, but Ye-he tribe then decided to marry the princess to the Mongols. (Ye-he family would later produce the Empress Dowger Cixi.) More Mongol tribes came to submit, including Ke'erxin and Khalka. Huangtaiji went to Mongolia to have an engagement with a Mongol princess of Ke'erxin tribe.

By AD 1616, Nurhachi would proclaim the founding of 'Da Jin', namely, Grand Gold Dynasty, at a place called Xingjing. Nurhachi declared the era of Tian Ming, i.e., the mandate of heaven. Huangtaiji, the eighth son, was conferred the title of No. 4 Beila, i.e., the fourth prince. The eldest son, Zhu-ying, was ordered to commit suicide for his intention to subjugate his brothers two years before.

Eight Banner System

In addition to four princes, five ministers were instituted. In Aug of AD 1616, Manchu armies went across Heilongjiang River and took over 11 castles. In AD 1617, Prince Ming'an of Mongol tribe Ke'erxin came to pay respect. Manchus campaigned against islands in the sea (Huron Lake?) in this year.

Aside from original four banners of yellow, red, blue and white, comprising of 7500 soldiers each banner, Nurhachi set up four extra 'embedded banners' of yellow, red, blue and white [in AD 1615 per <http://www.secretchina.com/news/articles/4/7/2/67823.html>]. The so-called 'Eight Banner' system was used for organizing armies into eight columns at times of war but released to production at times of peace. Later, the Manchu under Huangtaiji set up eight Mongolians and eight Chinese banners,

respectively, on basis of ethnic composition.

The original four banners were assigned as left wing, and the embedded four banners were assigned as right wing. In addition to Manchu Eight Banners, Mongol and Han ethnic eight banners were set up, and total head-count reached 280,000. After unification of China, the original four banners, about 100,000 soldiers, were named 'Jin Qi' or Forbidden Banners, which were deployed around the capital. The remaining 24 banners were assigned to eight major provincial garrisons around the nation as Stationed Banners. Nationwide passes, cities around the capital and Manchuria were staffed with another 25 garrisons. All banner officers and soldiers were hereditary.

Manchu, after entering Peking, set up Green-Camp Standard Battalion of about 500,000 comprising of turncoat Ming armies. It was under the command of "*bing bu*" or ministry of army. Green-Camp was named after the color of its banner and it was ethnic Chinese. Green-Camp was sub-divided into two parts, 'Green-Camp At-The-Capital' guarding the capital and the Canal, and 'Green-Camp At-The-Province'. By the time of Taiping Rebellion, both Banner and Green Camp armies had rotten so much that they could not put up a fight.

Twenty Five Years Of War Against China

Southern Manchuria, Liaoning Province, was historically Ming Chinese territories. Per Li Zhiting, the area from Shanhaiguan [Mountain & Sea Pass] to Kaiyuan-Tieling had been fortified by a castle every 30 li distance. On the mountains, beacon towers were built at a distance of every five Chinese li distance. Liao-dong, i.e., the area to the east of Liao-he River, was especially important strategic defence as a result of its leveled span of land that linked to Mongols to the west and northwest, the Jurchens to the east and northeast, and the Koreans to the east and southeast.

In AD 1618, Nurhachi, after making an oath of 'Seven Hatreds for the Ming Dynasty' (i.e., Seven Grievances), would lead an army of 20,000 against Ming border towns, including the city of Hushun. Leftside 4 banners were to attack Dongzhou and Magengdan, while rightside 4 banners to attack Hushun.

Before arriving in Hushun, a Chinese intellectual, by the name of Fan

Wencheng, came to Nurhachi's camp to serve as a counsellor. Nurhachi asked Fan whether Song Dynasty's prime minister Fan Zhongyan was his ancestor, and Fan replied 'yes'. (What an infilial son Fan Wencheng was! Unfortunately, China was always not lacking opportunists and traitors: When a forest is growing bigger, you would expect different variety of birds to dwell inside !) Fan Wencheng wrote a letter to Li Yongfang (a Ming "*you ji*" [i.e., mobile fighter] general at Hushun), and somehow persuaded him into a surrender. (Li Yongfang later became a Manchu China founding general and his family enjoyed glory and wealth for hundreds of years to come.) Nurhachi then defeated Ming relief armies for Hushun and killed three generals. Manchus killed Zhang Chengyin, a Ming "*zong bing*" [sub-prefecture military magistrate] general. In July, Manchus took over Yahuguan Pass and killed Ming General Zou Chuxian. When the news of defeat arrived at Ming court, Ming Emperor Shenzong sent someone called Yang Hao to counter Nurhachi.

The Battles Of Sa'erhu

In AD 1619, Manchus attacked Ye-he and took over more than 20 castles. Manchus retreated when they heard that Yang Hao had led Ming army to the aid of Ye-he tribe. Yang Hao, who had previously lost a battle to the Japanese Hideyoshi invaders in Korea, would lose the Battle of Saerhu.

Though Yang Hao mobilized an army of 200,000, including 20,000 Koreans and 20,000 Ye-he tribesmen, Nurchaci used smart tactics and defeated the Ming armies one by one within a matter of one month. In March, Manchus decided to attack the southern Ming contingent first. In the east, Ming General Du Song, departing Hushun, divided his forces between Sa'erhu and Jilin-ya. Under Manchu attacks, Du Song and his deputies were all killed. In the west, Manchu defeated Ming army at Mt. Shaoqinshan. In the northwest, Ming General Ma Lin was defeated, and Ye-he allies fled the scene. In the south, Elder Manchu Prince Daishan ordered that his soldiers, wearing Du Song's Ming army uniforms, mix up with Ming General Zhao Ting's 10,000 cavalry and killed Zhao Ting during turmoils. Ming "*jian jun*" (supervisor, i.e., usually an eunuch) surrendered with his Korean allies after the flare of firearms backfired on Ming camp. Hearing the defeats, Yang Hao ordered that Ming's north column retreat. At Hulan, Manchus ambushed Ming north column headed by Li Rubo. Korean General Jiang Hongli was released by Manchu for sake of pacifying the Koreans. Yang Hao was arrested and demoted by Ming Emperor Shenzong (Zhu Yijun, reign AD 1573-1620), and "*bingbu shilang*" [supervisor of military ministry] Xiong Tingbi was

conferred the post of "*jing lüe*" [i.e., managing governor] for Manchuria.

In April, Manchus attacked Tieling. In May, Korean king sent emissary to express gratitude for sparing Koreans. In June, Manchus attacked Kaiyuan and killed Ming General Ma Lin. In July, Ming "*qian zong*" (i.e., general in charge of 1000 soldiers) Wang Yiping surrendered, and Tieling was taken over. Mongol Tribe Khalka came to the aid of Ye-he, and Manchus defeated Mongols and chased Khalka "*beile*" [prince] Lejiesai to Liao-he River. In August, two Ye-he cities were taken over and Ye-he was exterminated. In Oct, Khan Lindan of Chaha'er Mongols sent a letter to Manchus in a challenging tone, claiming an army of 300-400,000 Mongols. Five Khalka tribes sent emissary to Manchus for an allied attack at Ming.

In AD 1620, Manchus rebuked Khan Lindan of Chaha'er Mongols. Chaha'er killed Manchu emissary, and Manchus killed Chaha'er emissary as a retaliation. In Aug, Manchus attacked Shenyang. In Oct, Manchus relocated capital to Saerhu from Jiefan. Ming Emperor Shenzong died in this year.

Loss Of Two Banks of The Liao River

Before Xiong Tingbi left the Shanhaiguan Pass, Shenyang was under Manchu siege. Xiong Tingbi fortified Liaoyang city and distributed 180,000 soldiers around various forts. Nurchaci, unable to take over Shenyang, retreated northward to conquer the Yehe tribe. The new Yehe chieftan, before being executed, sworn that should Yehe have one descendant left, Yehe would revenge by capsizing Nurchaci tribe, and it turned out to be Dowager Express Cixi (i.e., Yehe-nala-shi) who led Manchu Dynasty to its 1911 demise.

Xiong Tingbi stayed in eastern Liaoning Prov for 3 years before he resigned under impeachment of an official of the new Ming Emperor Xizong (Zhu Youxiao, reign AD 1621-1627). Ming Emperor Guangzong, Zhu Youxiao, had a reign of only one year, AD 1620-1621. A civil official, Yuan Yingtai, who obtained "*jìn shì*" (imperial scorer in civil services exam, after top 3 titles of 'zhuang yuan', 'bang yan' and 'tan hua'), was sent to Manchuria. When Mongols suffered from a hunger disaster and came to Manchuria as refugees, Yuan Yingtai accepted all those Mongols and assigned them to Liaoyang and Shenyang cities. In AD 1621, Nurchaci obtained the cooperation of Mongol refugees as 'trojan horse', sacked the city of Shenyang, and killed "zong bing" (garrison chief) He Shixian. Yuan Yingtai lost a fight outside of Liaoyang.

Manchus released the water of the citywall ditch and sacked Liaoyang, and Yuan Yingtai committed suicide. After that, over fifty forts east of Liao River all surrendered to Manchus. Xiong Tingbi was recalled for service by Emperor Xizong. Xiong Tingbi had a dispute with "*xuan hu*" (pacifier minister or sub-province governor) Wang Huazhen as to defending the city of Guangning or the Liao River. Wang Huazhen circumvented Xiong Tingbi in having Emperor Xizong approve his plan to recover the territories east of Liao River instead. Wang Huazhen then crossed the river with 140,000 soldiers.

In July, Zhenjiang city killed a Manchu general and surrendered to Ming General Mao Wenlong. In Nov, Manchus ordered Prince Ah'min to attack Mao Wenlong. A Mongol clan from Khalka tribe surrendered to Manchu. Xiong Tingbi was recalled as "*jing lüe*" by Ming Dynasty. In 1621, Wu Xiang, i.e., father of later General Wu Sangui, passed the Ming imperial martial arts exam as "*jing shi*" and later married a sister of Zu Dashou. Zu Dashou was upgraded to "*you ji*" general under Wang Huazhen. Wang Huazhen was "*xun hu*" [patrol & pacify, i.e., sub-provincial equivalent governor for Guangning garrison of Liaoning Prov].

After one year, in Jan of AD 1622, Wang Huazhen was defeated by the Manchus. Sun Degong, a "*you ji*" general under Wang Huazhen, surrendered the city of Guangning to the Manchus. All forts around Jinzhou were lost to the Manchus. Wang Huazhen and Xiong Tingbi burnt supplies and accompanied over 100,000 refugees back into Shanhaiguan Pass. From Jinzhou to Shanhaiguan Pass, about 200 kilometer long strip between sea and mountain was considered Hexi [west of Liao-he River] Corridor. Zuo Guangdou (*'yu shi*' [censor or inspector]) recommended Sun Chengzong (*'da xue shi*' [grand scholar]) for the job of fighting the Manchus.

Five Khalka tribes came to submit to Manchu. Seventeen princes from the Mongol tribe of Er'lute came to submit. In AD 1623, Mongol tribe of Zhalute came to submit to Manchu, and their crown prince (who served as a hostage with Manchus) was released. In April, Manchus attacked Zhalute Mongol tribe for their killing Manchu emissary. In AD 1624, Khalka requested for relocation to Manchu territories. In Feb, Manchus decreed that Ke'erxin not to have exchanges with Khalka tribe. In May, Mao Wenlong invaded Huifa. In Aug, Manchus destroyed Mao Wenlong's farming soldiers at Yalu-dao Island. In AD 1625, Manchu Prince Mang-gu-er-tai defeated Ming army at Hushun. In Feb, Khalka sent over their daughter to Huangtaiji. In June and Aug, Mao Wenlong

continued to attack Manchu at Yaozhou and Haizhou. In Nov, Huangtaiji went to attack Chaha'er Mongol Khan Lindan. Ming Dynasty conferred Gao Di as "*jing lue*".

Battle of Ningyuan

Sun Chengzong was conferred the post of "*bingbu shangshu*" [i.e., secretary of military ministry]. Sun Chengzong advocated the fortification of Ningyuan as a buffer for Shanhaiguan Pass. Sun Chengzong employed Zu Dashou & Zhao Shuaijiao as his generals, built various forts around Ningyuan, trained 110,000 soldiers, and tilled 50 acres of military farmland. Four years later, Sun Chengzong was impeached by a Ming eunuch Wei Zhongxian who had earlier managed to have Xiong Tingbi executed. Yang Di was ordered to replace Sun Chengzong. In AD 1625, Yang Di contracted the defence line to the city of Ningyuan which was about half way between Shanhaiguan Pass and Jinzhou city.

At this time, Nurhachi moved the capital to today's Shenyang City, called Shengjing at the time, and built a grand palace with front, hind, right and left accessory palaces. Hearing of Sun Chengzong departure, Nurhachi led an attack at Ningyuan in Jan of AD 1626. Ningyuan was guarded by Ming General Yuan Chonghuan who was from Dongguan of Guangdong Prov. Yuan Chonghuan had built a kind of long-range cannon with the help of the Jesuits, and Yuan named it 'Red-Coated Alien Cannon'. Yuan Chonghuan employed a soldier from Fujian Province, by the name of Luo Li, who was learned in firing cannons. Meantime, Manchus led Mongol soldiers on an attack of Juehua-dao Island.

In April, Manchus attacked five Khalka tribes for their betrayal. In May, Mao Wenlong attacked Anshanyi and Saerhu. Ke'erxin sent emissary to Manchu to express gratitude. In Aug of 1626, Nurhachi (Nuerhachi) died at age 68, after a reign of 11 years. This would be during the 11th year reign of Tianming Era. Nurhachi was said to have died of the wounds he incurred from cannon ball explosion of Yuan Chonghuan's 'Red-Coated Alien Cannon' at the Battle of Ningyuan (today's Xingcheng, Liaoning Province). Yuan Chonghuan was conferred the post of "*xun hu*" (i.e., patrolling and protecting general or sub-provincial governor) of Liaodong, and Wang Zhichen took over the post of "*jing lue*". Yuan Chonghuan renewed Sun Chengzong's policies of fortifications and military farming to the west of Liao River. Two years later, in 1628, Zu Dashou was upgraded to "*zong bing*" general for the AD 1626 victory at the Battle of

Ningyuan-Jinzhou. Zu Dashou brothers, sons and nephews controlled the major forts and cities like Dalinghe [Jinxi-xian of Liaoning], Jinzhou, and Ningyuan.

Dissension To Have Yuan Chonghuan Removed

Nurhachi's successor, Huangtaiji (1592-1643), the 8th son, would rename the Era to Tiancong from Tianming beginning from the next year. Huangtaiji was called 'Taizong Wenhuangdi' posthumously. (The name Huangtaiji was a combination of Chinese 'huang tai4 zi' and Mongol 'huang tai2 ji', both meaning crown prince.) Huangtaiji was recorded to have red face and did not exhibit fear of cold in severe winter. Mongol Tribe Ke'erxin also sent in condolences.

Han Chinese were treated as slaves by Manchus. Huangtaiji decreed that extra Han Chinese be separated from slaves and treated as civilians and that Han Chinese select their own good men as leaders. Later, eight Han banners were set up, with Manchus heading them. In Oct of 1626, the Zhalute subtribe of Mongol Khalka betrayed the Manchu alliance for Ming Dynasty. Huangtaiji ordered that elder brother Daishan campaign against them. Yuan Chonghuan would send a lama to condole Nuerhachu's death. 14 Khalka "*bei le*" sent in emissaries for condolences. Daishan defeated Zhalute, killed "*bei le*" Er'erzaitu and captured 14 more Mongol "*bei le*". Huangtaiji departed Shenyang for meeting Daishan at Tieling. One more Cha'haer tribe came to submit. Huangtaiji instructed Fan Wencheng to write a reply to Yuan Chonghuan. Yuan Chonghuan reprimanded Huangtaiji's emissary for challenging Ming's suzerainty.

In Dec, Huangtaiji decreed that Manchu could not trade iron weapons with the Mongols. Heilongjiang [black dragon river] people came to pay respect to Manchu.

In Jan of 1627, the first year of Tiancong Era, Huangtaiji decided to attack the Koreans and Mongols first. Huangtaiji dispatched Ah'min (2nd "*bei le*"), "*bei le*" Ji'erhalang, and Ah'jige etc against Korea. Huangtaiji and Yuan Chonghuan traded more letters. Huangtaiji intended to distract Yuan Chonghuan from the Korean expedition. At the rivermouth of Dongjiang on the border of China and Korea, Mao Wenlong, a Ming '*zong bing*' general, was attacked by the Manchus. Korean King requested for help with Ming Dynasty in driving Manchus out of their country. (Korean King Li Chenggui had promised to Ming first emperor Zhu Yuanzhang to be a Ming vassal forever.) Manchus invaded Korea after two Koreans, who offended Korean king, fled to seek asylum with Manchu and then

treacherously acted as guides. Huangtaiji circumvented Mao Wenlong of Dongjiang Island, and crossed the Yalu River to attack Yizhou city of Korea. Huangtaiji earlier faked an attack on the bank of Liao River for diverting Yuan Chonghuan's attention. Manchus took over Yizhou, Dingzhou and Anzhou prefectures of Korea. When Manchus attacked the Korean capital, Korean King sent over his cousin for peace talk with Manchus.

After subduing Korea, Huangtaiji led his troops across Liao River to attack Jinzhou. Yuan Chonghuan ordered that general Zhao Shuaijiao guard Jinzhou. Zhao Shuaijiao asked an eunuch to write letters to the Manchu for setting up a peace trap, hence delaying the Manchu attack for several days. With relief army coming, Zhao Shuaijiao launched an attack and defeated Huangtaiji. Then, Huangtaiji circumvented Jinzhou to attack Ningyuan city. Yuan Chonghuan ambushed Huangtaiji with a column of army on the right side of the city. Huangtaiji faked to attack Jinzhou, but he actually retreated to Shenyang in an orderly manner. At this time, Yuan Chonghuan was reprimanded by Ming court for not aiding Jinzhou, and Wang Zhichen was ordered to replace Yuan Chonghuan. Ming Emperor Sizong (Zhu Youjian, reign AD 1628-1644) got enthroned and eunuch minister Wei Zhongxian was executed. Yuan Chonghuan was restored his position by Ming Emperor Sizong in April of AD 1628.

In AD 1629, Ming General Kong Youde and Geng Zhongming defected to the Manchus after Yuan Chonghuan cheated Mao Wenlong into an arrest and executed Mao for his disobedience. (Mao Wenlong was recorded to have launched numerous attacks at Manchus and should be considered a brave man. His execution should be considered an abuse of power by Yuan Chonghuan. Yuan Chonghuan paid his price later when Manchu adopted Kong & Geng's advice in attacking Peking from Mongolia. Kong Youde and Geng Zhongming had treated Mao Wenlong as step-father.)

Kong Youde and Geng Zhongming proposed to Huangtaiji that the Manchus invade through the Mongol territories, attack Ming's Longjingguan Pass at the Great Wall and then march on Zunhua and Peking cities. To prevent Yuan from receiving an advance alert, Duo'ergun asked the two Ming generals to return to Ming camp at Dengzhou. Duo'ergun stated that the Mongol tribe of Ka-er-xin must have guide for leading the way to Longjingguan Pass. In Oct 1629, Huangtaiji, after spending days marching through Mongol land, arrived at Longjingguan Pass which was guarded by few hundred Ming soldiers. Manchu

forces totalled about 60000. Then, Huangtaiji ordered that four banners attack Da'ankou Pass and another four banners attack Hongshankou Pass. Manchus pressed on at Zunhua-zhou.

Ming court sent an urgent request to Shanhaiguan for relief, and Zhao Shuaijiao led relief to a place called Sandunying where his army was destroyed by the Manchus and he committed suicide when Sandunying city refused to allow him to enter the gate at night. Sandunying and Zunhuan were taken by Manchu Qing army . Within one month, numerous cities, including Jizhou, Shunyi and Tongzhou, were sacked. When Manchus arrived at the citywall of Peking, Mang Gui had led another relief army from Shanhaiguan Pass. When Yuan Chongyuan led armies and two generals (Zu Dashou and He Kegang) to the relief of Peking, Huangtaiji was very much shaken. Yuan Chongyuan defeated the attacks by two Manchu princes. Manchu failed to sack Peking city. (Later in 1644, when Wu Sangui sent messenger to Manchu for borrowing an army against peasant rebellion, Duo'ergun was very much hesitant on the way to Shanhaiguan Pass, thinking that it could be a Ming army trap: Duo'ergun asked how could Li Zicheng's rascal rebels sack Peking city while he himself failed to do it three times.)

Huangtaiji then played a dissension to have Ming Emperor Chongzhen kill Yuan Chonghuan. Huangtaiji took the advice from Fan Wencheng to have two 'peace' letters written to the attention of Yuan Chonghuan and then have two letters deliberately dropped near two city gates. After capturing two Ming eunuchs sent by Ming emperor for investigating the two letters, Huangtaiji ordered a Chinese officer deliberately talking about Manchu contacts with Yuan in front of the two eunuchs and then deliberately allowed two eunuchs to flee back to Peking. Then, Huangtaiji deliberately retreated five Chinese li distance per fabricated agreement with Yuan Chonghuan. Soon, news came that Yuan Chongyuan was imprisoned by 'Jinyiwei' Imperial Eunuch Guards, and two Yuan Chongyuan generals, i.e., Zu Dashou and He Kegang, with 16000 Liao-dong troops, fled to exit Shanhaiuan Pass for hometown of Ningyuan. Yuan Chonghuan was ordered to be executed via 'slicing' or peeling off the flesh. Emperor Chongzhen, at the admonition of court minister Sun Chengzong, immediately sent messenger to chase Zu Dashou and He Kegang for pacification even though the two guys had pillaged their way to Shanhaiguan Pass.

Huangtaiji withdrew Peking siege to make Ming soliders drop their alert and

then attacked Peking again after pillaging Gu'an and Liangxiang. When pressed by eunuch gestapo, Ming General Mang Gui went outside of the city gate to have a fight with Huangtaiji. Huangtaiji sent disguised soldiers into Mang Gui's camp and killed him. Huangtaiji then withdrew his army to Tongzhou area. At Zunhua, Huangtaiji defeated a cannon column led by Liu Zhilun. Then, he sacked Luanzhou. In Jan 1630, Za Dashou and Sun Chengzong were ordered to guard Sandunying [Zunhua of Hebei Prov] and Fenglun. Za Dashou dispatched troops to Leting, Changli, Huning, Shimen, Taidouying and Yanheyang to prevent the Manchu from retreating back across the Great Wall. 300 cavalry scouts were looking for Manchu trace. After failing to take over Changli, Huangtaiji retreated to Manchuria via the old path: Huangtaiji never ever challenged fortified Shanhaiguan Pass, i.e., No. 1 Pass of China. In Feb, Za Dashou was ordered to cross the Great Wall for Jianchang [Lingyuan of Liaoning Prov] where he set up an ambush at the crossroad bordering Mongol tribe of Keerxin. On one day, Wu Xiang's scout team had a sudden encounter with Manchu expedition force. Wu Sangui forcefully broke out of the city to charge at the Manchu forces and rescued his father at the wound to his nosebridge in the course of killing a Manchu general. (This is in sharp contrast with his abandoning his father by defecting to Manchu at the Battle of Shanhaiguan in 1644.) Eunuch Gao Qiqian, i.e., adopted father of Wu Sangui, wrote a recommendation to emperor on behalf of Wu Sangui. Wu Sangui would soon become a Ming "*you ji*" [i.e., mobile fighter] general from the post of "*zhong jun*" under the leadership of Fu Zonglong.

Huangtaiji began to make similar cannons, called 'Hong Yi Da Pao', i.e., Big Guns With Red Coat. Sun Chengzong was recalled for the post of guarding Shanhaiguan Pass, and Sun Chengzong began to recover the territories of Luanzhou, Qianan, Yongping and Zunhua. Qiu Hejia was conferred the post of "*xun fu*" for Liao-dong.

Surrender of Zu Dashou

In 1631, Wu Xiang was upgraded to Jinzhou city's "*zong bing*" general under Zu Dashou. In Aug of AD 1631, Huangtaiji lay a siege of Dalinghe city where Zu Dashou and about 30000 civilians and soldiers stayed. A column was led by Prince A'qige to attack Jinzhou for sake of preventing Shanhaiguan relief army from coming to the aid of Dalinghe. Qiu Hejia ordered that Wu Xiang and Song Wei, with 40000, depart Ningyuan for Jinzhou. The two parties fought a battle at Songshan. Ming armies returned to the city of Jinzhou. In mid-Sept, Manchu

attacked Jinzhou. On Sept 24th, Wu Xiang and Song Wei were ordered to give relief to Dalinghe. The two parties used cannons and musketeers during the Sept 27th battle between Xiaolinghe River and Changshan Mountain. Huangtaiji ordered a two prong attack at the two Ming camps. When Wu Xiang intended to attack Manchu camp with fire, the wind changed direction. Ming armies were thoroughly defeated, and remnants fled to the city of Jinzhou. Wu Xiang was demoted by Ming court. At Dalinghe, Zu Dashou and He Kegang were defending the city. Zu Dashou's brother, Zu Dabi, renowned for his extraordinary strength, led 120 brave army on a night assault into Manchu camp and almost killed Huangtaiji. Manchus then bombarded the city with cannons. By winter, Zu Dashou surrendered to Manchus, He Kegang was captured and killed, and Zu Dabi fled the city. Among those who surrendered with Zu Dashou would be Wu Sanfeng and Pei Guozhen, i.e., brother and brother-in-law of Wu Sangui. Zu Dashou proposed to take over Jinzhou for Huangtaiji. When Zu Dashou arrived in Jinzhou, both Qiu Hejia and Sun Chengzong had already been rebuked by the Ming court. Zu Dashou hence took over Jinzhou but asked Huangtaiji to defer attack till another time. Emperor Chongzhen again pardoned Zu Dashou even though Qiu Hejia [*xun fu*] reported the fake surrender to Ming court.

Mutiny of Kong Youde, Li Jiucheng, Geng Zhongming & Shang Kexi
During the winter, at Dengzhou of Shandong, Kong Youde killed "*zong bing*" Zhang Dake and drove off "*xun hu*" Sun Yuanhua. The mutiny occurred as a result of Kong Youde & Li Jiucheng being dispatched by Sun Yuanhua to Manchuria for giving relief to Dalinghe Siege. At Wuqiao of Hebei Prov, the two, with 800 cavalry, pillaged villagers for food and then decided on a return to Shandong Prov for rebelling against Sun Yuanhua the Ming sub-governor for Deng-Lai area. Rebels sacked Linyi, Lingxian, Shanghe, and Qingcheng, i.e., counties to the north of Jinan. In Jan 1632, Kong Youde sacked Dengzhou [coastal Penglai of Shandong] and declared himself "du yuanshuai", i.e. governor-marshal equivalent.

Ming court sent troops of Baoding-Tianjin-Changping to Shandong, but failed to quell rebellion. On June 9th, Emperor Chongzhen, at the advice of Liu Chongqing & Wang Wanxiang, ordered that eunuch Gao Qiqian relocate 10000 Liao-dong troops for Shandong. Zu Dabi, Jin Guoqi, Wu Xiang & Wu Sangui entered the Shanhaiguan Pass. On Aug 19th, Ming armies, with 40,000 army, reinforced by Wu Xiang's Liao-dong troops, attacked Kong Youde at Shahe [Yexian], and on 30th, pushed to Baima. After a defeat, Kong retreated to

Dengzhou. On Sept 1st, Ming army surrounded Dengzhou. Through Nov, Kong Youde were repeatedly beat back by Ming army. Rebel Li Jiucheng was killed in the course of breakout actions on Nov 21st & 27nd. Kong requested for relief with Huangtaiji. Huangtaiji ordered that Kong Youde and Geng Zhongming retreat over the sea to Manchuria via the north gate of the city. On Dec 3rd, Ming army defeated Kong's breakout action at the west gate after obtaining the information from a defector. On the night, Kong and about 10000 army and family members boarded over 100 ships for the other side of the Bay. Luo Xianglin pointed out that Ming China's "cannons manufacturing bureau" was dismantled by Kong Youde for Manchuria as a gift to Huangtaiji, an event that would significantly strengthen the Manchu firepower.

Kong Youde, upon arriving at Shenyang, proposed that Manchus attack Lüshun of Liao-dong. Kong and Geng hence took over Lüshun, killed "*zong bing*" Huang Long, and pacified a deputy general called Shang Kexi. Kong Youde was conferred the post of "*yuan shuai*" [marshal], and Geng and Shang the posts of "*zong bing*" respectively. The three guys, together with Wu San Gui, would be the later "Three Feudatories".

In AD 1636, Huangtaiji changed their name to Manchu from Jurchen and declared the dynasty name of 'Qing', namely, clearness. (Meanwhile, the whole northern China was in collapse as a result of mobile pillaging by Li Zicheng & Zhang Xianzhong rebels.) After the death of Huangtaiji, Emperor Shunzhi would be enthroned. Huangtaiji's brothers, Duo'ergun (Dorgon) and Duoduo, would be responsible for pushing the war against Ming. The Manchus boasted of an army of 220,000 for the Eight Banners of Manchu, Mongol and Han respectively. (After taking over China, they had raised an additional army of 660,000 for the Green Camp Battalions or Green Standard Battalions.)

In July 1638, Wu Sangui, at age 27, was promoted to "*zong bing*" [sub-prefecture military magistrate] general after Ming China had exhausted previous generations of fighters. (Wu Sangui received three promotions within 6 years, from "*you ji*" to "*can jiang*" to "*fu jiang*" to "*zong bing*".) Wu Sangui was in charge of the defence of Ningyuan where both Yuan Chonghuan and Sun Chengzong had dealt devastating defeats to the Manchu.

Surrender of Hong Chengchou

In early 1639, Hong Chengchou, so-called "*san bian* [trilateral border] *zong du*

[governor-general]" of Shenxi Province, was relocated to Manchuria, away from his dozen years of entanglements with peasant rebellion. Hong Chengchou instructed Wu Sangui in training soldiers and practicing weaponry.

On May 18th 1640, at Xinshan [Mt Xinshan, Jinxian county of Liaoning Prov], Ming army fought against 1500 Manchu forces who stealthily circumvented Jinzhou to cover the defection of about 30 families of Mongol Duo-luo-te tribe. On June 15th, Huangtaiji sent 10000 reinforcements to Prince Jierhalang and Duoduo from Shenyang as a replenishment of the loss in previous skirmish. Since March, Prince Jierhalang and Duoduo began to attack surrounding forts of Jinzhou. With Hong Chengchou's instruction of initiating attacks and defending cities at the same time, Wu Sangui launched an attack at Manchu Embedded Blue Banner on July 8th. Having called over Ma Ke from Shanhaiguan Pass, Hong Chengchou then convened a meeting with four garrison commanders, i.e., Wu Sangui, Zuo Guangxian, Cao Bianjiao and Liu Zhaoji for a new round of attack with 40000 Ming army. On 11th, Ming army fought against Manchu. Zu Dale from Jinzhou came over as well. Manchu retreated to Yizhou. Among three engagements, Ming armies gained upper hand over Manchu twice at Songshan [Mt Pine] & Xinshan [Mt Apricot].

Beginning from 1641, Manchu cavalry approached three sides of Jinzhou. On following two days after Spring Festival day, Wu Sangui volunteered to load 15000 units of grain for delivery to Jinzhou-Songshan-Xinshan. On 6th day of lunar new year, Wu Sangui departed Ningyuan, and on the night of following day, successfully transported the grain over to Jinzhou. On 9th day, 20000 Manchu cavalry tried to chase the empty carts. In March, Manchu dug up trenches to surround Jinzhou city and then laid eyes on Songshan. In May, Hong Chengchou was ordered to go to Ningyuan from Shanhaiguan. By Dec, Ming court sent over reinforcements consisting of troops from Datong [Wang Pu], Xuanfu [Yang Guozhu], Miyun [Tang Tong] and Shanhaiguan [Ma Ke]. With eight "*zhen*" [garrison] of troops, about 130000, Hong Chengchou departed for relief to Jinzhou. Wu Sangui, counted among one of three dare-to-fight "*zong bing*" generals, personally headed 20000 Liao-dong troops. By late April, Ming armies arrived at the area between Songshan and Xinshan. Manchu troops stationed on Mt Rufengshan, between Songshan and Jinzhou, and Manchu cavalry scattered to the east and west. On April 25th, Ming armies attacked Manchu uphill against Mt Rufengshan. Zu Dashou exited south gate of Jinzhou to attack Manchu as well. Wu Sangui defeated Manchu cavalry on west side, and

Ming cannons battalion defeated Manchu cavalry on east side. Manchu presented 30 "red coated cannons" for bombarding Ming troops. Ming cannons battalion blasted the opposite positions reciprocally. 60000 Ming troops fought against 10000 Manchu on the mountain and 20000 cavalry on two sides through the evening.

On July 26th of 1641, Hong Chengchou, under the pressure of Ming court, decided on a new expedition to lift the Manchu siege of Jinzhou. On 29th, Ming troops arrived at Songshan. On Aug 2nd, Ming armies initiated major attacks. Yang Guozhu sacrificed his life. On the Manchu side, on July 19th, Huangtaiji [Qing Taizong] personally led relief to Qijiabao of Songshan after 6 day and night ride. Again, Manchu troops dug three circles of trenches, this time to surround Songshan within one day. On 19th, Hong Chengchou decided on an outbreak for limited grain supply in Songshan. (Ming army had three days' worth of grain for the campaign.) On 20th, Ming troops failed to breach the trench. The next day, Ming troops failed again. On the night of 21st, Hong Chengchou ordered a new outbreak the next day. However, generals, such as Wang Pu, pulled ahead of the outbreak overnight in the hope of being the first to flee. Wu Sangui adopted the advice of a Mongol in fleeing to Xinshan via major roadpath which was less guarded by Manchu troops. Ming troops fell victims to trenches, and a considerable portion of Ming army were drowned by sea. Cao Bianjiao & Wang Tingchen returned to Songshan to be with Hong Chengchou. Zhang Ruoling, a Ming court supervisor, fled to Xiaolinghe where he rode on a boat to Ningyuan. The rest of generals fled to Xingshan. On Aug 24th, Manchu continued to lay siege of Xinshan and defeated a band of Ming troops who tried to flee the city. On 26th, Wu Sangui and Wang Pu exited Xinshan. The two fought Manchu along the way to Ningyuan. Remnants at Xinshan fled in separate directions. Ming army lost 53783 soldiers. This is the so-called Battle of Songshan [Mt Songshan, Jinxian county of Liaoning Prov].

Wu Sangui and Wang Pu fled the battle scene. Seeing the debacle of Songshan-Xinshan-Tashan, Zu Dashou, after one year of encirclement, surrendered to Manchu with the city of Jinzhou later on March 8th of 1642. Zu Dashou family sent in a treasure mountain of precious stones to Huangtaiji as a show of gratitude and submission. (Korean prince, per Li Zhiting, had commented that Za Dashou family was richer than Korean king.)

Wu Sangui's Continuous Defence of Ningyuan

After Manchu sacked Jinzhou, Hong Chengchou was caught alive after failing to commit suicide. Cao Bianjiao & Wang Tingchen were killed by Manchu. Huangtaiji was said to have obtained the help of his concubine in persuading Hong Chengchou into a surrender. Hong Chengchou took the advice of Fan Wencheng in writing to Ming emperor an ambiguous letter for sake of protecting his family members since Emperor Chongzhen thought that Hong Chengchou might already had died for the country. On the side of Ming court, Emperor Chongzhen had to execute Wang Pu as a scapegoat but retained Wu Sangui for garrison general at Ningyuan. By early 1642, i.e., the 15th year of emperor's reign, Wu Sangui had trained 10,000 soldiers at Ningyuan and commanded a total force of 25,000 outside of Shanhaiguan Pass. In March, Wu Sangui & Bai Guangen made a tentative move against Manchu near Tashan. Four days later, on March 8th, Zu Dashou surrendered Jinzhou to Manchu and promised to persuade Wu Sangui into surrendering Ningyuan. Ningyuan soldiers refused to accept Zu Dashou's emissaries. Qing Taizong, against the advice of several ethnic-Han officials in attacking Ningyuan, would seek for peaceful solution to Ningyuan. By April, Qing Taizong, at the advice of Zhang Cunren, wrote to Wu Sangui for pacification. Friends, colleagues, relatives and family members continued to write to Wu Sangui for surrender persuasion. Wu Sangui kept silence. On April 12th, Fan Zhiwuan was conferred the post of governor for Ningyuan-Jinzhou area. By Oct, Qin Taizong [Huangtaiji] ordered that 7th brother A-ba-tai invade China. A-ba-tai again circumvented around the Great Wall to intrude into Yanzhou of Shandong Peninsula in the autumn. Zu Dashou was ordered to mount both peace and war campaigns against Wu Sangui. Zu Dashou sent over a personal knife as an 'evidence' of the relationship. In Nov, Wu Sangui went out of Ningyuan to fight a war against Manchu cavalry, and lost 72 horses.

In Jan 1643, Zu Dashou proposed to attack satellite cities of Ningyuan. On Jan 19th [lunar calendar], Wu Sangui suddenly replied to Zu Dashou by dispatching a Mongol horseman. Scholar Li Zhiting pointed out that Wu Sangui might have some wavering by this time, but Ming generals still possessed the kind of patriotism as exhibited by Zu Dashou's persistence in defending Dalinghe & Jinzhou under strenuous conditions of killing horses and soldiers for food.

In the spring, Wu Sangui was ordered to come into the pass for fighting A-ba-tai expedition force. Ma Ke of Sanhaiguan Pass and Liu Zeqing of Shandong prov, as two other "*zong bing*", also participated in this campaign. At Huairou

county, Ming forces fought against Manchu. Manchu retreated towards Lengkou Pass. On May 12th, Emperor Chongzhen decreed a visit to the generals should they come closer to the capital. On 15th, emperor received Wu Sangui, Ma Ke & Liu Zeqing at Wuyingdian Palace, and offered an imperial sword to Wu Sangui. Before leaving Peking, Wu Sangui, at an invitation, visited Tian Hongyu whose adopted daughter was an imperial concubine. Wu Sangui sought for a singer, i.e., beauty Chen Yuanyuan, as his concubine. (Chen Yuanyuan was a singer who was grabbed at Suzhou by Tian Hongyu while leading a 1000 person trip to the south.) After leaving 1000 taels of silver with Tian Hongyu, Wu Sangui left Manchuria with a promise that he would fetch the beauty later.

By autumn, in August, Qin Taizong [Huangtaiji] passed way. Qing Emperor Shunzhi, 9th son of age 6, was selected as the new emperor as a compromise of confrontations between Duo-e-gun, other manchu princes [like Ji-e-ha-lang] and dowager empresses. Unlike the predecessor, Duo-e-gun, as regent, immediately dispatched troops against satellite cities like Zhonghou, Qiandun and Zhongqian, beginning from Sept 11th 1643. Emperor Chongzhen allocated currency, manpower and grains to the defence of Ningyuan and three satellite cities. Even when peasant rebels approached Peking, Emperor Chongzhen was reluctant to relocate Wu Sangui but merely called in Bai Guangen. Between Shanhaiguan and Ningyuan, only three tiny satellite cities were left. On Sept 25th, Zhonghou was sacked; on Oct 1st, Qiandun-wei was sacked; and Zhongqian was abandoned to Manchu. 15000 Ming soldiers were lost. Before loss of Zhonghou, Wu Xiang, i.e. Wu Sangui's father, left for Peking. Ningyuan, first besieged by Nu-e-ha-chi in AD 1626 and then attacked by Huang-tai-ji in summer of AD 1627, became an island in the sea.

Battle of Mountain & Sea Pass

Shanhaiguan, i.e., Mountain & Sea Pass, was first built by Duke Weiguo-gong Xu Da in 1381 to take control over the so-called Hexi [west of Liao-he River] Corridor. From Shanhaiguan to Jinzhou, about 200 kilometer long strip linked Manchuria to northern China. In between would be another important Ming China garrison called Ningyuan. Since 1395, Emperor Hongwu had ordered military farming in Liao-dong [east of Liao-he River] area. Gradually, officers seized the lands cultivated by soldiers to become hegemony landowners and

utilized garrison troops for slave labor. Scholar Li Zhiting pointed out that various border generals, in Liaodong [east of Liao River], had seized at least one third of military farms by early Wanli Era, which would be equivalent to 8390 Chinese acres and 199840 units of grains. By the end of Wanli era, in Liaoxi [west of Liao River], the embezzlement led to merely 170000 units of grains versus 700k in early Ming time period of Hongwu-Yongxi era. In this place would rise the five generation Zu Dashou family. Wu Sangui's father, i.e., Wu Xiang, married a sister of Zu Dashou, paving the way for the ascension of Wu Sangui in Ming China's military apparatus. In 1644, prior to the fall of Peking to peasant rebels, Wu Xiang disclosed to Emperor Chongzhen that the capital could be secured by relocating the Wu family's 3000 landlord-fighters who had riches of hundred acres of land respectively. (Later in 1648, prior to western expedition, Wu Sangui obtained the Manchu imperial permission to leave behind a brother, a general and over one hundred soldiers for taking care of 10 farms in Manchuria.)

Wu Sangui, a Ming general at Ningyuan, was on his way to Peking to rescue the Ming emperor, but he stopped at Shanhaiguan Pass when he heard of the fall of the capital. (Historians pointed out that Wu Sangui deliberately procrastinated from Ningyuan to Shanhaiguan.) Li Zicheng sent a Ming defector general (Tang Tong) to Wu Sangui. Tang Tong brought the letter from Wu Xiang together with 50,000 "liang" (tael) silver. Wu Sangui agreed to surrender to Li Zicheng and handed over the pass to Li Zicheng's forerunner general. Wu Sangui then left for Peking; on his way to a place called Luanzhou, Wu Sangui met his housekeeper who informed him that concubine Chen Yuanyuan was grabbed by the rebel leader Liu Zongmin.

Wu Sangui then returned to Shanhaiguan and planned to surrender to Duo-er-gun [Dorgon] who had already led about 150,000-200,000 cavalry towards the South when the news of Ming Army's abandonment of forts spread to the Manchus. (However, Duo-er-gun did not know that Peking already fell, and did not fully trust in peasant rebel sacking Peking after Wu Sangui's letter mentioned it. Manchu treated Wu Sangui's emissaries with suspicion till Wu Sangui himself broke through Li Zicheng's siege of Shanhaiguan Pass for a personal meeting with Manchu regent. Historian Li Zhiting pointed out that Wu Sangui, in his first letter to Duoergun, had asked for Manchu help in attacking

rebels by circumventing the Great Wall, not through Sanhaiguan Pass; however, Duoergun changed direction for Sanhaiguan on the road, which proved to be a right decision to meet Li Zicheng rebels head-on.)

When they came into China in AD 1644, the Manchus were said to have brought in majority of the total Manchu army which numbered no more than 150k. Scholar Li Zhiting cited Korean documents in pointing out that Duoergun's order had instructions that all Korean males from age 10 [?] to 70 must report to duty so that able men could serve in China's battlefields. The major armies fighting peasant rebels, led by Wu Sangui, however, were still of Chinese nature. At the Battle of Shi-he [stone river], next to Mountain & Sea Pass, Li Zicheng's army of about 200000-300000 fought against Wu Sangui's army of 50000 that consisted of gentry-organized forces and Ningyuan garrison troops. Li Zicheng's troops had at one time climbed over the wall of Sanhaiguan Pass. Suddenly, Manchu cavalry descended upon the Li Zicheng camp via the disguise of sand storms. Li Zicheng lost 10000-20000 [? to be double checked again] troops and 15 generals at the battle. Three years later, corpses were not not fully buried yet on the spot.

Dorgon, taking advice of two Confucian counsellors (defector ex-Ming general and scholar), would propose that Wu Sangui and Li Zicheng fight the battle first. While Wu & Li were entangled in a bitter fight, Dorgon led his cavalry on a charge against Li Zicheng all of a sudden. Li Zicheng retreated to Beijing and decapitated the father of Wu Sangui en route of retreat, and slaughtered Wu Sangui's family prior to exiting Peking.

After Manchus were invited by Wu Sangui the gatekeeper for Shanhaiguan Pass, the Manchus used the slogan of 'Restoring Ming Dynasty' to call for cooperation among Ming Chinese remnant armies in the wars against the peasant rebels. Li Zhiting concluded that Wu Sangui had an agreement with Duoerhun in ceding the land to the south of the Yellow River to Manchu. However, Duoergun would prohibit Wu Sangui from entering Peking, ordered Wu Sangui on a continuous chase after Li Zicheng instead, and break the promise of dividing China by the Yellow River. Duo'ergun would relocate Manchu Emperor Shunzi to Peking.

After losing the battle, Li fled to the west. Wu Sangui pursued Li Zicheng to

Xi'an. After a defeat in Tongguan Pass, Li fled southward to Jiugongshan Mountain, Hubei Province where Li was killed by local Ming landlord bands. (Since Li's body was not authenticated by the Manchu and Wu Sangui armies till months later, there was a rumor that Li had faked a death and that Li went to the mountains as a monk.) Manchu-Ming armies went on to Sichuan to kill rebel Zhang Zicheng. After defeating Li Zicheng, Manchu re-oriented armies to attack Southern Ming Court and slaughtered the city of Yangzhou on the north bank of the Yantze River. Southern Ming General Shi Kefa died during this battle. Then, crossing Yantze River, the Manchus slaughtered two more cities, Jiading and Jiangyin, both of which had rebelled against the Manchu when the queue order was re-issued. Throughout the campaigns, turn-coat Ming armies were mobilized for fighting Chinese. The notorious slaughtering of Jiading City was conducted by Manchu generals of ethnic Chinese background.

Entering China Proper

Having ascribed the division point of 1839-1842 Opium War to communist school of thoughts, Hu Qiuyuan concluded that it was Ming China's trinity of i) "eight-part essay" [i.e., stereotyped essay], ii) sea ban and iii) "eunuch politics" that had pushed China into the down-sloping at a time when Portuguese still acknowledged China's wealth as something Europe never could match. (Scholar Li Zhiting pointed out that eunuchs participated in politics since Yongle era, entered the army as "jian jun" [monitoring emissary] in Tianqi Era, and continued to play its role even though Emperor Chongzhen eradicated Wei Zhongxian eunuch gestapo gang.) Hu Qiuyuan also blamed Ming Dynasty's Zheng He seven voyages [1405-1433] for destroying ethnic-Chinese kingdoms in Southeast Asia. The arrival of Portuguese would further wipe out any remnants of such "colonialist" or "capitalist" buds that China ever possessed. Hu Qiuyuan claimed that European powers could have converged upon China much earlier than 1839-1842 Opium War should there be absent the British-French War and Napoleonic War. Further, Scholar Hu Qiuyuan believed that both Li Zicheng Rebellion and Manchu Revolt were the products of Ming China's mutiny, not peasant uprising, nor minority uprising.

Zhang Xianzhong & Li Zicheng Rebellions

In northern China, Ming Dynasty was already devastated by peasant rebellions led by Li Zicheng and Zhang Xianzhong. As to the origin of peasant rebellion,

the first significant incident would be "garrison troops at Guyuan pillaging the prefecture vault for lack of military stipends". Luo Xianglin had pointed out that Kong Youde and Geng Zhongming had rolled up Ming China's cannons manufacturing plant as a gift for Manchu. In deed, Manchu fighting forces had absorbed enormous defectors. In this sense, both Tang China and Ming China had demised as a result of their own military mutiny, not peasant rebellions.

Historians concluded that Ming Dynasty ended in the hands of rebel Li Zicheng, not Manchu invasion. Manchu further gave last Ming emperor a posthumous title of Zhuangliedi as an elegy. However, Li Zicheng's banditry did not consist of the displaced Ming army at all. The background of Li Zicheng (Li Tzu-ch'eng, 1605-1645) and Zhang Xianzhong was similar: Li Zicheng was at one time serving Ming China as a "postal garrison soldier", while Zhang Xianzhong was a soldier stationed at Yan-Sui-zhen garrison. "*Ming Shi*", edited by Manchu throughout 268 years of ruling, had provided us with a possibly forged history about Li Zicheng and Zhang Xianzhong banditry. Liu-sha-he still believed that Zhang Xianzhong slaughtered about dozen percent of Sichuan Prov population, with 70% other deaths related to epidemics, starvation and wars. In the following, we will briefly cover the two rebels.

Li Zicheng was born in Li-Jiqian castle of Huaiyuanbao in Mizhi county of Shenxi Prov (for which Li Zicheng later proclaimed himself a descendant of Tangut Xi-xia Dynasty Founder at the time of imperial enthronement). After serving as a shepherd for a rich person and a postal soldier in Yinchuan, Li Zicheng fled a death penalty for law violation. "*Ming Shi*" claimed that by the end of Tianqi Era [1621-1627], eunuch Wei Zhongxian dispatched Qian Yingjia as governor of Shenxi [western Shenxi Prov] and Zhu Tongmeng as governor of Yan-sui [northern Shenxi Prov], but both guys pacified banditry by taking in briberies and ransoms only. Li Zhiting mentioned a peasant uprising as to resistng government collection of grains in Chengcheng county of Shenxi in 1627. In 1st year of Emperor Chongzhen Era [1628-1644], famine erupted in western Shenxi Prov while military stipends were in shortage in northern Shenxi Prov. Garrison troops at Guyuan pillaged the prefecture vault. There ensued the Wang Jiayin banditry in Fugu, and Yichuan banditry (led by Wang Zuogua, Fei-shan-hu [flying-across-mountain tiger] & Da-hong-lang [big red wolf]). Gao Yingxiang, a horse thief, rose up in Ansai border post with a pal called Wang Daliang. Li Zicheng followed his uncle-in-law Gao Yingxiang in rebelling against Ming Dynasty in AD 1628. Zhang Xianzhong, who was spared

death by his superior officers Chen Hongfan & Wang Wei, would stage a rebellion in AD 1630 by rallying 18 "sai" [border villages].

Ming court dispatched Hong Chengchou to quelling rebellion. Li Zicheng & Zhang Xianzhong gangs were occasionally destroyed and pacified, but managed to regroup again. By 1636, the whole northern China was in collapse as a result of banditry's mobile pillaging. (Meanwhile, Huangtaiji declared the dynasty of Qing in Manchuria, with an aim of conquering China.) After a defeat in Shenxi, Li re-organized his rebels in Henan Province. While in Henan Prov, Li Zicheng acquired two intellectuals, by the name of Niu Jinxing and Li Yan, and re-shaped his bandit approach. By 1644, he led an army of one million eastward. Li Zicheng sacked Xi'an and captured King Qin (Zhu Cunshu), attacked Taiyuan and killed King Jin (Zhu Qiushu). (At about this time, Manchu, per Li Zhiting, dispatched secret emissary to Li Zicheng for a concerted fight against the Ming court, which Li Zicheng flatly declined.)

In Jan 1644, Li Zicheng declared the Era of Yongchang and the dynastic name of Da-shun in Xi'an. On Jan 8th, Li Zicheng's million troops departed Xi'an for the Yellow River. Two prongs were launched, with one route against Juyingguan Pass via Taiyuan-Ningwu-Datong-Xuanhua, and another route along Xingtai, Hejian, and Baoding via Henan Prov. Emperor Chongzhen adopted the advice of Wang Yongji in recalling retired Wu Xiang. However, Emperor Chongzhen was hesitant about relocating the capital to southern China. When Emperor Chongzhen asked about relocating Wu Sangui for capital defence, ministers tried to be ambivalent for avoiding blame as to abandonment of Ningyuan. Taiyuan of Shanxi Prov was lost to rebels on Feb 8th. However, Ming court still failed to achieve a consensus. Emperor produced Wang Yongji's petition for relocating Wu Sangui, but ministers still tried to avoid responsibility. After conquering Daizhou Prefecture (today's Daixian County, Shanxi), Li Zicheng went all the way to attack Ming capital of Peking in the east. He sacked Peking (Beijing) on April 25th of 1644 and caused the last Ming Emperor Sizong (Chongzhen or Ch'ung-chen) to hang himself inside of the Forbidden City in Beijing. (Some person pointed out that Ming China had been undergoing dozens of years of rat-related epidemic which might have taken half of the population in northern China at that time. Alternative account stated that in the city of Peking, Ming government's soldiers had died in batches from this epidemic.)

Li Zicheng entered the city without a fight. "*Ming Shi*" stated that Li Zicheng

troops had caught imperial patrol officers and spies on their way of march, hence averting the possibility of detection with a march to the Peking city gate. Emperor Chongzhen, having sent two sons to the ministers' houses for hiding would, hang himself inside of the Forbidden City. Empress later committed suicide under the watch of Confucian-background rebel leader Li Yan. Li Zicheng caught the crown prince and the two other sons of Emperor Chongzhen. Details of Li Zicheng & Zhang Xianzhong rebellion would be covered in ming.htm section.

Wu Sangui Chasing After Li Zicheng

Infamous Queue-Related Slaughters

Liu Guokai mentioned that the anterior Jurchens under Jurchen Jin Emperor Taizong had failed to enforce the queue ruling to have Song Chinese cut their hair back in 12th century. However, the Manchu had successfully tricked turncoat Ming Chinese on the matter of haircutting. After defeating Ming armies at the Battle of Sa'erhu in 1619, Nurhachi had first issued order to have Han Chinese cut hair in the territories under Manchu control. Liu Guokai stated that the queue order was opposed by Han Chinese in Zhen-jiang (Dantong of Liaoning Prov) area, next to Yalu River mouth. After Han Chinese killed local Manchu officials, Manchu dispatched army against Zhen-jiang people, and innumerable people jumped into Yalu River to commit suicide when Manchu army chased them. Liu Guokai mentioned that lots of the Han Chinese who fled to Ming territories with queues were executed by Ming border armies as enemy headcount.

By April 22nd of 1644, Manchu Regent Duo'ergun and Turncoat General Wu Sangui defeated Li Zicheng at the Battle of Shanhaiguan Pass. (Duo'ergun, for sake of winning the heart of Han Chinese, had executed three Manchu soldiers who cooked a dog robbed from a Han Chinese household. This is in sharp contrast with the lootings and killings the Manchu had conducted prior to the Shanhaiguan Battle.) By May 2nd (lunar calendar), Manchu entered Peking city. Duo'ergun issued the queue order the next day in lieu of previous broadcast stating that Manchu was for restoring Ming Dynasty throne. Manchu counsellor Fan Wencheng petitioned with Duo'ergun for a hold on the queue policy. Duo'ergun agreed to it, and then ordered a three-day mourning for last Ming

Emperor Chongzhen. Thereafter, queue order began to be implemented, causing numerous Ming remnants flee Peking city.

Since Li Zicheng re-established himself at Tongguan of Shaanxi Prov and southern Ming royal house established Southern Ming court, Duo'ergun revoked the queue order on May 24th [lc]. In addition to Southern Ming court and Li Zicheng's "da shun jun" [Great Army of 'Shun' where shun meant for smoothness], Zhang Xianzhong's "da xi jun" [Great Army of the West] still possessed quite some number of soldiers in Sichuan Prov.

At the time Li Zicheng sacked Peking, Zhang Xianzhong had marched towards Sichuan Prov of southwestern China. "*Ming Shi*" (i.e., History of Ming Dynasty), edited by Manchu Qing historian, claimed that Zhang Xianzhong slaughtered 3/4th of Sichuan's population. (Sichuan was later filled up by migrants from Guangdong and Hunan provinces.) "*Ming Shi*" carried pages of writings about the atrocities committed by Li Zicheng and Zhang Xianzhong: Both rebels had a long list of massacres, slaughters and butchering, like cutting off women's feet and piled them up onto a hill or piercing pregnant women's wombs etc. In this perspective, the defeats of both Li Zicheng and Zhang Xianzhong by the Manchu forces would be considered a blessing for Chinese. Some scholars pointed out that "*Ming Shi*" could have forged the real history about Li Zicheng and Zhang Xianzhong. Some had pointed out that Zhang Xianzhong's remnant armies had fought against Manchu rule well into the late 1650s and early 1660s, something extraordinary should we negate Manchu Qing historian's claim to interpret Zhang Xianzhong's resistance as having garnered the support of Sichuan people. (Bao Jie of iastate.edu had cited a bbs writing by nanxiang-zi stating that "Manchu Qing records stated that Zhang Xianzhong was killed in 1646, and altogether over 130 'ying' or battalions of Zhang Xianzhong armies were defeated. Manchu Qing records also contained such descriptions as Manchu army 'slaughtering city by city, either killing all males or killing both males and females, because bandits mixed up with civilians and because jade and stone could not be distinguished from each other'.)

By Oct [lc], Manchu renewed attacks at Li Zicheng, with Wu Sangui acting as herald general still. By Jan 1645 [lc], King Yu-wang Duo-duo southern route and King Ying-wang A'jige northern route defeated Li Zicheng at Tongguan and converged towards Xi'an city. Li Zicheng fled towards Henan-Hubei provinces and stationed at Wuchang city shortly. By Feb, A'jige pursued Li Zicheng in the

south, and Duo-duo relocated to fight Southern Ming court in the southeast. By May 1645 [lc], Li Zicheng was killed by Ming local forces at Jiugongshan Mountain of Hubei Prov.

10-day slaughter of Yangzhou City

Duo-duo only fought with Southern Ming General Huang Degong and killed him, while the other Southern Ming armies surrendered mostly. The reason that southern Ming court fell was due to its internal strife. Ruan Dacheng had recalled most troops north of the Yangtze for quelling the rebellion of General Zuo Liangyue. [KMT General Bai Chongxi had invoked the story of Ruan Dacheng and Zuo Liangyue in disuading Li Zongren from following Zhang Fakui's advice in a coup against Chiang Kai-shek in Canton in 1949. KMT generals cited the vagrant life-styles of White Russians fleeing to China at the end of 1917 Russian Revolution as a history mirror of people who lost their country.]

By mid-April, Manchu sacked the city of Yangzhou with the help of a Ming traitor who opened the city gate. General Shi Kefa sacrificed his life. Manchu ordered a 10-day slaughter of Yangzhou city as a demonstration of terror. By early May, Southern Ming court at Nanking surrendered without putting up a fight.

Liu Guokai mentioned that Ming Chinese at the Yangtze Delta, including Jiangyin, Nanking, Jiading and Suzhou cities, had originally mobilized "welcome parties" for Manchu forces in the expectation that Manchu rulers would restore order and cut taxes. By May [lc], Duo'ergun proposed the queue order again, thinking that Southern Ming had been pacified. In early June [lc], Duo'ergun re-issued the queue order, stating that whoever opposed hair cutting would be punished by martial laws and whoever disobeyed would be executed as bandits and rebels. At Jiangyin, a turncoat Chinese by the name of Fang Heng was assigned the post of magistrate by Manchu court.

By mid-June [lc], Han Chinese south of the Yangtze River, hearing of the queue order, began to oppose Manchu rule. Among the most extraordinary struggles will be the people at Jiangyin of today's Jiangsu Prov.

Slaughtering Of Jiangyin City

On June 26th, populace at Jiangyin arrested and executed Fang Heng and propogated a slogan of "retaining hair rather than head". Peasants numbering

100,000 converged onto Jiangyin, and rich Anhui Prov merchant Cheng Bi donated 175,000 taels of silver for the uprising. An ex-Ming official by the name of Chen Mingyu was supported as a leader. Jiangyin people beat off a Manchu attack from Changzhou. When Manchu army attacked Jiangyin again, Chen Mingyu, on July 9th, recommended Yan Yingyuan (i.e., an ex-Ming "*dian shi*" or inspector) for leading the defence. Yan Yingyuan wrote a poem stating that "Carrying Hair For Eighty Days As A Show Of Fidelity, Populace Numerbing 100,000 Are Now Willing To Die For Confucian Righteousness With One Heart". Manchu army under Regent Duo'e'gun and King Duo-duo, numbering 240,000, laid siege of the city and mounted countless attacks, with a loss of three Manchu royal kings, 18 generals and 75,000 soldiers. Yan Yingyuan replied to Manchu surrender invitation with such words as "no surrendering inspector no matter how many Ming generals had surrendered". On Aug 21st 1645, Manchu army, with heavy calibre cannons from Nanking, successfully bombarded the city gate. Yan Yingyuan fought Manchu lane by lane. Yan, having failed to commit suicide after being wounded, was killed by Manchu soldiers. Chen Mingyu also died in street fightings, and his whole family committed suicide. Street fightings continued through to the next day when Manchu ordered a massacre of the city. The whole city fought Manchu to the last person by defending it for 81 days. By Aug 23rd, 172,000 Jiangyin people had died, and only 53 persons had survived by hiding on the top storey of a pagoda.

Three Rounds of Slaughter at Jiading

On June 12th 1645 [lc], the queue order reached Jiading town. Tens of thousands of people converged on June 14th for opposing the queue order. Gentry Hou Tongzeng & Huang Chunyao were made leaders. Jiading people defeated several attacks led by turncoat Manchu general by the name of Li Chengdong. By July 3rd [lc], Manchu soldiers attacked city again with cannons support. Manchu first breached the east gate. When Hou Tongzeng's two sons asked about what to do next, Hou Tongzeng stated "no need for panic... nothing other than just death", and later the whole family committed suicide by jumping into the river. First round of slaughter by Manchu army would cause 20,000 deaths. Li Chengdong was recorded to have used 300 ships in shipping lootings to Taicang of Jiangsu Prov.

Remnant resistance fighters continued to attack Manchu army outside of the city. On July 20th, rebels defeated Manchu soldiers at nearby Gerongzhen Town. By 26th, Manchu sent over relief and slaughtered the town of Gerongzhen.

After Li Chengdong exited Jiading, resistance fighters retook Jiading. On July 27th, Manchu soldiers invaded Jiading again and held a second round of massacre. In August, a Southern Ming official, by the name of Wu Zhifan organized a counter-attack at Manchu army at Jiading. Manch soldiers conducted a third round of massacre of Jiading as a revenge.

Manchu slaughters were not restricted to the above three infamous incidents. Scholars had pointed out that in early days Manchu founder Nu-e-ha-chi and Huangtaiji slaughtered Ming Chinese in Manchuria and Peking area; King Zhengqinwang Ji-e-ha-lang slaughtered Xiangtan of Hunan Prov and Datong of Shanxi Prov; and Manchu slaughtered the people of Canton of Guangxi Prov as well.

Solidifying Rule Over China

Chinese history had two Manchu emperors entitled 'zu', i.e., founder. That would be Emperor Shunzi (Qin Shizu), and Emperor Kangxi (Qin Shengzu). This was due to the fact that the Southern Ming court did not officially fall till 1662. As we had exhibited above, Manchu got into antagonism with Han Chinese only as a result of enforcing the 'queue order', something designed to massacre both the Han Chinese bodies and their souls, in the physical as well as spiritual sense.

Ethnic contentions between Manchu and Han Chinese were intense. During the 268 years of Manchu rule, numerous Chinese rebellions had occurred because of the strict rule of haircutting. The Manchus had a special hair style: the infamous "queue". They cut hair off the front skull of their head and made the remaining hair into a long pigtail. The pigtail story might be related to the early Tobas of the 4th-6th century. The Tobas were called "suo lu", namely, pigtail styled robbers. (A better English wording for 'lu' would be enemies or savages.) The Chinese had no choice, either hair or head to be cut.

The Manchu also adopted predatory methods of land deprivation. They set up caste system in the attempt of avoiding the possibility of being assimilated into the Chinese. The Manchu Emperor Shunzhi had a story about marrying a woman called 'Dong Guifei'. After the death of this concubine, Emperor Shunzhi went to Wutaishan Mountain as a monk per legend. Dong Guifei could be related to

some Manchu who had inter-marriage with Chinese from Han Banner. Historians believed that Dong was a Manchu, but the populace belief was that she was a Han. Recently, there was a claim that the mother of Emperor Shunzhi was from Mongolian Banner. Few examples of Manchu-Han intermarriages would be ex-Ming General Wu Sangui who had his son married to Manchu royal family. This shows that early Manchus did not have a strict prohibition that Manchus could not have inter-marriage with ethnic Han.

Today, the Manchus had lost their ethnic identities. If anyone called himself or herself a Manchu, it would be for sake of child birth or college entrance quota. The Manchus may have lost their identities because they lacked a religion. The Hui Muslims could claim to be a Hui because they believed in Islam no matter how Chinese they look. The Manchus have nothing to cling to as a differentiation from the Chinese. Manchu legacy would be the cuisine in some restaurants, with names such as Manchu Court Menu. Another legacy would be the so-called Banner Clothes, 'Qi Bao', that women would wear for marriages.

Continuing Resistance In The Southwest

Back in Nov 1645, Duoergun dispatched Heh Luohui & Li Guohan to Sichuan for attacking Zhang Xianzhong. In Jan 1646, Manchu King Hao-ge was sent to Sichuan for quelling the rebellion. By Nov 1646, Sichuan was quelled with the sacking of Chengdu and killing of Zhang Xianzhong. Zhang Xianzhong remnants, i.e., mainly four adopted sons Sun Kewang, Li Dingguo, Liu Wenxiu & Ai Nengqi, fled to Yunnan-Guizhou provinces. (Wang Zhonghan claimed that Li Dingguo's "da [grand] xi [west] jun [army]" took over Yunnan Prov in Sept 1646 [solar cal?], and developed economy, pacified minority peoples, recruited soldiers among Yi-zu, Miao-zu, Yao-zu, Dong-zu, Gelao-zu & Dai-zu, organized 50-elephant column on basis of Dai-zu [Thai] tradition, and controlled 16 of 18 prefectures of Yunnan Prov.)

Hao-ge went back to Peking after leaving Li Guoying as "zong bing" [chief of military column]. Two years later, Sichuan Prov was in turmoils again when Ming royalists and Zhang Xianzhong remnants staged rebellion. Duoergun accused Hao-ge of dereliction in Sichuan and put Hao-ge under house arrest in March 1648. With his thousand soldiers cut in half already, Li Guoying was hesitant in accepting the governor post in April 1648.

Meanwhile, Jiang Xiang rose up against Manchu in Datong of Shanxi Prov. Duo-

er-gun exerted four years, from 1648 to 1651, to quelling rebellion in Shanxi-Shenxi provinces. On Sept 8th 1651, Wu Sangui & Li Guohan, who stationed in Nanzheng area of Hanzhong, were dispatched to Sichuan Prov.

Southern Ming Emperor Yongli [Zhu Youlang] was the grandson of Ming Emperor Shenzong and 4th son of King Guiwang Zhu Changying. Zhu Youlang fled to Guangxi Prov after Zhang Xianzhong sacked Hengzhou in 1643. After Southern Ming Regime lost Emperor Hongguang & Emperor Rongwu consecutively, loyalists [such as Qu Shisi, Lu Daqi, Ding Kuichu & Li Yongmao] went to Guangxi from Zhaoqing of Guangdong in Oct 1646 for fetching 24 year old Zhu Youlang as the new emperor. Emperor Yongli gained control over Sichuan by conferring marquis and baron titles onto numerous officials and generals. As a result of disturbances by another Ming royal member [Zhu Rongfan], factions of Ming regime, like Yuan Tao [Zhang Xianzhong remnant], Li Zhanchun, Yang Zhan, Li Qiande, Wang Xiang & Wu Dading etc, fought against each other in Sichuan. Emperor Yongli dispatched Chu Yinxi & Lu Daqi to quelling Zhu Rongfan as well as frequently sent emissaries to mediating between factions. In Sept of 1650, Zhang Xianzhong remnants, led by Sun Kewang, entered Guizhou Prov from Yunnan. After learning of the death of Yang Zhan [i.e., Ming baron Jia-ding who had opposed Zhang Xianzhong earlier], Sun Kewang staged a comeback by taking advantage of Sichuan turmoils to campaign against Yuan Tao, Li Qiande & Wu Dading in the name of Emperor Yongli. Sun Kewang's Liu Wenxiu & Wang Ziqi column sacked Zunyi and forced Wang Xiang into suicide on the bank of Wu-jiang River, while Lu Mingchen column crossed Jinshajiang River and defeated Yuan Tao, Li Qiande & Wu Dading at Jia-ding [Leshan] in coordination with Liu Wenxiu & Wang Ziqi column. Li Qiande and his whole family jumped into river. Lu Mingchen column then attacked Fuzhou and drove Li Zhanchun into defection to Manchu camp. Yu Dahai fled Zhongzhou for Hunan Prov's Manchu camp. Altogether 800 ships, 4000 soldiers and 13000 people sought asylum with Manchu forces in Hunan Prov. After leaving Bai Wenxian & Liu Zhenguo in charge of Jia-ding [Leshan] & Yazhou, Liu Wenxiu returned to Yunnan Prov.

Wu Sangui would be responsible for fighting the new Ming Emperor Yongli who received support from Sun Kewang, Liu Wenxiu & Li Dingguo, generals previously serving under peasant rebel Zhang Xianzhong. In Feb of 1652, Wu Sangui & Li Guohan entered Sichuan via east and west routes. After climbing Dabashan Mountain, Wu Sangui sacked Baoningfu. Then, Wu Sangui sacked Jia-

ding [Leshan] and killed "zong bing" Long Mingyang. Bai Wenxian & Liu Zhenguo retreated to Xuzhou [Yibin].

While Wu Sangui was campaigning in Sichuan Prov, King Dingnan-wang Kong Youde attacked Guangxi Prov, and King Pingnan-wang Shang Kexi & King Jingnan-wang Geng Zhongming attacked Guangdong Prov. Sun Kewang requested Ming Emperor Yongli for a relocation to Anrong of Guizhou Prov. Emperor Yongli already conferred King Qin-wang onto Sun Kewang, King Anxi-wang onto Li Dingguo, King Gongchang-wang onto Bai Wenxian, & King Hunan-wang onto Liu Wenxiu. Sun Kewang ordered that Li Guoding & Feng Shangli attack Manchu in Hunan, 80000 force attack Kong Youde in Guilin of Guangxi, and Liu Wenxiu & Wa Fuchen attack Wu Sangui in Sichuan Prov.

In Jan of 1659 [solar cal?], Li Dingguo suffered a setback at the Battle of Mopanshan in Tengchong. Ming Emperor Yongli fled towards Burma. Li Dingguo, a general under peasant rebel leader Zhang Xianzhong, was responsible for continuing to fight the Manchu, even after Ming Emperor Yongli-di was gone. Li Dingguo collected remnants, relocated to Mengding from Nandian, and continued to resist Manchu by rallying people among the Dai-zu [Thai] minority. Na-song, a Thai-ethnic magistrate for Yuanjiang prefecture, was Li Dingguo's strongest ally. At one time, Na-song obtained the defection of Xu Mingchen & Gao Yingfeng [ex-Ming generals who surrendered to Manchu] in fighting against Manchu. Wu Sangui laid a siege of Yuanjiang city for five months. Na-song and his whole family committed suicide.

TO BE CONTINUED !!!

Sichuan people had held on to Yucheng [i.e., Chongqing] city till 1659, and Yucheng city was slaughtered after it was sacked by Manchu Qing armies."

By AD 1661, Manchu had subjugated most of Yunnan Prov. Minority peoples in southern Yunnan, Menglian & Yuanjiang areas, including Thai-ethnic, continued to support Li Dingguo. Minority chieftans, by the name of Long Jizhao & Long Jizuo, resisted Manchu for 70 days. Ming Emperor Yongli, who fled to Burma earlier, refused to return to China though Li Dingguo repeatedly requested. Emperor Yongli was later handed over to Wu Sangui for execution by Burmese

king. In AD 1662, Li Dingguo went to Mengla, and dispatched messengers to Che-li and Xian-luo [Thailand] for relief army. Thai king's emissary came to see Li Dingguo with support. Hearing of the death of Emperor Yongli, Li Dingguo was saddened to death in June of 1662 [solar cal?]. Remnants continued major resistance throughout 1663-1664: in 1663, Zhang Qi of Kunming, Zhang Tai and Mei Ah-si of Dali, Yi Shu of Tengyue, Zhang Faxiang of Wuding & Lu Jiazhu of Anning rose up in Huicheng. In 1664, Minority kings Yang-zu & King Yao-zu, and Li Shifan of Mengzi assembled 110000 against Manchu in Lin'an & Mengzi of eastern Yunnan Prov. Na-lie, i.e., Na-song's son, mounted a counter-attack at Yuanjiang city. After quelling southwestern China, Wu and another two Chinese generals would control southwestern China and southern China as the so-called Three Vassals [i.e., Three Feudatories] for dozens of years.

Manchu edited and forged the history of the former dynasty, i.e., "*Ming Shi*" (i.e., History of Ming Dynasty). One good example would be the claim that Zhang Xianzhong, who was killed in 1646, had made a stone monument entitled "seven killings". The number of 'seven', coinciding with Manchu founder's so-called "Seven Hatreds of Ming Dynasty", just rings a bell in my ear as some cooking by Manchu historians to cover up their slaughter of Sichuan Chinese as well as to legalize Manchu's rule over China. To be noted would be the dramatic population drop during the Ming-Qing dynastic transition: In AD 1620, i.e., 1st year of Ming Emperor Guangzong's Taichang Era, China boasted of a population of 51.66 million people, but in AD 1651, i.e., 8th year of Qing Emperor Shizu's Shunzhi Era, China only had 10.63 million people. The conclusion is that China's brave men had all fallen martyrdom in the resistance to Manchu invasion, something we should take pride in. (Other than brave Chinese men, Confucianism had always brought about courageous Chinese women who never hesitated to take their own lives in face of assaults by the aggressors. Volumes of chronicles on Chinese dynasties have a section entitled the 'biographies of courageous women'. There were stringent requirements that counties should only record the names of women who committed suicides before being raped or assaulted. Ironically, Manchu emperor had decreed that those women who committed suicides after being raped or assaulted could be eligible for their names listed in the 'biographies of courageous women'.)

In southern Chinese coast, General Zheng Chenggong rebelled against his father who had surrendered to the Manchus. He launched a war to recover Taiwan from the Dutch, using Dongshan Islands of Fujian Province as a launching pad. The

Zheng family would rule Taiwan till AD 1683. Shi Lang, an ex-general under Zheng's son, would defect to the Manchus. Shi Lang would be responsible for taking over Amoy and Quemoy in AD 1680 and subsequently lead the Manchus' landing in Taiwan. Both Zheng Chenggong and Shi Lang had landed in Taiwan during the high tides.

Manchu Trickery & Cunningness In Ruling

Scholar Luo Xianglin, in "*History of Chinese Nationalities*" (Chinese Culture Publishing Enterprise Co, Taipei, Taiwan, May 1953 edition), stated that Manchu court ruled Chinese, Mongols, Uygurs and Tibetans in four sharply different ways for sake of maintaining the absolute control.

As to the Mongols, Manchu rule was to forbid the Mongols from reading of, writing in and learning the Chinese language and to strengthen the lamaism preaching among the Mongols. Luo Xianglin listed multiple Manchu decrees to prove his points, including Manchu Qing Emperor Daoguang's AD 1836 order that Mongols could only use Manchu and Mongol languages. Three years later, Qing Emperor Daoguang further ordered that Mongols should not hire Chinese language teachers over to Mongolia. Emperor Xianfeng, in AD 1853, rebuked Mongol nobles for using Chinese characters as family names and adopting Chinese language in legal paperwork. Emperor Guangxu, in AD 1876, decreed that those Mongols who used Chinese language in documents should be punished. Luo Xianglin pointed out that Manchu intended to make Mongols less intelligent so that they could be easily employed for utilizing their "physical strength" as running dogs in wars.

As to Tibetans, Manchu court adopted the policy of "respecting Tibetan religion but suppressing its administration". Luo Xianglin pointed out that Manchu decreed that every Tibetan household must dispatch one son to monastery for studying the buddhism, hence making Tibetan population unable to multiply. Further, Manchu dispatched "imperial minister" to Tibet for monitoring Dalai Lama and Pancho Lama, and intentionally mixed up religion and politics so that Tibetans could not conduct any reform on administration. Intermarriage between Tibetans and Chinese were forbidden by Manchu.

As to Uygurs, Manchu adopted the policy of disparaging on Islam and sowing dissension among Muslims and non-Muslims. By creating turmoils and rebellions, Manchu easily sent in troops for massacring the Uygurs.

As for the Han Chinese, Manchu, in the words of Scholar Luo Xianglin, intentionally suppressed "dao qi" [i.e., Confucian righteousness, neo-Confucian rationalistic philosophy about inner saint & outer king, and applications to natural sciences] and deliberately developed "wen ci" [literature and flamboyant phrases]. Manchu reversed the tradition of the astronomy, calendar and firearms introduced by the Muslims during the Mongol Yuan Dynasty as well as the applied sciences introduced by the Jesuits of Ming Dynasty. At first, Manchu attempted to utilize Catholics in beating off Muslim calendar with European calendar, and then utilized Confucian ethics or moral principles for countering the "applied sciences" that came with Catholics. To further suppress the Chinese intellectuals, Manchu emperors, like Qianlong, resorted to "literary inquisition" [i.e., "wen zi yu" (imprisonment due to writings)] for controlling the minds and thoughts of Chinese. Manchu forbade the assembly of scholars or intellectuals into societies and moreover advocated "eight-part essay" [i.e., stereotyped essay] as the format for imperial civil service exams.

Qing Emperor Shunzhi (Qing Shizu, Aixinjueluo Fu-lin, r. 1644-1661)

Qing Emperor Kangxi (Qing Shengzu, Aixinjueluo Xuan-ye, r. 1662-1722)

1689 Treaty of Nerchinsk & Pereira Thomas

At the suggestion of Nan-huai-ren (Ferdinandus Verbiest), Portuguese missionary Pereira Thomas and French missionary [Zhang Cheng], both guys who knew nothing about Russian language, were invited in May 1688 as interpreters for negotiating the "Lingua Latina" version of the Treaty of Nerchinsk on the part of Manchu China panel led by Suo-e-tu. This first trip aborted due to Dzungarian rebellion that was instigated by the Russians. In Aug 1689, Manchu China dispatched a new panel to Nerchinsk. Prior to the trip, Russians already colluded with Thomas Pereira who intended to open up China for both the Eastern Orthodox Church and Western Vatican by taking advantage of the entanglements between Russia and Manchu China.

Recovering Taiwan

<u>Founding Of 'Da Jin' (Grand Gold Dynasty)</u>	<u>The Opium War (1939-1842)</u>
<u>Eight Banner System</u>	<u>"Wangxia Treaty" [US] & Whampoa Treaty [France]</u>
<u>Twenty Five Years Of War Against China</u>	<u>Second Opium Wars (1856-60) & Arson of Summer Palace</u>
<u>Battle Of Mountain & Sea Pass</u>	<u>Taiping (Grand Peace) Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion</u>
<u>Entering China Proper</u>	<u>Foreign Enterprises Movement (Self-Strengthening, 1874-1895)</u>
<u>Infamous Queue-Related Slaughters</u>	<u>Manchu Military System: Brave-Camp Army & New Army</u>
<u>Solidifying Rule Over China</u>	<u>Russian Encroachments</u>
<u>Qing Emperor Shunzhi (Qing Shizu, Aixinjueluo Fulin, r. 1644-1661):</u>	<u>1876 Anglo-Chinese Yantai Treaty</u>
<u>Qing Emperor Kangxi (Qing Shengzu, Aixinjueluo Xuan-ye, r. 1662-1722):</u>	<u>1884-1885 Franco-Chinese War</u>
<u>1689 Treaty of Nerchinsk</u>	<u>Imperialist Encroachments On Korea</u>
<u>Recovering Taiwan:</u>	<u>1894 Sino-Japanese War</u>
<u>Qing Emperor Yongzheng (Qing Shizong,</u>	<u>Russo-Japanese War Over Manchuria</u>
	<u>Rise of Yuan Shi-kai</u>
	<u>Start Of Water-Melon Partitioning</u>
	<u>Hundred Day Reformation</u>
	<u>The Boxers & Invasion of Eight Allied Nations</u>
	<u>Rise of Yuan Shi-kai (Continued)</u>
	<u>Assasinations & Uprisings</u>
	<u>'Retaining Railroad' Movement</u>
	<u>Wuchang Uprising & Xin Hai Revolution</u>

Aixinjueluo Yin-
zhen, r. 1723-
1735):
Qing Emperor
Qianlong (Qing
Gaozong,
Aixinjueluo
Hong-li, r. 1736-
1795):
Qing Emperor
Jiaqing (Qing
Renzong,
Aixinjueluo
Yong-yan, r.
1796-1820):

The Manchus were both a blessing and a disaster for China. The blessing would be its early territorial expansionism which somehow prepared China proper for buffering the Czarist eastward expansion that would inevitably come in last couple hundreds of years. (Manchu's territorial gain was at the expense of China's population drop from 51.66 million in 1620 to 10.63 million in 1651, a tragic loss from the Manchu invasion, which had also exhibited the fact that China was not a country that could be easily conquered and that China's brave men were always willing to fall martyrdom in the resistance to foreign invasion.) The disaster would be its policy of 'closing off the seashore' for segregation of Ming remnants in Taiwan and Southeast Asia from mainland Chinese.

Li Ao, a critic of the KMT on Taiwan, echoed Li Hongzhang's comments that Manchu China's confrontation with red-hair devils (i.e., British) was an extraordinary event not foreseen by China for 3000 years and that Britain, with its military might and fire-power, was an enemy China could not match during the course of past 1000 years. Wrong ! The cousins of red-hair devils, i.e., the Dutch, had arrived at Java in 1595 and the Chinese coast in AD 1602. From AD 1603 to 1624, Ming China exerted hundreds of ships and thousands of soldiers to repelling the Dutch from Chinese coasts and the Pescadores Islands. Often,

numerous small Ming ships encircled big Dutch warships for sake of winning the fight. Ming China mobilized a huge field army for landing on the Penghu Islands (i.e., Pescadores) and after fierce fighting, forced the Dutch into withdrawal. Dozens of years later, Zheng Chenggong, son of pirate-turned Ming General Zheng Zhilong, would first adopt the approach of "defeating the aliens by means of aliens' weapons". Zheng Chenggong, whose merchant fleets had sailed to the four corners of the seas, actively purchased weapons, firearms and cannons from the Dutch. In February 1662, Zheng Chenggong successfully expelled from Taiwan Island the Dutch who, having colonized the island from 1624 to 1662, already latinized the aboriginals' language to the extent that the aboriginals no longer remembered their own native language. Before the Dutch, Ming China waged two wars against Portuguese during time periods of 1521-1522 and 1547-1549 for securing territorial integrity.

Manchu Qing China, in the ensuing hundreds of years, had been mostly occupied with "pleasure-seeking and literature-decoration", a 1916 comment by Japanese Prime Minister in regards to Yuan Shi-kai's death and its influence on the rise and fall of the Republic Of China. (The worst thing is that today's decadent Communist China is not any better than the Manchu rulers. Note that "1957 Anti-Rightists Movement" had doomed China's fate for 20 years after finishing off China's half century worth of elites and conscience, and June 4th 1989 Masacre had routed China's elites & conscience once again and doomed China for the past 15 years. China, in addition to losing to the Europeans and Japanese tons of gold, silver & wealth accumulated over the span of 5000 years, would lose almost one century worth of good souls for nothing. Red alerts !!!)

The Opium War (1839-1842)

corvalliscommunitypages.com/asia_pacific/china/whether_corvallis_was_the_land_o.htm pointed out that "the Opium Wars waged against China by England, with the encouragement of American President John Quincy Adams, resulted in massive suffering in the (Chinese) countryside (and the cities) as the English and American drug cartels pushed their wares (opium) into every small village in Asia (China) as a means of paying for massive imports of Chinese tea and silk. " <http://historyliterature.homestead.com/files/extended.html> noted that "in 1820, 9,708 chests of opium was smuggled in per year. 15 years later, the smuggled opium rose to 35,445 chests, a growth of 400%." Certainly,

imperialists had been blaming Manchu China's closed door policy for the eruption of opium war. Going against the wind would be a professor of the "Modern History of China" at the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, by the name of Frank Dikötter, who had written a ludicrous article on "Narcotic Culture. A Social History of Drug Consumption in China". (Frank Dikötter had written another seemingly astute but somewhat ludicrous article entitled "Race in China" at <http://cio.ceu.hu/courses/CIO/modules/Module08Dikoetter/print.html>.)

Per Cai Dongfan, opium first reached China during Ming Emperor Shenzong's reign, and Emperor Shenzong (Zhu Yijun, r. 1573-1620) was addicted to it and named it 'Fu Shou Gao'. Manchu Qing China had no policy of commerce with Britain at the time while Portugal had swindlingly leased Macau and used it for trading with Ming China.

Portuguese, British & Macao

In AD 1514, i.e., 9th Year of Ming Emperor Wuzong's Zhengde Era, the first Portuguese ship arrived at Guangdong Prov coastline. Ming China, as a result of bribery and collusion of Portuguese with local officials, mis-identified the Portuguese as the same as Malacca merchants. In AD 1520, Ming Dynasty verified that Fulangji (i.e., Portugal) had incorporated the land of Malacca that was considered a Ming vassal. By 1521, Emperor Shizong (Zhu Houcong, r 1522-1566) issued the decree of expulsion right after enthronement. The Portuguese interpreter was executed, while Portuguese emissary Thomas Pirez was driven to Guangdong coast from Peking. Thomas Pirez, retained as a hostage for restoring Malacca Kingdom, later died in prison in Guangdong Prov. During 1521-1522 Sino-Portuguese War, Ming army climbed up two Portuguese ships, killed about 35 Portuguese, captured 43 Portuguese alive, caught about 10 men and women (Portuguese captives?), and caused numerous others fall off the ships and get drowned in the seas. From 1547 to 1549, Ming Governor Zhu Wan, also the imperial commissioner for coastal defence of Fujian and Zhejiang provinces, launched three attacks at the Portuguese, wiping out Portuguese strongholds at Shuangyu (Ningbo, Zhejiang), and killed and captured over 239 Portuguese at Wuyu (Zhuangzhou, Fujian) and Zoumaxi (Shaoan, Fujian). Later, Portuguese came back to Xiangshan'ao area. As a result of Portuguese bribery and collusion with Ming local official, in AD 1553, Portuguese, who discarded the old name of Falangji [Fulangji], swindled the land of Macao by first pretending to dry their wet merchandise. Ming China, however, continuously restricted Portuguese

activities by dismantling their church and city walls.

On May 29th 1622, two British ships joined 15 Dutch warships in attacking Macao. In AD 1635, British, who had assisted Portuguese in shipping copper and metals to Goa one year ago but were refused entry into Macao, would dispatch 6 warships to Macao for trading with China. When British moored near Macao on June 25th 1637, Portuguese refused entry to the British. British, however, sailed along Pearl River towards Canton, bombarded Humen Battery when Chinese tried to stop them, and did not retreat till Chinese allowed some of their goods transferred to Canton. Thereafter, British, by pretending to provide cover to Portuguese in passage through Dutch-blockaded Malacca Strait, gained access to Macao. Only after Chinese intervention did the British leave Macao. British would not return to Macao till AD March 18th 1802, about 160 years later. In between, around AD 1743, county magistrate for Dongguan county, i.e., Yin Guangren, boarded two British warships that were blown to Siziyang Sea near Humen Battery and forced British into releasing 299 Spanish captives to Portuguese in Macao before providing food, repairmen and other logistics.

Succeeding Manchu Dynasty inherited Ming China's policy and granted the Portuguese access to the markets the same way as to Arab, Muslim & Southeast Asian traders. British returned to Macao after Britain, in AD 1801, grabbed Goa from Portugal by taking advantage of the Portuguese defeat in Portuguese-Franco War. Portuguese governor sought help with Manchu China. After China refused to trade with Britain and cut off supply to British, British ships left in June 1802. By late 1807, Lisbon fell into the French hands. British governor in India pretended to help Macao defend against France, and dispatched 10 ships to Macao on Sept 11th 1808. About 760 British soldiers occupied Macao. Manchu China forbade trade with Britain, cut off supply of foods to Macao, and dispatched 80000 soldiers against the British. On the date of ultimatum, i.e., Dec 18th, British evacuated from Macao. In April of 1809, Manchu Governor-general Han Feng inspected Macao for defence fortifications.

Opium War & Trafficking Of Coolies & Sex Slaves

Prof Yen Ching-hwang had authored a book entitled "*Chinese Coolies Overseas & Manchu Officials*" [i.e., Coolies and Mandarins] and pointed out that British Opium War of 1839-1842 had coincided with the prosperity of slave-nature trafficking of Chinese coolies overseas, a trade that was first started by the Dutch in 17th century. Yen Ching-hwang stated that Xiamen (Amoy), a port

which had replaced historical Quanzhou port, would become the first port to see Chinese coolie sold overseas. In 1847, British governor claimed that British revenues from Amoy was 72,000 pounds, about 3 times the combined value from all other ports, a manifestation of slave trade in trafficking Chinese coolie to British Guana, Trinidad and Jamaica. Yen Ching-hwang stated that Macau would take the place of Amoy beginning from Nov 1852 when riots broke out as a result of Chinese attacking a British smuggler and his coolie trafficking Chinese henchman. From 1847 to 1875, 150,000 Chinese coolies were sold to Cuba as 'zhu zai' [i.e., piggy coolie]. Coolie trade continued till early 20th century as evidenced by the fact that the father of Li Zongren was hired by British in HK for years of indentured coolie work in Malay where they obtained freedom after strikes lasting years.

Peru, Pacific Islands, West Indies, North Africa, South Africa, and Australia had all engaged in Chinese coolie slave trade. Chinese coolies built the Panama Railway. America was no exception. Chinese coolies built the US railroads and highways across Western US territories.

(<http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/award99/cubhtml/cicTitles12.html> contained a dossier of files on "The Chinese in California, 1850-1925". See cpr.org/Museum/Fusang.html for Chinese Railroad Men working as coolie in America under ferocious White men's racial discrimination. Also see SAN LUIS OBISPO'S CHINESE for the context of the 1882 Chinese Exclusion Act. US government, after acquiring Hawaii in summer of 1898 and Philippines in Dec 1898, applied "Chinese Exclusion Act" to Chinese on the two islands, and further, President Theodore Roosevelt signed into law to have "Chinese Exclusion Act" applied throughout US-controlled islands and territories over the world, making the Chinese the lowest caste, a fundamental cause in Chinese suffering in ethnic cleansing which occurred in Philippines, Indonesia and Malaysia etc. In 1943, CHINESE EXCLUSION ACT was repealed by the American Congress, with China awarded a yearly immigration quota of 102 persons.)

More, Portuguese specialized in selling Chinese women and Chinese girls overseas as sex slaves throughout the latter half of 19th century. One Jesuit's AD 1563 account stated that he had taught Christianity to two batches of 450 and 200 Chinese women slaves before they were sold to Portuguese merchants and officials in Goa as sex slaves; Archbishop at Goa, Dom Ignacis De Sama Terez, stated in 1725 that Chinese women slaves were often cruelly killed by the wives of Portuguese merchants & officials and that Portuguese women

encouraged their sons in sexually abusing Chinese women and girls; and in 1855, A British ship, *Englewood*, carried over 40 Chinese girls around age 7-8 [abducted from Ningbo area of coastal Zhejiang Prov] for transfer to a Portuguese called Martinez in Amoy port. Note that some White males have a sick & clandestine opinion even today that small Chinese/Asian women are good for sex. (The prosperity of sex slave trafficking could perhaps been vindicated by the huge population of Chinese-looking Indians in Goa of India. One would have to pity the men and women of Chinese, both ancestral and posterior, whom the creator Jewish & Christian God had decided to deliberately left out as the "non-chosen" people.)

British Resentment Over Manchu Trading System

In AD 1725, Manchu prohibited non-Portuguese foreigners (i.e., Westerners) from dwelling in Macau. Consecutively, in AD 1746, Portuguese King issued a decree that non-Portuguese Westerners could not stay or do businesss in Macau, causing those Westerners a relocation to Canton. Xiangshan county magistrate reported this event to provincial official. Manchu court notified Macau authority that those Westerners who received Manchu approval could still dwell in Macau. Manchu court was worried that Westerners would spread to Canton.

In AD 1743, county magistrate for Dongguan, i.e., Yin Guangren, boarded two British warships that were blown to Siziyang [lion] Sea near Humen Battery and discovered that 299 Spanish were taken as prisoners by British. Yin Guangren forced the British into releasing the Spanish to Portuguese before providing logistical supply to the British.

In AD 1757, a British merchant went to Tianjin to accuse Manchu customs official at Canton of corruption and bribery. Manchu court dismissed customs official, but put this British under arrest in Macau for three years and then expelled him. In AD 1759, Manchu Governor-general for Guangdong-Guangxi provinces ordered that Western merchants could not stay for the winter in China, and those merchants all went to Macau. Consul officials of Western powers set up residencies in Macau as a result of Manchu order that no Western women should be allowed to enter Canton.

In AD 1793, the British government, under the request of the East India Company (which already established itself as a monopoly in India by 1740), sent in a delegation to Canton for opening up trading under Lord George

Macartney. Emperor Qianlong (Qing Gaozong, Aixinjueluo Hong-li, r. 1736-1795) expelled Macartney for the emissary's refusal to kneel on both legs instead of one leg as well as the refusal to acknowledge England as a "tribute nation" to China. Lord George Macartney was said to have played the trick by seducing provincial Manchu officials into a dispatchment of the British delegation to Peking (and onward to Chengde's "mobile palace" in Rihe [Jehol]) in the name of congratulating Emperor Qianlong on his birthday. On his return trip via land, Lord George Macartney had clandestinely checked out the Manchu China's societal weaknesses, something that Britain had utilized in exerting military coersions against Manchu China in the next century. As pointed out by Manchu official Hong Liangji in 1793, China's crises had to do with households increasing 20 folds during the preceding 100 years while officialdom corruption had become prevalent under minister He-shen and his cronies. This would lead to the White Lotus Rebellion in 1796. (Emperor Jiaqing [Qing Renzong, Aixinjueluo Yong-yan, r. 1796-1820] arrested He-kun in 1799.) Though Britain failed to set up an embassy in Peking, trading with Britain continued at Guangzhou (Canton) without government sanctions.

Beginning from Sept 1802, British laid their eyes on Macau. In July 1808, six British warships, under admiral Drury, forcefully entered Macau. On Aug 2nd, British took over several batteries. Manchu Governor-general for Guangdong-Guangxi, Wu Xiongguang, demanded that British withdraw from Macau. When British refused, Governor-general Wu Xiongguang ordered a cessation of trade with Britain. Admiral Drury led soldiers to "Thirteen Foreign Firms Guesthouse" and demanded a talk with Wu Xiongguang. British compromised by exiting in Dec, while Wu Xiongguang was deprived of his post by Manchu court for mishandling the crisis.

British had another confrontation with Manchu in 1829 over the unpaid interests that Chinese "*gong hang*" (i.e., public firms) owned to the British merchants. British sailed numerous warships to Zhujiang River (i.e., Pearl River). Governor-general Li Hongbing assigned defence along Macau and Xiangshan coastlines. British compromised by withdrawing warships months later. In AD 1830, Williams Baynos, i.e., chairman for British East India Company, brought his wife and Portuguese maid to Canton against Manchu stipulation. When Governor-general Li Hongbing demanded the expellation of the women, Williams Baynos mounted cannons in his merchant ship. Williams Baynos conceded when Li Hongbing brought along troops.

More conflicts followed. In AD 1833, Lord Napier was sent to Canton to replace the 'big ben', i.e., the monopolization of British East India Company. When Napier went to Canton for seeing Governor-general Lu Kun, Lu Kun refused to see him and dispatched subordinate officials to the meeting with Napier. Napier insulted those officials. Lu Kun ordered a cut of trade with Britain. Hence, Napier ordered that two British warships sailed to Canton and bombarded Manchu positions. Manchu reinforced defence along the Pearl River banks and dispatched troops to Macau for assisting Portuguese. Napier backed down after Manchu promised to resume trade. Four years later, in AD 1838, British Navy Commander Frederick Maitland sailed two warships to Macau for protecting opium trade. When Manchu officials refused to see him, Frederick Maitland demonstrated his warships at Cuanbiyang [piercing nose] Sea. Frederick Maitland sailed away when Manchu official deployed defence army.

British Trading Opium

Beginning from the eighteenth century, Europe and America had grown insatiable appetite for Chinese tea, silk and porcelain while Chinese had treated Western products as mere 'toys'. To offset an unfavorable balance of trade, the Westerners, mainly British, developed a third-party trade, exchanging their merchandise in India and Southeast Asia for Chinese goods. (Americans, including some company called Perkins?, had been engaged in selling Turkey opium to China, and Persian opium was said to have been sold to China by the West without the exclusive control by either British or American. Some American merchant claimed that Americans did not have any less guilt than the British in drug trafficking to China.) By the early nineteenth century, cotton and opium from India had become the staple British imports into China through the connivance of profit-seeking British merchants who colluded with corrupt Manchu bureaucracy. corvalliscommunitypages.com mentioned a Hong merchant by the name of Wu Ping-Chien and known as Howqua II in the West, who profited from trade with the West, "had an old mining region, mountains and a river in Australia named after him, and ... invested a great deal of money in American railroads." Trading with foreign countries were initially restricted to Canton. All foreign ships, under the "Canton Trade System", must sail to Canton customs for inspection before unloading cargo. Foreign merchants had to deal with "Gong Hang" ("officially authorized firms") first. When Manchu Qing Emperor Daoguang (Qing Xuanzong, Aixinjueluo Min-ning, r. 1821-1850) got enthroned, he decreed a ban on opium import. Various inspection checkpoints

were set up along the coast to prevent opium from slipping inland. But the traitor merchants took in the bribes from the British, and the opium still flooded China, leading to physically-weakened Chinese race and depletion of silver in the measure of 10 million Chinese ounces or taels on a yearly basis.

Do note that British laws, by imperial decree, prohibited entry of opium into Britain itself. British East India Company, however, "planted from hill to hill" in Bengal, Madras, Bombay, Patna, Benares and Malwa, and then shipped the opium to China. Opium War, 1839-42 exhibited good historical records about the opium trade, including a letter from Manchu Imperial Commissioner Lin Zexu to the British Royal House as well as excerpts from Bombay Telegraph and Courier dated May 17, 1852. Bombay Telegraph and Courier mentioned that "from the skilful management and cultivation of about 100,000 acres of land, the East India Company produces an article which, sold at a profit of several hundred per cent., yields to them a net revenue, annually, of nearly three millions sterling. We do not here include the Malwa opiuma seventh of the whole revenue of the country, raised from an extent of more than a million of square miles."

Manchu Banning Opium Trade

Zhu Chenglie (a Manchu "*yu shi*" [inspector]) and Huang Jueci (a Manchu "*shi qing*" [minister]) petitioned with Emperor Daoguang for serious measures to ban opium. Lin Zexu (1785-1850), governor-general for Hu-guang (Hunan and Guangdong), warned the emperor that should opium rattle for another ten years, no more taxes could be raised and no more soliders could be recruited. In 1838, after decades of unsuccessful anti-opium campaigns and two years of court debates, Emperor Daoguang adopted drastic prohibitory laws against the opium, issuing 39 articles and decreeing that whoever sold opium or took opium could be executed. Emperor Daoguang called Lin Zexu to the capital, conferred him the post of "*qin cai da chen*" [emperor-dispatched grand minister], i.e., imperial commissioner, and dispatched him to Canton. Lin arrived in Guangzhou on March 10, 1839.

Once Lin Zexu arrived at Guangzhou, he discussed matters with Deng Tingzhen the governor-general for Liang-guang (i.e., Guangdong-Guangxi provinces). Deng had caught numerous opium vendors and parlor operators. Lin suggested that they should solve the problem at the root by confiscating the opium on board the 22 foreign ships that were moored at Lingding-yang Sea. Lin ordered that both field army and navy blockade the entrance to Canton (Guangzhou) to

prevent the opium from being smuggled ashore. Lin then called on the managers of thirteen foreign firms and demanded that they surrender opium within 3 days. Those managers in turn passed on the order to their consuls. British consul Elliot, however, deliberately went to Macau to avoid the confrontation. Three days later, foreign firms refused to surrender their opium. Manchu soldiers lay siege of all foreign ships, detained the foreigners, stopped trading activity, and arrested Chinese 'mai ban' (i.e., broker-dealers) who were employed by foreigners. Elliot then notified Governor-General Lin Zexu that they were willing to surrender 1037 chests of opium. Deng Tingzhen told Lin Zexu that each ship was capable of loading 1000 chests of opium. Lin Zexu then ordered a siege of foreigner guesthouse and dispatched navy to Lingding-yang Sea to have merchant ships encircled. By this time, Elliot had no choice but to surrender altogether 20283 chests of opioms. (bartleby.com/67/1416.html stated that some 3 million pounds of raw opium were destroyed.) Ships were ordered to sail to Humen [tiger gate] Battery for surrendering the opium. At Humen, in June 1839, Lin Zexu, together with Deng Tingzhen and Yi-liang (governor for Guangdong), held a opium surrender ceremony. After that, Lin Zexu reimbursed the foreign merchants with five Chinese 'jin' (grams) of tea for each chest of opium burnt, and had all merchants sign the affidavit stating that they would never trade in opium again. The affidavit had two more clauses stating that whoever violated laws would have their ships confiscated and personnel executed. British consul Elliot, refusing to sign the affidavit, led his family and another 57 British families to Macau from Canton. All foreign merchants, except for British consul and merchants, had signed the affidavit. Lin then reported to Emperor Daoguang about the event and asked whether he should send in the opium to the capital. Emperor replied that opium could be burnt outside of Humen Battery. Lin had two ponds dug, poured salt into the water, mixed up water with plaster, dumped the opium into the ponds, opened the ditch to the sea and scattered the opium ashes to the sea. Crowds of people witnessed the opium burning event.

Some British merchant ships at Jianshazui mouth would call on the British warships to attack Jiulong (Kowloon). One ship was sunken by Manchu general Lai Enjue. At the site of "Kowloon City Castle" would be Manchu China's Jiulong-zai Battery. On July 27th [lunar calendar] of 1839, Elliot led five British ships for an attack. Manchu officer Lai Enjue resisted the British, sunk one British ship, and later retrieved 15 bodies of British sailors. Liang Binhua stated that Elliot, looking for food on Jianshazui Sea after departure from Canton, was

harassing Kowloon coast at the time. In Lin Zexu's report to emperor, Elliot was recorded to have attacked Guanyong of Jianshazui for six times in a matter of days.

In addition to opium, a British sailor killed a villager called Lin Weixi on June 23rd at Jiansha [protruding sandbeach] Village. Elliot refused to surrender the culprit. On Aug 15th, Lin Zexu and Deng Tingzhen dispatched troops to various passes and ordered that foreigners cut off supply to British. On Aug 22nd, Elliot left Macau. On Aug 24th, Lin Zexu and Deng Tingzhen, together with Portuguese, expelled all British from Macau. On Sept 3rd 1839, imperial commissioner Lin Zexu toured Macau for banning opium trading and made a census check which showed that Macau had 727 households or 5612 Portuguese as well as 1772 households or 7033 Chinese. Lin Zexu was accorded the 19 gun salutes by Portuguese batteries when he visited Macao with Governor-general Deng Tingzhen on Sept 3rd 1839. After the tour, Lin Zexu permitted renewal of trade at Macau.

Portuguese mediated over the matter on behalf of Elliot by having Lin Zexu agree to take out the clause in regards to "personnel executed" should they [British] violate laws. Lin Zexu consulted with Emperor Daoguang about taking out the clause, and Emperor Daoguang stated that no leniency should be shown to the British. Thus, Elliot ordered that British warships line up at the port entry to stop other foreign merchant ships from entering the harbor. Lin Zexu dispatched navy general Guan Tianpei against the British. Guan Tianpei's 5 ships were first fired upon by the British, and Guan responded by damaging one British ship. Guan chased the British vessels to Jianshazui mouth and further drove them off to the Laowanshan Outer Sea. Emperor Daoguang decreed that Britain alone should be prohibited from trading with China. Elliot then reported to Britain about the severance of diplomacy and trade. (There were no formal treaty relations between the two countries and hence no formal diplomatic relations, either.) The British Parliament, with an extra 9 votes pro vs con, approved the war against China in regards to restoring the Opium Trade. In June of 1840, Britain ordered that British governor in India mobilize 15,000 army for a campaign against China, with Elliot in command of field army and Bo-mai (Henry Pottinger ?) in charge of navy. This British punitive expedition would be termed the first Anglo-Chinese War or the Opium War (1839-42).

British Launching First Opium War

The British fleet under George Elliot, consisting of 48 ships and 4000 soldiers, reached Macau in June of 1840. On Aug 6th, Chinese soldiers caught a British in Macau. Portuguese, to fawn on the British, demanded that this British be released. On Aug 19th, British attacked Chinese soldiers at Guanzha [pass gate] Pass bordering Macau and Guangdong, and took over pass with the assistance of bombardment by the warships. Chinese re-established garrison at Qianshan [frontal mountain]. Portuguese declared a false neutrality. After encountering fierce resistance from Humen Batteries under the leadership of Lin Zexu, British rerouted towards Amoy at the suggestion of a Chinese traitor. After encountering resistance led by Fujian Governor-general Deng Tingzhen at Amoy, George Elliot, with 26 warships, rerouted to the Zhoushan Island (subordinate to Zhejiang Prov) and occupied Dinghai city of Zhoushan Island in July. Elliot then talked with commander Bo-mai for leading 8 warships to Tianjin in the north. Upon arriving in Dagukou Battery, Elliot went to see Governor-general Qi-shan of Zhili Prov with terms such as war indemnities and port opening. Qi-shan, together with treacherous minister Muzhang'a, petitioned with Emperor Daoguang for revoking Lin Zexu's commissioner post in Oct 1840, and Emperor Daoguang empowered Qi-shan as "imperial commissioner" for peace talks with Elliot at Canton. Elliot sailed back to Canton. Manchu minister in Shandong Peninsula claimed that Elliot was courteous when passing through his domain, and Manchu minister in Zhejiang claimed that British navy at Dinghai said they were willing to give back Zhoushan Island once Elliot reached peace with Qi-shan. British, treating Macau as home base, sent over their wounded for treatment. It was said that Winston Churchill's grandfather was buried in Macau.

Macau was also used as the ground for peace talks between Britain and China. Portuguese pretended to mediate between the two parties. British took over Dajiao [big horn] in Jan 1841 and offered to have Manchu Qing Dynasty cede HK & Kowloon in exchange for Dajiao. In Jan. 1841, new Manchu imperial commissioner to Canton, Qi-shan, dismantled defence to show his sincerity in peace talks. Qi-shan met Elliot in Macau on Feb 10th 1841. When Charles Elliot (whom Qi-shan claimed he had met in Tianjin: George or Charles Elliot?) added one more clause to have China cede Hongkong Island, Qi-shan was hesitant somewhat. Qi-shan prepared two versions of offers for Bao Peng to take to

Elliot, but instructed Bao Peng to produce the refusal letter should Elliot be over-demanding and arrogant. British sacked two auxiliary batteries near Humen to exert pressure on Qi-shan. Cai Dongfan claimed that Qi-shan negotiated a peace talk with Charles Elliot, but Deng Kaisong stated that Qi-shan did not sign the "Chuanbi ['pierce nose' sea] Treaty" in regards to HK. [Chuanbi Sea is a bay in Macau.] Scholar Liang Binhua pointed out that British prime minister Palmerston ordered in June 1841 that British General Henry Pottinger [Pu-ding-cha] occupy Jianshazui for sake of 'neutralizing' the peace talks.

Manchu official Yi-liang secretly rebuked Qi-shan in a likening of British demand for HK to Portuguese' swindling of Macau from Ming China. Emperor Daoguang decided that British must be punished for their pirate acts, ordered that Qi-shan be deprived of his grand scholar title and the commissioner post, and dispatched Yi-shan, Yang Fang and Rong-wen to Guangdong Prov for a confrontation with the British. Before the new Manchu ministers arrived, Elliot and Bo-mai mounted an attack at Humen Battery, and General Guan Tianpei sacrificed his life during this battle by committing suicide. British took over about 200 cannons that Lin Zexu had purchased from the Portuguese earlier. British next attacked the town of Wuyong and sacked it after a fight for almost two days. At this time, Yang Fang led few thousand Hunan Prov soldiers to Canton and arranged the defence of Zhujiang River banks. British warships charged towards Yang Fang's positions few times with rising tides and retreated when tides receded. Yang Fang commented that China might have no peace from now on in face of so ferocious aliens in confrontation.

On May 29th 1841, a small band of British, departing from Sifang Battery earlier, intruded into Sanyuanli Village, about 2.5 kilometers north of Canton. Vegetable growers like Wei Shaoguang killed a few British. The next day, Sanyuanli villagers assembled nearby villagers, miners and workers for an attack at the British-controlled battery. British commander, Wu-gu, counter-attacked with 1000 soldiers. Villagers seduced the British into a trap at Niulan'gang and caused a casualty of over 50 British, including the death of a colonel. On May 31st 1841, villagers from Fanyu, Nanhai, Huaxian, Zengcheng and Conghua counties converged upon Sifang Battery. British lost over 100 soldiers, including two officers. British had to seek for help with Manchu Official Yi-shan. Yi-shan dispatched Yu Cuchun to the battery for guiding British out of the encirclement.

Thereafter, British plenipotentiary Henry Pottinger led the British navy along the Chinese coast, capturing coastal cities in Fujian, Zhejiang and Jiangsu provinces. British sacked Shanghai's Wusong [Wosong] Battery in June 1842 and then Zhenjiang city in July.

For three years, British gunboats, with increasing reinforcements from India and Britain, attacked Chinese coastal cities of Guangdong, Fujian, Zhejiang & Jiangsu, penetrated the Yangtze River course, harassed the capital areas of Tianjin, and sacked Zhoushan Islands and Taiwan Island. (Details of wars and pillaging will be covered in the section [opiumwar.htm](#)) Lin Ze-xu (Lin Tse-hsü) was disgraced and exiled to Yili [Ili] of Chinese Turkestan. By August of 1842, Manchu royal house failed to counter the British with old-style weapons & artillery and finally gave in to the British. Two Manchu imperial commissioners boarded the British vessel Cornwallis in Nanking and signed with the British plenipotentiary the Treaty of Nanjing (August, 1842). Treaty of Nanjing and supplement treaties (the British Supplementary Treaty of the Bogue, July and October 1843) would be the first of numerous humiliating "unequal treaties" to come.

The treaties opened five ports of Guangzhou (Canton), Fuzhou (Foochow), Xiamen (Amoy), Ningbo (Linbou) and Shanghai, rendered an indemnity of 21 million Mexican dollars as damages for the British, ordered the cession of HK (Xianggang) Island, granted Britain the 'most favored nation' status (i.e., enjoying privileges extorted from China by any other country), lowered the import duties from 65% to 5% ad valorem, exempted British nationals and their Chinese employees from Chinese law via 'extraterritoriality', and allowed British merchants to establish residency in the treaty ports (which led to later concession areas). The Treaty of Nanjing (i.e., Jiangning Treaty) also set an example for other foreign powers to invade China. France and the United States, in the ensuing two years, signed similar treaties with China. Russia began to encroach on Chinese territories in the west, north and northeast.

"Wangxia Treaty" [US] & Whampoa Treaty [France]

After the war, opium trade more than doubled in the ensuing 30 years. homestead.com/files/extended.html discussed the economic effects of the

Opium War: rising food price as a result of Chinese farmers' abandoning the production of food for silk and tea industry, and the dismantling of home textile industry (Chinese hand-made cloths) in face of the rushing-in of cheap Western machine-made products.

In Nov 1842, Henry Pottinger's British army attempted to enter Canton in accordance with Nanking Treaty, but encountered resistance. British did not attempt to enter the city till July 1843, at which time they encountered resistance from the populace again. Manchu official Qi-ying persuaded British into a delay. It would be in Jan 1846 that Manchu official Qi-ying allowed British soldiers to enter Canton. Canton people intruded into Manchu prefecture office and lit a fire. Hence, Qi-ying negotiated with British for an entry in 1849. In 1849, new British envoy-minister demanded with new Manchu governor-general Xu Guangjin for entry into Canton by sailing warships into Pearl River. 100000 village fighters converged onto Canton for resisting British. Hence, Manchu governor-general Xu Guangjin declined British request again.

Americans, who first sailed two gunboats to Macau during opium burning session, would dispatch a fleet to Macau in April 1842. On the pretext that a sailor was killed, one American warship sailed along Pearl River to demonstrate force. In 1843, Americans, in the name of war mediation, obtained similar privileges as the British. An American emissary was sent to China on Feb 24th 1844 for extracting a treaty. From June 17th to July 3rd 1844, Americans imposed unequal "Wangxia Treaty" onto Manchu China. [Wangxia was a village in Macau.] One month later, French, flexing the power of 8 warships, forced Manchu China into signing "Whampoa Treaty".

The beneficial consequence of "Wangxia Treaty" would be Manchu's dispatchment of overseas students to America. Among the first batch of students would be famous Yung Wing [Rong Hong] who graduated from Yale University in 1854. Later, at the suggestion of Yung Wing [Rong Hong], Zeng Guofan, in 1871, dispatched Chinese children to America for overseas studies. About half of those kids survived in America and mingled with American women before the "Chinese Exclusion Act" was formulated to delay the development of Chinese in American continent for the next 75 years.

In May [lunar calendar?] 1846, Manchu official Qi-ying authorized the build of "Kowloon City Castle" that would later become a thorn in British's flesh during the expansion towards Kowloon Peninsula and the "New Territories". Southern portion of Kowloon Peninsula was later ceded to British in 1860 in the aftermath of Second Opium Wars. However, China still retained "Kowloon City Castle" as a symbol of territorial ownership. Around 1898, Li Hongzhang adamantly demanded the retention of "Kowloon City Castle" even at the expense of the lease of entire Kowloon Peninsula. Liang Binghua stated that Manchu court treated "Kowloon City Castle" as a thorn the same way as the retention of Jinzhou-cheng city inside of Russian-leased Luushun [i.e., Port Arthur] and a Chinese-controlled castle inside of British-leased Weihaiwei harbour.

Second Opium Wars (1856–60) & Arson of Summer Palace

In 1856, the Second Opium War or the Arrow War broke out following an allegedly illegal search of a British-registered ship, the Arrow, in Guangzhou on Oct 8th of 1856 [sc]. Arrow was a piracy ship with a Chinese owner and crew, but it was flying the British flag. The British sought the search of Arrow and the lowering of the British flag as a pretext.

The French joined the English using as their excuse the murder of a French missionary in interior China. (On Feb 29th of 1856 [sc], French Catholic missionary Auguste Chapdelaine intruded into interior China illegally and was beheaded.) British Consul Harry Parkes and Sir John Bowring demanded redress. In 1856, British had some fighting in Canton. On Oct 23rd [sc], British fleet sailed along Zhujiang River (i.e., Canton River or Pearl River) to attack and sack the Canton forts for sake of pressuring Governor-general Ye Mingshen. Ten days later, British continued the attacks by destroying a Chinese fleet and bombarding Canton. On Nov 7th [sc], William B. Reed was sent to HK by US President Buchanan for mediating between China and Great Britain, but later in the month the Americans revenged an attack by capturing three Manchu forts. The Second Opium War was a result of the British feeling "incensed by what they felt was clear treaty violations" and the Chinese feeling angered by "the

wholesale export of Chinese nationals to America and the Caribbean to work at what was no better than slave labor". (See Richard Hooker analysis.)

In March of 1857 [sc], British relief troops arrived from Madras and England, and Lord Elgin, an earl, was appointed envoy. Ye Mingshen intended to negotiate for peace by offering monetary concession. But in late May [sc], British Commodore Elliot attacked the Chinese and destroyed the Chinese fleet. On July 16th [sc], Lord Elgin and Jean Baptiste Louis Gros (French) declared in HK that Canton was under blockade by the allied forces. On Dec 28th [sc], allied forces bombarded Canton again even though Ye Mingshen (Yeh Ming-ch'en) revised a treaty and promised to resume trade. On Dec 29th [sc], the English and French began to attack Canton. On Jan 5th of 1858 [sc], the English and French entered Canton and abducted Governor-general Ye Mingshen who one year later died in custody in Calcutta, India.

In May 1858 [sc], Lord Elgin and Jean Gros sent fleets northward with United States envoy William Bradford Reed and the Russian envoy Admiral E. V. Putiatin onboard. In 1858, in the north, British and French troops captured the fort of Dagukou after heavy fighting in May and threatened to advance on Tianjin city. Meanwhile, Russia attacked northernmost Manchuria, and on May 16th [sc], Manchu signed the Treaty of Aigun (Aihui) ceding to Russia the northern bank of the Amur River and gave joint possession of the land between the Ussuri River and the sea. (In 1859, Manchu court rejected the Treaty of Aigun signed by Manchu commissioner for Manchuria.) On May 20th [sc], the allied fleet sacked the Pei-ho forts and the Taku (Dagu) forts (near Tianjin). Manchu court dispatched Kuei-liang and Hua-sha-nai to Tianjin for truce talk beginning on June 5th [sc]. British and French troops compelled the Manchu government into signing the Treaties of Tianjin [Tientsin] (June, 1858), to which France, Russia, and the United States were also parties. On June 13th [sc], a Sino-Russian treaty was signed; on June 18th [sc], a US-China treaty for "peace, amity, and commerce" was signed; and on June 26th [sc], the 56-article Anglo-Chinese treaty was signed by Lord Elgin / Baron Gros and Kuei-liang.

Manchu China, simultaneously being boiled down in its wars with Taiping Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion, had to agree to opening up 11 more ports (including Newchwang, Tengchow, Taiwan, Swatow, Kiungchow), opening up the

Yangtze River water-course, revising tariffs and permitting foreign legations in Beijing in addition to sanctioning Christian missionary activity inside of China, allowing the British to travel to the interior, indemnifying the allies for the expenses of the war, and stopping the application of the "Yi" barbarian to Europeans. On June 27th [sc], a similar Sino-French treaty was signed, opening up Nanking as a trade port. Later in the year, in further negotiations in Shanghai, the opium importation was legalized. Treaty ratification was set for the next year.

Manchu King Senggelinqin and his Mongol cavalry, who had won victories over Taiping and Nian rebels in Henan/Shandong areas, were in charge of Dagukou Battery near Tianjin. Seeing that British warships sailed towards Dagukou, King Senggelinqin sent messenger to request for their re-routing via the north side (Beitang) of the bay. Manchu also intended to change the entry path of diplomats into Beijing. On June 25th of 1859 [sc], British envoy Bruce was stopped in the River Pei-ho by the Chinese. British Admiral Hope and the French attempted to force a passage of the Takukou forts. A British captain, who happened to be the brother of British plenipotentiary, refused to change course, and he led British/French/Russian warships straight forward. When warships destroyed the iron chains in the harbor, King Senggelinqin ordered a firing of cannon balls which sank few British warships. British/French were repulsed and were said to have been "saved from annihilation by United States ships". Meanwhile, American emissary did change course and successfully ratified the articles of the treaty.

In Oct 1859 [sc], the English and French launched a new expedition against China. Britain sent over reinforcements of 99th (Lanarkshire) Regiment under the command of Lt Col Day in Feb of 1860. On April 26th 1860 [sc], Lord Elgin and Baron Gros sailed from England for China, and after a shipwreck near Point de Galle, Ceylon on May 23rd [sc], arrived in Shanghai on June 29th [sc]. By June, 100 British ships sailed to Bohai Sea. French army had 4000 men. King Senggelinqin reinforced the defence of Dagukou as well as planted mines at Beitang. British hired Chinese traitors and learnt of the mining at Beitang. After secretly debugging the mines at night, the British and French forces, totalled 18,000 men, circumvented through inner harbor. On Aug 1st [sc], the allies landed at Beitang (Pei-t'ang). At Dagukou, joint fleet did not get time to sail away with the receding tide. Joint fleet rolled up white flags, pretending to have a peace talk with the Manchu Qing army on the battery. When tides

returned, the joint fleet kicked off again and bombarded Dagukou Battery.

On Aug 12th 1860 [sc], the British, commanded by Sir Hope Grant, and the French by General Montauban, defeated the Chinese near Pei-ho. North Battery of Dagukou was taken over by the joint forces, and "*ti du*" (general) Le-shan died with his soldiers. At South Battery, King Senggelingqin (San-ko-lin-sin) waited for the British/French soldiers to get on the beach for a duel, and then ordered a calvary charge against the joint invasion forces. Only 7 out of the 3000 Manchu cavalry survived the firearms of the invasion forces. (Alternative saying states that 8000 cavalry were decimated by British fire-power. This number could be mixed up with either Rui-lin's relief army or Sheng-bao's relief army around Tongzhou area later.) On Aug 21st 1860 [sc], the allies took over the Taku forts.

King Senggelingqin retreated to Zhangjiawan and converged with "*da xueshi*" (grand scholar) Rui-lin's 9000 banner soldiers from the capital. They retreated then to Tongzhou while Manchu court dispatched ministers Wen Jun and Huan-qi to Tianjin for peace talk with British/French. British/French took over Tianjin and refused to see Wen Jun and Huan-qi. Manchu court selected Gui-liang for another visit.

In Tianjin, British plenipotentiary E-er-jin (Elgin) and Consul Ba-xia-li (Parkes) demanded the opening-up of Tianjin etc; Gui-liang reported to Emperor Xianfeng (Hsien Feng); Emperor Xianfeng rejected the demand. Emperor Xianfeng ordered that King Yiqin-wang (Zai-yuan) go to Tongzhou for further peace talks and then fled to the 'Yuan Ming Yuan' palace in the northwestern Peking outskirts. On Sept 18th 1860 [sc], "Consul Parkes, Captains Anderson and Brabazon, M. de Norman, Mr. Bowlby (the Times correspondent), abbe de Luc, and 13 others (Europeans and Sikhs-total of 39)" went to Tongzhou (Tung-chow). The subsequent taking custody of 39 diplomats and reporters by Manchu General Senggelingqin would lead to the invasion of Beijing. At Tianyue-miao Monastery of Tongzhou, Zai-yuan and Gui-liang met the British consul and the French plenipotentiary. British consul Parkes demanded that they bring in soldiers to the capital for talking to the emperor direct, and then left the peace talk when Zai-yuan declined it. King Senggelingqin got enraged, chased and arrested the British and French entourage. When Gui-liang, Manchu "*zhong tang*" (minister of foreign affairs), requested for release of the 'friendlier' French, King Senggelingqin agreed to it. Gui-liang escorted the French

plenipotentiary away. Hearing of the abduction, British plenipotentiary ordered a northern campaign against Beijing. Captain Brabazon and abbe de Luc were beheaded, with "their bodies ... thrown into the canal while the others are carried into Peking". When allied forces attacked Manchu again, King Senggelinqin and Rui-lin fled to Beijing from Tongzhou without further fighting with the British and French.

British/French forces then went north to attack Beijing and reached a place called Hexiwu. At the capital, King Ruiqin-wang Rui-hua and "*shang shu*" (secretariat) Su-shen petitioned with the emperor to have a relocation to Mulan for a northern hunting for sake of avoiding the turmoils. Before fleeing the capital, Emperor Xianfeng called on the He-nan Army [banner army stationed to the south of Yellow River?] to the rescue of the capital. On Aug 8th (lunar calendar) or early Sept [sc], Emperor Xianfeng left the 'Yuan Ming Yuan' Palace and ordered that King Gongqin-wang (Yi-xin), a brother, be the omnipotent commissioner in charge of the capital. He-nan army, under the command of Sheng-bao, led over 10,000 banner soldiers to Tongzhou. On Sept 21st [sc], at Zhangjiawan (Chang-kin-wan), near Tongzhou, Sheng-bao met the joint invasion forces. Sheng-bao was targeted by waves of rifle shots and got wounded, and his armies collapsed under the firearms of the invasion forces. The allies went on to defeat the Manchu troops at Baliqiao (Pa-li-chiau). On Sept 22nd [sc], Emperor Xianfeng fled to Rihe (Jehol).

On Oct 6th [sc], the French first ravaged the Summer Palace. Huan-qi suggested to Yi-xin to have Parkes (Ba-xia-li) released for appeasing invasion forces. Two days later, Parkes, Loch, and a few others were released alive. On Oct 18th [sc], Lord Elgin ordered the ransack of the summer palace, and two days later, burnt the palace to cover up the looting. Parkes, with a Chinese traitor called Gong Xiaogong as a guide and an interpreter, intruded into the Summer Palace (Yuan Ming Yuan). (Gong Xiaogong was hired from Shanghai, a place termed either the 'Whore of the Orient' or the 'Paris of the Orient', for producing: 1) pidgin English, 2) parasite "*mai ban*" [broker-dealers] associated with foreign colonialists, and 3) 'xian (salty) shui (water) mei (women)' kind of sex industry related to foreigners. During the early years of economic reform, in early 1980s, numerous pidgin English Shanghaiian still had good memories of 'three gold bowls' such as jobs at foreign customs office and banks.) Yi-xin sent Huan-qi to the 'Yuan Ming Yuan' for seeing Parkes, but Parkes demanded that the rest of hostages be released before peace talk could continue. The British found out

that about 20 of the diplomats and reporters, including Captain Anderson, M. de Norman, were validated to have been killed by Manchu prison guards, with some of them cut into body parts. As a revenge, the British plenipotentiary (Elgin) and commander-in-chief (Lt General Sir Hope Grant) burned the imperial palace (Yuan ming yuan). (Cai Dongfan claimed that Gong Xiaogong was to blame for introducing the idea of arson; British plenipotentiary's letter stated that he deliberately burnt the palace or the emperor's private property to cause personal pain on the emperor; Chinese history books stated that British/French burnt the palace to cover up the traces of the palace pillage.)

At the advice of Huan-qi, Yi-xin requested that Gui-liang contact the French plenipotentiary for mediation. With the help of the French, British plenipotentiary agreed to talk peace with an immediate payment of 500,000 taels of silver as indemnity. By Sept 9th (lunar calendar) or in Oct [sc], all parties sat down at the Ministry of Protocol and added additional clauses to the original Tianjin Treaty, including the ceding of Kowloon in exchange for Chusan (Zhoushan). A large indemnity was paid immediately for compensating the families of the murdered prisoners. Two days later, on Oct 24th [sc] (or Sept 11th? per lunar calendar), Lord Elgin and Yi-xin (I-hsin) signed and ratified the treaty of Tianjin or Tien-tsin (1858) and apologized for the June 1859 attack at Pei-ho, with additional terms like indemnifying Britain with 12,000,000 taels of silver, opening up Tianjin as a trading port, and allowing British consuls to station at all open ports. The next day, Yi-xin invited French over and offered 6,000,000 taels of silver as indemnity. Conventions were signed with the French who obtained the right for missionaries to hold property in China

Aside from British and French, Russians, who previously promised to protect Yi-xin from the British/French during the peace summits, came to Yi-xin for cession of the land east of the Wu-su-li River (River Amur). Back in 1853, Russians, taking advantage of Taiping Rebellion, had intruded into Heilongjiang Prov of Manchuria and occupied the land north of Heilongjiang River via the unequal Treaty of Ai'hui (Aigun). A few months back, in May of 1860, taking advantage of Manchu entanglement with British/French at Dagukou Battery, Russia had forced China into signing a 'Special Tianjin Treaty' to enjoy the same privileges as granted to Britain/France. On Nov 14th [sc], Sino-Russian Treaty of Peking was signed with Russian envoy General Nicholas Ignatiev to confirm the Treaty of Aigun, giving Russia the Maritime Province (Vladivostock), free trade, and extra territories including Usuri Province.

[http://history.farmersboys.com/Battle Honours/pekin_1860.htm](http://history.farmersboys.com/Battle_Honours/pekin_1860.htm) had good description of the pillaging: "The allied advance went on with artillery opening up and the enemy attempting a stand, finally being defeated by the 99th advancing in skirmishing order. Peking now lay only 6 miles ahead On 5th October a move forward was made with the 99th covering the British left. The famous Summer Palace stood outside the walls of Peking, full of immense riches, which were eventually all stripped in retaliation for the torture and murder of prisoners. The looting of the Palace must not be confused with its final destruction, which occurred later under the direct orders of the allied chiefs.

There appears to be very little doubt about the commencement of this wholesale looting, for when Sir Hope Grant arrived at the palace to see things himself, between the hours of 8am and 9am, the whole palace was in a state of hopeless confusion, and the French troopers were taking anything of value they could lay their hands on. Sir HOPE had previously dispatched a squadron of British cavalry to the palace to see if the French cavalry were still there. It was clear that to allow the troops of one of the allied armies to loot and restrain those of the other allied army would cause discontent, so the collection by British troops of what remained was sanctioned, the treasures thus collected were sold by auction among the officers and men of the force by a specially selected committee of officers. The money realized at this auction was divided among the members of the British force at the ratio of one third to the officers and two thirds to the men, each private soldier receiving about £4 as his share."

Note: Yuanmingyuan, i.e., Round-shaped Splendor Garden, shown as ruins in the picture, was commonly termed the 'Garden of Perfect Splendor'. The garden composed of three parts: the Garden of Perfect Splendor, the Garden of Eternal Spring and the Garden of Ten Thousand Spring Seasons. It was first built in 1709 and completed after 150 years of continuous renovations. It was mistaken as the 'Summer Palace', a lake-side palace which was actually located to the west of Yuanmingyuan. The real summer palace was first named 'Garden of Clear Ripples' and it was burnt down in 1860 by the allied forces of Britain and France at the same time. 25 years after the arson, the summer palace, now termed 'Yi-he-yuan' (harmonious and happy garden), was rebuilt and it was completed in year 1895.

Taiping (Grand Peace) Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion

Manchu China, while being attacked by foreign countries, began to experience waves of internal rebellions which included the Nian (Nien Fei [Nien Banditry]) Rebellion (1853-1868) in Anhui-Jiangsu-Shandong-Shanxi, several Muslim [Panthays] rebellions in the Southwest of Yunnan Prov (1855-1873) and northwest (1862-1877), the Miao tribe revolt in Guizhou (1855-1881), and the Taiping Rebellion (1851-1864). The Taiping Rebellion, with remnants lasting for close to twenty years, caused loss of lives in almost twenty to thirty million. For the time period of 1850 to 1873, rebellion, drought, and famine cut the population of China by over sixty million people.

In the first lunar month of 1850, Emperor Daoguang's health worsened, and a will was left stating that the fourth prince, Aixinjueluo Yi-zhu, be the succeeding emperor. This would be Emperor Xianfeng (Aixinjueluo Yi-zhu, Qing Wenzong, r. 1851-1861). Emperor Daoguang was said to have special fondness for Yi-zhu because Yi-zhu's birth-mother (Empress Xiaoquan) died likely from the poisoning by emperor's mother dowager-empress; during one hunting session, Yi-zhu impressed his father-emperor with benevolence by deliberately refusing to kill animals on the pretext that animals should have the chance to breed during the spring time. (The refusal to hunt animals was a play that Yi-zhu learnt from a minister called Du Shoutian.) After enthronement, Emperor Xianfeng conferred the title of "*Da Xue Shi*", i.e., Grand scholar, onto Du. Emperor Xianfeng deprived the posts of two corrupt officials responsible for bad advices to Emperor Daoguang during the Opium War, i.e., Muzhuang'a and Qiyong. Emperor Xianfeng further recalled Lin Zexu for quelling banditry rebellion in western Guangdong Province.

Back in 1848, the two provinces of Guangdong and Guangxi endured a famine. Southwestern Guangxi province became the strongholds of bandits, with such leaders as Zhang Jiafu and Zhong Yachun of Qingyuan-fu prefecture, Chen Yakui and Chen Dongxing of Liuzhou-fu prefecture, Xie Jiangdian of Xunzhou-fu prefecture, Qu Zhenzu of Xiangzhou prefecture and Liu Guansheng and Liang Yajiu of Wuxuan-xian county. Manchu governor Zheng Zushen, failing to rein in the banditry, deliberately ignored the bandits. In the village of Jintian, Guiping County, Guangxi Province, a Confucian, by the name of Hong Xiuquan (Hung

Xiuquan, 1812-1864), would lead the biggest rebellion in modern history.

Hong Xiuquan & Lord Jesus Christ's Religion

Scholar Hu Qiuyuan treated Taiping rebellion as a fight between "landlords" of Guangdong-Guangxi provinces and the "landlords" of Hunan Prov. Hu Qiuyuan further claimed that Taiping leaders, other than Yang Xiuqing and Li Xiucheng, were mostly landlords and/or opium smugglers. The core cadre components of the rebellion, in the viewpoint of Hu Qiuyuan, were former "righteous and brave gentry-organized fighters" from the Sino-British Opium War. It was Hong Xiuquan who utilized the strong discipline of the Christian "alien ideas" that were first borrowed by Liang Fa.

Hong Xiuquan (1812-1864), also spelled Hung Hsiu-ch'uan, was born in Huaxian County of Guangdong Province during the 17th year (?) of Emperor Jiaqing's era. After failing to pass the civil service exams several times, Hong began to make a living via necromancy or 'milfoil divination' and travelled between the two provinces of Guangxi and Guangdong. Hearing that Zhu Jiutao set up a religion called 'Shang Di Jiao' (Lord Jesus Christ's Religion), Hong Xiuquan brought along his pal Feng Yunshan for a visit to Zhu Jiutao and both converted to this quasi-Christianity. After the death of Zhu Jiutao, Hong Xiuquan succeeded as the master. Hong Xiuquan bought several biblical books, including "Gospels of Matthews" etc, and incorporated Christian doctrines into the 'Shang Di Jiao'. Hong Xiuquan claimed that he was the brother of Jesus Christ. Hong Xiuquan and Feng Yunshan relocated to Penghua-shan Mountain, between Guiping and Wuxuan counties of Guangxi Province, and set up a secret society called 'Thee Dots Society' (which meant for the three dot water sign in his surname character). Yang Xiuqing and Wei Changhui of Guiping county, Shi Dakai and Qin Rigang of Guixian county, and Xiao Chaogui of Wuxuan county all flocked to Hong. Hong married over his sister (Hong Xuanqiao) to Xiao Chaogui. A wealthy man from Guiping, Zeng Yueheng, also joined in and donated funds to the society. Hong Xiuquan then set up churches and enrolled both men and women (termed brothers and sisters without regard for age) at a membership fee of five ounces or taels of silver. Hong Xiuquan, with the help of Xiao Chaogui, faked a death and then claimed to be reborn 7 days later. Hence, Hong captivated the populace's heart via the religious charisma and expanded membership considerably. While Hong returned to Guangdong for recruiting comrades, Feng Yunshan was arrested by county officials; Zeng Yueheng spent huge money to get Feng released; Feng was ordered to be expelled from Guangxi

Prov. Hong and his entourage met Feng on the road, and they went to see a local wealthy landlord called Hu Yihuang at Pingnan County of Guangxi Prov. At Jintian Village, folks were waiting for Hong's return, and they dispatched some messenger to have Hong and Feng fetched over. Hong was delighted to meet several new comrades at the village, including Lin Fengxiang of Guixian County, Luo Dagang of Jieyang County and Hong Daquan of Hengshan County. They held an oath party, swearing to be blood brothers, with Hong Xiuquan as No. 1 Chief and Yang Xiuqing as No. 2 Chief. The rebels hence decided to cut the pigtails, save hair on the skull and change to Han-ethnic clothing.

Several times, Guiping county magistrate dispatched henchmen for catching Hong & Yang but government forces got either killed or driven off. Guiping County reported to the official in charge of prefectures, and the prefecture official reported the rebellion to provincial governor Zheng Zushen. Governor Zheng Zushen petitioned with the emperor for dispatching a commissioner to Guangxi Prov. Hence, Emperor Xianfeng, at the advice of Du Shoutian, dispatched Lin Zexu as "*qincai dachen*" (imperial commissioner) and Xiang Rong as "*ti du*" (general) for Guangxi. Governor Zheng Zushen led few thousand green-camp soldiers to Pingle-fu Prefecture and then stopped for the arrival of Lin Zexu, while Xiang Rong went ahead to attack rebels in Liuzhou, Qingyuan, Ensi and Nanning area. Lin Zexu, who was said to have given Zuo Zongtang military maps of the New Dominion Province with high expectation that Zuo Zongtang would someday go west to defeat Russian encroachments, arrived in Puning county of Chaozhou for replacing impotent governor Zheng Zushen. Unfortunately, Lin Zexu died of illness shortly thereafter, and Governor-general Li Xingyuan was ordered to replace Lin as imperial commissioner.

Founding Of Taiping Heavenly Kingdom

In early 1851, Hong Xiuquan hence declared an uprising with a proclamation authored by Hong Daquan stating that populace's lives had been exhausted as a result of Manchu Qing's heavy taxation, officialdom corruption, and cession of land and monetary indemnities to foreign powers. Hong Xiuquan's army, with red turbans wrapped around the heads, marched out of Jintian Village, stationed at Dahuangjiang, and then launched multi-prong attacks at Guiping, Wuxuan, Guixian and Pingnan counties. Manchu government conferred Zhou Tianjue the post of governor and governor-general for Guangxi Prov for assisting Li Xingyuan, and ordered that Governor-general Xu Guangjin for Guangdong-Guangxi provinces dispatch armies for assisting Xiang Rong. Xu Guangjin sent

Wu-lan-tai to Guangxi Prov. At Maluling, opposite to Dahuangjiang, Xiang Rong defeated the rebels and chased them to Wuxuan; Xiang Rong defeated the rebels at Wuxuan and chased them to Zijingshan. Li Xingyuan died of indignation as a result of disobedience among Manchu armed led by Xiang Rong, Zhou Tianjue and Wu-lan-tai. Emperor Xianfeng hence deprived Zhou Tianjue of the post and assigned the governor post for Guangxi Prov onto Zou Minghe. Emperor Xianfeng also dispatched grand scholar Saishang'a to Guangxi Prov with 4000 forbidden banner soldiers from the capital.

Manchu armies launched attacks at the rebels and drove them out of Zijingshan Mountain. Rebels fled to Yong'an Prefecture where Hong Xiuquan declared the dynastic title of 'Tai Ping Tian Guo' where Taiping (T'ai-p'ing or Taeping) meant for the Grand Peace and Tianguo meant for the heavenly kingdom. Hong Xiuquan called himself 'tian wang' or Heavenly King, and conferred 'dong wang' or Eastern King onto Yang Xiuqing, 'xi wang' or Western King onto Xiao Chaogui, 'nan wang' or Southern King onto Feng Yunshan, 'bei wang' or Northern King onto Wei Changhui, 'yi wang' or Wing King (i.e., Assistant King) onto Shi Dakai, and 'tian de wang' or King of Heavenly Virtues onto Hong Daquan.

Jiang Zhongyuan: Confucian Gentry Antagonism Against Taiping

Manchu armies converged under the city-wall of Yong'an where they fought against the rebels for several months. Again, Xiang Rong and Wu-lan-tai failed to coordinate with each other, while one Manchu officer under grand scholar died of illness. One Manchu officer under Wu-lan-tai, by the name of Jiang Zhongyuan, mediated between the Manchu generals, and at one time admonished against Xiang Rong's letting loose the north-gate, stating that the rebels, numbering about 10,000, should not be allowed to escape and that Manchu armies just needed to cut off the water supply to the city. Jiang Zhongyuan resigned after Xiang Rong refused to listen to him. Hong Xiuquan ordered a break-through of the siege from all city gates, with Yang Xiuqing and Shi Dakai departing from north gate, Hong Daquan and Qin Rigang from east gate, Xiao Chaogui and Wei Changhui from south gate, and Lin Fengxiang and Luo Dagang from the west gate. At east gate, Wu-lan-tai captured Hong Daquan, but Qin Rigang got rescued by Xiao Chaogui and Wei Changhui. At north gate, Hong Xiuquan defeated Xiang Rong with the assistance of Lin Fengxiang and Luo Dagang who already broke through the west gate siege line. Wu-lan-tai, thinking that the rebels converged towards the north for possibly attacking the provincial capital of Guilin, would swear his army for a close chase of the rebels.

Wu-lan-tai, against the advice of his subordinate officers, was trapped and killed by the bullets of the rebels at Liutangxu.

At Guilin city, Hong Xiuquan failed to take over the city guarded by Governor Zou Minghe. Li Zongren memoirs pointed out that his ancestors and villagers, fond of Manchu's civil service exams, did not join the Taiping rebels during the siege of Guilin. Meanwhile, Feng Yunshan fell into a trap in chasing Manchu 'village fighters' organized by Jiang Zhongyuan who had come to the relief of Guilin and was hit by a cannon ball at Suoyidu Crossing. (Jiang Zhongyuan, a Hunan native, being worried that the rebels might break through Yong'an one day and then harass his native province, had made preparations for fighting rebels by recruiting 1000 village fighters.) At the suggestion of Shi Dakai, Hong Xiuquan withdrew from the siege of Guilin and campaigned northward towards Hunan Provinces and the Yangtze River.

Having arrived at Suoyidu Crossing, Hong Xiuquan intended to avenge the death of "Southern King". Jiang Zhongyuan secretly planted tree trunks in the middle of the river and then fired upon the rebel boats with fire arrows, burning numerous boats. Hong Xiuquan suffered the heaviest casualties since his uprising. Seeing that the rebels continued on towards the east, Jiang Zhongyuan notified grand scholar Saishang'a of the rebel approach towards Yongzhou, but Saishang'a, fearing a confrontation with rebels, deliberately avoided fighting the rebels. Hong Xiuquan sacked Daozhou without a fight, and after a month, continued on to take Jianghua, Yongming, Jiahe and Lanshan counties. Thereafter, Hong Xiuquan entered Guiyangzhou and Chenzhou inside of Hunan Prov, threatening Hunan provincial capital of Changsha which happened to be guarded by Hong Xiuquan's childhood classmate and pal, Hunan Governor Luo Bingzhang.

Taiping Sweeping Through Hunan-Hubei-Anhui-Jiangsu Provinces

Hearing that Governor Luo Bingzhang was replaced by Zhang Liangji, Xiao Chaogui, against the caution of Hong Xiuquan, led an attack on Changsha after taking over Yongxing. At Changsha, Luo Bingzhang, who had not relieved his post yet, assembled local Hunan armies for a defence. Meanwhile, Manchu court dispatched Xu Guangjin and Xiang Rong to Hunan Prov. Jiang Zhongyuan came to the relief the earliest and drove Xiao Chaogui off a hill. When Xiao Chaogui led an attack at the south gate, a cannon ball killed the Western King of Taiping Rebels. At the urge of Hong Xuanqiao who intended to avenge the death

of her husband, Hong Xiuquan ordered a northward march at Changsha where both camps converged for a duel. Having encountered 50,000 more relief army led by Zhang Liangji and Xiang Rong, Taiping rebels retreated westward after failing to attack the city, including schemes like tunnel digging through the city wall. Hong Xiuquan then went northwest to Yiyang, northeast to Xiangyin, near the bank of Dongting Lake, and sailed along the lake to Yueyang city where the Yangtze River flowed down. Yueyang city was already deserted by Manchu governor-general. Hong Xiuquan acquired a huge arsenal which was the leftover from turncoat Ming General Wu Sangui of 17th century.

Hong Xiuquan then confiscated over 5000 merchant ships, sailed northeastward along the Yangtze River, towards Hanyang of Hubei Prov. At Hanyang, Manchu prefecture magistrate Dong Zhenduo died with his family bodyguard soldiers in lane by lane fighting after 3 days of resistance, and Manchu county magistrate Liu Honggeng committed suicide. Hong Xiuquan then sacked Hankou, and pillaged and burnt Hankou for 5 days and 5 nights. Next, Hong Xiuquan lay siege of Wuchang city with ships linked together on the frozen water, all the way from Hanyang to Wuchang. Xiang Rong came to the relief of Wuchang which was guarded by Manchu governor Chang Dachun and stationed his army on Mt. Hongshan, to the east of the city. Zhang Jiaxiang (aka Zhang Guoliang), a rebel who turned over to Xiang Rong after the failure of a dissension scheme, would stampede Yang Xiuqing's camp for avenging the death of his family in the hands of Yang Xiuqing. However, by Dec 1852, the rebels successfully sacked Wuchang by bombing the citywall through underground tunnel, and Governor Chang Dachun and his men all sacrificed their lives. Manchu court relocated Zhang Liangji as the new governor-general for Hubei Prov and retained Luo Bingzhang as the governor for Hubei Prov.

Taiping Rebellion (1851-1864) broke out in 1851 and lasted over a dozen years. Hong Xiuquan marched towards Nanking where he established a capital from 1853-64 at the advice of a Confucian scholar called Qian Jiang (who, a native of Gui'an of Zhejiang Prov, claimed to be a former counsellor of Lin Zexu and travelled over a thousand li distance to serve the rebels). Cai Dongfan commented that Hong Xiuquan had made a mistake in circumventing around Hunan Prov which later produced such ferocious Confucian-turned Xiang-jun or Hunan Prov native army generals as Zeng Guofan and Zuo Zongtang etc, all disciples of Luo Bingzhang. Some wise guy also commented that the rebels' failure to penetrate into the north with full force had cost the loss of their

cause by making an analogy to peasant rebel Li Zicheng's success in taking over Peking in late Ming Dynasty time period. Qian Jiang's proposal included: i) top tactic - attacking south of Yangtze River; ii) middle tactic - attacking He-nan (south of the Yellow River), and iii) last tactic - attacking Shan-dong (the area next to the capital). Hong Xiuquan hence led his army down the Yangtze stream on lunar calendar Jan 1st of 1853, with 500,000 captured civilians moving together. Hong Xiuquan defeated and killed Manchu officer En-zhang at Shouchun who tried to intercept the rebel fleet with 2000 soldiers from Songjiang. Rebels sacked Jiujiang of Jiangxi Prov on Jan 9th [lc], forced Manchu Governor Jiang Wenqing commit suicide at Anqing on Jan 17th and took over custody of 300,000 taels of silver plus 400,000 units of grain. Rebels continued to flow down the stream, ransacking all the way, and arrived at Jiangning (Nanking) on Jan 29th, surrounding the city with 24 linked army camps. By April 10th, Governor Lu Jianying committed suicide after exhausting all his Green-camp soldiers and volunteer fighters, and the rebels sacked Nanking and killed over 40,000 people.

Li Hongzhang & Defence Of Anhui Prov

While the rebels flowed down the Yangtze River towards Nanking, Anhui Prov, i.e., the native province of Li Hongzhang, incurred deep losses. On Jan 24th of 1853 [lc], Taiping rebels sacked Anhui provincial city of Anqing and killed governor Jiang Wenqing. (Cai Dongfan stated that Jiang Wenqing committed suicide at Anqing on Jan 17th, lunar calendar.) At this time, Li Hongzhang, who scored No 13 in the imperial exam in 1847 and was assigned an academic job at Peking's imperial library of Han-lin-yuan, was invited by Lu Xianji as an assistant for organizing "native shire defence soldiers" of Anhui Prov under an imperial decree.

Li Hongzhang, born on Jan 5th 1823 (solar calendar Feb 15 1823), had his ancestry in Hukou area and later his ancestor relocated to Hefei of Anhui Prov, to the north of Caohu Lake. Li's eighth great grandfather, Xu Yingxi, transferred his junior son to a village pal by the name of Li Xinzhuang. Li's grandfather, Li Dianhua, encouraged his four sons to study classics for officialdom, with two sons passing the shire-level civil exam to enjoy the title of 'xiu cai' (i.e., smart talent); however, both sons, including Li's father Li Wenhua, failed the provincial exam held in Nanking in 1825. Li's father, Li Wenhua, however, continued his pursuits, finally passed the provincial exam to enjoy the title of 'ju ren' (i.e., upheld person) in 1834 and passed the national test to enjoy the

title of 'jin shi' (i.e., scholar who entered the palace) in 1838. Li Wenhua, who spent 18 years working at Criminal & Law Ministry, encouraged all his six sons in seeking officialdom via civil service exams. Li Hongzhang, at age 18, became 'xiu cai' in 1840, and subsequently 'you gong' (i.e., excellent recommendee for 'ju ren') of Luzhou Prefecture in 1843. At the urge of his father, Li Hongzhang arrived in the nation's capital, dwelled in Anhui Prov Native Guesthouse, befriended intelligentsia, and paid homage to senior scholars and officials like Zeng Guofan (1811-1872). In 1844, Li Hongzhang passed three rounds of exams to become 48th scorer 'ju ren'. After failing the 1845 imperial exam, Li scored No. 13 'jin shi' during the 1847 imperial exam and entered 'Han Lin Yuan' the imperial academy where examinees enjoyed the ranking of 7th level minister privilege and acted as literature attendee to the emperor. (Details could be seen at Yuan Shiyi's "*Biography of Li Hongzhang*", People's Publishing House, Beijing, China, 1991 edition.)

Luu Xianji and Li Hongzhang departed for Anhui Prov. In Suzhou of Anhui Prov, Zhou Tianjue, made the new governor, requested for a relocation of provincial capital to Luzhou. Li Jiarui was dispatched to Anhui for taking the place of governorship, and three Manchu officials failed to coordinate the campaigns against the Taiping rebels to the south and the Nian rebellion internally. Nian (aka Nien), which first started in early years of Qing Dynasty, had extended influenced across the provinces of Henan-Anhui and Shandong by the time Taiping Rebellion erupted. Nian literally meant for a thread or a band. In the report sent to the emperor in May 1853, Li Jiarui stated that the whole Anhui province was full of banditry, either in hundreds or in thousands, whereas the provincial army that could be mobilized numbered no more than 4000 men, with only 50 soldiers guarding Luzhou city. Hence, local landlords, at the suggestion of Li Hongzhang's father, organized local shire-level self-defence armies on their own accord, with such figures as Ma Sanjun in Tongcheng, Wu Tingxiang and Wu Changqing in Lujiang, plus Zhang Shusheng/Zhang Shushan, Zhou Shengbo/Zhou Shengchuan, Liu Mingchuan, Pan Dingxin, Xie Guangliang and Li Hezhang in Hefei. In March of 1853, Zhou Tianjue and Li Hongzhang quelled the Nian rebellion led by Chen Xuezen and Ji Heizhuang at Yingzhou and Bozhou areas. In April, Zhou Tianjue and Li Hongzhang successfully quelled the Nian band led by Lu Xialing who, having been released from Anqing's Manchu prison by Taiping rebels, had returned to his hometown Dingyuan in March to organize the rebellion under the title of 'Sui Tian Da Wang' (i.e., king that follows Taiping's Heaven King). Earlier, Li Hezhang, i.e., Li Hongzhang's brother,

had quelled, at Xianchun village near Hefei, the rebellion by Xia Jinshu who intended to answer Lu Xialing rebellion at Dingyuan.

Northern Expedition & Western Campaigns By Taiping Rebels

At Nanking, Hong Xiuquan, at Yang Xiuqing's encouragement, decided to make Nanking his capital and renamed it Tianjin (i.e., Heavenly Capital). Hong Xiuquan renovated Manchu governor office into a palace, formulated the official ranking system, implemented laws, revoked Manchu's kneeling-down protocol, hired women clerks for managing books and records as a measure of sexual equality, adopted 365 days as one year, promulgated seven-day week as well as weekly mass, built platforms for religious services, and decreed the bans as to concubine, prostitution, foot-binding, buy-sell of slaves and opiums in the same fashion as Moses' Ten Commandments.

At the urge of Qian Jiang who proposed that important cities north of Yangtze, like Yangzhou and Zhenjiang, must be taken to consolidate the rule of Nanking, Yang Xiuqing, who earlier claimed that the area south of the Yellow River had not enough grains for supply the rebels, agreed to launch a Northern Expedition. Lin Fengxiang, the so-called 'cheng xiang' (i.e., prime minister) for Taiping Rebels, volunteered for the mission, and Luo Dagang, Li Kaifang and Zeng Lichang followed Lin Fengxian. By Feb 21st, Lin Fengxiang sacked Zhenjiang, and by 23rd, sacked Yangzhou. Lin Fengxian left Zeng Lichang at Yangzhou, and proposed to continue on his Northern Expedition. Qian Jiang advised Hong Xiuquan that additional relief should be provided to Lin Fengxian for the success of his thrust towards the north, and Yang Xiuqing dispatched Ji Wenyuan, the son of Wei Changhui's sister, to the north. (Yang Xiuqing intended to divert the influences of the "Northern King".)

At this time, Manchu court had ordered that Qi-shan (imperial commissioner), Chen Jinshou (governor-general for Zhili Prov) and Sheng-bao (scholar) lead field armies and cavalry of Zhili-Shenxi-Heilongjiang for attacking Taiping from the north. To the south, Xiang-rong followed the rebels to Nanking and stationed near eastern Nanking city gate area where Xianlingwei Ming Royal Tomb was. Qian Jiang advised i) that Taiping rebels did not have to fight Xiang-rong in the south but to defend the city till Manchu soldiers loosened their guidance and spirits, and ii) that Taiping should launch a Western Campaign to disrupt the Anhui-Jiangxi provinces, i.e., upstream of the Yangtze River. Again, Yang Xiuqing, for sake of diverting competitors away from Nanking, ordered

that Wing-King Shi Dakai attack Anhui and Northern-King Wei Changhui attack Jiangxi Prov. Yang Xiuqing himself, like Hong Xiuquan, indulged in locating beauties for his palace in Nanking, and Yang Xiuqing held Taiping Civil Service Exams, with male and female sessions opened. The No. 1 score, i.e., female 'zhuang yuan' (i.e., No. 1 scorer), Fu Shanxiang, was hired by Yang Xiuqing as his mistress.

Lin Fengxiang and Li Kaifang sacked Tuzhou of Anhui Prov on May 16th 1853. On 18th, Taiping Northern Expedition army sacked Linhuaiguan Pass and pushed against Fengxiang city. Meanwhile, Ji Wenxiang attacked Bozhou of Anhui Prov from Pukou, and converged with Lin Fengxiang's column. Manchu Governor Li Jiarui called upon Li Hongzhang and etc to aid the defence of Fengxiang. Li Jiarui also petitioned with Emperor Xianfeng for relief armies from Jiangxi-Hubei provinces. On May 28th, Taiping army sacked Fengxiang before the Li Jiarui gang arrived at the spot. On June 10th, Taiping Northern Expedition army sacked Bozhou of Anhui Prov. Lin Fengxiang and Li Kaifang, without rest, marched further on towards Henan Prov. Before Manchu Scholar Sheng-bao entered Henan Prov, Taiping had sacked Guide city. When Manchu Governor Lu Yinggu left the capital for aiding Guide, Taiping army circumvented towards Kaifeng the provincial capital. With new reinforcements led by Tuoming-a, Manchu official at Kaifeng, Shen Zhaoyun, fought off the siege after fighting with Taiping rebels for two days and two nights. Lin Fengxian hence rerouted towards Hebei Prov.

On June 10th, Taiping Herald-General Hu Yihuang, part of the Western Campaigns b Taiping Rebels, penetrated into Anhui Prov and once again sacked Anqing city. Using Anqing as a base, Western Campaigns army launched attack at Jiangxi Prov to the south.

Zeng Guofan & The Emergence Of Xiang-jun (Hunan Prov Native Army)
Zeng Guofan was said to have declined Russia's offer of military supplies in lieu of American in 1853.

Li Hongzhang's War Performance

In northern Anhui Prov, Li Jiarui dispatched Zhang Yintang and Li Hongzhang to Jixianguan, Yuncao and Dongguan for defending Luzhou, Caohu and the imperial grain supply line as well as cutting off the contacts between Taiping Western Campaigns and Taiping Northern Expeditions. After Taiping Western

Campaigns army took over Yunchao, Li Hongzhang retreated to Dongguan. While at Yunchao, Li Hongzhang fled at one time when he mistook as rebels some people holding lights at the river. At Dongguan, Li Hongzhang's soldiers fled after being defeated by Taiping and subsequently impacted Manchu camps at Caoxian, leading to the loss of Caoxian. When Taiping Wing-King Shi Dakai arrived in Anqing, a new strategy was adopted for attacking Jixianguan and Tongcheng of northern Anhui Prov. Taiping Rebel General Qin Rigang was ordered to attack Shucheng and Tongcheng. Luu Jixian, who had cried about his possible death with his mother at Peking before departing to Anhui, was guiding Shucheng city without any military force. Li Hongzhang, who had earlier hurried towards Shucheng for a meeting with Luu Jixian, fled the scene when he saw Taiping soldiers approaching Shucheng. In Nov 1854, Luu Jixian committed suicide by jumping into a river. In Dec, Hu Yihuan went on to attack Luzhou which was guarded by Manchu veteran Jiang Zhongyuan who had arrived at the city two days earlier under the order of Zeng Guofan. Jiang Zhongyuan, who was conferred the post of governor for Anhui, was ordered to aid Luzhou together with Zeng Guofan. Jiang Zhongyuan, eager to arrive in Luzhou, would depart for Luzhou from Hubei Prov with over 1000 soldiers. Leaving 1000 men to guard Liuhe, he entered Luzhou with few hundred soldiers, only. Outside of Luzhou, Manchu official He-chun was in charge of Shu-xing-a and Li Hongzhang for delivering the aid to Luzhou. Jiang Zhongyuan altogether assembled 3000 men for defending Luzhou. Shu-xing-a commended Li Hongzhou for his expression of initiative to fight the rebels. However, on two fronts, Taiping army defeated the Manchu relief army as well as sacked Luzhou. Taiping General Qin Rigang, with additional 100,000 relief army led by Hu Yihuang, mounted a renewed siege of Luzhou. Inside Luzhou, Manchu magistrate Hu Yuanwei colluded with Taiping rebels in letting open the south city gate. Jiang Zhongyuan tried to commit suicide, but his servant grabbed his blade and put Jiang Zhongyuan on his shoulder for a breakthrough. Jiang Zhongyuan bit the ear of his servant to get off the back, fought against the Taiping rebels, incurred seven wounds from the spear, and jumped into the river to commit suicide. In Jan 1855 (?), Luzhou (around today's Hefei of Anhui) was lost and Jiang Zhongyuan committed suicide. Taiping solidified its grip of Anhui Prov by linking up with Shucheng and Tongcheng to the south and Hexian and Caoxian (today's Caohu) to the east.

Manchu court dispatched Fu-ji as the new governor for Anhui Prov. After failing to fight Taiping at Luzhou, Fu-ji adopted the tactic of attacking the surrounding

cities to the south and east. Li Hongzhang again expressed his initiative to lead the fight. In Feb 1855, Fu-ji ordered that Li Hongzhang lead a circumvention attack at Hanshan and killed Taiping Officer Luo Xiaoguang. Li Hongzhang was ordered to attack Caoxian in July when his father passed away.

Details of the rebellion will be covered in the section [taiping.htm](#)

Li Hongzhang Organizing Huai-jun With Zeng Guofan Endorsement

The Ever-Victorious Army

Huang Yuhe (J.Y. Wong), in his book "*Truth of Kidnap of Sun Yat-sen In London*" (lianjing publishing house, Taipei, Taiwan, Oct 1998), had detailed description of a Manchu legation clerk in London, known as Sir Halliday Macartney, who defended Manchu legation's taking custody of Sun Yat-sen during Oct 17-Oct 23rd time period. Halliday Macartney, aka Ma-ge-li in Chinese, was a descendant of the first Macartney dispatched to China in 1792. Macartney joined 99th Regiment for dispatchment to India and relocated to China for the Arrow War which burnt the Yuanmingyuan Palace. After the war, Macartney's army was sent to Canton where he picked up the Chinese language. In 1862, Macartney's regiment was transferred to Shanghai for fighting the Taiping Rebellion. In Oct of same year, Macartney resigned post in British army for joining the mercenary army known as 'chang sheng jun' or Ever-Victorious Army under Li Hongzhang's Huai-jun Army. On Sept 22nd, Commander Ward of the Ever-Victorious Army was killed by the Taiping rebels. Another mercenary officer, Bai-ji-wen, assumed the commander post but he had arguments with Li Hongzhang and at one time intended to lead 30 ships for a defection to Taiping camp. Macartney was said to have been responsible for keeping Bai-ji-wen, but Li Hongzhang's wish to have Macartney assume the commander post was superceded by British choice of Gordon. Macartney played more mediation role over the dispute between Manchu army and Gordon's rifle column. Macartney proposed to Li Hongzhang to have a musketeer and cannon weapon factory launched in Songjiang. This factory, later moved to Nanking, was named Jinling Machinery Bureau. Macartney married a Chinese woman from Suzhou, but his career serving Manchu China was disrupted after the cannons produced by the factory exploded and killed firing soldiers on Jan 5th of 1875. In late 1875, Macartney was offered a post as a Manchu consul/interpreter for the newly opened Manchu legation in London. Macartney was retained by all Manchu minister-envoys, and

he had accompanied Zeng Jize on July 30th 1880 trip to St Petersburg for recovering China's northwestern territories from Russia.

Foreign Enterprises Movement (Self-Strengthening, 1874-1895)

The Opium War of 1840s pierced the 'paper tiger' of the Manchu Qing Dynasty. Subsequent 'Taiping Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion' would disrupt middle China for a dozen years and substantially shortened Manchu life expectancy. A so-called 'Foreign Enterprises Movement' (i.e., "*Yangwu Yundong*"), starting with the assignment of South-Sea Minister and North-Sea Minister in 1858 and the buildup of Manchu navies, would end in the defeat of the Manchu fleet inside of the Weihaiwei Harbor during the 1894 Sino-Japanese War, the loss of Korean vassalage and the cession of Taiwan Island. (Japan had emerged out of Japan's Meiji Restoration of 1868 to be ahead of Manchu China as a result of its change of governing philosophy and system in addition to adoption of Western technology and arms.)

Lin Zexu had been corresponding with his friend Wei Yuan (1794-1856) about "Self-Strengthening" after China's loss of two opium wars, consecutively. Lin Zexu and Wei Yuan saw the "Western technology, arms, and methods of warfare" as directions that China should follow. Wei Yuan later published a book called "*Hai Guo Tu Zhi*" (i.e., The Illustrated Gazetteer of Maritime Countries) which mainly argued, per Richard Hooker, that "the Europeans had developed technologies and methods of warfare in their ceaseless and barbaric quest for power, profit, and material wealth. Civilization, represented by China, was in danger of falling to the technological superiority of the Western powers. Because China is a peaceful and civilized nation, it can overcome the West only if it learns and matches the technology and techniques of the West." This drive for modernization would serve as the basis for the "Self-Strengthening" from 1874 to 1895.

"Self-Strengthening" had its essence as "*Zhong Xue Xi Yong*", namely, beholding the Chinese classics and Confucianism as the creed while adopting Western technologies as mere tools. The crises of the mid-nineteenth century did push the Manchu regime into pursuing the course of reform. But conservative scholars and officials still believed that Chinese political institutions and traditions, per Richard Hooker, which were "dedicated ideologically to the

welfare of the common person (min)", were the "strongest and most moral form of government in the world", while "in contrast to this, the Western powers were characterized by conflict, aggression, selfishness, anarchy, and disunity." There would ensue a flurry of innovations. Governor-Generals, such as Zeng Guofan (Tseng Kuo-fan), Li Hongzhang (Li Hung-chang), Zhang Zhidong (Chang Chih-tung), and Zuo Zongtang (Tso Tsung-t'ang), during the crackdown on Taiping rebellion, had been building up armies and arsenals in the 1860's and commercial industries in the 1870's. These regional Governors-General were the primary practitioners of self-strengthening movements. For example, the Kaiping Coal Mine was established and the first telegraph company was established in 1876. After that would be railroad and cotton factories.

The most representative of those practitioners would be Li Hongzhang who had been noted for his extraordinary interests in the Western technologies. Li Hongzhang's military talents would be his 6000 Huai-jun's riding foreign ships for a break of the Taiping blockade in the Lower Yangtze River to reach Shanghai. In Shanghai, Li Hongzhang built the first Chinese weapons factory, i.e., later Shanghai Musketeer Manufacturing Bureau (i.e., "*Jiangnan Zhizao Ju*") after observation of Ward's weapons. Li Hongzhang had personally written about locomotive engine and its mechanisms. Li Hongzhang supervised the establishment of first civil coastal transportation company. Li Hongzhang, against conservative 'feng shui' expert objections, supported laying the cable between Dagukou and Tianjin, which led to the establishment of a telegraph company. Li Hongzhang had contributions in modernizing China's industries, including railroad, steel factory, weaponry factory and navy. (Li Hongzhang family had produced three governor-generals, 150 Manchu officials, 2570000 Chinese acres of land in Anhui Prov, and huge stake in China's industrial and commercial enterprises in coastal cities. Liang Qichao later commented on Li Hongzhang's family wealth, stating that it was nothing extraordinary in comparison with other families of fame.)

Xin Hao-nian drew a strikingly similar parallel between the Manchu 'Foreign Enterprises Movement' and the CCP's Economic Reforms heralded by Deng Xiaoping. Manchu 'Foreign Enterprises Movement', aside from the buildup of navies, would bring about the development of various industries such as railroad, telegraph, mining, textiles, machinery and trading. Shanghai's extraterritories would act as the so-called 'special economic zones' as today's Shenzhen and Zhuhai. However, dictatorship invariably brought about corruption as well. The

navy funds would be appropriated by Empress Dowager for building her private gardens, and among the bureaucrats, we would see the later founders of China's major enterprises, who fed themselves via cut-corner work or embezzlement. This movement would end in the defeat of the Manchu fleet inside of the Weihaiwei Harbor during the 1894 Sino-Japanese War, which shattered the self-strengthening dreams completely.

There were also radical calls for reform, such as from an independent scholar named Wang T'ao (1828-1897). Wang T'ao, per Richard Hooker, had once worked as a journalist in Hongkong and Shanghai under the British. Wang T'ao had been to the West and Japan, and he argued that "it was not enough to imitate Western technology; China needed to reform its society from the ground up by adopting Western ideas and social norms."

Manchu Military System: Brave-Camp Army & New Army

Mr. Ding Zhongjiang wrote a great book called "*History of Northern Warlords*" in 1964. Per Ding Zhongjiang, the Northern Warlord Lineage could be traced to Manchu's Xiang-jun (Hunan Prov Army) and Huai-jun (Anhui Prov Army). Manchu originally applied the so-called Eight Banner System, with a total force of 24 banners and 280,000 headcount. Manchu later set up Green-Camp (Lu-ying) Standard Battalion of about 500,000 comprising of ex-Ming turncoat armies. Green-Camp armies, controlled by Manchu Military Ministry, had units of 500 men as one 'ying' (i.e., camp).

By the time of Taiping Rebellion, both Banner and Green Camp armies had rotten so much that they could not put up a fight. To reform the banner armies, Manchu court dispatched their princelings overseas for studying Western technologies and military system. Among the overseas students would be Liang-bi and Yin-chang. Revived banner regiments would have sub-categories as 'musketeer field battalion' and 'musketeer cavalry battalion' etc.

Additional recruits of village and street fighters led to the emergence of Xiang-jun, Chu-jun, Chuan-jun and Huai-jun during the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom upheaval. Xiang-jun, Chu-jun, Chuan-jun and Huai-jun were entitled 'Yong Ying', i.e., Brave Camp Army. Xiang-jun was also a corrupt army and it was recorded that the soldiers pillaged Nanking after cracking down on Taiping and

killed over 100,000 residents and Taiping soldiers within 3 days.

Xiang-jun (Hunan Prov Army) and Huai-jun (Anhui Prov Army) were headed by Zeng Guofan and Li Hongzhang, respectively. Zeng Guofan assigned officer posts onto his hometown pals, relatives, friends, teachers and students, and recruited soldiers via corresponding nepotism. Military analysts commented that Xiang-jun soldiers and officers saw each other as brothers and uncles. Li Hongzhang followed the suit of Zeng Guofan. After defeating the Taiping Rebellion and the Nian (Nian-jun) Rebellion, majority of Xiang-jun and Huai-jun troops were retained as garrisons in place of the Eight Banner and Green-Camp soldiers. Gradually, Zeng Guofan and Li Hongzhang and their cronies took over the posts of governor-generals for Jiangsu and Jiangxi provinces, South-Sea Minister, North-Sea Minister and governor-general for Zhili Province (Beijing area). Li Hongzhang, moreover, employed a British called Gordon for establishing musketeer army. Gordon was empowered with purchasing weapons, and German officers were hired as lecturers at Tianjin's "*Wubei Xuetao*" Academy. At the academy, Manchu official Yin-chang acted as "*zong ban*" or school-master.

By the 1895 Sino-Japanese War, the backwardness of Huai-jun was shown by the defeat of Zuo Baogui's column in Pyongyang, Korea. Huai-jun's Sheng-jun column was basically annihilated in Korea. Before the 1895 defeat, Yuan Shi-kai spent 12 years in Korea training the Korean army. After the 1895 defeat in the Sino-Japanese War, Manchu government began to recruit the so-called Xin-jun ('New Army') in accordance with the West's military system.

Governor-general Zhang Zhidong for Liang-jiang provinces established an academy in Wusong port of Shanghai, hired German officers as lecturers and trained Manchu Qing army in the same fashion as German army. In northern China, at Xiaozhan the old camp of Sheng-jun, Manchu Governor-general for Zhili Prov (Wang Wenshao) ordered that Hu Yufen (a salt management official) to train ten camps of Dingwu-jun army. Hu Yufen used a German (Han-na-gen) as lecturer. Xiaozhan (Xinnong-zhen town) was a small train station between Tianjin and Dagukou, about 70 li distance from Tianjin city. Li Hongzhang's Huai-jun had previously stationed here for 20 years, with tilling of fields and planting of paddy rice.

Various provinces were required to train "*xun-fang-ying*" (patrolling and defence camps), with part of the soldiers hired from the outdated Green-camp and

Brave-camp armies. After 1911 Xin-hai Revolution, "*xun-fang-ying*" were converted to "*jing-bei-dui*" and "*bao-an-dui*" (local security forces), with its name surviving as long as 1932 in Xinjiang (Chinese Turkestan).

In Oct of 1895, five Manchu ministers petitioned with the emperor for recruiting the so-called 'New Army'. Further details will be covered in the section 'Rise of Yuan Shi-kai' below.

Russian Encroachments

In AD 1858, in the north, British and French troops captured the fort of Dagukou after heavy fighting in May and threatened to advance on Tianjin city. Meanwhile, Russia, taking advantage of British/French war against China, attacked northernmost Manchuria, and on May 16th [sc], Manchu signed the Treaty of Aigun (Aihui) ceding to Russia the northern bank of the Amur [Amur] River and gave joint possession of the land between the Ussuri River and the sea.

Russian undertook ethnic cleansing to the north bank of the Amur River, i.e., Heilongjiang River [Black Dragon River in Chinese), and slaughtered all Chinese, men and women, adults and children, who resided in the 64 villages to the north of the river. Russians chained Chinese through their shoulder blade bones, drove them into the river, and killed them all.

This again proven the barbarity of one racial group against another, which was also the case with the genocides against aboriginals in American and Australian continents. The genocide by Spanish Conquistadors, as shown at <http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/genes/population/proof.shtml>, clearly proved the case. Note that in today's Colombia, Iberian Y chromosomes and Amerindian mtDNA are the prevalent components. Russian, like British, had taken the genocide one step further by killing off even the women.

In 1859, Manchu court rejected the Treaty of Aigun signed by Manchu commissioner for Manchuria. In May of 1860, taking advantage of Manchu entanglement with British/French at Dagukou Battery, Russia had forced China into signing a 'Special Tianjin Treaty' to enjoy the same privileges as granted to Britain/France. On Nov 14th [sc], Sino-Russian Treaty of Peking was signed with

Russian envoy General Nicholas Ignatiev to confirm the Treaty of Aigun, giving Russia the Maritime Province (Vladivostok), free trade, and extra territories including Usuri Province. Treaty of Peking acknowledged the Russian annexation of the territory between the Ussuri River and Sea of Japan.

1876 Anglo-Chinese Yantai Treaty

The 1876 Anglo-Chinese Yantai Treaty had nothing to do with coastal Yantai on Shandong Peninsula but southwestern China. In AD 1874, British interpreter Ma-jia-li [Mccartney?] travelled to Burma from Peking, via inland through Yunnan Prov. In Feb [solar cal?] of 1875, two hundred British soldiers, led by officer Po-lang, followed Ma-jia-li [Mccartney?] back to China. Inside of Dehong prefecture of Yunnan Prov, British came into conflict with minority peoples like Jipo-zu, Dai-zu [Thai], and Ah-chang-zu, and killed several people. Locals, including Han-ethnic people, counter-attacked the British and killed Ma-jia-li [Mccartney?] etc. British retreated back to Burma. Under the pressure of Britain, Manchu government cracked down on the rebels, and arrested and killed 23 jingpo-zu minority people. Further, Manchu Qing government signed the Anglo-Chinese Yantai Treaty as a compensation for the British loss.

Later in AD 1890, British dispatched two "exploration" team into Yunnan Prov. The southern route, escorted by 500 British soldiers under Si-ge-de [Scott?], intruded into Yunjinghong and Mengzhe areas via Mt A-wa-shan and Menglian. Local chieftans, including Che-li, Wa-zu and Dai-zu, refused to provide supplies to British, harassed the British with brandishing of weapons and firing gunshots, and taking down British flag pole. British retreated to Burma thereafter.

However, in 1897-1899, British pressured Manchu into ceding some Longchuan-Jingkan territories to Burma via bribery of manchu official Liu Wansheng. When British pushed border 30-35 kilometers inside of Chinese territories, local minorities resisted the British, incurring a death toll of over 50 people. British time and again mounted border surveys and road constructions, but encountered resistance from local minority peoples in AD 1899, 1910 and 1934, respectively. Similarly, French encountered resistance in 1895, 1898 and 1907 in the course of border surveys and Sino-Vietnamese railway constructions.

1884-1885 Franco-Chinese War

France, whose priests were killed in the struggle with Tibetan lamaists in Tibet from 1845 to 1861, mounted invasions against Vietnam and Guangxi-Yunnan provinces of southwestern China since the 1870s. In AD 1873, French expeditionary force attacked Hanoi of Vietnam. Vietnamese King requested for relief with "hei qi jun" [i.e., black flag army] led by a Chinese rebel called Liu Yongfu. The "black flag army" originated from the Wu Lingyun & Wu Yazhong Zhuang-zu minority rebellion in Xinning prefecture of Guangxi Prov, consisting of people from Shangsi, Ningming, Chongzuo, Jingxi, Mubian and Qinzhou. While seeking asylum inside of Vietnam, Liu Yongfu got the opportunity to fight for Vietnam and China. The "black flag army" defeated the French to the west of Hanoi, and expelled them out of the Red River Delta. Vietnamese King conferred the title of 'deputy general' onto Liu Yongfu.

In AD 1882, France attacked Hanoi again. The next year, French launched a campaign against the area to the north of Hanoi. At the request of Vietnamese King, Liu Yongfu led his "black flag army" down the Red River, and defeated the French again, inflicting a casualty of 30 French officers and 200 soldiers. French retreated back to Hanoi. The "black flag army", with soldiers from Yao-zu, Zhuang-zu and Han-ethnic people, would fight against the French in Huaide & Danfeng area of northern Vietnam. By Dec 1885 [solar calendar?], French approached Zhennanguan Pass, and sacked the pass on Dec 23rd.

To counter French attacks, Manchu government dispatched General Feng Zicai to Longzhou & Zhennanguan Pass. Per Wang Zhonghan, minority peoples, numbering 100 battalions or 50000, joined the anti-French armies. On March 23rd 1885, General Feng Zicai mounted a counter-attack at Zhennanguan Pass, and after two days and two nights, took over the pass. Manchu army killed a dozen French officers and over 2000 soldiers. While General Feng Zicai re-took the pass and chased the French to the east, "black flag army" defeated the French at Linzhao to the west. Taking advantage of two victories, Li Hongzhang signed a peace treaty with the French, i.e., Sino-French Vietnam Treaty of 1885, and ordered that all soldiers and troops return inside of China.

NOTES: France occupied Cambodia and Annam in the late 'sixties and "legalized" its acquisitions by a brief war against China in 1884-85. The next year Britain

added Burma to its Indian Empire. These countries in the south had, loosely speaking, recognized Chinese suzerainty. Courbet, Amede'e Anatole Prosper [Hu-ba] was killed in attacking Perhu Islands.

Imperialist Encroachments On Korea

In AD 1864, Korea King (Yi Dynasty) died without a son, and a royal member by the name of Li Xi was selected as king. The young Li Xi made his birth father into "*da yuan jun*" (i.e., grand court gentleman or regent). Korean Regent had a deep dislike for Japanese wearing Western suits and hence cut off trade relations with Japan. Korean agent's niece, concubine Min-fei, would somehow collude with the Regent's enemies in depriving the regent of his power. Japan, feeling insulted by the Regent's anti-Japan policies, planned to attack Korea. Japan first explored with Manchu government for testing the extent of vassalage between China and Korea as well as detecting the willingness of Manchu China in protecting Korea. Similar to Manchu ambiguity on the matter of Taiwan aboriginals killing Ryukyu fishermen, Manchu left an impression that it had no particular interest in suzerainty over either Taiwan or Korea. In 1874, Japan attacked Taiwan for a short occupation. In 1875, Japan sailed its warships into Jianghua Bay of Korea (in the same fashion as Matthew Perry sailed two warships into Tokyo Bay), and the next year, Japan compelled Korea into signing of a so-called 'equality' treaty, a treaty which nominally elevated Korea into an equal and non-Manchu-vassal status as the rest of countries.

In June of 1882, about 5000 Korean soldiers, under the support of Korean Regent, rebelled against concubine Min-fei for unpaid military stipends. In July, mobsters raided into the palace, and Min-fei fled to seek asylum with a family member in Zhongqing-dao circuit. Mobsters then attacked Japanese embassy and burnt it, and Japanese fled to Inchon. Korean regent re-assumed his power. Two Korean ministers, Jin Yunzhi and Yu Yunzhong, who were visiting Tianjin of China, requested aid with Zhang Shusheng the Manchu governor-general for Zhili Prov. Zhang dispatched Qing-jun brigadier general Wu Changqing and six detachments across the sea to quell the Korean rebellion. Yuan Shi-kai followed Wu Changqing to Korea.

Yuan Shi-kai, under orders, had Korean Regent arrested during a diplomatic meeting, sent to Tianjin via warship overnight, and fetched to Baoding of China

to be under house arrest. Yuan Shi-kai was further ordered to crack down on the Dong-xue-dang or Tonghak (i.e., Eastern Learning Party), to restore the Korean king to his throne, and to negotiate with Japanese about Korea's reimbursement for the property and human losses. On Sept 1st, Yuan Shi-kai was conferred a Manchu 'flowery hat' as an appreciation for his accomplishments in Korea. Wu Changqing retained three detachments in Korea and petitioned with Li Hongzhang to have Korea train the 'New Army'; but, Li Hongzhang ignored Wu Changqing's opinion. Years later, Li Hongzhang withdrew the three remaining Manchu detachments from Korea. After the defeat of Sino-Japanese War of 1894-1895, Zhang Jian had submitted a rebuke of Li Hongzhang's blunders to the emperor.

Wu Changqing's army stationed in Korea for maintaining peace. Wu Changqing had Yuan Shi-kai in charge of military affairs and Zhang Jian (a Manchu "*zhuang yuan*" examinee from Nantong of Jiangsu) in charge of civil affairs. Yuan Shi-kai was noted for his harsh disciplining in Korea, such as personally executing Manchu soldiers who robbed Koreans, raped Korean women, bullied Koreans, and hid in Korean residency to smoke opium etc, with no relatives and bodyguards of Wu Changqing spared. Korean King Li Xi obtained approval from Li Hongzhang to conduct Korean 'self-strengthening movement': A German (Mulin-de) was hired as taxation and customs magistrate, a Manchu "*shang shu*" (Ma Jianchang) was hired as a counsellor for foreign affairs, and Yuan Shi-kai was retained as military adviser. Li Xi personally went to Manchu camp to see Wu Changqing and hired Yuan, after several requests, for training the Korean 'New Army'. Yuan Shi-kai, being invited over to the Korean military ministry for dwelling, had trained Qinwei-jun (royal bodyguard column) and Zhenhu-jun (quelling and pacifying columns) for Korea.

Korean King retrieved the asylum-seeking concubine (Min-fei) who was originally speculated to have perished during the rebellion, and moreover, made Min-fei's brother (Min Yongjun) into a prime minister. Min-fei cronies now became pro-Manchu, while other ministers either became pro-Japan or pro-Russia.

In Vietnam, French and Chinese troops had been in fights for 2-3 years. In AD 1884, Wu Changqing was recalled from Korea for the post at Liaodong in southern Manchuria, while Manchu dispatched extra manpower to Vietnam. Yuan Shi-kai would be in charge of one of the three detachments, i.e., Qing-zi-

ying, while Wu Zhaoyou and Zhang Guangqian in charge of the other two detachments.

In Korea, Japan had been implanting proxies in the Korean government. Min-fei and his brother had become pro-Manchu, while the so-called reformists ('kai-hua-dang' or Western-awakened party), including Hong Yingzhi and Pu Yongxiao, became pro-Japan. A minority group, like Han Guiji, Li Zuyuan and Zhao Dingxi, were pro-Russia.

On Oct 15th of 1884, pro-Japan ministers planned to assassinate the three Manchu officers during a ceremony for the completion of Korean postal services building. Wu Zhaoyou and Zhang Guangqian refused to attend, while Yuan Shi-kai, with dagger hidden, took Pu Yongxiao's hands all through his stay at the ceremony. Two days later, Hong Yingzhi and Pu Yongxiao invited Min Yongjun, taxation officer (German), various minister-envoys and a Manchu business attache (Chen Shuchang) to a banquet. During the banquet, Korean students, who had returned from Japan, set fire and attacked Min Yongjun with blades. Min Yongjun fled to the German's home for asylum. Yuan Shi-kai led 200 soldiers to the German's home for protection of Min Yongjun; in front of the house, Yuan Shi-kai, for the first time, met a youth by the name of Tang Shaoyi who was guarding the gate with a pistol. (Tang Shaoyi, originally from Zhongshan-xian county of Guangdong and later a Yale University graduate, worked as assistant to taxation officer in Korea). Min Yongjun requested Yuan Shi-kai for rescuing the Korean king. During the coup d'etat, King Li Xi and his queen (i.e., concubine Min-fei), were both under arrest in Jinghu-gong Palace, and pro-Japan 'reformists' had slaughtered several senior Korean ministers. Yuan Shi-kai, stating to Wu Zhaoyou that there was no time to report to Manchu government for instructions, would lead the three columns (equiv to battalions) of Manchu Qing army against the Korean palace. Yuan Shi-kai personally led the middle column and defeated the Japanese soldiers. Hong Yingzhi and Pu Yongxiao abducted the king to Guandi-miao near the north palace gate. Yuan Shi-kai retrieved the king who disclosed that the pro-Japan ministers had tried to take him to Japan. Japanese burnt the Japanese embassy and fled to Incheon, and pro-Japan ministers changed clothing and fled to Japan. Korean King later invited Yuan Shi-kai to a stay at a palace next to the king's bedroom. Yuan Shi-kai, a youth of 26 at the time, would attend daily meetings with the king, and he would cooperate with two other officers in arranging defence at Han-jiang River when news came that Japanese army had assembled at Incheon.

Japan, while increasing army presence at Inchon, protested to Manchu government about Yuan Shi-kai's 'creating turmoils'. On Nov 3rd of 1884, two Manchu ministers, Wu Dacheng and Xu-chang arrived in Korea. On the 17th, two ministers met the Korean king and passed on the Manchu opinion that China did not wish to fight a war with Japan while the Sino-French conflicts in Vietnam still persisted. Wu Dacheng and Xu-chang requested Korean king to have tolerance, apologized to Japan, and ordered a pull-back of Manchu troops from the Korean palace. Yuan Shi-kai was rebuked, and he went home for 'vacation' in Dec of 1884; while passing through Tianjin, he went to see Li Hongzhang as to Korea matters, but Li did not buy Yuan Shi-kai's opinions.

Yuan Shi-kai provided two recommendations: i) that Manchu take over Korea as a province or ii) that China declare Korea a 'Open Door' country to hamper the territory encroachment by Russia or Japan. Cai Dongfan mentioned that China's emissary to Europe, Liu Ruifang, had already asked Li Hongzhang relay similar recommendations to the Manchu court.

Japanese emissary, however, led over thousand troops to the west palace gate, and then entered the Korean court, with 200 guards, for trilateral negotiations. Since Korea's foreign affairs were a Manchu matter under suzerainty relationship, the Sino-Japanese talk was relocated to Tianjin for a continuance on Jan 18th of 1885. From Feb 27th to March 4th, Li Hongzhang and Ito Hirobumi reached 'Tientsin Convention of 1885' whereby the two parties agreed to: i) withdrawing respective troops from Korea in four months; ii) stopping the training of Korean New Army by both parties; and iii) notifying respective parties in case of dispatching troops to Korea for emergency purposes. This treaty, in addition to the 'Jianghua Treaty' between Japan and Korea, made Japan's control over Korea just a matter of time. Historians blamed Li Hongzhang for his weakness in dealing with Japan on the matter of Korea, which sowed further seeds of disaster for Korea and China as well.

Manchu government, who made a stupid mistake in arresting pro-Manchu Korean Regent years ago, would now commit another blunder by releasing the Korean regent. In the summer of 1895, Manchu troops returned to Lüshun from Korea. Manchu navy general (*ti du*) Ding Ruchang was ordered to escort the Korean regent home with both navy and land army. When Japan questioned the intent of China, Li Hongzhang recalled Yuan Shi-kai as a special emissary. On

August 19th, one day after announcement of the release of the regent, Yuan Shi-kai and the regent boarded the ship at Dagukou port, with two ships as support, and the party arrived at Inchon on Aug 25th. After Yuan Shi-kai rebuked the Korean king and queen for not receiving the party, the party was escorted to Seoul on the second day.

By this time, Russian emissary Wei-ba had already arrived in Seoul one day ahead of Yuan Shi-kai. Russian had come under the guide of German guy Mu-lin-de whose taxation magistrate post had been replaced by Li Hongzhang with an American called Mo-xian-li. Mu-lin-de persuaded Min-fei into a policy of allying with Russia for countering the Korean regent. Yuan Shi-kai, hearing of the Russian plot, forced the Korean king into dismissing Mu-lin-de from Korea. Li Hongzhang praised Yuan's talents and recommended him for replacing the retiring Chen Shuchang as Manchu China's business attache to Korea. Yuan Shi-kai hence arrived in Korea for a third time on Oct 7th of 1885.

Pro-Russia ministers, like Jin Jiazhen and Zheng Qinxia, secretly went to Russia for being a protecrate. When Yuan Shi-kai inquired into this matter, Korean king and queen made Jin Jiazhen, Zhao Cundou and Jin Heyu scapegoats. Russian emissary denied involvement, too.

In April of 1887, an American by the name of Fu-jiu, colluded with Korean ministers (Hong Yingzhi, Jin Yuejun, Jin Liangmo and Zheng Bingxia etc) in making Korea autonomous. Yuan Shi-kai protested against this act by leaving for Inchon, and Korean King contacted American minister-envoy for recalling Fu-jiu back to US.

Min-fei's cousin, Min Yongyi, had already reached secretive agreement with the two Americans (Mo-xian-li and Fu-jiu) in mine development with foreign loans to be funded by the customs taxation. Korean king dispatched Pu Dingyang as plenipotentiary to US and Zhao Tingxi as plenipotentiary to Europe. Yuan Shi-kai rebuked the king and demanded that the emissaries be recalled. When the king said it was too late to recall, Yuan Shi-kai demanded that Korean emissaries must visit Chinese embassies first before talking with Western countries. As of 1888, Korea tried to play games among various powers for sake of 'self-strengthening'. Korea challenged China's suzerainty in the areas of diplomacy and customs. When Korean people attacked Catholic converts, Russia, France, US, and Japan dispatched soldiers to Korea for self-defence. When Yuan

Shi-kai called in Manchu navy soldiers to Seoul, the Korean king invited the other four countries to Seoul as well. Yuan Shi-kai notified Manchu minister Zheng Zhong to have Korean king rebuked. When Pu Dingyang the Korean plenipotentiary to US returned to Seoul the second year, Korean king, at the urge of Min-fei, decided to use Pu Dingyang as foreign minister. Yuan Shi-kai, to safeguard Manchu's suzerainty in regards to Korea's foreign affairs, would find Min-fei's life saver to stop Min-fei from conferring the post onto Pu Dingyang.

In 1890, Korean Queen Dowager (Zhao Tai-fei), who experienced four generations of Korean kings, passed away at the age of 80. Min-fei began to assert her power over the Korean court by asking her husband-king step aside for following Confucian requirement of 3-year filiality. Min-fei played a trick in empowering Pu Dingyang with a post in charge of state affairs. Yuan Shi-kai, in order to impress the various imperialist powers as to what the Manchu suzerainty was, would demand that Korean King Li Xi meet Manchu special mourning emissary at the outskirts of Seoul. Korean King, against the advice of various minister-envoys, went to the outskirts for seeing Manchu minister.

In 1891, Yuan Shi-kai's step-mother passed away, and Yuan Shi-kai recommended Tang Shaoyi to Li Hongzhang for replacing his post in Korea. By April of 1892, Yuan Shi-kai returned to Korea after a vacation of 100 days. In Korea, Tang Shaoyi stroke down Russia's plan to build railroad from Vladivostok to Yuanshan of Korea as well as Japan's plan to lay the phoneline between Pushan and Seoul. Yuan Shi-kai agreed with Tang Shaoyi by insisting that Korea's postal system was a matter of China's sovereign rights. When Korea ran out of royal savings, Yuan Shi-kai made arrangement for a Guangdong merchant to lend a big sum of money to Korea.

1894 Sino-Japanese War

Japan went through a 1868 Meiji Restoration whereby the Western political system was adopted and Western technologies and military system were implemented for modernizing its nation. Meiji Restoration was a result of Japanese reaction to Matthew Perry's demonstration of American military might in July 1853. Japan's reform movement produced rapid changes in society and fueled an unprecedented industrial and military growth. Hirobumi Ito (? 1841-1909), an adopted son of Choshu samurai, count and a samurai himself in 1863,

had been said to be classmate of Manchu minister Li Hongzhang. After his return from Britain, Ito served various Japanese ministries pushing for Japan's militarist expansion. Ito established a cabinet in 1885 and acted as the first Prime Minister, replacing the Dajokan as the decision-making organisation. And, in the same year, Ito negotiated the 'Convention of Tientsin' with Li Hungchang. (In 1889, Ito supervised the drafting of a constitution. Between 1885 and 1900, Ito acted as prime minister four times. In November 1905, Japan, following the Russo-Japanese War, occupied Korea under the Protectorate Treaty. Ito became the first 'Resident General' of Korea in 1906 after annexing Korea. In 1907, Ito forced the Korean king, Kojong, to abdicate in favour of Sunjong and forced Korea in signing the Korean-Japanese Convention. In 1909, Ito was assassinated at Harbin in Manchuria by Korean nationalist An Chongwen or An Jung-geun in 1909, which led to the annexation of Korea in 1910 under the Japan-Korea Annexation Treaty.)

In Korea, a Confucian by the name of Cui Shiheng, renovated on the Dong-xue-dang or Tonghak (i.e., 'Eastern Learning') and made it into a semi-religion combining elements of Confucianism and Buddhism. In 1894, uprisings broke out after Korean king ordered a crackdown on the movement. Tonghak rebels took over Quanluo-dao circuit and then attacked Zhongqing-dao circuit. The Korean king appealed to the suzerain power (China) for aid. Yuan Shi-kai contacted Manchu government for instructions.

On May 3rd of 1894 (lunar calendar), Li Hongzhang obtained imperial approval to have Ye Zhichao (governor-general for Zhili Prov) and Nie Shicheng (*zong bing*" for Taiyuan-zhen garrison) lead four detachments to Korea. Manchu government sent to Inchon a ship with 200-300 soldiers, and ordered "*ti du*" Ye Zhichao as a backup with 1000 more soldiers. Nie Shicheng's 800 forerunner soldiers arrived in Korea on May 6th, and Ye Zhichao joined him two days later. Manchu troops stationed in Yashan, to the south of Renchuan (Inchon), a place in the domain of Qingzhong-dao Circuit, about 150 li distance from Seoul.

In accordance with the Sino-Japanese Tianjin Convention, i.e., fore-warning the other party of any dispatchment of troops to Korea, China notified Japan by having China's minister-envoy to Japan (Wang[1] Fengzao) relay the message. Ito promptly dismissed Japanese Parliament for its possibility of voting against Korean deployment. Ito ordered that Japanese minister-envoy to Korea ride on a warship (Ba-chong-shan or Eight Overlapping Mountain) to Inchon and then

march on Seoul with 400 soldiers. Tonghak rebels dispersed themselves when Yuan Shi-kai asked Ye Zhichao issue an announcement of rebellion dismissal. (Japanese claim at wikipedia.org that "following the assassination of a pro-Japanese reformist in 1894, a Korean religious sect, the Tonghak, began a rebellion" was unfounded.)

Ito ordered another six warships to the Hanjiang-kou river mouth of Korea. Japan sent over 7000 soldiers to Inchon, Fushan (Pusan) and Chemulpo. By mid-May, Japan had 8000 soldiers in Korea, in and around the Korean capital, for the control of Korea. In contrast, China possessed only 3000 soldiers in and around coastal Yashan for quelling the Tonghak rebellion.

After rebellion died down, Japanese refused to leave Korea. Yuan Shi-kai went to see Japanese minister-envoy (Dadao Guijie) to suggest that two countries withdraw troops to avoid unnecessary confrontation. At Inchon port, Manchu Captain for Warship Jiyuan-jian, seeing that Japanese had continued the deployment of army contingents, would notify Yuan Shi-kai that he would go home for avoiding conflicts with Japan. After the evacuation of Manchu warship, Japanese soldiers flooded Inchon and Seoul. Yuan Shi-kai wired to Li Hongzhang, requesting plans for both Manchu South-Sea Navy and North-Sea Navy to come to Korea; Yuan Shi-kai also asked Manchu field armies to be deployed in southern Manchuria. Li Hongzhang repeatedly asked Yuan Shi-kai to pacify the matter, knowing that Chinese navy could not handle a fight. Li Hongzhang also instructed foreign affairs office to contact Japanese emissary to China (Xiaochun Shoutailang) for peaceful solution. Manchu's Foreign Affairs Office, dominated by ethnic Manchu kings, still looked down upon Japan as a small island statelet.

At this time, Japan had already decided to fight a war in Korea. Japan demanded that China and Japan jointly initiate reforms within Korea before agreeing to the withdrawal of troops. But China insisted that they would talk about Korean reforms only after Japanese troop withdrawal.

Li Hongzhang tried to play the card of having Russians or the rest of Western powers intervene. But Japanese had secretly promised to Russia and the rest of Western powers that Japan had no ambition for Korean territories and that Japan only intended to have Korean reform itself. Li Hongzhang knew that China could not wage a war against Japan. Beginning from 1888, Navy funds

had been appropriated for building Ye-he-yuan Garden by Empress Dowager Cixi (Tzu Hsi), and in between 1888 and Feb of 1894, no more warships were purchased. (There had been writings about Japanese agent secretly manipulating the Chilean government in the resale of big gunboats that Manchu China intended to buy for sake of a possible war with Japan.) Navy General Ding Ruchang's request to renovate the cannons of Warship Zhenyuan-jian and Dingyuan-jian, estimated at 613,000 taels of silver, was never approved.

In Korea, pro-Japan group, headed by Korean Regent, mounted cannon at Chinese embassy and announced that they would kill Yuan Shi-kai. Yuan Shi-kai requested for a war with Japan, but Li Hongzhang still tried to pacify the matter. After Yuan Shi-kai explained his scenario to Li Hongzhang through a friend, Li Hongzhang recalled Yuan Shi-kai back to China. On June 15th, Yuan Shi-kai rolled down the Manchu flag and left Korea for China after a stay of about 12 years in Korea. Pro-Japan ministers forced the Korean king into issuing a decree that Korea was no longer a Manchu vassal but an independent statelet.

Six days later, on lunar calendar June 21st (solar calendar June 8, 1894 ?), Japanese minister-envoy, who headed the Ninth Japanese Brigade, stormed the Korean palace and supported the ex-regent (i.e., "*da yuan jun*") as the Korean ruler. On June 23rd, Korea declared full autonomy and rejected tributary status to Manchu China. On June 24th, Korea court issued a decree requesting that Japanese army expell the Manchu soldiers at Yashan of Qingzhong-dao Circuit. (Japanese claim that Manchu Qing army was defeated at Seoul, at wikipedia.org, was unfounded since Chinese armies were stationed only in Yashan, not in Seoul.)

Upon hearing Yuan Shi-kai's reports, on June 22nd, Li Hongzhang ordered the reinforcements via Yalu-jiang River of another 14,000 Manchu soldiers, comprising of 29 battalions from Ma Yuekun's Yi-jun Column, Zuo Baogui's Feng-jun Column, Wei Rugui's Huai-jun and Sheng-jun Columns, and Feng-sheng-a's Sheng-jun Column. (Manchu 'column' was equivalent to brigade, and Manchu 'ying' was equivalent to 'battalion' with 500 soldiers.) Li Hongzhang, however, still hoped that Britain and Russian would intervene for a ceasefire. Britain declined to help, while Russia only offered oral support.

Japanese intended to attack Manchu Qing army in Yashan. Ye Zhichao requested

for relief. Li Hongzhang contacted the British merchants for leasing a transport ship. Chinese film "*Jia Wu Hai Zhan*", with Da Shichang starring Captain Deng Shichang, had blamed Ding Ruchang's American advisers for disclosing the transport ship scheme, which was to have belittled Japanese espionage activities in China. (One scholar had claimed that Japanese spies, in the disguise of merchants who sell a kind of medicine called 'ren dan', had walked through all Chinese cities, towns and villages, pasting the two characters in different orders for hinting the later invasion forces as to the turn of the streets and lanes.) On June 23rd, without declaring war, three Japanese warships (Jiye, Liangsu and Qiujin Zhou under Captain Togo), secretly attacked Gaosheng (British-registered) and Caojiang, two Manchu merchant ships carrying troops for Yashan of Korea, which were escorted by Manchu Warship Jiyuan-jian and Warship Guangyi-jian. The three Japanese ships damaged two Manchu warships, captured merchant ship Caojiang, and sank Gaosheng on which Manchu field army refused to be taken alive. 1200 soldiers and sailors perished on Gaosheng. (Gao Wenjun stated that Japanese shot dead about 170 Chinese soldiers floating on the sea.) This would be called the 'Sea Battle of Fengdao Island', an attack at the sea near the said island.

On July 1st (solar calendar August 1st), the two countries officially declared war simultaneously. The next day, four columns of Manchu field army reached Pyongyang.

Meanwhile, Japanese began to advance on Yashan where Nie Shicheng and Ye Zhichao had garrisoned for close to a month. Nie Shicheng, a "*zong bing*" under Ye Zhichao, requested for a charge. Nie Shicheng led a column to Chenghuan where he defeated Japanese forerunner troops after a battle for two hours. When news came that Ye Zhichao had vacated Yashan, Nie Shicheng was fighting the second wave of Japanese attack. Nie Shicheng retreated to Yashan, only to find the city empty. On July 21st, Nie Shicheng retreated to Pyongyang where Ye Zhichao boasted to Manchu government about his bravery and Nie Shicheng's first battle at Chenghuan. Manchu court sent over 20,000 taels of silver for congratulating Ye and made Ye into so-called "*tong shuai*" (i.e., marshal) in charge of all generals. Nie Shicheng was promoted to "*ti du*" (i.e., brigadier general equivalent). Ye Zhichao's bragging failed to rein in the Manchu generals in Pyongyang.

On August 16th (solar calendar Sept 15th ?), Japanese began to attack

Pyongyang and sacked the city within one day. Before Japanese advanced on Pyongyang, Zuo Baogui, rebuffing Ye Zhichao's cowardice, volunteered for a confrontation with Japanese outside the city. Zuo Baogui's army fought against Japanese led by Yejin for half a day. Zuo Baogui personally executed few soldiers who could not fire their rifles, only to find out that the new recruits of his column had rusted German rifles. Zuo Baogui sacrificed his life in defending Pyongyang. General Ma Yuekun and General Zuo Baogui were among the bravest, fighting the other two Japanese siege forces. When Ye Zhichao heard of the death of Zuo Baogui, Ye ordered a white flag be raised at the city-wall. Ma Yuekun hastily went inside the city to rebuke Ye Zhichao. Ye Zhichao told Ma Yuekun that Zuo Baogui had died and Wei Rugui had fled the city, and questioned Ma Yuekun as to how Ma and Feng-sheng-a could reverse the scenario. Nie Shicheng, while defending the city, still tried to ask Ye change his decision. Japanese, seeing that Manchu soldiers had withdrawn inside and a white flag was flying on the city-wall, would stop their attack. At night, Ye Zhichao secretly opened a small city gate and led his army northward. Remnant Manchu armies fled back towards Yalu River for straight 500 li distance. In Pyongyang, 2000 Manchu soldiers died. Japanese Brigade advanced northwest towards Manchuria.

Two days later, on Aug 18th, the "Sea Battle of Huanghai (Yellow Sea)" broke out, and it lasted half a day. Manchu warships, with no renovation for half a dozen years, were badly equipped with thin steel plates, slow engines and small diameter cannons. On the Yellow Sea, under the command of Ding Ruchang, a Huai-jun veteran, Manchu fleet, totalling 12 ships, marched in the inverse-Y shape while the Japanese fleet of 11 ships formed a horizontal line. Ding Ruchang, seated on Dingyuan-jian Warship, ordered a firing at the Japanese fleet before the cannons could reach their range. Japanese fleet, under command by Yidong Youheng, circumvented around Manchu ships and concentrated their firing on specific Manchu warships, sinking Chaotong-jian in the initial round of bombardment. Zhiyuan-jian captain Deng Shichang fought against Japanese ships of Langsu when Japanese ship Jiye joined in. Deng Shichang personally fired the cannon at Jiye's command cabin, chased Jiye, and when running out of shells, ordered a full-speed confliction with Jiye. Jiye fired a torpedo which sank Zhiyuan-jian. (Deng Shichang, floating wounded with support of two dogs, was later rescued from the sea by a merchant ship, but Deng Shichang jumped into the sea again, with the two dogs following him.) Jing1-yuan-jian, under the helm of Lin Yongsheng, fought against Japanese

ship Chicheng. Lin Yongsheng personally extinguished fire, and bombarded Chicheng into a retreat. When chasing Chicheng, Jing1-yuan-jian was hit by a torpedo. Lin Yongsheng and his crew sacrificed their lives. Jiyuan-jian's Fang Boqian, when fleeing the scene, bumped into Yangwei-jian and sank it. (Fang Boqian was later executed per emperor's order.) Guangjia-jian and Guangbing-jian fled, too. Guangjia-jian, one of the three 'Guang'-prefixed guest warships from Guangdong Fleet, capsized on a rock. Flag-ship, Dingyuan-jian, under Ding Ruchang, sank Japanese ship Xijingwan and damaged Japanese ship Songdao. Dingyuan-jian itself received 5-6 hits and left the scene. Laiyuan-jian, Pingyuan-jian and Jing4-yuan-jian, also damaged, left the scene, too. The rest two ships, Dingyuan-jian and Zhenyuan-jian, fled towards Port Lushun (later Port Arthur). Within four hours, Japanese fleet sank Chaoyong-jian, Zhiyuan-jian, Jing1-yuan-jian and Guangjia-jian, and captured Guangbing-jian. Manchu fleet lost five ships. Cai Dongfan lamented the loss of Zuo Baogui, Deng Shichang and Lin Yongsheng under mediocre command.

In southern Manchuria, Ye Zhichao was arrested and Song Qing (a Xiang-jun veteran) was in command of 70 miscellaneous detachments around Qiuliancheng city. Song Qing did not make arrangements for defending Yalu River. On Sept 26th (solar calendar Oct 24th of 1894), Japanese crossed the Yalu River. Song Qing abandoned Qiliu-cheng. One Japanese column then crossed the Liaohu River. Japanese went on to take over Fenghuang-cheng (phoenix) City and Motian-ling Ridge, while another column crossed river at Xinyi-zhou of Korea to sack Andong, Xiuyan-zhou and Ximu-cheng for sake of taking over Hai-cheng city and cutting off the withdrawal path of Manchu armies. This Japanese prong would be directed at Liaotung or Liaodong Peninsula. After landing at Xiuyan-zhou, Japanese sent one army at Dadonggou and another army at Piziwo. In October, retreating Manchu soldiers pillaged the logistics stations, and Yuan Shi-kai, being empowered with the logistics position, had to execute several mobster soldiers to stop the pillaging. Yuan Shi-kai commented on the tactics of the Western and Japanese armies in his telegraph to Sheng Xuanhuai, stating that Western tactics was to adopt four rows of soldiers for attack and defence while Manchu generals only selected brave soldiers for a charge at the enemies and that Manchu tactic of brave soldier charge only led to awkward situation of possible friendly fire at those soldiers as well as loss of those soldiers should they be needed for defence positions. Yuan Shi-kai further reported that Liu Shengxiu's army only knew how to pillage, Nie Shicheng's army had already lost the elite soldiers, and Lu Daosheng's army were cut in half and recommended

that Song Qing's army could act as guerilla soldiers around Motian-ling Ridge and that Manchu had better negotiate with Japan for a ceasefire.

Japanese navy, led by Dashan Yan, led an army against Dalian and Lushun on Liaodong Peninsula. At Lushun, Manchu "*ti du*" Jiang Guiti and Cheng Yonghe were in charge of the new recruits while the original Lushun garrison troops had been relocated to Qiulian-cheng. On Oct 9th, Japanese navy sacked Jinzhou, and within one month, took over Lushun and Dalian. (Lushun was sacked on November 21 per solar calendar.) By Dec, Governor-general Liu Kunyi was relocated for Manchuria military affairs. Yuan Shi-kai wrote to Liu Kunyi as to the performance of various generals.

On Dec 25th (solar calendar Jan 10th of 1894), Japanese landed at Rongcheng area and went westward to attack the hind of Weihaiwei Harbor on Shandong Peninsula. 20 days later, on solar calendar Jan 30th, Japanese sacked Weihaiwei Harbor's battery while 25 Japanese warships blockaded the mouth of the port. Japanese bombarded at Manchu fleet moored at Liugong-dao Island via sea and land, sinking Dingyuan-jian and Laiyuan-jian with torpedo and sinking Jingyuan-jian with cannon.

Li Hongzhang was picked by Japanese for a ceasefire talk. However, Li Hongzhang refused to go to Japan and furthermore suggested that a German (who had worked at the customs office in Peking for 20 years) go to Japan instead. Japan refused to see this German and further expanded its war in southern Manchuria. On Dec 23rd [sc], John Watson Foster received a Manchu invitation for acting as China's mediator in talks with Japan. John Watson Foster met Japan's minister-envoy to US before departing for Japan, and met with Japanese foreign minister before meeting with Chinese delegates. On Jan 30th, at Kobe, John Watson Foster told Zhang Yinheng and Shao Youlian that their Manchu certifications did not conform with diplomatic protocol. On Feb 1st, Zhang Yinheng and Shao Youlian were dispatched to Yokohama for peace talk, but Ito later sent them to Nagasaki, claiming that the two officials did not have full authorization from Manchu Qing Dynasty. Ito inquired with Wu Tingfang as to reasons why Manchu King Gongqingwang or Li Hongzhang did not come to Japan. On February 2 (?) per solar calendar, Manchu navy general Ding Ruchang committed suicide when foreign military counsellor pressured him on the matter of surrender, and the remaining 30 warships surrendered to the Japanese. (LiuKungTau or Liugong-dao was a strip ten miles broad along the

whole coastline of WeiHaiWei Bay). With the loss of navy, Manchu court had no choice but to dispatch Li Hongzhang to Japan. John Watson Foster accompanied Chinese delegates back to China.

Chinese masses, who had previously adamantly demanded war with Japan, now blamed China's defeat on Li Hongzhang's using his Huai-jun [Anhui Prov] crony generals like Wei Rugui and Ding Ruchang. Li Hongzhang, afraid of being called a traitor, refused to take the task. When Japanese threatened to attack Liaoyang and Shanhaiguan Pass, Manchu government would force Li Hongzhang into a trip to Maguan (Shimonoseki) for a peace talk. Japanese side had designated Li Hongzhang as acceptable representative as well. In Feb of 1895 (solar calendar March), Yuan Shi-kai went to see Nie Shi-cheng. Japanese sacked Niuzhuang and Yingkou of Manchuria. Li Hongzhang arrived in Peking on Feb 22nd. Knowing that Japan intended to have land seceded, Li Hongzhang demanded that Manchu Qing Emperor Guangxu give him full authorization and stated that he should not bear responsibility for loss of territories. On Feb 23rd, at the court, emperor's teacher suggested monetary reimbursements in lieu of land, while King Gongqingwang stated that peace would not be obtained without seceding land. Li Hongzhang failed to obtain any support from consulate officials of Western powers. Emperor Guangxu issued the decree on Mar 4th in making Li Hongzhang a plenipotentiary. Li Hongzhang left for Japan on March 13th on a German ship, with former US secretary of state John Watson Foster on board as a counsellor, and arrived in Shimonoseki on March 19th.

On March 20th, Li Hongzhang and Ito began their talk at a restaurant, and the two had private talk for three hours first. On March 21st, Li Hongzhang declined Japan's demands to have their troops stationed at Shanhaiguan Pass, Tianjin and Dagukou Battery, while Ito secretly dispatched Japanese troops against Taiwan Island. Three days later, at about 4:00 pm on March 24th, 73-year-old Li Hongzhang was shot in the face by a Japanese assassin. Li Hongzhang, with bullet still in the bone under the eye, refused to see doctor for sake of wrapping up peace talk earlier. Li Hongzhang asked his attache retain the bloody clothes, stating that this blood could prove his requital for the country. German & French doctors agreed to have the bullet retain inside the bone. Japanese side, having previously procrastinated the talk for sake of further military gains in China, finally agreed to the peace after the Li Hongzhang assassination by pretending a truce of 21 days. On March 28th [sl],

Ito paid respect for Li Hongzhang and relayed a message that Japanese emperor had agreed to a ceasefire. Ceasefire agreement was signed on March 30th. On April 1st, Japan proposed ten clauses which Li Hongzhang told Foster he could not accept. Foster took charge in negotiating with Japan for some minor concessions and pressured Li Hongzhang into accepting it.

On lunar calendar March 23rd (April 17th of 1895 per solar calendar), after eight months of war, the Treaty of Shimonoseki was signed between China (Li Hongzhang and Li Jingfang) and Japan (Ito Hirobumi and Mutse Munemitsu), with terms as follow: i) Full independence for Korea; ii) Cession of Liaodong Peninsula, Taiwan (Formosa), and Penghu Islands (the Pescadores); iii) 200,000,000 taels of silver (£25 million ?); iv) opening of the cities like Shashi, Chongqing, Suzhou, and Hangzhou as the trading ports and allowing Japan to establish consulates and factories in these ports; and v) extending to Japan special privileges that other Western countries enjoyed.

On April 24th, Foster volunteered to take the treaty to Peking for Manchu emperor's ratification when Li Hongzhang dared not do so. Foster mobilized Western embassies in claiming to Manchu foreign affairs office that the Treaty of Shimonoseki was the best deal ever. On May 8th, Manchu court finally gave in. On May 30th, Foster accompanied Li Jingfang to Taiwan for transferring Taiwan. When Li Jingfang was afraid of landing on Taiwan, Foster claimed that Western diplomatic protocol would allow transfer to be legalized with a signed affidavit rather than to be validated by a de facto personal ceremony on Taiwan Island. Transfer agreement was signed aboard a warship instead on June 2nd, with John Foster acting as the ultimate "faciliator" from beginning to end.

Li Hongzhang wrote a poem after 1895 Treaty of Shimonoseki:

*Having never released horse saddles or left chariots, I painstakingly worked out;
Till the reckoning of disaster did I find out that it was not easy to simply die.
For 300 years, the foot-steps of my motherland had been staggering;
Along the road of 8000 li distance were scenes of hardship-stricken mourning
populace.
In the sobre autumn winds, I, a minister in solitude, was in tears beside my
treasured sword;
With the sun setting, I now stand by the campaigning flag on the generalissimo's*

altar;

*Dusts of war are still floating over all seas, with no sign of settling down;
Gentlemen, please not look upon the developments of our country as a disinterested
bystander. "*

Li Hongzhang later passed away on Nov 7th of 1901 (solar cal), after finalizing concession treaty related to the 'boxer rebellion' and invasion by eight allied nations. Empress Dowager Cixi and Emperor Guangxu, still on the way from Xi'an to Peking, would all be in tears upon the news.

Russia objected to the terms of the Treaty of Shimonoseki, and contacted France and Germany for an interference. The fleets of the three powers concentrated towards the East whilst the Russian army in the Amur Maritime Province was mobilized. Japan suggested that Britain could take over Zhoushan Islands, Russia could take over northern Manchuria, and Germany could take over another coastal island of China. Russia, with intent for southern Manchuria, vehemently objected to the Japanese concession. On solar calendar April 20th of 1895 (?), the three powers presented their objections in Tokyo. Japan agreed to evacuate the Liaodong Peninsula at further reimbursement of additional 30,000,000 taels of silver (£5 million) from China.

Rise of Yuan Shi-kai

Yuan Shi-kai, born on Aug 20 of 1859, was from Henan Prov. Yuan Shi-kai was adopted by a uncle who brought him along to Shandong and Jiangsu provinces during this uncle's officialdom tenure. Upon the death of his uncle in 1874, his uncle's friends, Wu Changqing and Liu Minzhuan, escorted the coffin and Yuan Shi-kai back to Henan Prov. Wu Changqing's father was a comrade of Yuan Shi-kai's family during the crackdown on Nian Rebellion. Yuan Shi-kai married in 1876 at age 18 and bore son Yuan Keding in 1878. Yuan Shi-kai, in 1877, gave financial support to 25-year-old Xu Shichang for taking the imperial exam in Peking. Yuan Shi-kai, asked by Xu Shichang to leave hometown for ambition outside, would leave for Shanghai where he sold his 'shirts' and family antique for maintaining relationship with a 'distinguished prostitute'. Yuan Shi-kai was rescued by his family-teacher Wang Yanchen who happened to identify the antique which was sold into the custody of Circuit Governor for Shanghai. Wang

Yanchen bought back the antique, supported Yuan Shi-kai for a trip home, and recommended Yuan Shi-kai to Wu Changqing. Yuan Shi-kai, with high military ambitions, led a dozen hometown kids to Wu Changqing in April of 1881 for joining the coastal defence army of Shandong Prov. Wu Changqing dismissed his band home, but retained Yuan Shi-kai. Wu Changqing asked Yuan Shi-kai to call a counsellor (Zhang Jian) by the honorary title of teacher. Zhang Jian and Yuan Shi-kai later had dozen years' unhappiness for Yuan Shi-kai's changing the way of calling teacher after Yuan Shi-kai rose in power. Ding Zhongjiang commented that Yuan's behavior and thoughts were similar to Cao Cao of Three-Kingdom time period, a so-called 'xiao xiong' or predatory-eagle kind of hero.

Yuan Shi-kai adopted the same nepotism approach as Zeng Guofan. While being dispatched to Korea, he had assembled a team of cronies. Yuan Shi-kai had been bestowed with 4 Korean beauties during his stay in Korea, among whom one woman was a royal princess.

King Chunqin-wang (Yi-xuan), King Qingqin-wang (Yi-kuang), Weng Tonghe, Li Hongzhang and Rong-lu etc adamantly recommended Yuan Shi-kai for training 'Xin-jun' or the New Army at Xiaozhan while Hu Yufen was assigned the job as a railroad official. Yuan Shi-kai would devise a title of "*Xin Jian Lu Jun*" ('newly built field army'), and expanded original 4000 men New Army into 7000 men. The petition to the emperor mentioned that monthly budget for army training was like 70,000 taels of silver. Yuan Shi-kai would hire over scholar Wang Xiuzhi who had translated some British emissary's military tactics books into Chinese for Hu Yufen. Yuan Shi-kai became kind of blood brothers with Wang Xiuzhi cronies, and entertained Wang Xiuzhi with 'distinguished prostitutes' such as 'Sai Jinhua' (rumored to have affairs with German commander [General Field Marshal] Alfred Graf von Waldersee [Wa-de-xi] before). Yuan Shi-kai, to win favor from Rong-lu, would recite European tactics books and explain to Rong-lu. While training armies, Yuan Shi-kai wrote a military book himself. Yuan Shi-kai hired over Xu Shichang as a counsellor and Tang Shaoyi as a secretary. Yuan Shi-kai contacted Yin-chang of Tianjin's "*Wubei Xuetao*" Military Preparation Academy for referrals of talents, and Yin-chang recommended to Yuan Shi-kai "*Wubei Xuetao*" top students such as Feng Guozhang, Duan Qirui, Liang Huadian and Wang Shizhen. (Among the four guys, Liang Huadian accidentally drowned himself on one night, and the other three would be appointed lecturer posts for field army battalion, cannons battalion, and cavalry battalion, respectively. The three would become the so-called 'Distinguished Three' among

the Northern Warlord Armies later. Duan Qirui had at one time studied in military school in Germany.)

Yuan Shi-kai's training of the new army will be expanded to 12000 men, with eight camps or 8000 field army, two camps of cannons, 1000 men or two camps of cavalry, and 1000 men engineering camp. The new army was equipped with 2400 foreign-made tents, in addition to raincoats, hats, blankets, watches, binoculars, compasses and radios. A military supervision office was set up and it was staffed with 13 interpreters for 13 foreign lecturers. The soldiers and horsemen were recruited from various provinces. Yuan Shi-kai also standardized the weapons at the new army. 'Engineering Camp' was in charge of repairing arms, building bridges, building castles, planting mines, sending telegraphs and surveying maps. German, Japanese and American lecturers were hired, and a German language school was also set up.

After admonition official (Hu Jinggui) rebuked Yuan Shi-kai for wasting funds in 1896, Rong-lu was dispatched to Xiaozhan for an inspection. Rong-lu gave very favorable report to Cixi and Guangxu.

In Feb of 1899, Rong-lu inspected Xiaozhan again and told Yuan Shi-kai that he was empowered with building a brand new Manchu Qing army mapping Yuan Shi-kai's scheme. Three days later, Yuan Shi-kai re-devised his army into five 'jun' (equiv to regiments), with eight 'ying' or camps (equiv to battalions) under each regiments, including five field or infantry battalions, one cannon battalions, one cavalry battalions, one engineering battalions and one student army battalions. Rong-lu, at the advice of Yuan Shi-kai, named his new Manchu army 'Wuwei-jun Army', with five 'jun' (equiv to divisions), like frontal, hind, left, right and middle. Rong-lu would act as 'marshal' as well as general in charge of the middle division, Ma Yuekun in charge of frontal division, Nie Shicheng leftside division, Yuan Shi-kai rightside division, and Dong Fuxiang the hind-side division. Yuan Shi-kai rightside army or "*wuwei-you-jun*" would comprise of his Xiaozhan army, Rong-lu's middle division or "*wuwei-zhong-jun*" would comprise of new recruits from banner people, and the rest three divisions would be converted from existing Brave-camp armies in Hebei and Gansu provinces. Rong-lu's 'Wuwei-jun Army' should be considered Zhi-li or Beijing provincial army, only; later, Zhang Xun blamed his abortive 1917 restoration of Manchu throne on his lonely fight in an analogy to Zhi-li army's resistance to the eight allied powers.

Start Of Water-Melon Partitioning

Records showed that over 3000 priests, Catholics, Protestants and Eastern Orthodox, had been preaching in China in late 19th century. Among 108 counties and prefectures of Shandong Prov, over two thirds had Christian activities, with over 1300 churches and more than 150 priests. Often, priesthood had ill-willed and ill-intentioned staff, and Chinese converts happened to be rascals and priesthood proxies. Back on Nov 1st 1897 (solar calendar), in Juye County, Caozhou-fu Prefecture, Shandong Prov, two German priests, Franz Nies and Richard Heule, were killed by local mobsters for getting involved in disputes between Chinese converts and local people. Governor Li Bingheng caught the culprits and notified the German embassy. However, Germany, under Prime Minister Bismark, would take German minister-envoy's advice to extract interests in China on this pretext. Under order by German Kaizer Wilhelm II, three German warships sailed to Jiaozhou Bay, and on Nov 14th (solar calendar), bombarded the Chinese battery. Manchu China signed the 'Jiaozhou Bay Lease Treaty' with Germany on March 6th of 1898 (solar cal), which allowed Jiaozhou-wan Bay to be leased for 99 years and compensated Germany with few million taels of silver.

By Dec 29th of 1898 (solar cal), France invaded China's Hainan Island. Newspaper report showed that France's actions were a result of British instigation after Britain demanded more concessions of lands around HK. Britain's demand came after the heels of Russia's leasing Port Arthur (Lushungang) in Oct of the year.

Britain took over Weihaiwei in addition to Kowloon. France invaded Guangzhouwan Bay. Russia took over Lushun (Port Arthar) and Dalian.

Hundred Day Reformation

Yuan Shi-kai was liked by both conservatives and reformists in Manchu court. Manchu reformists included Guo Songtao, Zeng Jize, and Xue Fucheng. Six months after the Shimonoseki Treaty, five Manchu ministers were in charge of recruiting the so-called 'New Army'. They were King Chunqin-wang (Yi-xuan),

King Qingqin-wang (Yi-kuang), Weng Tonghe, Li Hongzhang, and Rong-lu. Li Hongzhang adamantly recommended Yuan Shi-kai for training 'Xin-jun' or the New Army at Xiaozhan.

Numerous intellectuals demanded system reform. A student of Lin Zexu, i.e., Feng Guifeng, proposed the revocation of 'ba gu wen' (i.e., stereotyped imperial exam format). Hong Kong's newspaper, "*Xun Huan Ri Bao*" eulogized Japan's parliamentary system. Zheng Guanying wrote "*Sheng Shi Wei Yan*", i.e., 'alarming words in a satiable society'. Heh Qi and Hu Liyuan wrote a series of 'new governance' books. Heh Qi had previously studied medicine in Britain for many years and later built in HK the Alice Hospital and Western Medicine School where Dr Sun Yat-sen had once studied. Chen Qiu wrote numerous books advocating the parliamentary system. Some British priest also went to see Manchu ministers for adopting Western sciences and hiring foreign advisers.

Kang You-wei first submitted reform blueprint to puppet Emperor Guangxu (Qing Dezong, Aixinjueluo Zai-tian, r. 1875-1908) in 1888. Kang You-wei set up Wanmu Academy in Canton in 1891. In 1895, Kang You-wei, in the context of the defeat of Manchu fleet by Japan, would organize a petition movement comprising of over 1300 Imperial Exams candidates (from 18 provinces), i.e., so-called 'Gong Che Shang Shu'. Kang You-wei, being against signing the Shimonoseki Treaty, had proposed a relocation of capital for sake of further fightings with Japanese. Kang You-wei's demands included the revocation of privileges for the Manchu, free press, simplifying governmental apparatus, government budgeting, encouraging railroad and mining, launching postal service, building musketeer armies, reforming Imperial Exam System, and encouraging overseas studies. Kang You-wei's petition did not reach the emperor.

Kang You-wei organized "*Self-Strengthening Society*" ('qiang xue hui') for propogating reforms. Yuan Shi-kai participated in the activities. Kang You-wei, later in his 1916 wire against Yuan Shi-kai's imperial enthronment, mentioned the early days when Yuan Shi-kai called Kang You-wei 'elder brother' and supported Kang You-wei's "*Self-Strengthening Society*" (i.e., 'qiang xue hui'). Yuan Shi-kai earned the fame of sitting over the fences of two camps of

conservatives and reformists. This would give Kang You-wei and Tan Sitong etc a false impression that Yuan Shi-kai could be relied upon for pushing through the reforms, something that would lead to the abortion of the Hundred Day Reformation when Yuan Shi-kai betrayed the reformists to the dowager empress.

Kang You-wei, born on Mar 19th of 1885 in Nanhai of Guangdong, was from a Confucian gentry family, and he once possessed an ambition for being a great Confucian saint. Kang You-wei visited many places across the nation and translated many Western books into Chinese. In order to counter the conservatives, Kang You-wei wrote two books to expound the theories that Confucius was after all a reformist who had intended to change the Zhou Dynasty principalities by means of eulogizing the virtues of three dynasties of Xia-Shang-Zhou.

Kang You-wei submitted proposals to Emperor Guangxu eight times. The 1897 occupation of Jiaozhou Bay by Germany and Dalian Bay by Russia would prompt some intellectuals into propogating reform of the political system. Kang You-wei proposed to Emperor Guangxu for political reform again. Emperor Guangxu finally accessed Kang You-wei's article after the empress dowager abandoned 'curtain regency'. On June 11th, 1898, Emperor Guangxu decreed that Kang You-wei be responsible for carrying out the reforms. Over one hundred laws and regulations passed thereafter. One hundred days later, on Sept 21st, Empress Dowager Cixi, with the help of Yuan Shi-kai, staged a coup by imprisoning Emperor Guangxu and executing the Six Gentlemen of Tan Sitong, Kang Guangren, Lin Xu, Yang Shenxiu, Yang Rui & Liu Guangdi.

china.org.cn has a good translation of Tan Sitong's excution day poem: *I am yet determined to kill my enemies, But I cannot escape my fate. For the sake of ideals have been striving for I shall die joyfully!*"

Kang You-wei & Liang Qi-chao fled to Japan. This is the so-called 'Bai Ri Wei Xin', i.e., Hundred Day Reformation. When Empress Dowager Cixi intended to dethrone puppet Emperor Guangxu, foreign embassies expressed their opposition. When the news spread that Emperor Guangxu was ill, the British minister-envoy sent a French doctor to see Guangxu. Empress Dowager Cixi hence secretly supported the Boxers in their attacks on the foreigners and embassies in and around Beijing and on Shandong Peninsula, leading to the 1900 invasion by 'Eight Allied Nations'. Empress Dowager Cixi fled to Xi'an and

would not return till next year, but she managed to crush a rebellion in the Yangtze Delta organized by Kang You-wei in the name of restoring Emperor Guangxu. (Later in early ROC era, Kang You-wei was granted amnesty by Yuan Shi-kai at the intervention of Liang Qi-chao; however, Kang You-wei participated in the Zhang Xun's restoration of Manchu imperial house in 1917, taking another blow of defeat and humiliation.)

The Boxers & Invasion of Eight Allied Nations

In the Hollywood entertainment area, there existed John Wayne's movie entitled "*One Hundred Days In Peking*" (*Fifty Five Days In Peking*" starring by Charlton Heston?). Recently, Jack Chan's new movie "*Shanghai Knights*", in the trite style of exhibiting the skills of martial arts as well as prototyping Chinese woman's fall in love with a White man [also see 1922 film "*The Toll of the Sea*" by Anna May Wong], would crookedly assign a contingent of boxers as assassins of the British royal house under the Big Ben. Jack Chan, in the name of patriotism, had only served the interests of Hollywood by villifying the boxers.

Quite a few people had recently re-examined the Boxers' Movement of 1900 and the subsequent invasion by 'Eight Allied Nations'. A noteworthy scholar would be Bei Ming of 'Radio Free Asia'. The main spirits of this kind of research would be to point out that United States had acted fairly before, during and after the crackdowns on the Boxers. Further, the United States, in 1908, had acted as the most altruistic of all in voluntarily refunding the overcharged 'war compensations' from damages caused by the Boxers, in the form of scholarships for supporting talented Chinese' overseas studies in America. Bei Ming, in description of boxers' arson of the adjacent Imperial Library and the British Legation, unscrupulously commented that the British prized Chinese classics books more than the Chinese the same way as today's foreigners giving more love to tens of thousands of baby girls whom the Chinese government sell to the west for an adoption fee of US\$5,000 to \$20,000. (Increasing interest in Chinese baby girls had encouraged a new form of human smuggling business in China, with a Chinese news report of an interception of a truck carrying 28 baby girls wrapped up in cloth. Note that in US, revenue services would offer as much as \$10k as annual adoption tax exemption. The impact on the growth of Asian baby girls was never assessed, and some advocates acknowledged that China had only begun its overseas adoption plan from 1994, thus yielding no statistics for

research yet. However, in 1990, I personally met a Dunlap family in the mid-West and encountered a Korean girl who, apparently used as a "baby wife", was said to be engaged with their boy. More abhorrent example would be related to Woody Allen etc who treated adopted Korean girl as a concubine. The obsession with baby girls could be exemplified by the long list of missing girls advertized on Internal Revenue Services Publication 17.)

Per Ding Zhongjiang, Zhou Ziqi, a graduate of Beijing's "*Tong Wen Guan*" interpreter school and later a Manchu Qing emissary to US, had been responsible for negotiating with US in regards to refunding the 12,000,000 US dollars. It was never a spontaneous act of the US in the refund. (Japan, out of boxer indemnity, established an annual sole-quota scholarship for Chinese on the precondition that recipient swore allegiance to Hirohito. In late 1920s, Hu Qiuyuan yielded the Japanese Imperial Scholarship in preference for a Hubei Provincial scholarship in attending Waseda University. Later in 1932, Mussolini offered to pay Italian advisers with money from overcharged war damages from 1900 boxer incident in exchange of China purchasing Italian airplanes in the amount of several million of US dollars.) US government, often cited as a 'friend' of Manchu China, actually pushed anti-China agenda one step further: after acquiring Hawaii in summer of 1898 and Philippines in Dec 1898, US applied "Chinese Exclusion Act" to Chinese on the two islands, and further, President Theodore Roosevelt signed in law to have Chinese Exclusion Act" applied throughout US-controlled islands and territories over the world.

Empress Dowager Cixi placed puppet Emperor Guangxu under the house arrest after the crackdown on 'Hundred Day Reformation'. Manchu "*zhong tang*" Rong-lu instigated Yang Chongyi in petitioning for Empress Dowager Cixi's return to politics and government. Though Emperor Guangxu was deprived of his rights, Empress Dowager Cixi and Emperor Guangxu did attend the daily imperial sessions together still. Cixi intended to replace Emperor Guangxu with a Manchu prince called Fu-juan (the great grandson of Emperor Daoguang and the son of King Ruijun-wang Zai-yi). Zai-yi asked Chongqigong, some ministers (*da xueshi*" Xu Tong and "*shang shu*" Qi-Xiu) and his wife to maneuver about erecting a new emperor. Qi-Xiu went to see Rong-lu (*zhong tang*" or prime minister) for assisting Zai-yi in the erection of the new emperor, and Qi-Xiu hinted at the consequence of the rise of dethroned Emperor Guangxu should Cixi pass away. Rong-lu declined the Qi-Xiu's request and refused to see Qi-xiu and Chongqigong again. Qi-xiu etc submitted a petition to Empress Dowager Cixi in regards to

erecting a new emperor. Cixi asked her ministers whether she could change the emperor via citation of Ming Emperor Jingtai-di's return of throne to his brother. Xu Tong concurred by saying that Emperor Guangxu could be downgraded to Duke Hunde-gong (duke who lost virtues) via citation of Jurchens' downgrade of Song emperor. Sun Jianai, "*da xueshi*" and "*junji dachen*", objected to the sudden change, claiming that it might disturb trouble in southeastern China. Cixi got enraged, saying the change of emperor was her familial matter, nothing to do with Han ethnic ministers. Cixi spread a rumor about Emperor Guangxu getting seriously ill. Foreign embassies expressed their opposition to Cixi's intention to dethrone Emperor Guangxu. When the news spread that Emperor Guangxu was ill, foreign embassies jointly went to see Yikuang for inquiring about the emperor's health. The British minister-envoy sent a French doctor to see Guangxu, and French doctor's health report enraged Cixi. Further enraging Cixi would be the asylum of Kang You-wei granted by Britain and the asylum of Liang Qi-chao granted by Japan.

At the advice of Rong-lu, Cixi decided to change the throne via two steps and asked Emperor Guangxu decree that Prince Fu-juan be conferred the title of crown prince ("*da a ge*" or elder brother) for inheriting the line of Qing Emperor Tongzhi (Qing Muzong, r. 1862-1874). (Emperor Guangxu, before enthronement at 1875, had agreed to erect his to-be-born son as heir of Emperor Tongzhi should he bear a son.) Prince Fu-juan was assigned Palace Hongde-dian inside of the Forbidden City. In Shanghai, Jing Yuanshan and Cai Yuanbei submitted a letter with 2000 signatures against the crown prince erection. King Ruijun-wang and Empress Dowager Cixi held a celebration party, with invitations extended to the wives of minister-envoys, but foreign embassies did not show any appreciation. Cixi was recorded to have thrown her jade tea pot to the floor when a Manchu official sent in a letter claiming that British intended to send in forces to help return power to Emperor Guangxi. Empress Dowager Cixi hence secretly supported the Boxers in their attacks on the foreigners and embassies in and around Beijing, leading to the 1900 invasion by 'Eight Allied Nations'.

Boxers or Yihe-quan (righteous and harmonious fists) in Chinese, also named Meihua-quan [plum blossom fist], originated in Shandong (Shantung) in 1898 as a secret society. The names before Yihe-quan would be 'yi shi dang' (party of righteous warriors) and 'da dao hui' (big blade society) of 1897. Governor Li Bingheng was deprived of his post when 'da dao hui' killed two German missionaries in Oct 1897. Succeeding governor (Yu-xian) would rename Yihe-

quan to Yihe-tuan. Foreign embassies protested the atrocious acts of the boxers. Cai Dongfan claimed that Yihe-quan was an off-shoot of the White Lotus Society; Ding Zhongjiang claimed it was an off-shoot of the ancient 'Ba Gua Jiao' (i.e., milfoil divination religion of trigrams). In 1899, famine erupted over northern China. Boxers first propagated the idea of 'destroying foreigners' (i.e., Mie Yang) by utilizing the masses' anti-foreign fermentation as a result of foreign invasions and exploitations as well as the bullying from Christian converts or broker-dealers associated with foreign merchants or Christian/Catholic churches. (It was recorded that priests, for sake of expanding membership, had offered 'Thanksgiving-day' kind of free meals and fringe benefits to street rascals, and those rascal-turned Christian converts were often resented by peasants.) Boxers termed foreigners as 'da mao zi' (big hairy son) and termed the Chinese Christian followers as 'Er Mao Zi' (secondary hairy son). For sake of obtaining Manchu support, Boxers proclaimed the idea of 'sustaining Manchu Dynasty' (i.e., Fu Qing).

Boxers claimed that they had the protection of divine spirits, practiced an animistic magic of rituals and spells, and believed they were impervious to bullets and firearms. Boxers grew in strength in Shandong with the acquiesce of Governor Li Bingheng and Governor Yu-xian, consecutively. The male boxers practiced a karate-kind of fist arts (shadow boxing) called Jinzhongzhao (golden bell protection), and the women practiced the art of Hongdengzhao (red lantern shining). Governor Yu-xian, a desciple of King Ruijun-wang Zai-yi, praised the skills of the boxers to Zai-yi and suggested that the boxers could be sent to the Forbidden City to protect the new crown prince. Zai-yi recommended the boxers to Cixi, and when Cixi expressed doubts about boxers' divine powers, Zai-yi suggested that Governor-general Yu-lu for Zhili (Beijing) Prov and Governor Yu-xian for Shandong Prov send in some boxers to the capital for demonstration. Yu-lu and Yu-xian approved of the establishment of Tuan-lian-ju (i.e., 'boxer training centers'), with the flag carrying the three characters of 'Yi (righteous) He (harmonious) Tuan (civilian brigade)'. Empress Dowager was also credited with reviving the Beijing Opera which based most of the dramas on ancient divine stories like "*Feng Shen Bang*" (List of Conferred Gods) etc. Empress Dowager, with the surname of Yehe-Nala-shi, liked to be called "*Lao Fu Ye*" (i.e., the Elderly Buddha Ancestress). Impressed by the superman capabilities of characters in Peking Opera, Empress Dowager hence believed that anti-foreign sentiment among the boxers could be utilized and that this secret society, with its divine spirits, could be the vanguard in expelling the

Europeans (nicknamed the 'foreign devils').

'Yi He Tuan' swooned to 100,000 in membership, with such masters as Wang Decheng, Cao Futian and Zhang Decheng, in the order of brothers as depicted by the novel "*Water Margin*". A street woman would be made into the chieftan in charge of women's Hongdengzhao branch. Boxers' movement spread to neighboring provinces of Shandong-Hebei-Shanxi, burning churches and killing Christians everywhere.

Boxer chieftans, in the name of boxing training, took over Hongdengzhao women as their concubines without regard for laws. Boxers took over various monasteries as their camps and forced every household into erecting boxing altars. Tianjin boxers gradually spread out. Several times, Rong-lu failed to dissuade Cixi from being intoxicated by the magic of the boxers. Cixi ordered that King Ruijun-wang and Qi-xiu be in charge of the foreign affairs office (i.e., "*zongli yamen*") and that King Zhuang-wang Zai-xun and Gang-yi be in charge of leading the boxers for an oncoming fight with foreigners. Boxers flocked to the capital thereafter.

In Oct of 1899, Rong-lu dispatched Yuan Shi-kai's "*wuwei you jun*" (i.e., 'martial defending rightside army') to Shandong for restoring order. Yuan Shi-kai was assigned the post of backup governor-general in Nov and took over the post of governor-general in Feb of 1900. Around this timeframe, Anglican missionary S. M. Brooks was slain by 'Big Blade Society' in Shandong. Yuan Shi-kai's crackdown on the boxers caused the mobsters flee to Hebei and Shanxi provinces. Foreign embassies sent letters to Manchu foreign affairs' office demanding the suppression of the Boxers and threatening with invasion should Manchu court fail to quell boxers within two months.

Around the capital, imperial guarding forces were composed of four columns (equiv to brigades) led by Song Qing, Nie Shicheng, Ma Yuekun and Dong Fuxiang, respectively. (Dong Fuxiang, previously a Gansu Prov bandit, was pacified by General Zuo Zongtang, was later assigned the post of a general in Gansu, and was relocated to Jizhou, near Beijing the capital.) At the order of King Ruijun-wang, Dong Fuxiang led his Gansu bandit-converted army to City-gate Zhengyang-men of the capital and surrounded foreign embassies in the Dongjiaominxiang area.

Boxers and soldiers, together, destroyed the railroads, cut the telephone lines, and burnt down foreign residences. By mid-April of 1900, boxers of Lai-shui county burnt down the Baoding Railroad. At Laishui County, some villager, hating the Christians, would invite the boxers for an attack at the church. Church followers contacted the county magistrate for protection. Magistrate Zhu Fei reported to the province but was asked not to crack down on the boxers. When some priest contacted foreign consul for assistance, Manchu provincial army, under a deputy general Yang Futong, was sent to Laishui. Before Yang Futong (Yang Sitong?) arrived, boxers already sacked the church, killed all Christians and burnt the building. Yang Futong fought with the boxers and later died in the hands of the boxers. Governor-general Yu-lu for Zhili Prov then dispatched "*da xueshi*" (grand scholar) Gang-yi and "*fu yi*" Zhao Shuqiao for Shuntian-fu Prefecture (Zhuozhou area) on a pacification mission. Gang-yi and Zhao Shuqiao would collude with the boxers and then petition with Cixi for using the boxers against the foreigners. Chief Eunuch Li Lianying also praised the boxers in front of Cixi.

By May of 1900, large crowds of Boxers entered Peking, and foreigners retreated into legations. Thousands of homes in the embassy area were burnt. It was claimed that Boxers, in Peking, killed over 300 converts. Foreign embassies sent urgent messages to the foreign affairs' office, but King Ruijun-wang ignored them all. navyandmarine.org/ondeck/1900boxerrebellionmarines.htm stated that "on 30 May (solar calendar) ... Chinese authorities allowed the Americans, British, French, Italians, Japanese, and Russians to augment their embassy guard forces. The next day, 337 men arrived from foreign naval ships anchored off Taku (Dagu). Included in the contingent were 50 U.S. Marines, led by Captains John Myers and Newt Hall. Over the next few days ...foreign ministers called for additional reinforcements." By this time, Eight Allied Nations decided to intervene for protecting their embassies and staff as well as the missionaries and the Christian followers. Allied forces, under British General Xi-mo-er (Sir Edward Hobart Seymour [1840-1929]), reached the Dagu-kou Battery. Governor-general Yu-lu for Zhili reported to King Ruijun-wang about the allied attacks. At Dugu-kou (Taku), "*ti du*" or general Luo Rongguang was defeated by Eight Allied Nations and he fled to Tianjin. navyandmarine.org/ondeck/1900boxerrebellionmarines.htm further stated "at Taku, Vice Adm. Sir Edward H. Seymour formed an international rescue force of 2,056 troops, including 112 U.S. Marines, to move inland by train on 10-11 June (solar calendar). However, the relief column met heavy resistance from the

Boxers northwest of Tientsin (Tianjin)." From Dagukou to Tianjin and Beijing, boxers, including those expelled from Shandong by Yuan Shiu-kai, were everywhere. In Tianjin, boxers looted the Zizhulin Extraterritory.

On May 8th, boxers burnt down the railroads at Yangchun Village. Governor-general Yu-lu dispatched two battalions of Nie Shicheng's "*wu-wei (martial defence) zuo (leftside) jun (army)*" to Zhuozhou area. When Nie Shicheng tried to protect the railroad, boxers attacked Nie Shicheng and injured over a dozen soldiers. Nie Shicheng cracked down on boxers. Cixi asked Rong-lu write to Nie Shicheng for sake of stopping Nie from fighting the boxers. Nie Shicheng stubbornly insisted on quelling the boxer mobsters and stationed his army at Yangchun village for defence against the boxers. On one occasion, Nie Shicheng personally shot a boxer chief who climbed on top of telephone pole to instruct the destruction of railroad in Lutai area, chased the fallen boxer chief on horseback, attacked the boxer chief with the blade, and decapitated the boxer chief. Nie Shicheng army killed several hundred boxers and became feuds with each other.

On May 14th, British General Xi-mo-er (Seymour) departed for Beijing with 2000 men as forerunner column. On May 15th (solar calendar June 11), Seymour's train could not go on as a result of boxers' sabotage. General Seymour retreated after a fierce fight with Nie Shicheng's army. Cixi mistook this victory as boxers' contribution.

Boxers continued attacking the embassies, but they failed to take over those buildings. Manchu court sent over praises about the boxer attacks. On May 15th of 1900 (June 11th solar calendar), Dong Fuxiang's Gansu Prov soldiers killed a Japanese embassy secretary (Shanshan Bin in Chinese) near City-gate Yongdingmen and dismembered him. On May 20th, Boxers burnt down Zhengyangmen city-gate.

On May 20th, Empress Dowager Cixi, at Yiluan-dian Palace, convened an imperial meeting attended by full house of ministers. During the meeting, Emperor Guangxu rebuked the ministers for failing to quell boxers' rebellion. Liu Yongheng from the Imperial Library knelt forward to report that he met General Dong Fuxiang en route and that Dong requested for imperial decree to quell the boxers. King Ruijun-wang (Zai-yi) shouted at Liu Yongheng, "Good ! This is the No. 1 approach to lose the heart of the people." Yuan Chang shouted

to the front that boxers' witch-craft could not be relied upon. Empress Dowager rebuked Yuan Chang that boxers' heart could be used even though their witch-craft might be useless. The meeting ended with no result as to crackdown or support as to the boxers, and Cixi decreed that Na-tong and Xu Jingcheng be dispatched to the embassies for stopping dispatchment of Western forces to their rescue. After the meeting, Zeng Guanghan, Zhang Hengjia, Yun Yuding and Zhu Zumou stayed on to express opposition to Cixi's reliance on boxers and Dong Fuxiang's army for countering the foreigners. Cixi got so enraged that she stared at the ministers even after Rong-lu mediated over the matter.

King Ruijun-wang asked Qi-xiu forge an embassy corps' letter which demanded that i) Cixi return the regency to Emperor Guangxu; ii) Eight Allied Nations bring in 10,000 soldiers to the capital for restoring the order. Historian Tang Degang and historian Fan Wenlan both stated that it was Luo Jiajie's son who sent in a report to Rong-lu about imperialist powers' intent to return power to Emperor Guangxu. Tang Degang stated that Luo Jiajie, a Manchu official in charge of grain supply in Shanghai, had obtained a report from a Chinese clerk who worked for a British newspaper in Shanghai, "*Bei Hua Jie Bao*" (i.e., North China Express). The newspaper's editorial on June 19th 1900 mentioned that allied powers intended to topple the empress dowager.

On May 20th, Nie Shicheng was ordered to attack Tianjin's extraterritories; Nie Shicheng fought a heated war for eight straight days. On May 21st (solar calendar June 17), Dagukou Battery fell.

On May 21th of 1900, Empress Dowager Cixi convened another imperial meeting for deciding whether to declare a war on Eight Allied Nations, and the meeting was attended by Manchu "*junji dachen*" Shi-duo, Rong-lu, Gang-yi, Wang Wenzhao, Qi-xiu and Zhao Shuqiao. Liu Yongheng and Zai-yi had another dispute in regards to declaration of war. Rong-lu objected to the war declaration, stating that none of the wars in the past were initiated by China and that a war with eight nations could mean a self-destruction. Cixi rebuked Rong-lu. Qi-xiu submitted a war declaration to Cixi for review. Few hours later, Cixi called on various kings, princes and brothers, all "*junji dachen*" (ministers in charge of military affairs), ministry level "*shang shu*" (secretaries) and "*qiu qing*", internal affairs minister, banner army generals, plus Emperor Guangxu, to a meeting in Qinzheng-dian Palace for a final decision. Cixi read parts of the forged foreign embassy corps' letter (ommiting the fourth clause in regards to

return of power to Emperor Guangxu) and said to the audience that the foreign embassy corps' letter was an intervention in Manchu internal affairs, that the invasion by Eight Allied Nations was an insult to Manchu China, and that she intended to declare war on eight nations. Emperor Guangxu, when asked of his opinions, first stated that boxers had better stop attacking embassies and Manchu government should escort foreigners to Tainjin; after Cixi showed madness, he backed down saying Cixi should make a decision on this kind of matter. Various dukes and kings, under the pressure of King Ruijun-wang, dared not express opposition. Manchu ministers, Xu Yongyi (military ministry), Li-Shan (household ministry), Xu Jingcheng (leftside "*shi lang*" from Bureaucrat Ministry), Lian Yuan (*xue shi*" from "*nei ge*" or inner cabinet) and Yuan Chang (*qing*" from Taichangshi department) expressed worries about fighting eight nations. Yuan Chang stated that embassy corps letter might not be authentic. King Ruijun-wang rebuked Yuan Chang as a traitor.

Cixi made a decision for war, and said to her ministers that they should not blame her for causing Manchu dynastic demise should the war be lost. Cixi asked Xu Yongyi, Li-shan and Lian Yuan to relay a message to various minister-envoys stating that should their countries plan to fight China, they should leave for Tianjin. Xu Yongyi and Yuan Chang, together, submitted another request for avoiding the declaration of war. Li-shan claimed relaying message to embassies should not be his job, and Empere Guangxu ridiculed him by pointing out that Li-shan had received foreign minister-envoys at Yi-he-yuan Garden one year ago. Cixi asked Rong-lu send army to have the three ministers protected from a distance.

On May 22nd, Cixi convened a meeting for war preparations. Zai-yi proposed to attack the embassies, and Cixi concurred. Lian Yuan opposed this idea. Zai-lian asked Cixi to have Lian Yuan executed, and King Zhuangqin-wang (Zai-xun) rescued Lian Yuan. Wang Wenshao also opposed the attack on embassies. Cixi ridiculed Wang Wenshao by daring him to promise that he could stop foreign armies from invading Peking. Emperor Guangxu took Xu Jingcheng's hands into his hands and cried. The next day, at noon, Cixi decided to issue war declaration. Cixi asked Xu Jingcheng to send a message to various minister-envoys stating that they should leave China within 24 hours and that Manchu could dispatch armies for protecting their safety of passage. Emperor Guangxu took Xu Jingcheng's hands and asked for further discussions. Cixi shouted at Emperor Guangxu for releasing the hands. Lian Yuan kned down and stated

that Manchu should declare war on France alone for French propagating alien religions, but not the other countries.

On May 22th (solar calendar June 18), Seymour's soliders met resistance from Dong Fuxiang's Gansu army at Langfang, near Tianjin. Seymour defeated Gan-jun with a casualty of 54 men.

On May 23rd (June 20 solar calendar), the same day, Boxers killed the German minister-envoy (Baron von Kettleler [i.e., Ke-lin-de]) who was on his way to the foreign affairs' office (i.e., "*zong shu*") from his embassy. (Ding Zhongjiang stated that he was shot by Manchu "*shen-ji-ying*" soldiers under Zai-lan.) Baron Kettleler learnt Chinese while being a youth, was assigned an interpreter job at Canton's consulate, received a medal from German emperor for protecting German citizens in 1888, worked as minister-envoy to Mexico in 1896, and transferred to China thereafter.

On May 23rd, early morning, Cixi convened at Yiluan-dian Palace. Rong-lu, with tears, pleaded with Cixi for avoiding the attack on embassies. After morning tea at the suggestion of eunuch Li Lianying, Cixi explained why she wanted to declare war on eight nations, mentioning that she had been restraining herself for 40 years. Zhao Shuqiao, upgraded to the title of "*shang shu*" for justice ministry, suggested that an imperial decree be dispatched to inner provinces to have all foreigners executed for sake of preventing them from acting as spies. Li-shan, Xu Jingcheng, Yuan Chang, with tears, again pleaded with Cixi for recalling the war decision.

On May 25th, Cixi ordered that Lian Wenchong from the military affairs' office draft the war declaration, and that war declaration was officially issued. After the war delaration, Cixi fetched 100,000 taels of silver for funds to be used by the boxers in attacking Tianjin extraterritories and Beijing embassies. Governor for Shanxi Prov, Yu-xian, who had relocated there from Shandong, would order all foreigners and missioneries to be arrested and executed. Yu-xian had 15 foreign men, 20 foreign women and 11 of their children stripped of their clothes and executed in front of his governor's office. Speculation put the total death toll at over 250 foreigners in Shanxi.

In the foreign embassy district, foreigners flocked to British embassy for protection. Earlier, 337 sailors (or 430 sailors and marines per

<http://www.history.navy.mil/faqs/faq86-1.htm>, including fifty-six Americans from USS Oregon and USS Newark), with the approval of Manchu government, had arrived in the embassy as guards on solar calendar May 31st & June 4th [sc]. British embassy was renowned for its large capacity, solid walls with a depth of eight Chinese feet and a height of 20 Chinese feet (3 Chinese feet=3.281 British feet), and the adjacency to the Imperial Library (*Han Lin Yuan*) which the foreigners looked to as a safety shield. Embassy officials paid high prize for a messenger to be sent to Tianjin for relief.

<http://www.history.navy.mil/faqs/faq86-1.htm> stated that boxers began to attack embassies on June 9th [sc], and "Great Britain's Sir Claude MacDonald, requested a sizable relief force just before the telegraph lines were cut". Soon, Italian embassy, Austrian embassy, Belgian embassy, Dutch embassy, Portuguese embassy and Russian embassy were all burnt. Customs' Office, churches, and priests' residencies were attacked and destroyed. He-de, a taxes and duty officer in charge of the customs' office, would pay messengers 100-500 taels to have relief request letters sent to Tianjin's extraterritory.

<http://www.history.navy.mil/faqs/faq86-1.htm> stated that "over 2,100 men ... from Great Britain, Germany, Russia, France, the United States, Japan, Italy, and Austria... departed the city of Tientsin on 10 June, under the command of British Admiral Sir Edward Seymour. However, strong Boxer and Imperial Chinese opposition forced Seymour to return his battered column to Tientsin on 22 June." On June 17th [sc], allied invasion forces sacked Dagukou Battery on the coastline.

On basis of solar calendar, about one month ahead of lunar calendar, Manchu government declared war on the foreign countries, i.e., on June 21st, and boxers and Dong Fuxiang's army began to lay siege of embassies. (Alternative records showed that siege of the Legations began one day before the war declaration.) On June 22nd (Solar calendar), Manchu Qing army destroyed civilian residencies to the southeast of British embassy. On June 23rd (Solar calendar), Dong Fuxiang's army set fire on the trees of the adjacent Imperial Library which housed Ming Dynasty's encyclopedia "*Yong Le Da Dian*" and Qing Dynasty's encyclopedia "*Si Ku Quan Shu*". Various witness account, by Gilbert Reid, Monsieur Pichon, Lizzer Martin, Putnam Weale, Lewis C. Arlington, William Lewisohn, Lancelot Giles, and Mary E. Andrews, stated that Manchu soldiers jumped into the Imperial Library, sprayed kerosene onto the trees by the Embassy wall, and lit the fire. British minister-envoy Claude M. McDonald ordered his sailors go inside of the library to rescue the books from the fire and

moreover telephoned Manchu foreign affairs office of the arson. British customs officer, Putnam Wale, recorded in his diary the next day that some of the foreigners secretly hid away the classics books. However, records also showed that both the Westerners and Manchu soldiers had used classics books for stuffing their trenches and positions.

Cixi also ordered that Zai-xun and Gang-yi be in charge of boxers. Cixi, personally, also had boxers' altar set up in her bedroom and recited boxers' scripts 70 times per day. (Eunuch Lian Lianying would shout, 'Another foreign devil is killed' whenever Cixi finished her daily recital of scripts.) Crown Prince Fu-juan dared to bully Emperor Guangxu by calling the derogatory name of 'Er Mao Zi'. After Cixi ordered 20 whips of Fu-juan for the rudeness to the emperor, King Ruijun-wang (Zai-yi) led a column of boxers to the palace to bully Emperor Guangxu, too. Cixi was outraged, rebuked Zai-yi, and ordered Rong-lu to have those intruding boxers executed at Dong'an-men city-gate. Zai-xun, who was a feud of Li-shan for favor of a 'woman entertainer' as well as Li-shan's refusal in lending funds, would accuse Li-shan of collusion with foreigners and church. (Later, Li-shan, Xu Jingcheng and Yuan Chang were all arrested and executed as 'traitors'.)

Various governors also wired in to express their oppositions, including Governor Yuan Shi-kai of Shandong Prov (who quelled the boxers in Shandong already), Governor-general Li Hongzhang for Liang-guang (Guangdong and Guangxi), Governor-general Zhang Zhidong, and Governor-general Liu Kunyi for Liang-jiang (Jiangsu and Jiangxi). Li Bingheng, who was former governor-general for Sichuan prov, also wired in objection. These regional governors generals ignored Empress Dowager's instructions and protected foreigners in their domains. Manchu government wired over rebuking statements to the four governor-generals and requested for supplying soldiers and funds. Liu Kunyi, after consulting with the rest of Southeastern governor-generals, reached an agreement with the foreign consuls of eight nations to have neutrality declared in Southeast China. The commander of the allied forces, British General Xi-moer (Seymour), agreed to the neutrality in Southeastern China after he had suffered earlier setback at Yangchun, Langfang and elsewhere from June 10th [sc] to June 22nd [sc].

On May 25th (solar calendar June 21), Seymour fought with Nie Shicheng at Beicang, and occupied Beicang with a casualty of 150 men. On May 26th (solar

calendar June 22), Seymour, with another 140 casualties, took over Xiguwu from Nie Shicheng. Seymour, after a defeat in Langfang near Tianjin, was said to have retreated back to Tianjin on June 22nd [sc]. On May 27th (solar calendar June 23), reinforcements from Dagukou combined forces with Seymour. Seymour was deprived of his commander post by allied forces. With British and Russians entangled over control of leadership, Germany pretended itself to be a dialectical solution. Later in August, German Emperor proposed to have Alfred Graf von Waldersee [Wa-de-xi 1832-1904] travel to China to be the new commander.

By May 28th [June 24th sc], allied forces reached the outskirts of Tianjin, and Nie Shicheng's army retreated to the outskirts of Tianjin. On one night, Nie Shicheng ordered a full crack-down on boxers before engaging in further fights with foreign invasion forces. Nie Shicheng's army destroyed over one thousand boxers on that night. The next day, when Nie was fighting allied forces, boxers raided Nie Shicheng's residence and abducted Nie Shicheng's family members. When Nie Shicheng led his forces in search of his family members, boxers claimed that Nie Shicheng had rebelled. Manchu soldiers at the hind line shot at Nie Shicheng's army. On June 4th [lc], General Ma Yuekun and General Song Qing came to Nie Shicheng's relief. The two generals fought another ten days in Tianjin area. On June 13th [July 9th sc], Governor-general Yu-lu recalled Nie Shicheng to his office; Nie Shicheng entered the governor-general office via a side door; Yu-lu displayed a wire from Peking stating that Nie Shicheng killed 'patriotic' boxers and Nie Shicheng be executed; Nie Shicheng kned down to accept the execution order; Yu-lu comforted Nie Shicheng in saying that he could petition for mercy should Nie Shicheng have a victory over the foreign forces. Nie Shicheng then left for Balitai area, southside of Tianjin, to fight allied forces, with empty stomach for whole morning and still wearing officer's civil clothes, while the boxers harassed Nie Shicheng's hind position. Allied forces, checking out the position of Nie Shicheng (who already was shot in the face) with telescope, bombarded Nie Shicheng to death, with intestines exposed to the ground. Nie Shicheng's subordinate officers, generals like Zhou Yueru and Yao Liangcai and captains like Xu Zhaode and Song Desheng, all died in this battle. (Cai Dongfan stated Seymour allowed Nie Shicheng's soldiers come to fetch Nie's body and furthermore drove off the boxers who intended to slice Nie Shicheng's body.) After the boxer rebellion crackdown, Nie Shicheng was later restored reputation by Yuan Shi-kai who was to take over the post of governor-general for Zhili Prov.

On June 15th [July 11th sc], Ma Yuekun attacked Laolongdou Train Station of Tianjin for sake of cutting off the supply of the allied forces. Allied forces drove off Ma Yuekun after a casualty of 150 men. Allied forces got a new reinforcement of 4000 men. General Ma Yuekun, while fighting allied invasion forces, had to engage with boxers on a second front. Boxers accused Ma Yuekun of wearing traitor-style (i.e., imported) straw-hats and pressured governor-general into ordering that Ma Yuekun's army threw away the straw-hats. During a rain-storm, Ma's army was defeated by Seymour. General Song Qing relayed a message to have General Ma Yuekun retreat to Beicang.

On June 18th [July 14th sc], Japanese army intruded into Tianjin after three days' fierce fighting, and Luo Yong-guang committed suicide. On July 17th [sc], allied invasion forces sacked Tianjin with a combined forces of about 20,000 men. Tianjin warfare, lasting through June 17th (solar cal) to July 17th (solar cal), extracted about 2000 casualties from allied invasion forces. In Tianjin, Russian, French and German soldiers committed atrocities. On June 23rd lunar calendar [July 19th sc], allied forces convened in Tianjin and then marched on Beijing along the two banks of the Canal. Among the allied forces, Russians numbered 10,000, Japanese 9,000, British 6,000, French 2,600, American 2,500, German 4,000, Austrian 150, and Italian 150. In Tianjin, allied forces compromised by agreeing to German General Alfred Graf von Waldersee [Wa-de-xi] as the new commander-in-chief. French abstained from its objections, while Russians and British compromised by giving up leadership over each other. (German reinforcements of 7000 Germans would arrive in China three days after taking over Peking in mid-Aug [sc], by which time Alfred Graf von Waldersee still failed to depart Germany yet.)

navyandmarine.org/ondeck/1900boxerrebellionmarines.htm stated that "a larger second expedition, including the U.S. Army's 9th Infantry Regiment, had rescued the Seymour expedition and secured Tientsin as a logistical base for a move on Peking. Further reinforcements, including the Army's 14th Regiment, then arrived. On 5 August (solar calendar), a multinational force of over 14,000 troops began moving up the Pei Ho River."

<http://www.history.navy.mil/faqs/faq86-1.htm> stated that "The allied powers worked to assemble a stronger force, and on 5 August 1900, it departed Tientsin with 20,000 men, including 2,000 Americans (over 500 of these were U.S. Navy Sailors and Marines). After fighting two major battles against huge Chinese forces, the relief force reached the foreign legations at Peking on 14 August".

In Peking, one month earlier, a truce had ensued between Manchu and foreign legations, lasting from July 15th (solar calendar) to July 28th (solar calendar). Cixi rebuked General Dong Fuxiang for offending Rong-lu on the matter of borrowing Germany-made cannons for attacks on British embassy. Dong Fuxiang had only so-called 'tu pao' or 'raw cannons' at his disposal. Rong-lu secretly instructed a cannon officer to bombard the empty yard at the back of the British embassy. Cixi secretly ordered Rong-lu to prepare gifts for the embassies and relayed a message to King Ruijun-wang to console the minister-envoys. Rong-lu had been sending fruits, vegetables and ammunitions to the embassy whenever there was a ceasefire. Cixi also decreed that senior Manchu official, Li Hongzhang, be conferred the post of governor-general for Zhili for sake of peace talks with eight allied nations. King Ruijun-wang, hearing of Cixi's change of attitude, instructed Li Bingheng in spreading vilification in front of Cixi that Xu Jingcheng and Yuan Chang had revised Cixi's decrees. Xu Jingcheng and Yuan Chang, who had sent in three petitions to Cixi for stopping attacks on embassy as well as cracking down on boxers, would be ordered executed as traitors. (Cai Dongfan carried a full third petition by the two gentlemen in chapter 94 of his book, Qing Shi Yan-yi and commented that it was the best admonition article ever in Chinese history.) Moreover, King Ruijun-wang and Zai-lan ordered that Manchu official Li-shan and Han ethnic officials (Xu Yongyi and Lian Yuan) be executed for sympathy with foreigners.

North of Tianjin, allied forces encountered Li Bingheng's Manchu soldiers at Beicang and Yangchun. Japanese took charge in taking over Beicang. Allied forces then attacked Yangchun with three columns and took over it within half a day. Governor-general Yu-lu committed suicide. Li Bingheng committed suicide at Hexiwu after losing the fight.

On July 2nd [lc], allied army generals convened at Yangchun and decided to rest for mere one day in the hope of taking over Beijing before Manchu relief came to the capital.

On July 17th [lc], allied forces sacked Zhangjiawan. On July 18th [lc] (i.e., Aug 13th [sc]), allied forces passed Tongzhou. By the evening, Japanese attacked Chaoyangmen gate; and Russians attacked Dongzhimen [Dongbianmen?] City Gate. Manchu General Dong Fuxiang resisted the allied forces (Japanese) on July 19th at Guangqu-men City-gate. (Dong Fuxiang had led his army in

attacking British embassy for well over a month and he had earlier requested with Rong-lu for lending him Manchu cannons for bombarding the embassy. Rong-lu refused to lend the cannons. Dong Fuxiang requested for help with Cixi, but Cixi rebuked Dong Fuxiang as a bandit-turned servant.)

On basis of solar calendar, allied forces launched a general attack at Beijing on early morning of August 14th. While Japanese attacked Chaoyangmen gate and Russians attacked Dongzhimen City Gate, Americans attacked Dongbianmen and penetrated the lower-height citywall at around 11:00 am, per <http://www.secrechina.com/news/articles/4/8/14/70203.html>. (Dongbianmen city wall was about 10 meters tall, while Chaoyangmen and Dongzhimen were 20 meters tall.) navyandmarine.org claimed that "the 14th Infantry Regiment broke through to lift the siege. Later, 21 of the Marine defenders, including Daly, were awarded the Medal of Honor." Around noon, on Aug 14th [sc], British arrived at Peking and penetrated Guangqumen gate at about 2:00 pm. Russian and Japanese armies penetrated into inner city wall as well by 9:00 pm. For the whole day, Russian and Japanese incurred a loss of about 100 soldiers trying to crack the city gates.

By daybreak of July 20th (i.e., Aug 15th [sc]), the allied forces entered the city-gates of Guangqu-men, Chaoyang-men and Dongbian-men for inner city and forbidden city. Dong Fuxiang fled from the Zhuangyi-men city-gate. At 7:30 am, Americans mounted four cannons against inner city and forbidden city on top of Qianmen citywall. Empress Dowager Cixi held several 5 ministerial meetings with no consequence. By early morning of July 21st [lc] (i.e., Aug 15th [sc]), Empress Dowager Cixi, with 1000 entourage, fled towards the Xizhimen City Gate to the west after she was dissuaded from committing suicide. Empress Dowager Cixi, before fleeing the Forbidden City, ordered that Emperor Guangxu's favourite concubine, Zhen-fei, be pushed into a well for her bad influence over the emperor.

Allied forces, after breaching the Tian'anmen [heavenly peace] City Gate, would encounter fierce resistance from Manchu garrison troops at the second gate of the forbidden city. By dead of night, Manchu troops retreated inside of Wu-men City Gate and defended Mt Jingshan and Hou-men [hind gate] areas. By early morning of July 21st (i.e., Aug 16th [sc]), fire power of the allied forces destroyed the Hind City Gate. Hearing of the defeat at forbidden city, General Yan-mao [from Jilin of Manchuria] abandoned Anding-men City Gate, hence

losing all nine gates to the allied forces. Manchu forces and boxers continued the fightings with the allied forces lan by lane for one whole day. Gradually, Manchu troops were pushed to the north and west. Americans continued to attack South City Gates of the forbidden city. French and Japanese went to rescue the missionaries and converts. British occupied the Heaven Temple. By the night of Aug 15th [sc], majority of Peking fell into the allied forces.

Three Days open ransacking and pillaging ensued. Fire and arson went on for three days, destroying the destricts to the south of Dian-men Bridge, Xi-si to Xi-dan area, and Chaoyang-men Rostrum, and Qian-men Rostrum. Imperial Library, where the books were treasured by the British more than by the Chinese as writer Bei-ming stated, would be looted by the allied forces. Japanese were said to have looted 3 million taels of silver from Manchu "household ministry". (Don't propogate thee myth that Japanese soldiers had fared the best in 1900 in military desciple as a constrast with the barbarity exhibited during the 15 year war of 1931 to 1945.) Allied Forces burnt down all houses with boxer altar, shot Chinese wherever spotted, raped women and imposed incest among family members, ransacked palaces and buildings, and burnt down treasures that could not be transported out of China. Manchu coffer incurred a total loss of 60 million tales of silver. (Stupid Empress Ci-xi never made contingent plan of evacuation as Emperor Xian-feng did during the Second Opium War.) Residencies of Manchu kings were ransacked by French, Japanese and allied forces as well, including 2 million taels from King Li-wang, 3 million tale worth of treasures from Li-shan, and 0.3 million taels of silver from Bao-jun residency. Chinese losses were estimated to be around 100 million taels of silver.

Ransacking and pillaging never stopped till the evacuation the second year. Both legation officers and allied forces participated in the "massacre contest" [as Japanese did during Nanking Rape]. <http://www.secrechina.com/news/articles/4/8/14/70203.html> pointed out i) that allied forces killed 1700 "boxers" at King Zhuang-wang Residency; ii) that French had driven a crowd of Chinese into an alley where they shot to kill for 15 continuous minutes; and iii) that allied forces massacred the Chinese who were hired to bury the dead bodies. (Should not be a surprise at all to find such evil human nature among the allied forces, and current wars in Iraq, Afghanistan and Africa are no lesser cruel.)

In Peking, allied forces swelled to a total of 100,000 as a result of German

reinforcements. German Emperor [Kaizer] Wilhelm II and Alfred Graf von Waldersee, in order to loot China further, declared that war was not over with the fall of Peking. On Aug 19th 1900 [sc], Alfred Graf von Waldersee departed Berlin, on Sept 18th [sc], arrived in HK, and on Oct 17th [sc], Alfred Graf von Waldersee entered Peking with a grand ceremony by the allied force. Days earlier, while in Tianjin, Alfred Graf von Waldersee refused to see Manchu minister Li Hongzhang for truce talks.

German Commander Alfred Graf von Waldersee, who was said by Chinese lackey to have restrained German army's pillage as a result of sleeping with a 'distinguished prostitute' called Sai Jinhua, organized sweeping campaigns throughout the Peking outskirts, reaching as far as Shanhaiguan Pass and Qinhuangdao in the northeast, Baoding & Zhengding areas, and Shanxi border areas to the west. On Sept 30th 1900 [sc], Alfred Graf von Waldersee led allied forces, mostly from his 20000 German soldiers, to Shanhaiguan Pass and Qinhuangdao for sake of frustrating Russian's ambition as well as securing the coastal city as logistics center. Near Shanhaiguan Pass, Germans and Japanese were shot into photos in their executions of Chinese "boxers". In Tianjin, on Oct 12th [sc], Alfred Graf von Waldersee mobilized French, British and Italian armies for a campaign against Baoding to the south, and occupied Baoding 10 days later. Alfred Graf von Waldersee ordered ransacking throughout Baoding city, with pillaging extended to Zhengding, Wanxian, Yongqing, Laishui and Yizhou counties. To the north, Alfred Graf von Waldersee organized Austrian and Italian armies in campaigning against Zhangjiakou, pillaging Zhangjiakou and through the counties of Changping, Huailai, Yan'qing, and Xuanhua for over 20 days. To the west, Alfred Graf von Waldersee mounted a campaign against Shanxi Prov in Jan-April [sc] of 1901. With French participating, Alfred Graf von Waldersee attacked Guangchang, Wutai, Niangziguan and took over the two passes of Niangziguan and Guguan.

Meanwhile, Russians dispatched six columns of cavalry through Manchuria. Alfred Graf von Waldersee, after weighing Russian ambition for Manchuria, objected to water-melon partitioning as well as called off Kaiser Wilhelm II's original plan for securing coastal Yantai as German sphere of influence. German commander Alfred Graf von Waldersee was said to have quit the idea of conquering China after measuring the size of Chinese males going through a city gate to derive a conclusion that still too many physically-fit Chinese were available to cause trouble for the invasion forces. Chinese lackies and traitors,

who know no shame in eulogizing Chinese women's export to the West and US, still cited prostitute Sai Jinhua as a show of "patriotism". (In today's China, hordes of shameless prostitutes, at least 6 million strong as China had acknowledged to World Health Organization, had bought visas to America with apparent acquiesce of American consulate officials and continued their shameless dealings, as evidenced by their massage advertizings in major metropolitan newspapers in US.)

Li Hongzhang relied upon the Russians in exerting pressure on the Germans. On the night of April 17th [sc], Alfred Graf von Waldersee and prostitute Sai Jinhua were said to have jumped out of their bed when fire broke out in Yilundian Palace inside of the Forbidden City. Alfred Graf von Waldersee's attache tactician died inside of asbestos-made mosquito tent during the fire. In May [sc], Alfred Graf von Waldersee reported to Germany for a termination of "allied force command center" as well as evacuation of "German Relief Expedition Force". Alfred Graf von Waldersee left Peking on June 3rd [sc] and later died in Honover three years later.

Boxers' turmoils, concluded by the 'Xin Chou Treaty' or the 'Boxer Protocol of 1901' on Sept 7th of 1901 (solar calendar) with 11 (not 8) countries, would cause China a loss of 450,000,000 taels of silver which was to accrue to 982,000,000 taels with interests included throughout the installments for 39 years. (In 1943, 'Boxer Protocol' was nullified after a total payment of 670 million taels of silver.) The damages to China's spirits were unsurpassed in history, and the Chinesees people had to endure 39 years of hardship and disasters, only to sustain another round of sufferings during the 1937-1945 Japanese Invasion. Details of boxers movements and allied invasions will be covered in the section [boxers.htm](#)

'Boxer Protocol of 1901' also spelled out the terms i) allowing foreign military forces to be stationed in the capital and coastal area; ii) prosecuting government officials for their role in the boxer rebellion; iii) suspending arms imports into the country for two years; iv) dismantling battery at Dagukou and fortifications along Tianjin-Peking line; v) suspending examinations for implicated ministries for five years; vi) dispatching special emiisary to Japan and Germany for condoling the deaths of embassy personnel; vii) rebuilding foreigners' tombs; viii) decreeing that no anti-foreign acts or speech be allowed. The figure of 450,000,000 taels of silver was imposed on China by the allied

powers to mean an insult: every one single Chinese, as a member of the 450,000,000 population, must pay one tael or ounce of silver.

Russo-Japanese War Over Manchuria

Being forced to give back Liaodong Peninsula, Japan hastened its steps in strengthening its military capabilities for confrontation with Russia. Japan, with more than double its previous army recruits, launched an attack at Russians in 1905. Japan defeated Russians both on land and on sea. In Manchuria, Japan took over Port Arthur (Luushun) from Russia, and in Tsushima Straits, Japan defeated Russian fleet. Further, Japan invaded Sakhalin Island [Kuyedao].

Rise of Yuan Shi-kai (Continued)

In 1901, Yuan Shi-kai succeeded the posts of North-Sea Minister and Zhili Prov Governor-General that were historically held by Li Hongzhang. After taking over Li Hongzhang's posts, he built an army that knew only following Yuan's order, not Manchu's.

Among his protege would be: i) his relatives and pals, including Yuan Naikuan and Zhang Zhenfang, ii) Li Hongzhang disciples graduated from "*Beiyang Wubei Xuetang*" (i.e., North-Sea Military Academy), including the Big Three (Wang Shizhen, Duan Qirui and Feng Guozhuang) and second-level generals (Duan Zhigui, Cao Kun, Li Chun, Wang Zhanyuan, Lu Jianzhuang, Yang Yongde, Lu Yongxiang, Bao Guiqing and Zhang Huaizhi); and iii) Huai-jun officers, including Jiang Guiti, Zhang Xun, Ni Sichong and Meng Enyuan. Yuan Shi-kai set up various military schools for training officers, and out-of-province officers or overseas-graduated (Japan, e.g.) students were rarely recruited. By 1906, Baoding Officers' Academy was established. Graduates staffed all six 'zhen' (i.e., corps or division) of North-Sea (Northern) Armies. Other than military posts, Yuan Shi-kai referred Zhu Jiabao, Qi Yaolin, Sun Baoqi, Zhang Xiluan, Zhao Bingjun and Yang Shiqi etc for various important cabinet-level minister posts or provincial-level military posts. Yuan's best pal, Xu Shichang, was recommended for the posts of "*shang shu*" (secretariat) and "*junji dachen*" (minister in charge

of army) and governor for three provinces of Manchuria etc. North of the Huai River would be under Yuan's direct control.

Beginning from 1905, Yuan Shi-kai identified himself with the 'constitution proponents' and pressured Manchu government into adopting this approach. In 1906, Zheng Xiaoxu, Zhang Jian and Tang Shouqian declared the founding of 'public society for preparation of constitutional government' in Shanghai and called upon Manchu government to adopt constitutional government. Yuan Shi-kai expressed support for the movement and recommended Yang Du to Empress Dowager Xitaihou (Ci-xi) for interpreting the meaning of constitutional government. Newspapers across the nation praised Yuan Shi-kai as the 'giant hand opening up China for civilization'.

Even though Yuan was deprived of his posts in 1908, he indirectly influenced the Manchu court through his cronies. When Wuchang Uprising broke out, Manchu Regent had to recall Yuan Shi-hai for sake of mobilizing the armies to crack down on the revolutionary government in Wuchang.

Assassinations & Uprisings

China should thank three bands of revolutionaries for the overthrow of the Manchu and emergence of the Republic, namely, Sun Yat-sen's Cantonese Band, Tao Chengzhang's Zhejiang Band, and Song Jiaoren's Hubei-Hunan Band. Looking back in history, one would have to be moved by the great sacrifice and courage of southern Chinese, especially those of Zhejiang Prov where people carried the spirits of "King Goujian Restoring Statehood" over two thousand five hundred years ago. Note in ancient times, Zhejiang people used to carry swords all the time in the similar belligerent fashion as Japanese samurai.

Sun Yat-sen [i.e., Sun Zhongshan] devoted himself to the cause of rescuing China after the 1885 defeat in Franco-Chinese War over Vietnam. Sun Yat-sen, together with three classmates, i.e., Chen Shaobai, You Shaokua and Yang Heling, had formed so-called 'four bandits' for their belligerency of talks at the school. In HK, Sun Yat-sen studied medicine at Heh Qi's school. While in HK, Sun Yat-sen encountered reformist Zheng Guanying (1842-1922) who later authored 14 volumes of admonition book entitled "*Sheng Shi Wei Yan*" (i.e., precarious talks in a prosperous world). Zheng Guanying advocated parliament,

military apparatus and industry-commerce development. Zheng Guanying once blasted Macao's 200+ coolie trafficking firms, accusing Portuguese government of making one dollar for tax and two dollars for bribery with each Chinese coolie abducted and sold overseas. From 1847 to 1875, 99149 out of 150000 coolies sold to Cuba departed from Macau. In June 1894, Sun Yat-sen was encouraged by Zheng Guanying for a tour of the West, and Zheng Guanying wrote a letter of recommendation for Sun Yat-sen to see Sheng Xuanhuai in Peking. In this year, Cai Yuanpei, who obtained "jing shi" title in imperial exam two years before, would be admitted to imperial library as so-called "han lin". Weng Tonghe, the imperial tutor, had high remarks for Cai Yuanpei.

Dr. Sun Yat-sen, seeing the debacles of Manchu armies on Korean battlefield, organized 'Xing Zhong Hui', i.e., 'Society For Reviving China' (Society to Revive China), in Honolulu on Nov 24th 1894 (Oct per lunar calendar). Sun Yat-sen secretly set up a firm (Qianheng-hang Firm) in HK and a peasants' society in Guangzhou (Canton) for sake of armed rebellion. Jiang Yongjing pointed out that Sun Yat-sen, against the objection of Zheng Shiliang, during the course of establishing "*Xing Zhong Hui*"'s HK branch in 1895, had yielded the HK branch president post to Yang Quyun and did not succeed it till 1899. (Note that Sun Yat-sen served Yang Quyun as a secretary for one year.)

In 1895, Sun Yat-sen launched First Canton Uprising but it was quelled by Manchu due to disclosure of the scheme. This uprising was financed by the donations from overseas Chinese in Hawaii and HK. Canton customs office intercepted a batch of rifles and ammunition that Sun Yat-sen sent over from HK. Numerous comrades, including Lu Haodong, Qiu Si and Zhu Guiquan, sacrificed their lives, and as many as 70 people were arrested. (Lu Haodong, before his execution death, had recalled how he had met Sun Yat-sen in Canton after a trip to Shanghai and how he was persuaded into revolution rather than reformation after debating with Sun Yat-sen for days about "curing the 'ben' [cause] of illness instead of curing the 'biao' [symptom] of illness".)

Sun Yat-sen retreated to HK where he was expelled by the British authorities, with a prohibition to return within five years. Sun Yat-sen, Chen Shaobai and Zheng Shiliang sailed for Yokohama of Japan, and then went on to Honolulu, US and Europe. Initially, overseas Chinese had lukewarm attitudes towards armed rebellion. For the time period of 1895-1898, in Japan, Sun Yat-sen had served as secretary to Yang Quyun for about one year. (Yang Quyun, forgotten

mostly by history after his assassination death, was a forerunner revolutionary who had deep support from his Japanese friends, including Inukai Tsuyoshi who later became Japanese prime minister. In 1921, Chiang Kai-shek promised to his wife Chen Jieru that he would make Sun Yat-sen the only "guardian-god" of the Republic of China should he rise to power, and later, Chiang Kai-shek tried to destroy the photos and film of Sun Yat-sen standing behind Yang Quyun by bribing Japanese.)

Sun Yat-sen left America for Britain and got arrested by Manchu agents in London. With the help of a British clerk at Chinese legation and a British sympathizer called Kang-de-li (James Cantlie), Manchu embassy released Sun Yat-sen. This arrest made Sun Yat-sen a de facto revolutionary leader. The abduction story is like this: On Sept 30th of 1896, Sun Yat-sen arrived in Liverpool, Britain, without knowing that Manchu emissary to US had already wired over his trace to the Manchu legation in London. On Oct 1st, Sun visited Dr. James Cantlie who once taught Sun medicine science in HK. Per Huang Yuhe (J.Y. Wong)'s account ("*Truth of Kidnap of Sun Yat-sen In London*", lianjing publishing house, Taipei, Taiwan, Oct 1998), Sun disappeared on Oct 11th, and beginning from Oct 17th, Cantlie received several tips (both from anonymous legation clerk and from known senders such as a British female housekeeper inside the legation) stating that Sun had been abducted into Manchu legation. J.Y. Wong studied the statements of Manchu-hired British clerk (Sir S. Halliday Macartney), Manchu legation chief, and Sun Yat-sen's private talks with his comrades, and concluded that Sun Yat-sen entered the legation by himself after encountering a Guangdong native who worked inside of the legation. Under the pressure of the British government and the news media, Manchu legation, which failed to secure a ship for shipping Sun Yat-sen back to China as a disguised psychic patient, would release Sun Yat-sen on Oct 23rd.

Sun Yat-sen continued to propagate revolution among overseas Chinese in America, Japan and Britain. Sun stated that while he received support from just couple hundreds of people in 1895, he had popular support by 1900. Another uprising, Huizhou Uprising of 1900, also failed. This uprising was financed by the funds collected by a HK comrade called Li Jitang. Sun Yat-sen, in august of 1900, staged Huizhou Uprising from Taipei of Taiwan on the initial promise by Japanese governor general Araya that Japan agreed to help Sun Yi-Sen in revolution. But in October, Japanese changed mind, and Zheng Shiliang [Zhang Shi-liang] failed in the uprising in San Chow district in Hui Chow. (Zheng

Shiliang was killed in a Manchu plot later in 1901.) Meanwhile, Shi Jianru, a friend of Sun Yat-sen, was killed by Manchu for trying to assassinate De-shou the Manchu governor for Liang-guang (i.e., Guangdong & Guangxi provinces). Shi Jian-ru and four comrades dug a tunnel to the governor general's office, placed explosives, but merely shook De-shou off his bed. Elsewhere in the country, Tang Caichang, a monarchist, died in trying to assassinate Zhang Zhidong the Manchu governor for Hunan Prov. Wan Fuhua and Huang Xing failed to assassinate Manchu King Guihu-wang (Zhi-chun), and Huang Xing fled to Japan.

In AD 1898. Russia forced China into leasing Port Arthur. During the 1900 Boxer Rebellion, Russia occupied Manchuria and slaughtered Chinese in batches. Empress Dowager Cixi's government, under the pressure of both reformers and revolutionaries, would murmur reform in 1901. On Jan 29th, Manchu court pronounced "xin zheng" [i.e., Manchu new administration], decreeing i) that "eight-part stereotyped essay" be abolished from 1902 onward; ii) that provincial governments should select and dispatch students for overseas studies; and iii) that grand school, middle school and elementary school be established in capitals of provincial, prefecture and county levels, respectively. Tao Chengzhang, who entered Peking twice in 1900 and 1901 in contemplation of assassinating empress dowager, was sponsored by Cai Yuanpei for overseas studies in Japan in 1902.

Japanese newspapermen, who witnessed Russian killing and pillaging in Manchuria in 1903, claimed that "The Han ethnic Chinese men of Manchuria would be killed off by Russians within 3 years, the country of China would be gone within 10 years, and the race of Chinese would be gone within 100 years" (See Chen Tianhua's Bell That Alarms China).

In March 1902, Cai Yuanpei established "China Education Society" in Shanghai, and in Oct, established "Patriotic Women School" and "Patriotic Society". In 1902, in Tokyo, Zhang Taiyan [aka Zhang Binglin] and Qin Lishan established "Guangfu-gui" (i.e., Restoration Society), also known as "Fugu-hui" (i.e., society for restoring antiquity), in memoration of China's fall to barbarians for 242 years. Fu Guoyong, at <http://www.secretchina.com/news/articles/3/11/14/55145.html>, stated that Restoration Society derived from "Zhejiang Society" of 1900. Restoration Society would produce such renowned figures as Zhang Taiyan, Cai Yuanpei, Tao

Chengzhang, Xu Xilin, Qiu Jin, Lu Xun, Xu SHouchang, Fan AIhong, Ma Zonghan, Chen Boping, Gong Baoquan, Shen Junru, Chu Fucheng, Jiang Fangzhen, Chen Shutong, Zhang Gong, Zhao Sheng, Xiong Chenji, Li Xiehe, Wen Shengcai and Wu Yue. No less than 5000 revolutionaries had participated in uprising and assassinations, and they were either arrested and executed or went in exile for the ten year time period.

Su Manshu, later revolutionary-monk, enrolled in Waseda University in 1902. Earlier, Su Manshu had joined "youth society" under the influence of Feng Ziyou. Altogether, Chinese students numbered 1500 in Japan, including both private and governmentally-funded. (13 Chinese students were first sent to Japan by Manchu government in 1896, and the numbers reached 100 in 1900, 600 in 1902, 1300 in 1904, and 8000 in 1905-6.) Also in Tokyo, in June 1902, Manchu envoy-minister to Japan, Cai Jun, refused to provide "affidavit" for nine Chinese students to study in Japan's "Hu [tiger] Cheng [city] School", a military prep school that Japan first established in 1898 for enrolling overseas students. (Manchu-Japan had, later in 1904, devised a regulation stating that non-Manchu-funded students could not be enrolled in military schools.) Cai Jun asked Japan for help in expelling Wu Jingheng for leading a sitting-in protest inside of Manchu legation. In 1903, Sun Yat-sen opened a military school (? doubtful in my opinion) in Tokyo and first propounded the slogan of 'restoring China and establishing the Republic'. Su Manshu related accounts pointed out that Heh Xiangning had confirmed that Sun Yat-sen, before departing for America at the turn of summer-autumn, had left instructions that overseas Chinese students in Japan should practice pistol shooting. Heh Xiangning claimed that Liao Zhongkai, herself, Su Manshu and Li Zhongshi were in charge of shooting practice. Su Manshu, after return to China in late 1903, compiled a book about assassins around the world. (Three years earlier, Su Manshu won the praise from Liang Qichao for the claim that he would be the modern "Jing Ke", i.e., the assassin who attempted on Qin Dynasty First Emperor Shihuangdi in vain.)

In Tokyo, in April 1903, over 500 Chinese students, including 12 female students, under Lian Tianwei [a cadet from Japan's infantry cadet academy], organized "student army" in the name of "righteous and brave army for resisting Russians" as a result of continuous Russian occupation of Manchuria since 1900 boxer incident. Su Manshu, who transferred to military prep school in early 1903, joined the "righteous and brave army for resisting Russians"

which Manchu government deemed anti-government. Manchu envoy-minister to Japan Cai Jun asked Japan intervene in dismissing the band. Thereafter, Liang-bi of Manchu infantry ministry established a so-called "Committee for Qing Country Students Who Study Infantry Military Subjects In Japan" in cooperation with Japanese government, culminating in "Zhenwu Academy" [4th session onward till 1911], a military prep academy similar to "Hu Cheng Academy" [1st, 2nd & 3rd sessions].

In May 1903, Zou Rong wrote "*Ge Ming Jun*" (i.e., revolutionary army or ranks) to propagate changes in Shanghai, with Zhang Binglin authoring the preface. Zou Rong and Zhang Binglin were both arrested by the extraterritory police, i.e., so-called "*Subao Newspaper*" Incident. Zou Rong, in fact, surrendered himself after learning that Zhang Binglin was taken into custody. Zou Rong, sentenced to two years in prison, later died inside the prison. After the banning of "*Subao Newspaper*" [i.e., Suzhou-he River Newspaper], Zhang Shizhao established "guo min ri ri bao" [i.e., "National Citizen Daily Daily Newspaper"] to continuously attack Manchu government. Su Manshu translated French masterpieces into Chinese for publication on this paper, including Victor Hugo's "Les Miserables". After the closure of "National Citizen Daily Daily Newspaper" on Dec 3rd 1903, Su Manshu went to work for Chen Shaobai's "China Daily Newspaper" in HK for a short while.

Sun Yat-sen, while preaching to overseas Chinese in Hawaii in Dec 1903, cited the humiliations of the Boxer Protocol and the 1900 defeat of Manchu government by 20,000 foreign soldiers. Sun Yat-sen called upon replicating USA's system in China. In the autumn of 1904, Sun Yat-sen adopted the combination of the republic and China in an article. Also in autumn, Tang Jiyao, as one of 100 Yunnan Prov overseas students, arrived in Japan where he changed his major to 'infantry' from 'sciences'.

In 1904, Tao Chengzhang returned to China and exerted his efforts in rebuilding secret societies in Zhejiang Prov. In Changsha of Hunan Prov, Huang Xing and Zhang Ji persuaded Su Manshu into a stay as an English language teacher at "Enterprise School". Su Manshu just returned from a pilgrimage trip to South East Asia, with financing from his English language teacher Zhuang-xiang, i.e., a Spaniard priest who, at age of seventy year plus at the time, intended to marry his 20 year old daughter to the revolutionary-monk.

Also in 1904, Russo-Japanese War broke out with a surprise attack on Port Arthur by the Japanese fleet. The next year, defeated on land and sea, Russia ceded to Japan Port Arthur, the southern portion of the Manchurian Railway, and the southern half of Sakhalin Island under the terms of the Treaty of Portsmouth. In the winter of 1904, Restoration Society was established in Shanghai, with Cai Yuanpei made into the president as a result of Zhang Taiyan's imprisonment. Restoration Society proposed the slogan of "restoring our Han ethnicity and returning our mountains and rivers".

In March of 1905, Shanghai Cathay University dissolved over foreign lecturers' change of curriculum. Manchu government dispatched five ministers on an inspection trip across European nations in 1905. On the original departure date, a revolutionary by the name of Wu Yue (from Tongcheng of Anhui Prov) died by exploding himself in the attempt of assassinating the five ministers at the train station. In the same year, Hu Ying (from Hunan Prov) and Wang Han (from Hubei Prov) followed Manchu "*qin cai*" or imperial inspector Tie-liang all the way to the north, and Wang Han committed suicide after failing to find a chance to assassinate Tie-liang.

In July of 1905, Sun Yat-sen arrived in Japan from France. On Aug 13th, Sun Yat-sen made a speech at a reception held by overseas students in Japan and called for establishment of republic via revolution. On Aug 20th of 1905 (solar calendar), Sun Yat-sen, who reportedly had spent idle time in Japan after losing his brave men in prior uprisings, was supported by Huang Xing for organizing "*Tong Meng Hui*" (i.e., 'Allied Society of China' or 'Revolutionary Alliance') in Japan, with a slogan calling for expelling of the Tartars and restoration of our China. About 400 students joined the secret society. Tang Jiyao and about 40 Yunnan Prov students also joined. Tang Jiyao, who actively participated in revolutionary publications and societies, also joined Huang Fu's "*Iron & Blood Great Men Society*" ['zhang fu hui'], i.e., a small circle of 41 cadet students who later became the nucleus of provincial military leaders during 1911 uprising. (Sun Yat-sen was said to have special instruction that 'zhang fu hui' membership be restricted and hidden for sake of infiltration into Manchu military establishment.)

Three months later, on Nov 26th, Sun first expounded his Three People-ism (i.e., Three People's Principles in regards to nationalism, civil rights and populace life) on newspaper "*Min Bao*". (Li Ao, the critic of KMT, claimed that it

was Huang Xing who had saved Sun Yat-sen's political career.) Sun Yat-sen first adopted the term "*guomin geming*" or 'national revolution' for distinction from "*pingmin geming*" or 'ordinary people/banditry revolution'.

With "*Tong Meng Hui*", Sun Yat-sen incorporated Huang Xing/Song Jiaoren's Hubei comrades and Zhang Binglin's Zhejiang comrades and made the revolution a multi-province movement. For the first time, revolutionary ranks included overseas students and intellectuals spanning multiple provinces other than professional chivalry fighters. "*Tong Meng Hui*", with the requirement of an oath to the heaven, had been touted as the turning point in China's revolution, and Jiang Yongjing attributed multiple-province members recruited and disciplined in Japan to the success of domino-effect provincial independence during 1911 Xin Hai Revolution. Fu Guoyong claimed that Zhang Binglin's Zhejiang comrades joined Allied Society of China on individual basis since the leaders of the Restoration Society were all in Shanghai.

In Nov 1905, Japan announced the revocation of regulations in regards to overseas students from China and Korea. Chinese students mounted protests for Japan's lumping China together with enslaved Korea. Some radical students proposed a return to China. Tang Jiyao advocated for abstinence for sake of finishing studies while seeking peaceful solution to Japan's reversing its discriminatory policy. On Dec 8th, Chen Tianhua jumped into Yokohama Bay in protest of Japanese government's revoking Chinese overseas students' privilege. Over 200 students returned to China.

Per Jiang Yongjing (page 41 of "*Hundred Year Land-Sea Ebb History of KMT*", 1993 edition, zhuanji wenxue publishing house, Taipei, Taiwan), "*Tong Meng Hui*" possessed 956 recorded names in the timeframe of 1905-1906, with majority members at age 20-25, and members came from all Chinese provinces except for Gansu Prov. In Japan, "*Tong Meng Hui*" engaged in newspaper debates with monarchist Liang Qichao and within half a year drove monarchist newspaper into bankruptcy. In Singapore and HK, revolutionaries outweighed monarchists in propoganda field, too.

On May 30th 1906, Tang Jiyao graduated from Zhenwu Military School, and in June, went into practical training in a cannons unit of Japanese 9th division-conglomerate. One year later, Tang Jiyao, as 6th session cadet, would continue on with his studies in cannons at Japanese Infantry Cadet Academy.

On June 29th 1906, Zhang Binglin was released from prison, and Sun Yat-sen dispatched messenger to have him fetched to Japan. Zhang Binglin was put in charge of "*Min Bao*" newspaper. In 1906, on first year's anniversary, "*Tong Meng Hui*" proclaimed 'Long Live The Republic of China !' In Sept 1906, Su Manshu travelled to Japan, with Chen Duxiu on the same ship. In this year, Zhang Jingjiang and Wu Zhihui established 'world society' in France and introduced writings by various Western thinkers including Marx. Also in this year, Tao Chengzhang was supported as "da du du" (i.e., grand governor-general) for five Yangtze Delta provinces in preparation for an uprising. On Dec 6th of 1906, in Ping-Liu area of Jiangsu Prov, Gong Chuntai rebelled against Manchu rule in the name of the "Nanking Vanguard Column of the Army of the Republic of China", with the term ROC officially pronounced inside of China. Jiang Yongjing estimated that "*Tong Meng Hui*" had conducted 24 uprisings from 1905 to 1911, with Sun Yat-sen participating in organization 8 times, and that prior to 1905, "*Xing Zhong Hui*" had conducted 2 uprisings and the rest of parties 5 times.

In 1906, Manchu government would declare that they would adopt Japan and Britain's system (i.e., "constitutional monarchy" with royal house and Parliament) nine years later. They would agree to 'political reform' beginning from 1907. In 1907, Huanggang Uprising broke out and over two hundred revolutionaries were killed. In this year, Xu Xilin (from Shanyin of Zhejiang Prov) assassinated Manchu governor En-ming and later was executed at age 35 with heart torn out in front of En-ming's sacrificial altar. Famous heroine, Qiu Jing, from Shaoxing of Zhejiang Prov, died in the same wave of uprising.

Both Xu Xilin and Qiu Jin belonged to the Restoration Society. Fu Guoyong claimed that Xu Xilin refused to join Sun Yat-sen's Allied Society and differentiated himself from Sun Yat-sen during Manchu interrogation. Xu Xilin, son of a wealthy merchant, had at one time obtained the 'xiu cai' prefecture level scorer in the imperial exam and later established two schools for men and women respectively. During a visit to Japan, he got acquainted with Tao Chengzhang. In 1904, he was admitted into Restoration Society at the invitation of Cai Yuanpei and Tao Chengzhang. In 1905, Xu Xilin and Tao Chengzhang established Datong Normal College. After return from Japan, he obtained a post as a police lecturer under Governor En-ming in spring of 1907.

With divulson of scheme, he pulled ahead uprising in the name of Republic Era 2752th Year (dating from Duke Zhougong & Duke Zhaogong Era), with Chen Bopin killed in action and Ma Zonghan captured at the same time. Qiu Jin was a chilvaric woman who wrote numerous poems expressing her desire for sacrifice on behalf of China, and she often carried a Japanese sabre whenever she went while in Japan. Qiu Jin arrived in Japan in 1904 after a divorce and participated in numerous organization activities. After Chen Tianhua's suicide in late 1905, Qiu Jin and all Chinese students departed for China under Japan's order of "Regulations In Regards To Termination of Manchu Overseas Students". In 1906, Qiu Jin published "*China Women Newspaper*" in Shanghai. She organized eight columns of so-called "Guangfu-jun", i.e., Restoration Army. On July 13th 1907, she refused to seek asulym after hearing of Xu Xilin's failure in Anqing Uprising. On July 15th, Qiu Jin was executed in Shaoxing of Zhejiang Prov, and county magistrate later committed suicide to show his admiration for the heroine.

On March 4th 1907, Japanese government expelled Sun Yat-sen at the request of the Manchu government. Owing to Sun Yat-sen's monopolization of Japanese donation, Zhang Taiyan proposed a censure against Sun Yat-sen. Meantime, Liu Shiwei advocated for a re-organization of Allied Society. Around 1907, Manchu government established "tongguo [nationwide] lujun [infantry] sucheng [fast track] xuetang [academy]" in Baoding of Hebei Prov which both Zhang Qun & Chiang Kai-shek attended.

On Nov 14th & 15th 1908, Empress Dowager Cixi and Emperor Guangxu died, consecutively. (Emperor Guangxu was said to have been poisoned by Empress Dowager Cixi before her death. <http://www.secrechina.com/news/articles/4/8/26/70931.html> carried a list of reports by Shanghai's "*Shen Bao*" newspaper in regards to emperor's health ranging from June 14th to Nov 16th.) Manchu Emperor Xuantong (Aixinjueluo Pu-yi, r. 1909-1911) got enthroned. In April 1908, revolutionaries launched Hekou Uprising in Yunnan Province. Tens of thousands of overseas students and Chinese celebrated Yunnan independence in Tokyo. Later, Manchu court suspended government funding for those students who played an active role in the relief activity to Hekou Uprising. (From 1907 to 1908, revolutionaries launched altogether eight uprisings that would include May 1907 Chaozhou [Chao Chow] Uprising in Guangdong [by Yu Chou , Cheng Yong-bo & Yu Tong], Huizhou Uprising in Guangdong by Deng Zi-yu, July 1907 Ching-Cho Uprising in

Guangdong by Fung Chung, Oct 1907 Zhennanguan [Zheng-Nan-Quang] Uprising on Vietnam-Guangxi border by Wang Ho-shun, and Qin-Lian Revolt by Huang Xing [Huang Ge-qiang].)

Also in 1908, Anqing Soldier Rebellion broke out, and over three hundred revolutionaries were killed in Anhui Province. Xiong Chengji, a member under Restoration Society, was responsible for this action. (Xiong Chengji was an officer inside of cannons battalion, and led his soldiers for an uprising to avenge Xu Xilin's death by taking advantage of imperial mourning. He, later in Jan 1910, fled to Harerbin of Manchuria where he was caught after a betrayal and got executed at age 24 without kneeling down in Jilin on Feb 27th.) On Dec 1st 1908, Tang Jiyao graduated from Japanese Infantry Cadet Academy, with diploma conferred by Japanese emperor at the ceremony. (198 cadets of 6th session were Chinese, including Wang Zhaoji, Li Genyuan, Liu Cunhou, Luo Peijin, Yan Xishan, Sun Chuanfang, Lu Xiangting, Zhou Yinren, Tang Jiyao, Li Liejun, Yin Changheng, Zhang Fenghui and Cheng Qian. Among 6th session graduates of Japan Cadet, Yunnan Province would boast of Tang Jiyao, Luo Peijin, Li Genyuan, Liu Zuwu, Zhao Fuxiang, Li Hongxiang, Ye Quan, Zhang Kairu, Xie Ruyi and Gu Pingzhen.)

In 1909, Tao Chengzhang had an argument with Sun Yat-sen in Southeast Asia over the matter of fund raising and appropriation, and listed 14 crimes that Sun Yat-sen had committed. Tao Chengzhang re-organized Restoration Society with Zhang Taiyan and Li Xiehe. In Paris, Zhang Jingjiang [Chang Ching-chiang], in 1909, gained Sun Yat-sen's confidence by donating half of his Paris assets. In this year, two sisters, Yi Weijun and Yi Ruizhi, both students of martyress Qiu Jin, attempted assassination by going to Peking.

Reform consultancy committees (i.e., provincial viceregal assemblies) were set up for 'show' in all provinces in 1909. By 1910, delegates of the provincial reform consultancy committees joined in a national body at Peking, trying to hasten up parliamentary reform. However, the new Manchu royal house still adopted a policy of absolving Han ethnic officials, and they deprived Yuan Shikai (Yüan Shih-k'ai) of his military post. (It was said that late Emperor Guangxu had left a will that his successor avenge on Yuan for the treachery, but Guangxu's brother absolved Yuan by merely depriving him of his military posts.) In July of this year, Jiang Ang'hu authored anarchism booklet in Belgium, and Mao Zedong first read Liang Qi-chao's "*Xin Min Ye Bao*" newspaper and began to

revere Kang You-wei/Liang Qi-chao as well as Zeng Guofan. In Nanking, on June 1st, Manchu China held China's First World's Fair for six months, while some American wrote that "the education of hundreds of Chinese students in America and Europe, with their constantly increasing numbers, and such significant enterprises as this Nanking exposition, are more vitally related to permanent things. They are among the real factors in the healthy development of international relations, and are a promise of a mutual understanding and a cordial cooperation between China and the Western nations that will result in substantial advantage to both."

In 1910, Tao Chengzhang re-organized the Restoration Society among Zhejiang Prov natives and supported Zhang Taiyan [aka Zhang Binglin] as the president. Also in 1910, Wang Zhaoming (i.e., Wang Jingwei from Anhui Prov) returned from Japan, and he invited Huang Shuzhong and Luo Shixun in assassination of Manchu Regent Zai-feng. Wang Zhaoming etc were absolved from death and while at prison, Chen Bijun often saw him and they later got married. Wang Jingwei conducted this assassination as a countering stance as to accusations that Sun Yat-sen's clique knew only to push young men to death. Chen Bijun, daughter of a rich Southeastern Asian Chinese merchant, tore apart her British passport in Japan and followed Wang Jingwei back to China.

In October, 1910, Dr. Sun launched Second Canton Uprising. This uprising was financed by the funds of a HK merchant/comrade called Li Haiyun. (Jiang Yongjing stated that the funds for revolutionary activities between 1907 and 1908 were from overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia.) On March 29th, 1911, Dr. Sun launched Third Canton Uprising, i.e., Quang Chow revolt. Huang Xing [aka Huang Ge-qiang] pulled ahead the uprising and personally led 100 men in the revolt including main cadres like Ling Jaio-ming, Fang Sheng-dong & Ju Zhi-xin [Zhu Zhixin]. 86 revolutionaries died during this battle, with the bodies of 72 revolutionaries later collected and buried on Huanghuagang Hill [yellow flower hill] in Canton by Huang Huagong. (Jiang Yongjing stated that 29 martyrs came from overseas and the rest came from six different provinces, with backgrounds varying from students to soldiers, merchants, intellectuals, martial arts masters, workers and peasants. Jiang Yongjing stated that the funds for this uprising and martyrdom, totalling 200,000 yuan or dollars, had mostly come from overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia, North America and Japan. Majority of 500 men pre-selected for this uprising had come from HK and

Southeast Asia, a reason that KMT and Sun Yat-sen claimed that "overseas Chinese" were the mother of revolution.)

In April, 1911, Manchu royal house reorganized the cabinet, but they still retained 9 ethnic Manchu among altogether 14 members. Two brothers of the regent, Zai-Xun and Zai-Tao, were both conferred the minister posts. King Qingwang (Yi-kuang) was appointed the post of prime minister. To replace deceased Han-ethnic officials of Sun Jia'nai, Lu Chuanlin and Zhang Zhidong would be Xu Shichang as assistant to Yi-kuang. Numerous uprisings erupted throughout the nation. In July of 1911, Song Jiaoren, being unhappy over the failure of March 26th Canton Uprising and lamenting the deaths of revolutionaries in unconcerted uprisings (e.g., death of Xu Silin in Anqing, Wen Shengcai in Canton and Xiong Chengji in Manchuria), had organized a Shanghai branch of "*Tong Meng Hui*". Song Jiaoren had disagreement with Sun Yat-sen as far as Sun's heavy emphasis on southeastern Chinese coast was concerned, having proposed at one time three options for rebellions: top option around the Manchu capital, second option around the Yangtze River, and last option in Southeastern China. Shanghai branch of "*Tong Meng Hui*", with Song Jiaoren etc acting as five directors, would establish branch societies in Jiangsu, Anhui, Hunan and Hubei provinces. Another soldier uprising, Xin Hai Revolution of Oct 10th 1911, in Wuchang, Hubei Province, would mark the end of the Manchu rule in China. 16 provinces echoed Wuchang revolution by declaring independence and erecting a provisional ROC government in Nanking by late 1911. Mao Zedong, who came to attend high school at Changsha early in the spring, would read Yu Youren's "*Min Li Bao*" newspaper and later joined the New Army in Hunan Prov in the aftermath of Xin Hai Revolution.

'Retaining Railroad' Movement

Sheng Xuanhuai, Manchu minister in charge of post and transmission services, proposed to the Manchu Regent to have three major privately-financed railroads nationalized. (Under Emperor Guangxu, railroad industry was undertaken by populace privately beginning from 1896.) Sheng, previously so-called King of Railroad, with dozens of concubines and children, intended to embezzle the funds by obtaining foreign loans in the purchase of the railroads. Sheng

negotiated with Britain, US, Germany and France for loans and deposited kickbacks and commissions into his own pocket, and Sheng forcefully nationalized the railroads with minimal reimbursements to the public. Sichuan people convened for sake of 'bao lu', i.e., retaining or recovering the railroad, and 'Society of Bao-lu Comrades' was set up in four provinces of Sichuan, Hunan, Hubei and Guangdong. The slogan was 'executing Sheng Xuanhuai for pacification of people'.

Sichuan Governor-General Zhao Er'feng (nicknamed 'butcher') reported the turmoils to Peking. Sheng managed to have Regent dispatch a Manchu official by the name of Rui-fang to the south for pacifying the Sichuan people as "*tielu zongban*" (i.e., omni-official in charge of railroad). At Wuchang, Rui-fang obtained two battalions of soldiers from governor of Hubei Prov and then marched westward to Sichuan. Rui-fang stationed his troops (First Brigade of New Army) at Zizhong county of Sichuan. In Sichuan, schools and shops were closed under the 'retaining railroad' movement organized by Pu Dianjun and Zhang Lan etc. Governor-General Zhao Er'feng arrested the five gentlemen including Pu Dianjun and Zhang Lan, hence angering the populace into attacks at the governor-general office. Five civilians were killed when Zhao ordered musketeer army fired at the crowd. Across Sichuan Province, people stormed various county magistrate offices. Manchu regent promptly ordered that Cen Chunxuan go to Sichuan to help Rui-fang & Zhao Er'feng. Zhao replied to have Cen stopped for sake of keeping his governor-general post. Cen Chunxuan stayed put at Wuchang and did not leave (for Shanghai) till Wuchang Uprising broke out.

Pressured by populace as well as Rui-fang, Zhao Er'feng negotiated with Sichuan people for an autonomy of Sichuan beginning from lunar month Oct of 1911. Zhao surrendered his civil seal to Pu Boying (chief of the Sichuan consultancy committee) and military authorization to Zhu QInglan (officer in charge of the first brigade of Sichuan New Army). On Oct 18th, Chengdu city underwent a rebellion, and Zhao re-asserted himself as "*zong du*" (i.e., governor-general) and got killed later. Cai Dongfan commented that Shen Xuanhuai's railroad nationalization had led Manchu to its demise.

Wuchang Uprising & Xin Hai Revolution

Chinese saying goes that "the wind will be blowing through the whole storey-building at the time the mountain rain is to pour down". Numerous factors contributed to the overthrow of Manchu Qing Dynasty. Cai Dongfan commented that Shen Xuanhuai's railroad nationalization had led Manchu to its demise. Jiang Yongjing, in *"The Land-Sea Ebb History of KMT"*, attributed multiple-province members recruited and disciplined by *"Tong Meng Hui"* in Japan to the success of domino-effect provincial independence during 1911 Xin Hai Revolution. Late Historian Shen Yunlong, in his book *"An anthology of Events and Figures During ROC Time"*, attributed Manchu Governor-general Zhang Zhidong's launching renovative academies and military academies to the upbringing of a generation of revolutionaries. Shen Yunlong also called the attention to Manchu Qing's abolition of the imperial civil services exam as a fundamental cause in re-orienting lots of talented Confucian-apprentices towards services under Manchu Qing's re-organized New Army. (Manchu Qing had authorized Yuan Shi-kai in rebuilding the New Army on basis of "rightside martial defence column", the only remnant that survived the wars against the invasion of the Eight Allied Nations while the other four columns had been basically decimated.)

At Wuchang city, numerous secret societies were actively engaged in preparations for rebellions. This will include Rizhi-she (Sun Awareness) Society (a subordinate of Allied Society of China) and numerous allies like Gongjin-hui (together advancement), Qunzhi-xueshe (public government), Zhenwu-xueshe (reviving martialness), Wenxue-she (literature) and Gonghe-hui (republican) societies. In charge of Rizhi-she society would be Hu Ying who was a comrade of Wu Yue in assassinating five Manchu ministers and later participated in the unsuccessful assassination of Tie-liang in following Tie-liang along the Jing-han (Peking-Wuhan) Railroad. In charge of Gongjin-hui society would be Jiao Dafeng (who became the first governor-general of Hunan Prov after the revolution) and Sun Wu (who were wrongly mistaken as the brother of Sun Yat-sen). Qunzhi-xueshe Society was recruiting soldiers from the New Army and the intelligentsia; after Junzhi was destroyed by Manchu, Zhenwu-xueshe Society replaced Jun-zhi and heavily recruited soldiers from Manchu's New Army, extending to field armies, cavalry and engineering (mining) battalions, logistics unit, and military schools; succeeding Zhenwu Society would be Wenxue-she Society, with Jiang Yiwu as the chief and Zhan Dabei as the editor-in-chief of *"Da Jiang Bao"* (Great Yangtze) Newspaper. Gonghe-hui Society was an off-shoot of the same name society in Northern China, originally termed 'Duan Fa Hui' (hair cutting

society). All through lunar calendar months of July and August, leaders from "Gongjin-hui", "Wenxue-she" and Shanghai branch of "Tong Meng Hui" held meetings for preparations of an uprising. Dozens officers from various regiments of Hubei Prov's New Army attended the meeting.

Revolutionaries originally scheduled the Mid-Autumn Festival of August 1911 for uprising. Since Huang Xing, Song Jiaoren and Ju Zheng were late in coming to Wuchang, uprising was rescheduled for mid-night of lunar calendar August 18th but it was disrupted after Sun Wu was arrested by Russian patrol for mis-firing of a bomb during a test in Hankou's extraterritory. On the same night, in Wuchang, Manchu broke into Zhang Tingfu's home and arrested and executed several leaders; only Jiang Yiwu barely escaped. Manchu executed three leaders (Peng Chufan, Liu Yaocheng and Yang Hongsheng) in front of Governor-general Rui-cheng's office, and it made revolutionaries inside of Manchu's New Army units anxious for action.

The next day, August 19th (i.e., solar calendar Oct 10th of 1911), around 7 pm, in the camp of Eighth Engineering Column (i.e., Battalion), a platoon leader (Tao Qisheng) rebuked a subordinate deputy squad leader (Jin Zhaolong) and a soldier (Cheng Dingguo) for their loading bullets into rifles. In a rage, Cheng shot Tao, and then soldiers shouted "Uprising !" A group leader (squad leader equivalent), Xiong Bingkun, shot several officers and led 300 soldiers in taking over Chuwangtai weapons depot. Soldiers supported an officer (lieutenant major equivalent under battalion chief) by the name of Wu Zhaolin as the 'revolutionary general-director'.

First to answer the Eighth Engineering Battalion Uprising would be 2000 more rebels, comprising of 29th & 30th regiments under 15th brigade, 31st & 32nd regiments under 16th brigade, 41st regiment under mixed brigade, Eighth Cannon 'biao' (equiv to regiment under brigade), students from Measuring Military school, a platoon from 29th Regiment Field Army, and two columns of logistics army outside of the citywall. When cannon balls fell on the governor-general office, Governor-General Rui-cheng broke through his backyard and fled onto Warship Chuyu on the Yangtze River. The officer in charge of Eighth 'zhen' (equiv to corps or division) of Hubei New Army, Zhang Biao, major general equivalent, hearing that governor-general office was taken by 5 am of Aug 20th (Oct 11th), planned to seek asylum in Hankou's extraterritory; when a colonel-equivalent officer reported that the Eighth Logistics Battalion outside of

Pinghu-men city gate was still loyal, Zhang Biao fled there and then led this column of army away from downtown Hankou to avoid the turmoils. At daybreak, the city of Wuchang, one of the three waterfront triplet-cities of Wuhan, would be under the control of the revolutionaries.

Two revolutionaries, Ma Rong and Yang Qifa, went to invite Li Yuanhong (brigadier equivalent officer in charge of 21th Mixed Brigade) for joining revolution. (Li Yuanhong, a graduate of North-Sea Navy Academy or "*Beiyang Navy Academy*", had at one time jumped into the sea to commit suicide at the defeat of Zhongdong War. After returning to southern China from Shandong navy base, he was appreciated by Zhang Zhidong who later succeeded the governor-general post for Hunan-Hubei provinces. Zhang Zhidong offered Li Yuanhong the post as brigadier general.) They located Li Yuanhong at a counsellor's home where Li was seeking for refuge. Under the pressure, Li Yuanhong reluctantly followed Ma Rong and Yang Qifa to Chuwangtai Weapons Depot, and rebuked Wu Zhaolin (Li's one-time classmate) about rebellion against Manchu rule. Wu Zhaolin persuaded Li Yuanhong into accepting the post of leadership. Wu Zhaolin assured Li Yuanhong that revolutionary forces in the number of 100,000 were amassing under the leadership of Liu Ying at Jingshan Mountain and that Jiao Dafeng was to uprising in Hunan Province correspondingly. Xiong Bingkun assured Li Yuanhong that there were enough grains and money in the governor-general's office for spending. Li Yuanhong agreed to lead the rebels after he made the rebels agree to rulings like no random killing of Manchu and no raping of women etc.

Meanwhile, Tang Hualong, assembly chief for the Hubei Consultancy Committee, dispatched a messenger to invite Li Yuanhong etc for a meeting to organize the new military government. At 11:30 am, revolutionaries went to the consultancy committee office to meet Tang Hualong and other local gentlemen. Li Yuanhong again reluctantly accepted the post of governor-general for Hubei Province. Under the pressure of guns, Li Yuanhong issued a pacification notice to the populace. For days, Li Yuanhong procrastinated in making orders and he was nicknamed 'Li Buddha' for the passivity. By Aug 21th (Oct 12th), Chen Rui and Gan Jixi pressured Li Yuanhong into cutting the pigtail and Li Yuanhong, at the gun point, agreed to cut the hair by the next day. By Aug 26th (Oct 17th), Li Yuanhong held a ceremony of Sacrificial Proclamation to the Yellow Emperor, with the elderly white-hair Tan Renfeng personally handing over the sword and flag to Li Yuanhong. (Tan Renfeng, an old member of 'Tong Meng Gui', was

dispatched to Hubei from Hunan by the order of Sun Yat-sen.) In the name of Sun Yat-sen, Tang Hualong and Ju Zheng made a decree of the military government. The decree stated that governor-general was the highest post for both civil and military affairs of the province; that government was to have two departments, with Governor-general Li Yuanhong in charge of the military affairs and Tang Hualong in charge of civil affairs; that the military department was to have Division of Counsellors (headed by Yang Kaiji and Wu Zhaolin), Division of Orders (headed by Du Xijun), and Division of Tasks (headed by Sun Wu, Jiang Yiwu, Zhang Zhenwu and Cai Shaozhong); that the civil department was to have Division of Admin Affairs (headed by Tang Hualong and Zhang Zhiben), Division of Diplomacy (headed by Hu Ying and Wang Zhengting), and Division of Finance (headed by Hu Ruiling). Wuchang military government re-organized its army into four 'xie' (i.e., brigades), with following persons in charge, respectively: Wu Zhaolin, Li Zuodong, Cai Jimin and Xu Daming. Separately, tactics division and talents' guesthouse were set up, and soon the talents' guesthouse became the secretariat for the military government, with Yang Yueru as director and Rao Hanxiang as deputy director.

By Aug 26th (Oct 17th), Li Yuanhong held a ceremony of Sacrificial Oblation Proclamation to the Yellow Lord (Emperor). In the name of Sun Yat-sen, Tang Hualong and Ju Zheng made a decree of the military government. Wuchang military government re-organized its army and took over the sister cities of Hanyang and Hankou.

Wuchang military government then issued orders to take the sister cities of Hanyang and Hankou. Li Yuanhong ordered that Lin Weixin, a "*tong dai*" (colonel equivalent), cross the Yangtze to take over the weapons factory and the town of Hanyang. Manchu "*zhi fu*" (magistrate) fled without a fight. Lin Weixin then crossed the river to take over the town of Hankou. Wuchang military government sent diplomatic messages to consuls of various extraterritories requesting for their neutrality in exchange for protection by the military government. After securing the triplet-cities, the military government sent a wire across the nation, proclaiming the founding of the Republic of China as of the date of 4,609th year of China.

Various provinces echoed Wuchang Uprising by declaring the independence from the Manchu government. Manchu Governor for Guangxi, Shen Bingkun, consulted with Aboriginal Official (i.e., "*fan si*") Wang Zhixiang and General

(i.e., "*ti du*") Lu Rongting, and with the support of the consultancy committee, declared independence and resigned his post of general-general to Wang Zhixiang/Lu Rongting. Wang Zhixiang wired to Governor-general Zhang Mingqi of Guangdong Prov, and Zhang Mingqi, under the pressure of the consultancy committee, fled the scene. General (i.e., "*ti du*") Long Jiguang suggested that Hu Hanmin be the governor-general of independent Guangdong Prov. In Anhui Prov, Governor Zhu Jiabao fled and an official of Jiujiang City, Ma Yubao, was supported as the Governor-general of independent Anhui Prov. In Fujian Prov, New Army General Sun Daoren defeated Manchu general Pu-tao while Manchu governor-general Song-tao committed suicide.

Manchu Regent Zai-feng recalled Yuan Shi-kai for cracking down on the revolution. In Shandong Prov, Zai-feng's son-in-law, governor-general Sun Baoqi, requested with Manchu court for approval to declare a fake independence. Manchu warships in the Yangtze River, with most of Manchu captains fleeing in desertation, surrendered to the revolutionaries.

Yuan Shi-kai, after deliberate procrastinations, arrived in Peking. Yuan Shi-kai asked Dowager Empress Rongyu donate her funds to supporting the troops. Yuan Shi-kai re-organized cabinet and conferred pacifying generals for various provinces, but few candidates were willing to take the offer. In Jiangsu Prov, General Xu Shaozhen of Ninth Corps (i.e., "*zhen*") attacked Nanking's Manchu loyalists such as Zhang Renjun, Tie-liang and Zhang Xun. Yuan Shi-kai dispatched Rongyu's funds to the front and ordered that his generals, Feng Guozhang and Duan Rugui, attack Wuchang government. Feng Guozhang and Duan Rugui, with the son of Zhang Biao rebelling against the revolutionaries inside, would take over Hanyang city; Huang Xing fled the city and left for Shanghai. Meanwhile, Manchu forces were defeated in Shanxi Prov. Rui-fang was killed in Sichuan Prov. Yuan Shi-kai instructed Feng Guozhang and Duan Rugui to have a ceasefire with Wuchang government.

Wuchang Uprising broke out, Chiang Kai-shek, at the request of Chen Qimei, immediately returned to Shanghai with Zhang Qun by faking a leave of absence and then mailing uniforms back to his Japanese officer. In Shanghai, he joined the staff of Chen Qimei (Ch'en Ch'i-mei, aka Chen Yingshi) and organized 'dare-

to-die column' for recovering Shanghai from Manchu rule. On Nov 3rd 1911, Chen Qimei was arrested by Manchu while leading the attack on Manchu's Shanghai Manufacturing Bureau. The next day, revolutionaries sacked the garrison and freed Chen Qimei. Chen Qimei's crony, later in a meeting, coerced Shanghai revolutionary factions into making Chen Qimei the governor-general by means of a display of firearms at the meeting. Later in Jan 1912, Chiang Kai-shek could have personally assassinated Tao Chengzhang the leader of Restoration Society in Shanghai. One of the possible reasons would be Tao Chengzhang's refusal to distribute funds to Chen Qimei. Tao Chengzhang was said to have brought back to China large amount of money he raised in Southeast Asia at the time of Xin Hai Revolution, and he disbursed funds to Li Xiehe and Zhang Xin for recovering Shanghai and Zhenjiang, respectively. (Li Ao cited Deng Wenyi's "*Chairman Chiang Kai-shek*" in stating that Chiang Kai-shek, on Jan 14th 1912, personally shot Tao Chengzhang inside of Guangci Hospital at the order of Chen Qimei. Three days earlier, Tao Chengzhang received a letter from Sun Yat-sen demanding an explanation for Tao's 1909 accusations of 14 crimes. At the times of Chiang Kai-shek death in 1975 and Mao Tse-tung death in 1975, I read about an article in regards to Guangci Hospital murder.)

Yi Weijun and Yi Ruizhi sisters, who were heavily involved in the "Ruijun Society" (i.e., Ruijun Xueshe) under Restoration Society, participated in the attack at Zhejiang Prov's governor-general office. 17-year-old Yi Weijun personally captured the governor-general alive and later captured Yuhuatai of Nanking in Jiangsu Prov. (Yi Weijun was assassinated 6 years later by northern government.)

Fu Guoyong cited Zhang Taiyan and Sun Yat-sen correspondence in affirming the importance of Restoration Society and Li Xiehe in recovering Shanghai, Zhejiang Province and Jiangsu Province. In Zhejiang Prov, Chiang Kai-shek participated in attacking Manchu's governor-general office. Chiang also joined the Jiangsu-Zhejiang allied forces in attacking Jiangsu's provincial capital Nanking.

In Nanking, Zhang Xun's 18 battalions of pigtail armies fought an alliance of 30,000 Jiangsu-Zhenjiang revolutionaries. Zhang Xun stopped fighting after receiving Yuan Shi-kai's wire stating that no relief army was available. Zhang Xun fled the city while Tie-liang etc sought asylum in Japanese consulate. Lin

Shuqing of Zhenjiang was supported as the new governor-general of Jiangsu Prov.

In Shanghai, Huang Xing was conferred the post of 'grand marshal' and Li Yuanhong the deputy post. Manchu court agreed with Yuan Shi-kai in having peace talks with Wuchang government. Yuan Shi-kai dispatched Tang Shaoyi to Wuchang with the help of British consul in Hankou, and Li Yuanhong sent Tang Shaoyi along to Shanghai to meet Huang Xing. Shanghai committee selected Wu Tingfang as the peace talk rep. The two held first round of talk in British extraterritory's city-hall. Tang Shaoyi sent back to Peking the revolutionary government's demand that Manchu Qing emperor abdicate. German consul mediated over the two parties to no vain. In Shanxi, Manchu forces took over provincial capital, and Shangdong governor-general revoked independence. Dr. Sun Yat-sen returned to Shanghai from overseas by the end of year 1911. In Shanghai, Sun Yat-sen was supported as the interim president of the Republic of China which was officially founded on Nov 13th of 1911 (or Jan 1st of 1912 per solar calendar). Dr. Sun Yat-sen moved his interim government to Nanking and stipulated the executive and legislative branches of the ROC, and conferred ministers' posts onto various leaders.

After Yuan Shi-kai was appointed "*naige zongli*" (i.e., prime minister of Manchu cabinet), Zai-feng retired. Tang Shaoyi requested that Manchu convene a Parliament as soon as possible and resigned the peace rep post when his request was turned down. In Sichuan Prov, Zhao Erfeng was killed; in Xinjiang, Manchu General Zhi-rui was killed; in Gansu Prov, Manchu governor-general Chang-geng was killed; and in Mongolia/Tibet, local ethnic peoples declared real independence. Yuan Shi-kai requested for resignation with empress dowager for Manchu's refusal to convene a Parliament. Seeing that Sun Yat-sen had become the first president of ROC, Yuan Shi-kai hastened his efforts to secure a fortune for himself. Sun Yat-sen's government further demanded that Manchu emperor abdicate. Manchu officials were scared into concessions after a revolutionary (Peng Jiazhen) assassinated Liang-bi in front of the residence on the night of Jan. 26, 1912. Peng Jiazhen, a Sichuan Prov native, was conferred the title of "infantry grand general" posthumously. Yuan Shi-kai authorized Duan Qirui to demand an imperial abdication in the name of 42 Manchu generals. Yuan Shi-kai reached a deal with Sun Yat-sen in regards to pressuring the last Manchu Emperor Xuantong (Aixinjueluo Pu-yi, r. 1909-1911) into abdication on Feb 12th of 1912. After Sun Yat-sen resigned on 13th, Yuan Shi-kai obtained the

ROC presidency from Sun Yat-sen subsequently when interim upper house made the announcement on Feb 15th 1912. Details of Wuchang Uprising and Xin Hai Revolution will be covered in the section [xinhai.htm](#) as well as the section on "[The Tragedy Of Chinese Revolution](#)".